DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 040 403 48 AL 002 460

AUTHOR	Yates, Warren G.; Tryon, Absorn
TITLE	Thai Basic Course. Volume 1 and Volume 2.
INSTITUTION	Foreign Service Inst. (Dept. of State), Washington, D.C.
SPONS AGENCY	Office of Education (DHEW), Washington, D.C. Bureau of Research.
BUREAU NO	BR-7-0541
PUB DATE	70
CONTRACT	OEC-2-7-070541-3000
NOTE	850p.; Vol. 1--428p., Vol. 2--422p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 ($3.75 each volume)
EDRS PRICE	EDRS Price MF-$3.25 HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods, Basic Skills, Basic Vocabulary, *Instructional Materials, Intonation, *Language Instruction, Phonetic Transcription, *Phonology, Programed Materials, Standard Spoken Usage, Tape Recordings, *Thai

ABSTRACT

The 40 lessons in these two volumes and the accompanying tape recordings are designed to teach standard spoken Thai to Foreign Service Officers and other American Government personnel. After completing the "Programed Introduction to Thai Phonology," the student should be able to read the phonemic transcription in which all Thai material is presented. Each lesson is composed of: a Basic Dialog (in transcription and English translation), Notes on the Dialog (information about Thai culture), Grammar Notes (nontechnical explanations to be studied outside of class), Drills (practice on particular grammatical patterns), Exercises (opportunities for the student to use Thai to communicate in a realistic situation), and a Vocabulary list. A Comprehensive Glossary at the end of Volume 1 contains the 1,400 Thai words presented in that volume. Volume 2 is made up of lessons 21 through 40. A third volume is planned. The authors have made use of R. B. Noss' "Thai Reference Grammar," ED 010 347. The tape recordings, which are an integral part of the course, are available from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409. (JD)

PRINTED BY THE STANDARD REGISTER COMPANY U.S.A.
FORM 0801

BR-7-0541
PA-48
OE/115
AL

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

THAI

ED0 40403

For reference only

Title VI, NDEA
Contract
OEC-2-7-070541-3000

BASIC COURSE
Volume 1

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

1946

AL 002 460

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

THAI

BASIC COURSE

Volume 1

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

AL 002 460

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price $3.75

PREFACE

The ***FSI Thai Basic Course,*** *Volumes I and II, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Thai for the student who wants to learn to speak and understand the language used by an estimated 20 to 22 million people in Thailand.*

The programmed introduction to Thai phonology which occupies the first 25 pages of Volume I is the work of Warren G. Yates, chairman of the Department of East Asian Languages at the Foreign Service Institute. Dr. Yates and Absorn Tryon, Thai language instructor at FSI, are co-authors of the 40 lessons comprising the core of the course.

In the early stages of the project Richard B. Noss, then chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages made valuable suggestions. The authors have made extensive use of Dr. Noss's ***Thai Reference Grammar*** *in the preparation of these volumes, and users will find that they are often referred to it for fuller explanations.*

Mr. Prapas Kanchanandul contributed drills and assisted in matters of Thai language usage. Mrs. Tryon re-read the entire text of both volumes in Thailand in late 1969 and suggested changes to make the materials current.

Mrs. Phongchan Nabangchang collected and organized the items in the glossaries which appear at the end of each lesson and the comprehensive glossary for both volumes which appears at the end of Volume I. Irma C. Ponce typed the camera copy of the entire text while Miss Chotchai Kambhu, Mr. Prasert Crupiti and Mr. Thaworn Jimreivat assisted in proofreading, having previously participated in the classroom trials of the new materials in pre-publication form. Thai language textual material was tape recorded in the FSI Language Laboratory under the direction of Gary Alley with technical assistance from Jose M. Ramirez and Arthur Young.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of these volumes possible.

James R. Frith

James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume 1

PREFACE iii

INTRODUCTORY SECTION

Introduction x
Organization and Use of This Course xi
Instructions to the Student on Use of Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology xiv
Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology xvi
Reference Chart of Special Symbols Used in Thai Basic Course xxxvii

LESSON 1.

BASIC DIALOG 1
Notes on the Basic Dialog 1
Grammar Notes 2
  1. The Personal Pronouns 2
  2. Word Order in the Sentence 2
  3. The Question Word 'ry̌y' 2
  4. Final Polite Particles 2
DRILLS 3
EXERCISES 5
VOCABULARY 6

LESSON 2.

BASIC DIALOG 7
Notes on the Basic Dialog 8
Grammar Notes 8
  1. The Question Word 'araj' 8
  2. Use of 'châj máj ?' in Confirmation 9
  3. Use of 'mâj châj' in Disagreement 9
  4. Responding to Questions with 'ry̌y' 10
DRILLS 10
EXERCISES 16
VOCABULARY 17
CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS 19

LESSON 3.

BASIC DIALOG 20
Notes on the Basic Dialog 21
Grammar Notes 21

1. Stative Verbs 21
2. Omission of the Subject 21
3. Negation of the Verb 21
4. Use of the Question Word 'máj' 22
5. 'Plurality' in the Noun 22
6. 'jàa' in Negative Request 22
7. 'nîi, nân, nôon' in Verbless Sentences 22
8. 'ry̌y' in Negative Questions 22

DRILLS 23
EXERCISES 32
VOCABULARY 33

LESSON 4.

BASIC DIALOG 35
Grammar Notes 36

1. Use of Unit Classifiers 36
2. The Classifier Phrase as a Noun Replacement... 37
3. 'khɔ̌ɔŋ' Used to Indicate 'Possession' 37
4. The Position of 'khraj' in the Sentence 38
5. How to Express 'Being' 38

DRILLS 39
EXERCISES 49
VOCABULARY 50

LESSON 5.

BASIC DIALOG 52
Notes on the Basic Dialog 52
Grammar Notes 56

1. Ways of Expressing Negation 56
2. pen jaŋŋaj Meaning 'What is it like to...?'... 56

DRILLS 57
EXERCISES 60
VOCABULARY 62

LESSON 6.

BASIC DIALOG 64
Grammar Notes 64

1. caŋ as an Intensifier of Stative Verbs 64
2. keŋ with Noun Phrases and Verb Phrases 64
3. Verbs with Obligatory Complements 65
4. Terms Used to Refer to People 65
5. Words Relating to Names of Cities and Countries 66
6. Another Use of khraj 66

DRILLS 67
EXERCISES 79
COMPREHENSION TEST 80
VOCABULARY 82

LESSON 7.

BASIC DIALOG 86
Notes on the Basic Dialog 86
Grammar Notes 87
1. khəəj to Indicate Past Experience 87
2. paj + Place Expressions 87
3. Lack of Verb Inflection 87
4. Omission of Subject Pronoun 88
5. Sentence + dâj to Indicate 'possibility' or 'suitability' 88
6. Sentence + pen to Indicate 'ability to perform some activity' 88
7. Use of khəəj + pen / daj 89
DRILLS 90
EXERCISES 109
VOCABULARY 110
Map of Thailand Showing Some Provinces 113

LESSON 8.

BASIC DIALOG 115
Grammar Notes 115
1. Compounds 115
2. jùu + Place Expressions 118
3. Responses to thamŋaan araj 118
4. Difference between paj nǎj and paj thîinǎj 118
DRILLS 118
EXERCISES 129
VOCABULARY 130

LESSON 9.

BASIC DIALOG 135
Grammar Notes 135
1. Means of Indicating 'Time' and 'Aspect' of the Verb 135
2. Function of the Question Words 137
GRAMMAR DRILLS 139
EXERCISES 156
VOCABULARY 158

LESSON 10.

BASIC EPISODE 160
Questions on Basic Episode 160
DRILLS 161
EXERCISE 170
VOCABULARY 170

LESSON 11.

BASIC DIALOG 171
Grammar Notes 172
  1. Use of kan to Indicate 'Mutuality' and 'Plurality' 172
  2. araj, khraj, and nǎj as Indefinite Pronouns ... 172
  3. Numerals 173
  4. thîi with Included Modifiers or Specifiers 174
  5. yyn yyn as a Pluralizer 175
DRILLS 175
EXERCISES 188
VOCABULARY 189

LESSON 12.

BASIC DIALOG 191
Notes on the Basic Dialog 192
Grammar Notes 193
  1. Ordinal Numbers 193
  2. rɛ̂ɛk as a Number 193
  3. Ordinal Numbers After Classifiers 194
  4. Expressing 'Age' 194
  5. lɛ́ɛw and jaŋ to Express State of an Action 194
  6. jaŋ mâj... Versus jaŋ mâj dâj... 195
  7. Position of Classifier Phrases Referring to Pronoun Subject 195
DRILLS 195
EXERCISES 212
VOCABULARY 212

LESSON 13.

BASIC DIALOG 215
Notes on the Basic Dialog 215
Grammar Notes 216
  1. ìik... ca for Future Time 216
  2. paj as an Indicator of Excess with chaa and rew 216
DRILLS 217
EXERCISES 229
VOCABULARY 231

LESSON 14.

BASIC DIALOG 233
Grammar Notes 234
  1. klaj and klâj 234
  2. Extent of Distance Constructions 235
  3. mii Indicating 'existence' 235
DRILLS 236
EXERCISES 254
VOCABULARY 254

LESSON 15.

BASIC DIALOG 257
Questions on the Interview 259
EXERCISES 260
VOCABULARY 260

LESSON 16.

BASIC DIALOG 262
DRILLS 263
EXERCISES 273
VOCABULARY 274

LESSON 17.

BASIC DIALOG ....
Grammar Notes 276
  1. paj / maa used to Indicate Direction of Motion 276
  2. Prepositions in Compounds 277
DRILLS 277
EXERCISES 286
VOCABULARY 286

LESSON 18.

BASIC DIALOG 290
Notes on the Basic Dialog 291
Grammar Notes 291
    Sentence Embedding 291
DRILLS 293
EXERCISES 306
VOCABULARY 308

LESSON 19.

BASIC DIALOG 310
Grammar Drills 310
EXERCISES 317
VOCABULARY 318

LESSON 20.
  BASIC EPISODE 319
  Questions on the Basic Episode 320
  EXERCISES 322
  VOCABULARY 323

TEXT GLOSSARY G-1

INTRODUCTORY SECTION

Introduction

This is the first volume of a three-volume course designed to teach Standard Thai. Standard Thai is the national spoken language of Thailand and is the dialect of educated speakers of Bangkok and Central Thailand. Standard Thai in spoken and written form is known to some extent by nearly all Thais. There are approximately 20 million speakers.

The materials contained in the first two volumes consist of the following:

(1) A Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology,

(2) A standard text of 40 lessons, and

(3) A text glossary.

Not included in the text but considred to be an integral part of the course are a series of tapes consisting of taped portions of the text and other supplementary materials.

These materials were designed to be used in a course of instruction where the main focus is on teaching the student to speak and understand Thai. This is not to say that reading and writing should be ignored, but that additional materials would be required for that purpose.

Basic to the approach recommended by the authors of this text are the following tenets:

(1) In the classroom only Thai should be spoken.

(2) The teacher should be either a native speaker of Thai, or a non-native with excellent control of the language.

(3) Every effort should be made to make the instruction both in and out of class approximate 'real' use of the language.

(4) The use of audio-visual devices of all kinds (charts, films, objects, etc.) is encouraged, but they must be used in such a way as to function as an integrated part of the instruction and not just as an interesting appendage.

(5) Language learning is a largely a function of the student's interest, motivation, and application; therefore, every effort should be made to interest and motivate him to make the requisite effort to learn the language. Next to the student, the language teacher is the most important element in the learning process; it is, therefore, imperative that the teacher not be restricted to following slavishly any particular course of study. With this in mind we encourage Thai language instructors to look upon this text and the accompanying tapes as useful devices which may be modified as required and should in no sense be thought of as the sole or even the main instruments for teaching Thai.

ORGANIZATION AND USE OF THIS COURSE

1. Basic Dialog

There is a basic dialog at the beginning of each lesson. It consists of a limited number of exchanges between two or sometimes more persons. It represents a somewhat modified version of a 'real' dialog, since hesitation phenomena, false starts, and other features regularly occurring in real speech have been eliminated. It does present what two educated Thai speakers might say in a given situation if they were being particularly careful to avoid the features referred to above.

If the student has memorized the dialogs, he will have a store of language that is readily available when needed (assuming he is in a situation comparable to that of a particular dialog). It is, therefore, suggested that some time be spent for this purpose. Most of this time should be outside of the classroom with the tape recorder, since different students memorize at different rates, and if many class hours are used for this purpose, it will prove very boring to quick learners and very frustrating to slow ones.

2. Notes

There are three kinds of notes in this text: notes on the dialog, vocabulary notes, and grammar notes. Notes on the dialog present some information that is useful for understanding the dialog. It is often cultural. Vocabulary notes are used to explain the meaning of a word in somewhat greater depth than is included in the lesson glossary. Grammar notes provide a general understanding of Thai grammar. They are written in such a manner as to be useful to even the most linguistically unsophisticated learner. All types of notes should be read and studied outside of class. If some points are still unclear, the instructor may clarify further by giving additional examples, paraphrasing, or by explaining in Thai.

3. Drills

The drills in this textbook are for the purpose of providing an opportunity for the student to isolate a particular feature (grammatical or semantic) of the language and to practice it in a limited context until he understands well how to use it and can say it with good fluency and pronunciation.

It should be clearly understood that drills of any kind are simply devices for actuating practice having a particular focus and with a limited objective, and as such they do not represent 'real communication' in language no matter how cleverly they are arranged; therefore, the instructor should be constantly alert to signs of boredom and should switch to a different type of activity before that point is reached.

All this is not to say that drills do not have a place in language teaching. It is probable that a certain number of drills are very helpful if not absolutely indispensable in learning to speaking language well.

Various kinds of drill (substitution, transformation, etc.) are found in this textbook. In most cases it is obvious from the format of the drill what procedure (substitution of an item in a sentence, rearrangement of a sentence, expansion of a sentence or phrase, etc.) is called for. In those instances where it might not be clear, special instructions are provided.

4. Exercises

'Exercises' (as the term is used in this textbook) are distinguishable from drills mainly by the type of response they elicit. Drills are designed to elicit one particular response and any other response (even if it is correct in form and meaning) is unacceptable; whereas, the only requirement in an exercise is that the response conform *logically* with the original request (i.e. if you are asked where a certain building is, you don't respond with a description of it instead).

The exercises in any particular lessons in this text have two basic purposes: to provide (1) a setting in which communication of a restricted kind can take place and (2) a means for the instructor to test the ability of the students to use the material in the lesson in more realistic situations.

The exercises in the lessons are an especially important part of the lesson and should be done at the end of the lesson. If students are unable to perform well the tasks presented to them, the instructor should review any parts of the lesson that seem necessary for successful completion of those tasks. In no case should students go to the next lesson until they can do the exercises easily, rapidly, and correctly.

5. Lesson and Text Glossaries

At the end of each lesson there is a list of all words occurring for the first time in that lesson and at the end of the volume there is a complete list of words in the first volume.

All entries are listed in alphabetical order (English alphabet) and are written in a phonemic transcription using Roman letters. With each noun is its unit classifier. A limited number of the more useful noun and verb compounds are included. Two examples are given below:

mɔ̌ɔ (khon)	......	doctor (medical)
khâw paj	......	to enter (away from the speaker)
khâw maa	......	to enter (towards the speaker)

6. Taped Material

Besides the tapes which form a major part of the Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology, there are tapes of various kinds that accompany each lesson. The dialogs and most of the essential drills are recorded on the lesson tapes; however, they are recorded in such a manner as not to be an exact duplicate of the way in which the drill will be conducted in class, since the purpose of the tapes is to supplement not replace classroom work. Special pronunciation drills and remarks are included on the tapes.

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT ON USE OF PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

The purpose of this material is to acquaint you with the significant features of the Thai sound system. 'Significant' as used here refers to those features which distinguish words; for example, in English the words sit and set are distinguished only by the quality of the two vowels; therefore, we can say that vowel quality is significant in English (i.e. if you say sit instead of set, you may be misunderstood.) It is, therefore, important that you learn to hear and produce vowel quality. On the other hand, it doesn't matter whether you pronounce the vowel in hit long or short. You may find it a little harder to understand a Southerner who pronounces hit with a slightly longer vowel than you do, but you will not confuse it with heat, which has different vowel quality. We can see then that vowel quality is significant, but vowel length isn't in English.

The significant features of the Thai sound system referred to here relate to contrasts in pitch contour, length of vowels and diphthongs, aspiration of consonants, and syllable prominence.

In addition to the sound features referred to, you will be taught to read and write the special phonetic transcription which is used in the Thai Basic Course that follows this instruction.

The following procedure should be used with these materials:

(1) Put tape 1 of the Programmed Introduction on the tape recorder and proceed through it carrying out the instructions you hear on the tape. You will

not need to refer to the text except for those portions of the material where you are asked to read or write something.

(2) When you are asked to write something, write it in the text and check your answers. If you need more time than is provided on the tape for checking your answers, stop the machine.

(3) If at any time in the program, you are confused about something, stop the tape, rewind it and listen to that particular part again.

(4) Although the program was designed primarily for use before beginning lesson one in the text, all of it or parts of it can be used profitably at later stages in the course as well.

(5) It is suggested that you do not work for longer periods of time than 30 minutes. Take a short break, and then return. All of the tapes can be completed in one day.

(6) Since almost all of the material is only on tape, it would be clearly impossible to do the program without the tapes and a tape recorder.

A PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

(Student's Text)

Part I is on Tape only.[1]

Part II, Section 1, Frames 1-10, are on Tape only.[2]

Frame	Content
11	Observe the way this word is written in the special writing system used in this book: phaa
12	The 'ph' is used to represent the initial consonant in the word, which sounds like the 'p' in 'pat' in English. The 'aa' stands for 'long a', which sounds like 'ah' in 'father'.
13	Observe the way this word is written. Notice particularly the symbol above the vowels. phâa
14	The 'hat' or 'circumflex accent' over the first vowel is used to indicate that the vowel is pronounced with a high falling pitch contour.
15	Pronounce this word 3 times: phâa After each attempt listen to the tape for confirmation.

---

[1] The only 'frames' that are written out in this text are those where you are asked to look at how something is written; otherwise, the content of the frame is voiced only.

[2] You will be notified by the tape when you are to refer to the written text. Be sure to cover the answer when doing a written frame.

Frame	Content
16	If no mark is written above the vowel, that is indication that the word is to be pronounced with a *mid level* pitch contour. Listen to the pronunciation of *phaa*.
17	Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and write a mark above the vowel when necessary: (1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa
Answers:	(1) phâa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phâa
18	Listen to the following words and write them in the Thai transcription in the spaces below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
Answers:	(1) phaa (2) phâa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phaa
19	This word has *low rising* pitch. It is written *phǎa*.
20	The mark / ˇ/ is written above the vowel to indicate that it is to be pronounced with a *low rising* pitch contour.
21	Read the following words. Check your response by the Tape. (1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phaa (5) phâa (6) phǎa
22	Put the tone markers on the following words after they are pronounced on the tape. (1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa (6) phaa (7) phaa (8) phaa
Answers:	(1) phâa (2) phǎa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phǎa (6) phǎa (7) phaa (8) phâa

Frame **Content**

23 Transcribe the following words:

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: (1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phǎa (5) phâa
(6) phaa (7) phâa (8) phaa (9) phǎa (10) phâa

Part II Section 1, Drills, Frames 1-17 are on tape only.

Frame **Content**

18 This time look at the words below as they are read on the tape. Note carefully how they are written in the special writing system.

(1) naa (2) nǎa (3) laa (4) hâa (5) khâa
(6) mǎa (7) phaa (8) maa (9) sǎa (10) thâa
(11) khaa (12) lǎa (13) daa (14) bâa (15) wâa
(16) thaa (17) nâa (18) phâa (19) hǎa (20) saa

19 This time write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below using the special writing system:

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

(11) (12) (13) (14) (15)

(16) (17) (18) (19) (20)

Answers: (1) phâa (2) maa (3) thǎa (4) bâa (5) khâa
(6) fǎa (7) haa (8) phǎa (9) nâa (10) thaa
(11) khǎa (12) laa (13) hǎa (14) nâa (15) phaa
(16) saa (17) thǎa (18) khaa (19) hâa (20) mǎa

Part II Section 2, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

Frame Content

11 The symbol / ´/ above the vowel is used to indicate High pitch contour. Put the correct tone marker above the vowel in the words below:

(1) chaaŋ (2) maa (3) laan (4) khaa

Answers: (1) cháaŋ (2) máa (3) láan (4) kháa

Part II, Section 2, Frames 12-20 are on Tape only.

21 Indicate the pitch contour of the following words by writing / ^ / for high falling pitch; / ´/ for High; and nothing for mid level.

(1) khaaŋ (2) khaaŋ (3) khaaŋ (4) khaaŋ (5) khaaŋ

Answer: (1) khâaŋ (2) kháaŋ (3) khaaŋ (4) khâaŋ (5) kháaŋ

22 Listen to these words and transcribe them below!

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) kháaŋ (2) khâaŋ (3) khaaŋ (4) kháaŋ

(5) khâaŋ (6) khaaŋ (7) kháaŋ (8) khâaŋ

23 Read the following words and listen to the tape for pronunciation check:

(1) kháaŋ (2) khaaŋ (3) khâaŋ (4) khaaŋ

(5) khâaŋ (6) kháaŋ (7) kháaŋ (8) khâaŋ

Part II, Section 2 Drills, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
10	Read the following words: (1) kháa (2) nâan (3) phâat (4) máa (5) wâa (6) thâa (7) kháan (8) mâak
11	Write the words you hear below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)
Answers:	(1) phâa (2) náam (3) máa (4) thâa (5) láa (6) náa (7) mâak (8) kháan

Part II, Section 3, Frames 1-5 are on Tape only.

6	This word is written as follows phìt
7	Write this word: ____________ ____________
Answer:	phìt
8	This word is written phít What is the pitch contour on this word?
9	Do these two words sound the same?
10	Do these two words sound the same?
11	True or false? The symbol / ˋ/ is used to indicate low pitch contour.
Answer:	True

Frame	Content
12	The symbol / ´ / is used to indicate high falling pitch contour. True or false?
Answer:	True
13	/ph/ is used to transcribe a sound that is like the 'p' in the English word pit. True or false?
Answer:	True
Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.	
18	This word is written khâat
19	This word is written khàat
20	Transcribe this word: __________ __________
Answer:	khâat
21	Transcribe this word: __________ __________
Answer.	khàat
22	Pronounce these words after the tape. (1) phìt (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat (6) phìt (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat
23	Read these words. Check your responses with the tape. (1) phìt (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat (6) phìt (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat
Part II, Section 3, Frames 24-30 are on Tape only.	
31	Read the words below: (1) phàa (2) mǎa (3) thàaŋ (4) thǎam (5) thàan (6) khǎan (7) nǎam (8) nǎa

Frame Content

32 Write the words you hear in the space below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers:

(1) phàan	(2) mǎa	(3) phàa	(4) khǎan
(5) nǎa	(6) phàat	(7) thǎa	(8) thàaŋ

Part III, Section 1, Frames 1-23 are on Tape only.

24 In the special phonetic alphabet used in the Thai Basic Course, aspirated t is written th (The h stands for aspiration).

25 How would you write this word in the special alphabet?

____

Answer: thaa

Frames 26-36 are on the Tape only.

37 The word meaning 'eye' is written taa in the special phonetic alphabet.

38 Write these words in a phonetic transcription as you hear them.

1. _______ 2. _______ 3. _______ 4. _______

5. _______ 6. _______ 7. _______ 8. _______

Answers:

1. taa	2. thaa	3. thaa	4. taa
5. taa	6. thaa	7. taa	8. thaa

Part III, Section 1 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

Frame Content

11 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:

(1) thaa (2) taa (3) tûu (4) thûu
(5) tii (6) thii (7) taa (8) thaa
(9) taan (10) thaan (11) tii (12) thii
(13) thaa (14) tii (15) tûu (16) thûu
(17) thaan (18) tii

12 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated t, write th in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated t, write t after its number.

1. ______ 2. ______ 3. ______ 4. ______
5. ______ 6. ______ 7. ______ 8. ______
9. ______ 10. ______

Answers: 1. t 2. th 3. t 4. th 5. t
6. th 7. th 8. th 9. t 10. t

13 Transcribe the words you hear in the spaces below:

1. ________ 2. ________ 3. ________ 4. ________
5. ________ 6. ________ 7. ________ 8. ________
9. ________ 10. ________ 11. ________ 12. ________
13. ________ 14. ________ 15. ________ 16. ________

Answers: 1. taa 2. thaan 3. taan 4. thaa 5. thaaŋ
6. thii 7. too 8. tii 9. thoo 10. taa
11. tii 12. thaaŋ 13. thaa 14. taan 15. thaan
16. taa

Part III, Section 2, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
5	It begins with an unaspirated t (it doesn't have a puff of air after it) and it is written tii in the special alphabet.

Frames 6-8 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
9	It begins with d and is written dii

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

15 Identify the following words by writing d, t, or th in the blank by their numbers, after you hear them on tape.

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. d 2. th 3. th 4. t 5. d
6. th 7. d 8. t 9. th 10. d

Part III, Section 3, Frame 1-5 are on Tape only.

6 This word is written phaa.

The 'h' after the 'p' shows that the 'p' is aspirated.

7 Does this word begin with an 'aspirated p'?

8 How would you write this word?: ______________

Answer: phaa

Frames 9-18 are on Tape only.

19 The word meaning 'father's elder sister' is written pâa in the special writing system used in the text. Listen to it.

20 The word meaning 'cloth' is written phâa

21 You will now hear several repetitions of these two words. As you hear each one, write it in transcription in the space below:

1. ______ 2. ______ 3. ______ 4. ______

5. ______ 6. ______ 7. ______ 8. ______

Answers: (1) pâa (2) pâa (3) phâa (4) pâa

(5) phâa (6) phâa (7) pâa (8) phâa

Part III, Section 3 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

11 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated p, write ph in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated p, write p after its number.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

Answers: 1. p 2. ph 3. ph 4. ph 5. p 6. ph 7. p

8. p 9. ph 10. p

12 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:

1. pâaj 2. phûu 3. pàa 4. pâa 5. pàa

6. pûu 7. phaan 8. phàa 9. phâa 10. phàan

11. paan 12. phâa 13. phaan 14. pii 15. phǐi

Frame Content

13 Write the words you hear in the phonetic transcription in the spaces below:

1. ______ 2. ______ 3. ______ 4. ______
5. ______ 6. ______ 7. ______ 8. ______
9. ______ 10. ______ 11. ______ 12. ______
13. ______ 14. ______ 15. ______

Answers: 1. phaa 2. pâa 3. phâa 4. paan 5. phaan
6. pàa 7. phâa 8. phâa 9. pâa 10. pàa
11. phàa 12. pûu 13. phûu 14. pâaj 15. phaa

Part III, Section 4, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

9 Read the following words and check your readings with the tape.

(1) pâa (2) bâa (3) pâa (4) bâa (5) pâa

10 A pair of words will be spoken, if they sound the same, say 'Same'; if different, say 'Different'.

11 Look at the following words as they are read on the tape. Notice in particular the tone marks above the vowels;

(1) pìt (2) baj (3) bâan (4) pàak (5) pâaŋ
(6) pàa (7) bàa (8) baaŋ (9) pâa (10) bìt
(11) paa

Frame   Content

12 Write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below:

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. pâa 2. bâa 3. pàa 4. bàa 5. paa
6. bâan 7. paan 8. bâaŋ 9. pàat 10. pàak

Note: If you didn't get most of them right including the correct tone mark, use a clean piece of paper and repeat the drill, as well as frame 11 above.

Part III, Section 4 Drill, Frames 1 and 2 are on Tape only.

3 Read the words below. Check with the tape for pronunciation.

(1) baaŋ (2) pèt (3) bàat (4) phûu
(5) phǎn (6) bâa (7) pii (8) phâa
(9) paan (10) baan (11) bâan (12) phàt
(13) pàa (14) plaa (15) pâaj

4 Write the words you hear in transcription below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(5) (6) (7) (8)

(9) (10)

Answers: (1) paa (2) phâa (3) baan (4) pàa (5) pen
(6) phaa (7) bâa (8) phàan (9) phìt (10) plaa

Part III, Section 5, Frames 1-7 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
8	In transcription aspirated k is writthen kh. The 'h' stands for the air stream. Write the symbol for the initial sound in these words:
	(1) (2) (3) (4)
Answer:	To all 4: kh

Frames 9-12 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
13	Unaspirated k is written 'k'. In the spaces below write the symbol for the initial consonant sound in these words:
	(1) (2) (3) (4)
Answer:	In each case is k.

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
18	Listen to these words. If a word begins with aspirated k, write kh opposite its number; if unaspirated k, write k.
	(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6)
Answers:	1. kh, 2. k, 4. kh, 5. k, 6. kh
19	Read the words below. Check your responses with the tape:
	(1) kàap (2) khìi (3) kin (4) kaan (5) kàp (6) klâj (7) khâaŋ (8) kûŋ (9) kàj (10) khàat (11) khaa (12) kâan

Frame	Content
20	Write these words: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12)
Answers:	(1) kaan (2) khaa (3) kâaŋ (4) khàp (5) khâaŋ (6) khǎn (7) kàj (8) kâan (9) khâaŋ (10) klaj (11) khàat (12) kàp
Part III, Section 6, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.	
10	The symbol ch is used to write the initial consonant in these words. The 'c' indicates the sound is made at the hard palate ('the ceiling of the mouth') and the 'h' indicates that there is a stream of air after the 'c'. Write the initial consonant of these words in the spaces below: (1) (2) (3) (4) The answer in each case above is ch. (Don't forget: 'c' for 'ceiling' and 'h' for aspiration.)
11	The initial sound in this Thai word is also made with the tongue on the hard palate (i.e. 'the ceiling' of the mouth).
12	There is no aspiration after the initial consonant.
13	This sound that is made at the hard palate and is without aspiration is written 'c'. Write the initial sound of these words in the space below: (1) (2) (3) (4)

Frame Content

Answers to 13: (1) c (2) c (3) c (4) c

Frames 14-19 are on Tape only.

20 Read the following words:

(1) chàt (2) càk (3) caŋ (4) chan
(5) châat (6) cuan (7) châaw (8) cèt
(9) cèp (10) chàp (11) càak (12) càt
(13) chaa (14) caŋ (15) cam

21 Write the following words in the spaces below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(5) (6) (7) (8)

(9) (10) (11) (12)

(13) (14)

Answers: (1) càak (2) cham (3) cèt (4) châat
(5) chin (6) câm (7) com (8) còp
(9) choŋ (10) chaan (11) còt (12) coom
(13) caan (14) chàt

Part III, Section 7, Frames 1-3 are on Tape only.

4 You can hear the quality of this sound easily by saying ing several times. This sound is called a velar nasal and is written ŋ in phonetic writing. Please observe that ŋ is like n with a long bent tail on it.

5 The velar nasal /ŋ/ occurs finally in many English words (bring, sing, etc.) and it also occurs medially in some words (singer, etc.), but it never occurs in initial position.

Frame	Content
6	This Thai word ends in a velar nasal like bring in English.
7	What sound do these words end in?
Answer:	ŋ
8	The final sound in these words would be written /ŋ/. True or false?
9	These words end in a nasal sound also but not the velar nasal. Listen to these words. What is the final sound?
10	Now you will hear some pairs of words. The first member of the pair ends in the velar nasal; the second, in n. Listen to the difference.
11	The velar nasal occurs at the beginning of some Thai words. Listen to these examples:
12	Contrast these words beginning with /ŋ/ with those beginning with /n/.
Frame 13-16 are on Tape only.	
17	Read the following words: (1) ŋaa (2) ŋaan (3) ŋaam (4) ŋan (5) ŋuu (6) ŋâaj (7) ŋəən (8) ŋaj
18	Write the following words: (1) (2) (3) (4)
Answers:	(1) ŋaa (2) ŋaam (3) ŋâaj (4) ŋaj

Part III, Section 8, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
5.	If you said 'an old oak' (with clear separation between old and oak), what you said would be written phonetically as follows: æn owld ʔ owk (The symbol ʔ represents the glottal stop)

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10 Being careful to put a glottal stop at the end of each syllable, pronounce the following words when you hear the number:

(1) ná (2) sì (3) phrá (4) há (5) mí

(Note: The glottal stop symbol is not usually written after short vowels since its occurrence is predictable.)

Part III, Section 9, Frames 1-15 are on Tape only.

16 Listen to these words and write the final stops (p, t, or k) in the space below:

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: (1) p (2) t (3) k (4) p (5) k

(6) t (7) k (8) p (9) p (10) k

Part III, Section 10, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

Frame | Content

5 Write the final sound of these words in the space below (use ʔ for glottal stop):

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. p 2. k 3. ʔ 4. t 5. ʔ 6. t 7. t
8. ʔ 9. p 10. ʔ

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10 Write the final sound of these words below:

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. âa 2. t 3. k 4. âa 5. p 6. k 7. p
8. âa 9. k 10. âa

Part IV, Section 1, Frames 1-2 are on Tape only.

3 The diphthong is made up of two parts:

a as in bah plus a glide like w

It would be written /haw/ in phonetic transcription.

Frames 4-6 are on Tape only.

7 The diphthong in this word could be written /aw/. The first part is a and the last part is a w glide.

Frames 8-10 are on Tape only.

Frame *Content*

11 The diphthong in this word could be written *aaw*. The first part is a long *a* and the second part is a *w* glide.

12 The *aa* and the *w* glide are about equally loud but the *aa* is considerably longer than the *w* glide. This is called a *long diphthong*.

Frames 13-18 are on Tape only.

19 Read the following words:

(1) khâw (2) chaaw (3) mâw (4) plàaw

(5) sǎaw (6) câw (7) kâw (8) cháaw

20 Write these words in the space below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) khǎaw (2) sâw (3) cháaw (4) lâw

(5) nǎaw (6) khâaw (7) raw (8) khâw

Part IV, Section 2.

1 This word ends in a diphthong.

2 The diphthong in this word is written /aj/ which means that it begins with an *ah* sound and ends with an 'ee' glide.

3 The *ah* sound and the *ee* glide are about equally loud, but the *ee* glide is longer.

Frames 4-9 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
10	The long diphthong in these words is written aaj. Write the words you hear below:
	(1) (2) (3) (4)
	(5) (6)
Answers:	1. chaaj 2. daaj 3. naaj 4. thaaj 5. khǎaj 6. bàaj

Frames 11-13 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
14	Read the words below and check your responses with the tape:
	(1) paj (2) dâj (3) chaaj (4) hâj
	(5) bàaj (6) thaj
15	Write the words you hear below:
	(1) (2) (3) (4)
	(5) (6) (7) (8)
	(9) (10)
Answers:	1. naj 2. dâj 3. chaaj 4. klaaj 5. hâj 6. khǎaj 7. jàj 8. thaj 9. klâj 10. bàaj

Part IV, Section 3, Frames 1-14 are on Tape only.

Frame	Content
15	Read the following words:
	(1) càak (2) chán (3) faŋ (4) sǎam (5) ráan
	(6) khan (7) thaan (8) lǎŋ (9) phâak (10) wan
16	Write the following words:
	(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
	(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)
Answers:	1. wǎŋ 2. khâaŋ 3. tàaŋ 4. phan 5. láan
	6. ŋaan 7. tham 8. dâam 9. thaaŋ 10. caŋ

Part V, Section 1, Frames 1-13 are on Tape only.

Part V, Section 2, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

9 A syllable in Thai has 4 parts to it: an initial consonant, a vocalism, an optional final consonant and a pitch contour. Here are examples of each of the types of syllables:

(a) Consonant plus long vowel	(phaa)
(b) Consonant plus long vowel plus nasal	(phàan)
(c) Consonant plus long vowel plus glide	(fàaj)
(d) Consonant plus long vowel plus stop	(khàat)
(e) Consonant plus short vowel plus nasal	(phan)
(f) Consonant plus short vowel plus glide	(paj)
(g) Consonant plus short vowel plus stop	(kàt)

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

This is the end of The Programmed
Introduction to Thai Phonology.

REFERENCE CHART OF SPECIAL SYMBOLS
USED IN THAI BASIC COURSE

When Thais write Thai they use the regular writing system, which is a rather complex system based on Sanscrit. After you have been studying the spoken language for 6 to 8 weeks, you will begin to learn to read in this system. Since it is fairly difficult to learn regular Thai orthography, it is considered inadvisable to require you to learn it in addition to learning the spoken language at the beginning; therefore, a special system of transcription is used throughout the first volume of the Thai Basic Course. In this system regular Roman letters plus a few phonetic symbols are used. The system is completely regular, and you will learn to read it rather quickly. In fact, if you have already finished the Programmed Introduction, you may already know most of it. Please keep in mind that no writing system reflects accurately and precisely the sound system of a language, so rely on your ears and not on any written symbols (including the regular Thai orthography) for the pronunciation of Thai words and sentences.

It will help you understand the summary of the transcription system that follows, if you are aware of 3 conventions that are used in it: (1) Vowel length is indicated by a doubling of the vowel symbol, (2) An 'h' after an initial consonant indicates that the consonant is 'aspirated', and (3) Pitch contours are indicated by placing certain kinds of symbols above vowels; thus phâa refers to an 'aspirated p', followed by 'long a', which has a 'high falling' pitch contour.

REFERENCE CHART

Symbol	Usual English Letter	Approximate Pronunciation
b	b	similar to English b in Samba.
p	p (after s)	like the p in spy (no puff of air after p)

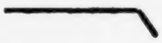
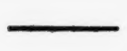
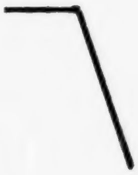
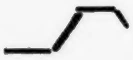
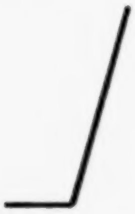
Symbol	Usual English Letter	Approximate Pronunciation
ph	p	like the p in pie (puff of air after p)
d	d	similar to English d in Sunday
t	t (after s)	like the t in sty (no puff of air after t)
th	t	like the t in tie (puff of air after t)
k	k (after s)	like the k in ski
kh	k	like the k in Korea
c	..	between English jet and Chet
ch	ch	between ch in cheat and sh in sheet
r	r	r as in red may be used (rarely occurs in Bangkok dialect)
l	l	l as in long
m	m	m as in me
h	h	h as in hen
f	f	f as in fun
s	s	s as in see
n	n	n as need
ŋ	-ng (only final)	like -ng in sing
w	w	w as in we
j	y	y as in yet

Symbol	Usual English Letter	Approximate Pronunciation
i	i	i in sip
ii	ee, ea	ee as in see
e	e	e as in pet
ee	a, ay	a as in made
ε	a	a as in and
εε	a	a as in fan
y	..	u in sugar is somewhat similar
yy	..	....
ə	..	somewhat similar to -er in baker but shorter and without 'r' quality
əə	..	similar to ə but longer. British pronunciation of sir
a	u	somewhat similar to u in fun
aa	a	a as in father
u	oo	oo as in look
uu	ou	ou as in you
o	o	o as in cone but shorter
oo	o	o as in so
ɔ	..	....
ɔɔ	aw	aw as in law
iw	..	....

Symbol	Usual English Letter	Approximate Pronunciation
ew	..	..
eew	..	..
ɛw	..	..
aw	ow	ow as in cow
aaw	ow	ow as in cow (longer than aw)
uj.	..	..
ooj	..	..
ɔj	oy	oy as in toy
ɔɔj	oy	oy as in toy (longer than ɔj)
aj	y, i	y as in my
aaj	y, i	y as in my (longer than aj)
ia	ee, ie, e	ee as in beer (without r)
ya	..	..
ua	oo	oo as in poor (without r)
iaw	eo	eo as in Leo
yaj	..	..

THAI TONE CHART

The shapes, names and symbols used for five significant pitch contours in Thai are given below:

Written Examples:	khaa	khàa	khâa	kháa	khǎa
Approximate Pitch Range					
Name of Contour	Mid Level	Low	High Falling	High	Low Rising
Symbol	No Mark	\	∧	/	∨

LESSON ONE

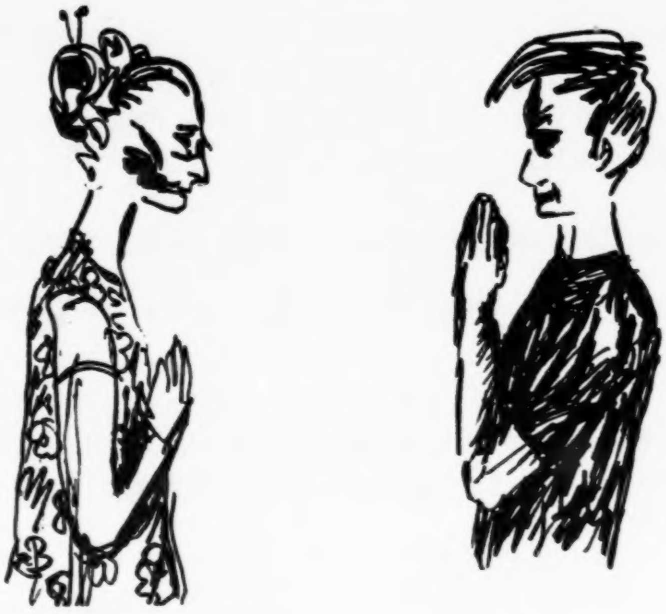
1.0 BASIC DIALOG: Greeting Someone

A.	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
	khun sabaajdii rý khráp	How are you?
B.	phǒm sabaajdii khráp	I'm fine.
	khɔ̀ɔpkhun	Thank you.
	lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp	And you?
A.	phǒm sabaajdii khráp	I'm fine.

1.1 NOTE ON THE DIALOG

sawàtdii is a very common salute in Thailand. It may be used for greeting someone or for leavetaking. It is usually accompanied by a 'wai' (wâj).

The 'wai' is illustrated in the picture below. The height of the hands in the 'wai' is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants. In the picture below the woman is older and is of equal or higher social status than the man.



1.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) phǒm, dichǎn, khun, and khǎw are pronouns in Thai.

phǒm means 'I' and is used by males only.

dichán or dihán (or in formal usage dichǎn) means 'I' and is used only by females.

khun is a polite form for 'you'.

kháw (in slow distinct speech khǎw) means 'he, she, or they'.

b) sabaajdii 'to be well, to be in good health' is a verb. The verb in Thai does not undergo changes in form, hence sabaajdii might be translated 'am, is, are fine' according to its subject.

c) The subject precedes the verb in Thai, hence the sentence phǒm sabaajdii is the most common type of statement.

d) Statements may be changed into questions by adding a question word at the end.

Statement:	khun sabaajdii	'You are well.'
Question:	khun sabaajdii rýy	'Are you well?'

e) rýy is a question word that is used to ask for verification. It may occur after words, phrases, or sentences. It is usually unstressed and may be pronounced in any of the following ways:

When sentence final:	ly̌y, lə̌ə, ry̌y, rə̌ə, ə̌ə
Before khráp (khá):	rý, lý, lə́, rə́, ə́, ý

f) khráp (or kháp) is a particle used as the final element of statements or questions. It indicates that the speaker is male. It is often pronounced há? in rapid speech.

g) khâ is a particle used as the final element of a statement. It indicates that the speaker is female. It may be pronounced hâ in rapid speech.

h) khá is similar in usage to khâ except that it is used at the end of a question. In rapid speech há may be used instead of khá.

i) The omission of the polite particles khráp, khâ, and khá may result in rather abrupt-sounding or impolite speech; it is, therefore, advisable to put one in at least once in each utterance.

j) lέεw 'and' is used to connect sentences.

k) lέεw (khun, kháw, etc.) la (khráp, khá) is a kind of echo type question; that is, it forms a question which is based on the previous statement.

Statement:	phǒm sabaajdii	'I'm fine.'
Echo question:	lέεw khun la khráp	'And how are you?'

1.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drill

sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
phǒm sabaaj dii	I (male) am fine.
phǒm sabaaj dii khráp	I (male) am fine.
sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
dichán sabaaj dii	I (female) am fine.
dichán sabaaj dii khâ	I (female) am fine.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	phǒm sabaajdii khráp	I am fine.
khun	khun sabaajdii khráp	You are fine.
kháw	kháw sabaajdii khráp	He/she/they is/are fine.
khun	khun sabaajdii khráp	You are fine.
phǒm	phǒm sabaajdii khráp	I am fine.

Repeat the drill using dichán / khâ for phǒm / khráp

c) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp	And you?
kháw	lɛ́ɛw kháw la khráp	And he?
khun	lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp	And you?
kháw	lɛ́ɛw kháw la khráp	And they?
khun	lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp	And you?

d) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	phǒm sabaajdii lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp
kháw	phǒm sabaajdii lɛ́ɛw kháw la khráp
khun	phǒm sabaajdii lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp
kháw	phǒm sabaajdii lɛ́ɛw kháw la khráp
khun	phǒm sabaajdii lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp

Repeat the drill using dichán / khá for phǒm / khráp.

e) Transformation Drill (Change into questions with ry̌y)

Statement	Question	
khun sabaajdii	khun sabaajdii ry̌y	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdii	kháw sabaajdii ry̌y	Is she well?
khun sabaajdii	khun sabaajdii ry̌y	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdii	kháw sabaajdii ry̌y	Are they well?

f) Dialog Variation Drill

If there are female members of the class, repeat the basic dialog using female pronouns and polite words.

1.4 EXERCISES

a) Each person inquires about the health of the person next to him, to which that person replies that he is fine.

b) The instructor asks each student how he is, and each student replies.

c) Each student asks the instructor how he is, and the instructor responds.

d) The instructor has student A ask student B how student C's health is, to which student B replies that it is good. (The instructor should continue this exercise until every student has asked and responded at least once.)

1.5 VOCABULARY

dichǎn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
khâ, hâ	polite particle, statement by a female
khá, há	polite particle, question by a female
khǎw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does not refer to things.
khɔ̀ɔpkhun	thank you
khráp, háʔ, kháp	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
khun	you (singular only) polite form
la	question word
lɛ́ɛw	and (sentence connective)
phǒm	I (male speaker)
ry̌y, rý, ly̌y, lý	question word
sabaajdii	to feel well, be in good health
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)

LESSON TWO

2.0 BASIC DIALOG: Finding Out Someone's Name

Prabas:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
	phǒm chŷy praphâat	My name is Prabas.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp.	Excuse me. What's your name?
John:	phǒm chŷy cɔɔn khráp	My name's John.
Prabas:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj nakhráp	Excuse me. What's your name?
	karunaa phûut ìik thii, dâj máj khráp	Could you please repeat that?
John:	phǒm chŷy cɔɔn khráp	My name's John.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun praphâat naamsakun araj khráp	Excuse me, Mr. Prabas what? (family name)
Prabas:	phǒm naamsakun rákthaj khráp	My family name's Rakthai.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun cɔɔn naamsakun samít, châj máj khráp	Excuse me, Mr. John Smith, isn't it?

NOTE: For female members of the class use Mary (mɛɛrîi) and the appropriate pronouns and particles instead of John. If the instructor is female, malí may be used instead of praphâat with appropriate changes.

John:	mâj châj khráp	No, it isn't.
	phǒm naamsakun braawn	My family name's Brown.
Prabas:	cɔɔn braaw rə̌khráp	John Brown, huh?
John:	khráp	That's right.

2.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) chŷy means 'name' or 'to be named' but refers only to the first or given name.

b) naamsakun means 'family or last name'.

c) khɔ̌ɔthôot means 'excuse me' or 'pardon me' and is used in the same way as the English words.

d) karunaa means 'please, kindly...' and is followed by a request form.

e) ìik thii 'again' means literally 'an additional time.'

f) khun is a polite title that may be used with names of either sex. It is normally put before a person's given name, since that is the name that one is usually addressed by in Thailand.

khun aarii 'Miss Aree', khun thǎawɔɔn 'Mr. Thaworn', khun noŋkhraan 'Mrs. Nongkran'

khun may be placed before the family names of foreigners, thus khun braawn 'Mr. Brown'.

2.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The word araj 'what?' occupies the same position in the sentence as the word it refers to:

Question:	khun chŷy araj	'What's your name?'
Answer:	phǒm chŷy cɔɔn	'My name's John.'

b) When châj máj is added to a statement, it becomes a question. It is used when the speaker is seeking confirmation of something. It is very similar in usage to rỹy (see 1.2e) which it can replace in many situations.

Question:	khun chŷy thǎawɔɔn, châj máj khráp	'Your name's Thaworn, isn't it?
Affirmative response:		
	châj khráp	'Yes, it is.'
Negative response:		
	mâj châj khráp	'No, it isn't.'

c) If one wishes to disagree with a question with chŷy and give additional information, it can be done in either of the following ways:

Question:	khun chŷy sǒmsàk, châj máj khráp	'Your name's Somsak, isn't it?'
Negative response 1:		
	mâj châj khráp	'No, it's not.'
	phǒm chŷy prichaa[1]	'My name's Pricha.'
	mâj châj sǒmsàk	'It isn't Somsak.'
Negative response 2:		
	phǒm chŷy prichaa	'My name's Pricha.'
	phǒm mâj dâj chŷy sǒmsàk	'I'm not named Somsak.'

Observe that mâj châj can occur before a name (a noun) but not before chŷy (a verb). mâj dâj must be used before chŷy.

---

[1] Do not use contrastive stress as you would in English ('My name's Prichaa. It isn't Somsak.').

d) Questions ending with rŷy are normally answered affirmatively with khráp, which indicates that what the speaker assumed to be true is indeed true.

Question:	khun chŷy praphâat rýkhráp	'You're named Prapas?'

Affirmative response:

khráp	'That's right.'

The usual negative response to questions with rŷy is mâj châj, thus

Question:	khun chŷy priichaa rýkhráp	'(You're) Pricha?'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp	'No, I'm not.'
(phǒm... chŷy...)	I'm...

If one wishes to register strong disagreement with a rŷy question, he may respond with plàaw.

Question:	kháw chŷy priichaa rýkhráp	'He's named Pricha?'

Negative response:

plàaw khráp, kháw mâj dâj chŷy priichaa kháw chŷy sǒmsàk	'No, he's not named Pricha. He's Somsak.'

2.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drills

araj

araj khráp

chŷy araj khráp

khun chŷy araj khráp
khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
cɔɔn
cɔɔn khráp
chŷy cɔɔn khráp
phǒm chŷy cɔɔn khráp

araj
araj khráp
chŷy araj khráp
kháw chŷy araj khráp

dík
dík khráp
chŷy dík khráp
kháw chŷy dík khráp

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drills

1. A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
John: phǒm chŷy cɔɔn khráp

2. A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
Mary: dichán chŷy mɛɛrîi khâ

3. A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
Bill: phǒm chŷy bin khráp

4. A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
George: phǒm chŷy cɔ́ɔn khráp

5. A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj khráp
Dick: phǒm chŷy dík khráp

---

[1] Whenever masculine pronouns and polite forms occur, the instructor may replace them with the equivalent feminine forms. To save space generally only the masculine forms will be given.

c) Response Drill

The teacher asks the question khun chŷy araj (What's your name?) and each student responds with phǒm chŷy ____ --- (My name is ______.) giving his correct name.

d) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address the following question to him: khun chŷy araj and the teacher responds with his correct name.

e) Response Drill

Teacher asks each student the following question: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj and each student responds with his correct name. phǒm chŷy ______.

f) Response Drill

Pairs of students take turns asking and answering the question: khɔ̌ɔthôot khun chŷy araj

g) Response Drill

Each student asks another student his name using an incorrect name, to which the student responds by giving his correct name.

h) Response Drill

The following question is to be asked using the real names of the students:

Question: khun chŷy (X), châj máj khráp?

Answer: châj khráp, phǒm chŷy (X)

i) Response Drill

Question: khun chŷy (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: mâj châj khráp, phǒm chŷy (Y)

j) Response Drill

The question following may be used with the correct or incorrect name of the student addressed. The answer given will depend on the question.

Question: khun chŷy (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: mâj châj khráp, phǒm chŷy (Y)
châj khráp, phǒm chŷy (X).

Drills h, i, and j, may be repeated with khɔ̌ɔthôot preceding each question if desired.

k) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address to him the question khun chŷy (X), châj máj using an incorrect name to which he gives the following response:

mâj châj khráp	That's not right,
phǒm chŷy (Y)	my name is Y.
mâj châj (X)	It isn't X.
or	
phǒm chŷy (Y)	My name is Y.
phǒm mâj dâj chŷy (X)	My name isn't X.

l) Transformation Drill (Use actual names of students.)

Student 1	Student 2
phǒm chŷy cɔɔn	sawàtdii khráp, khun cɔɔn
dichán chŷy mɛɛrîi	sawàtdii khráp, khun mɛɛrîi
or	sawàtdii khâ, khun mɛɛrîi

m) Substitution Drill

Have the students (in pairs) participate in short dialogs like the model below using their actual names:

S-1:	khun chŷy araj khráp	What's your name?
S-2:	phǒm chŷy cɔɔn	My name's John.
S-1:	cɔɔn rǝ̌khráp	It's John, is it?
	mâj châj cɔ́ɔc rǝ̌khráp	It isn't George?
S-2:	mâj châj khráp	No, it isn't.

n) Expansion Drill

nakhráp	(Question)
araj nakhráp	What?
chŷy araj nakhráp	What is your name?
nakhráp	(Question)
araj nakhráp	What?
naamsakun araj nakhráp	What's your family name?
nakhráp	(Question)
araj nakhráp	What?
wâa araj nakhráp	...
phûut wâa araj nakhráp	What did (you) say?
khun phûut wâa araj nakhráp	What did you say?

o) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	khun chŷy araj nakhráp
kháw	kháw chŷy araj nakhráp
naamsakun	kháw naamsakun araj nakhráp
khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun naamsakun araj nakhráp
chŷy	khun chŷy araj nakhráp
kháw	kháw chŷy araj nakhráp
naamsakun	kháw naamsakun araj nakhráp
khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun naamsakun araj nakhráp
chŷy	khun chŷy araj nakhráp

p) Transformation Drill (Asking for repetitions)

MODEL: Instructor: phǒm chŷy praphâat khráp
Student: khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun chŷy araj nakhráp
karunaa phûut ìik thii, dâj máj khráp
Instructor: phǒm chŷy praphâat khráp

Cue:
1. kháw chŷy prichaa.
2. dichán naamsakun kamphuu
3. kháw naamsakun rákthaj
4. phǒm chŷy sǒmsàk

q) Response Drill

Affirmative: Instructor:

brawn rŏkhráp	It's Brown, is it?
Yes.	

Student:

khráp	Yes (It is).

Negative: Instructor:

brawn rŏkhráp	It's Brown, is it?
No.	

Student:

mâj châj khráp	No (It isn't).

Cue	Question	Response
yes	chŷy cɔɔn rŏkhráp	khráp
no	khun thăawɔɔn rŏkhráp	mâj châj khráp
yes	kháw ŏə khráp	khráp
no	samít ŏə khráp	mâj châj khráp
yes	naamsakun samít rŏkhráp	khráp

2.4 EXERCISES (Students are to take the roles below:)

a) Mr. Jones meets Mr. Smith on the street. They greet each other and inquire about each other's health.

b) Mr. Wichai meets Miss Nongkhraan and says, 'Excuse me. Isn't your name Absorn'. Miss Nongkhraan says that is not correct but that her correct name is Nongkhraan.

c) Mr. Prichaa sees Mr. Wichai and says, 'Hello, Mr. Somsak.' Mr. Wichai says, 'Excuse me.' My name is not Somsak. It's Wichai'.

d) Mr. Smith meets a Thai at the Embassy and says, 'Excuse me. What is your name?' The man says, 'My name is Prichaa. What's yours?' Smith gives his name.

e) Miss Nongkhraan accidentally bumps Mr. Wichai and asks his pardon.

The teacher asks the students to bring in pictures of well-known persons. In class the students ask each other the names of the persons pictured, sometimes intentionally using the incorrect name.

2.5 VOCABULARY

araj	what (question word)
ìik	in addition, more
ìik thii	again, one more time
bin	Bill (name)
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
châj	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)
châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
chŷy	name, to be named
cɔ́ɔc	George (name)
cɔɔn	John (name)
dâj máj	Can (you)? Could (you)? Are (you) able to?
dík	Dick (name)
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
karunaa	please, kindly
khɔ̌ɔthôot	excuse me
khun	Mr, Mrs., Miss (a polite title)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)

mǎj, máj	question word
mɛɛrîi	Mary (name)
na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naamsakun	family name
phûut	to speak, talk, say
plàaw	No (it isn't so). Particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question)
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
samít	Smith (name)
thǎawɔɔn	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thii	instance, case, time
wâa	that (when used with verbs like phûut)

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

phûut ìik thii	Please repeat.
phûut taam phǒm/dichǎn	Please repeat after me.
faŋ	Please listen.
khun phûut phìt	You said it wrong.
khun phûut thùuk lɛ́ɛw	You said it right.
lɔɔŋ phûut ìik thii	Try to say it.
sǐaŋ khun phìt	Your tone is wrong.
sǐaŋ khun thùuk	Your tone is right.
phûut phaasǎa thaj	Please speak in Thai.
jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt	Don't speak English.
phûut phrɔ́ɔm kan	Please say it in chorus
tɔ̀ɔp thii la khon	Answer one at a time.
phûut daŋ daŋ nɔ̀ɔj	Speak louder.
pə̀ət naŋsyy̌	Open your book.
pìt náŋsyy̌	Close your book.
jàa duu náŋsyy̌	Don't look at your book.

LESSON THREE

3.0 BASIC DIALOG: Identifying Objects

A:	khun mii phɛ̌ɛnthîi máj khráp	Do you have a map?
B:	mii khráp	I do.
A:	dii máj khráp	Is it good?
B:	dii khráp	It's good.
A:	nîi araj khráp	What's this?
B:	nân rûup khráp	That's a picture.
A:	rûup araj khráp	A picture of what?
B:	rûup wát khráp	A picture of a temple.
A:	sǔaj máj khráp	Is it pretty?
B:	sǔaj khráp	It's pretty.
A:	lɛ́ɛw nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	And what's this called?
B:	rîak wâa nâatàaŋ khráp	It's called a 'window'.
A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, jàa pə̀ət nâatàaŋ khráp	Excuse me. Don't open the window.
B:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun phûut wâa araj khráp	Excuse me. What did you say?
	phǒm mâj khâwcaj	I didn't understand.
	karunaa phûut cháa cháa nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp	Could you please speak slowly.
A:	phǒm phûut wâa jàa pə̀ət nâatàaŋ	I said, 'Don't open the window.'

NOTE: The instructor should have the objects referred to before him and should point to them when necessary.

3.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) wát is used to refer to the Buddhist temple compound. This includes the temple and other related buildings in the compound (usually fenced in with a gate). It may be translated as 'church, etc.' when referring to places of worship for other religions.

b) nǎaw means 'cold' when referring to the weather or a person's feeling about the weather.

c) cháa means 'slow(ly)'. It is repeated for emphasis.

d) nîi refers to a place near the speaker; nân away from the speaker; and nôon, still farther away from the speaker, but within view.

3.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) dii, sǔaj, nǎaw, and rɔ́ɔn are called stative verbs in Thai. They can be translated as 'to be good', 'to be be pretty', 'to be cold', and 'to be hot'.

b) When the meaning is clear the subject of the sentence may be omitted, thus:

Question:	mii tó máj khráp	Do (you) have a table?
Answer:	mii khráp	(I) do.

c) A negative sentence is formed by repeating mâj before the main verb:

mâj mii	'don't have'
mâj dii	'(is) not good', etc.

d) máj (in slow speech mǎj) is a question word that is used when a simple YES or NO answer is expected. The affirmative answer is a repetition of the main verb:

Question:	mii náŋsy̌y máj khráp	Do you have a book?
Answer:	mii khráp	I do.

In the negative answer mâj is repeated before the main verb:

Question:	mii náŋsŷy máj	Do you have a book?
Answer:	mâj mii khráp	(No) I don't.

e) There is no distinction in form between the singular and plural of nouns in Thai, thus tó means 'a table' or 'tables' (in general).

However, plurality in general may be indicated by other forms in the Noun Phrase, thus:

tó dii dii	'some good tables'

where repeating the stative verb dii serves this purpose.

f) When jàa 'don't' is repeated before a command or request form, it is changed into a negative command or request:

pə̀ət pratuu khráp	Open the door.
jàa pə̀ət pratuu khráp	Don't open the door.

g) After verbs like phûut 'to say', rîak 'to be called', etc. wâa must be used.

phǒm phûut wâa jàa pə̀ət pratuu	'I said, "Don't open the door."'

h) When nîi 'this', nân 'that', or nôon 'that one over there' is the subject, the sentence has no verb expressed.

nîi tó	'This (is) a table.'

(Note: In rather formal usage khyy 'to be' could be used.)

i) When Yes-No type questions are asked in the negative, rŷy is the question word used. máj can not be used.

Negative question:

rooŋrian mâj dii ry̌y 'Isn't the school any good?'

Confirmatory response:

khráp 'No, it isn't.'

Since khráp is used to indicate that the information in the question is correct, and the information was given in the negative, it must be translated as 'No, it isn't.' plàaw as a response would indicate that the information in the question was incorrect, and it would be translated something like 'On the contrary'. plàaw is usually followed by a sentence giving the correct information:

Negative question:

aahǎan mâj dii rěkhráp 'The food isn't any good, huh?'

Contradictory response:

plàaw khráp, dii 'On the contrary it's good.'

3.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	nân araj khráp	What's that?
nôon	nôon araj khráp	What's that (over there)?
nîi	nîi araj khráp	What's this?
nân	nân araj khráp	What's that?
nôon	nôon araj khráp	What's that (over there)?
nîi	nîi araj khráp	What's this?
nân	nân araj khráp	What's that?

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Answer	
1)	nân araj khráp	(nân) pratuu khráp	'door'
2)	nân araj khráp	(nân) nâatàaŋ khráp	'window'
3)	nân araj khráp	(nân) tó khráp	'table'
4)	nân araj khráp	(nân) náŋsɯ̌ɯ khráp	'book'
5)	nân araj khráp	(nân) samùt khráp	'notebook'
6)	nân araj khráp	(nân) phɛ̌ɛnthîi khráp	'map'
7)	nân araj khráp	(nân) kradaandam khráp	'blackboard'
8)	nân araj khráp	(nân) dinsɔ̌ɔ khráp	'pencil'
9)	nân araj khráp	(nân) pàakkaa khráp	'pen'

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.)

c) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects referred to in Drill b, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor: nîi araj khráp Student: nân náŋsɯ̌ɯ khráp

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Answer
1)	nân rîak wâa araj khráp	pratuu khráp
2)	nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	náŋsɯ̌ɯ khráp
3)	nôon rîak wâa araj khráp	kradaandam khráp
4)	nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	tó khráp
5)	nân rîak wâa araj khráp	naalikaa khráp
6)	nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	pàakkaa khráp
7)	nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	kâwîi khráp

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.

e) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects in Drill d, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor:	nân rîak wâa araj khráp	What's that called?
Student:	nân rîak wâa kradaandam khráp	That's a blackboard.

f) Substitution Response Drill

The instructor points at one of the objects previously named, and two students carry on an exchange like the following:

Instructor: (Pointing at the door of the classroom)

Student 1: nân rîak wâa araj khráp

Student 2: pratuu khráp

Student 1: (nân) rîak wâa pratuu rə̌khráp

Student 2: khráp

g) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	khun mii phɛ̌ɛnthîi máj khráp	Do you have a map?
náŋsɯ̌ɯ	khun mii náŋsɯ̌ɯ máj khráp	Do you have a book?
samùt	khun mii samùt máj khráp	Do you have a notebook?
dinsɔ̌ɔ	khun mii dinsɔ̌ɔ máj khráp	Do you have a pencil?
naalíkaa	khun mii naalíkaa máj khráp	Do you have a watch?
burìi	khun mii burìi máj khráp	Do you have a cigarette?
ŋəən	khun mii ŋəən máj khráp	Do you have money?
náŋsɯ̌ɯphim	khun mii náŋsɯ̌ɯphim máj khráp	Do you have a newspaper?
kradàat	khun mii kradàat máj khráp	Do you have paper?

h) Response Drill

Cue	Pattern	Response
yes	khun mii náŋsy̌y máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii kradàat máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
yes	khun mii samùt máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii dinsɔ̌ɔ máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
yes	khun mii phɛ̌ɛnthîi máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii burìi máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
no	khun mii rûup máj khráp	mâj mii khráp

i) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
yes	kháw dii máj	dii khráp
no	kháw dii máj	mâj dii khráp
yes	rooŋrian dii máj	dii khráp
no	khun rɔ́ɔn máj	mâj rɔ́ɔn khráp
yes	aakàat nǎaw máj	nǎaw khráp
no	aahǎan dii máj	mâj dii khráp
yes	rûup sǔaj máj	sǔaj khráp
no	náŋsy̌y dii máj	mâj dii khráp

j) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	phɛ̌ɛnthîi dii máj	Is the map good?
náŋsy̌y	náŋsy̌y dii máj	Is the book good?
kháw	kháw dii máj	Is he good?
rooŋrian	rooŋrian dii máj	Is the school good?
khruu	khruu dii máj	Is the teacher good?
pàakkaa	pàakkaa dii máj	Is the pen good?

dinsɔ̌ɔ	dinsɔ̌ɔ dii máj	Is the pencil good?
kradaandam	kradaandam dii máj	Is the blackboard good?
naalikaa	naalikaa dii máj	Is the watch good?
kradàat	kradàat dii máj	Is the paper good?
aahǎan	aahǎan dii máj	Is the food good?

k) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	aakàat dii	The weather's good.
nǎaw	aakàat nǎaw	The weather's cold.
phǒm	phǒm nǎaw	I'm cold.
kháw	kháw nǎaw	They're cold.
sǔaj	kháw sǔaj	They're pretty.
rûup	rûup sǔaj	The picture's pretty.
pàakkaa	pàakkaa sǔaj	The pen's pretty.
dii	pàakkaa dii	The pen's good.
aahǎan	aahǎan dii	The food's good.
rɔ́ɔn	aahǎan rɔ́ɔn	The food's hot.
kháw	kháw rɔ́ɔn	He's hot.
dii	kháw dii	He's good.

l) Transformation Drill (Change statements into questions)

Statement	Question
rooŋrian dii	rooŋrian dii máj
rûup sǔaj	rûup sǔaj máj
wát sǔaj	wát sǔaj máj
aakàat nǎaw	aakàat nǎaw máj
aahǎan dii	aahǎan dii máj
khun rɔ́ɔn	khun rɔ́ɔn máj

m) Transformation Drill (Change statements into the negative)

Statement	Negative
rooŋrian dii	rooŋrian mâj dii
aakàat nǎaw	aakàat mâj nǎaw
kháw rɔ́ɔn	kháw mâj rɔ́ɔn
aahǎan dii	aahǎan mâj dii
rûup sǔaj	rûup mâj sǔaj
khruu dii	khruu mâj dii

n) Transformation Drill (Change from Negative Statement to Negative Question:)

Negative Statement	Negative Question
1. rooŋrian mâj dii	rooŋrian mâj dii rŷy
2. aakàat mâj nǎaw	aakàat mâj nǎaw rŷy
3. kháw mâj rɔ́ɔn	kháw mâj rɔ́ɔn rŷy
4. rûup mâj sǔaj	rûup mâj sǔaj rŷy
5. khruu mâj dii	khruu mâj dii rŷy

o) Transformation Drill (Change the statements into questions)

Statement	Questions
kháw dii	kháw dii máj khráp
kháw mâj dii	kháw mâj dii rə̌ khráp
kháw rɔ́ɔn	kháw rɔ́ɔn máj khráp
aahǎan mâj rɔ́ɔn	aahǎan mâj rɔ́ɔn rə̌khráp
rûup mâj sǔaj	rûup mâj sǔaj rə̌khráp
rooŋrian dii	rooŋrian dii máj khráp
khruu dii	khruu dii máj khráp
phɛ̌ɛnthîi mâj dii	phɛ̌ɛnthîi mâj dii rə̌khráp
aahǎan mâj dii	aahǎan mâj dii rə̌khráp
kháw sǔaj	kháw sǔaj máj khráp

p) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in agreement with the instructor's questions.

	Question	Response
1)	naalikaa dii rə̌khráp	khráp (dii)
2)	rooŋrian mâj dii rə̌khráp	khráp (máj dii)
3)	khun nǎaw rə̌khráp	khráp (nǎaw)
4)	aahǎan mâj dii rə̌khráp	khráp (mâj dii)
5)	rûup sǔaj rə̌khráp	khráp (sǔaj)

q) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in strong disagreement with the instructor's question.

	Question	Response
1)	naalikaa dii rə̌khráp	plàaw khráp (mâj dii)
2)	rooŋrian mâj dii rə̌khráp	plàaw khráp (dii)
3)	khun nǎaw rə̌khráp	plàaw khráp (mâj nǎaw)
4)	aahǎan mâj dii rə̌khráp	plàaw khráp (dii)
5)	rûup sǔaj rə̌khráp	plàaw khráp (mâj sǔaj)

r) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences into Noun Phrases - Noun + Modifier).

	Sentence	BECOMES	Noun Phrase
	náŋsʏ̌y dii		náŋsʏ̌y dii dii
	'The book(s) is/are good.'		'(some) good books'
1)	phɛ̌ɛnthîi dii		phɛ̌ɛnthîi dii dii
2)	aahǎan dii		aahǎan dii dii
3)	pàakkaa dii		pàakkaa dii dii

4)	rooŋrian dii	rooŋrian dii dii
5)	rûup sǔaj	rûup sǔaj sǔaj
6)	khruu dii	khruu dii dii

s) Expansion Drill

The instructor has the students give an expanded form of the noun; for example, pàakkaa becomes pàakkaa dii dii, etc.

Cue	Expanded Form
khun mii pàakkaa máj	khun mii pàakkaa dii dii máj
khun mii dinsɔ̌ɔ máj	khun mii dinsɔ̌ɔ dii dii máj
khun mii khruu máj	khun mii khruu dii dii máj
khun mii rooŋrian máj	khun mii rooŋrian dii dii máj
khun mii phŷan máj	khun mii phŷan dii dii máj
khun mii rûup máj	khun mii rûup dii dii máj
khun mii náŋsy̌y máj	khun mii náŋsy̌y dii dii máj

t) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern (Request Form)	
	pə̀ət pratuu khráp	Open the door.
náŋsy̌y	pə̀ət náŋsy̌y khráp	Open (your) book(s).
faj	pə̀ət faj khráp	Turn on the lights.
nâatàaŋ	pə̀ət nâatàaŋ khráp	Open the window.
samùt	pə̀ət samùt khráp	Open (your) notebook.
pratuu	pə̀ət pratuu khráp	Open the door.

Note to the instructor: Have the students perform some of the actions referred to above.

u) Transformation Drill (Change the request forms into the negative.)

Request Form	Negative Request Form
pèət nâatàaŋ khráp	jàa pèət nâatàaŋ khráp
pìt faj khráp	jàa pìt faj khráp
duu náŋsɣ̌y khráp	jàa duu náŋsɣ̌y khráp
duu naalikaa khráp	jàa duu naalikaa khráp
pìt pratuu khráp	jàa pìt pratuu khráp

v) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences below to others having similar meaning, egs. don't open: close.)

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
jàa pèət náŋsɣ̌y	pìt náŋsɣ̌y
jàa pèət pratuu	pìt pratuu
pìt faj	jàa pèət faj
pìt nâatàaŋ	jàa pèət nâatàaŋ

Drills t, u, and v may be repeated with karunaa 'kindly' or pròot 'please' before the affirmative and negative requestion forms. This will result in more polite forms.

1) jàa pìt pratuu becomes karunaa jàa pìt pratuu

2) pèət faj becomes pròot pèət faj

The forms with karunaa, can be made even more formal and polite by adding dâj máj khráp:

1) pìt pratuu becomes karunaa pìt pratuu (nɔ̀ɔj), dâj máj khráp 'Would you be so kind as to close the door'.

w) Response Drill

The instructor asks the question: khun phûut wâa araj khráp 'What did you say?' and gives the cue sentences. The student combines phǒm phûut wâa... 'I said' with the cue sentence.

Cue	Response
jàa pə̀ət nâatàaŋ	phǒm phûut wâa jàa pə̀ət nâatàaŋ
jàa duu náŋsy̌y	phǒm phûut wâa jàa duu náŋsy̌y
pìt náŋsy̌y	phǒm phûut wâa pìt náŋsy̌y
phûut taam khruu	phǒm phûut wâa phûut taam khruu (phûut taam 'repeat after')
phûut cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj	phǒm phûut wâa phûut cháa cháa nɔ̀ɔj
phǒm nǎaw	phǒm phûut wâa phǒm nǎaw

3.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out from some of the other students or the instructor what the names of some of the objects in the classroom are.

b) Ask some of the other students or the instructor about their possessions (i.e. what they have).

c) Get an opinion (whether something is 'good' or 'beautiful') about some of the objects in the room.

d) Tell another student that you are either cold, beautiful, or hot and find out if he (or she) is hot, beautiful, or cold.

e) Ask another student to perform certain acts (close the door, etc.) for you. Use different kinds of request forms.

f) Ask another student not to do certain things.

g) The instructor asks a student if he has a (watch, etc.). If the student says he does have a (watch, etc.), the instructor says, 'This is your (watch, etc.), isn't it? (pointing at a watch). The student responds to the question.

3.5 VOCABULARY

aakàat	weather, air
aahǎan	food
burìi	cigarette
cháa	slow(ly)
dinsɔ̌ɔ	pencil
duu	to look at
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
kâwîi	chair
khâwcaj	to understand
khruu	teacher
kradaandam	blackboard
kradàat	paper
jàa	don't (negative request form)
mii	to have
naalikaa	watch, clock
nâatàaŋ	window
nǎaw	(to be) cold
nân	that (one), there
náŋsy̌yphim	newspaper
nîi	this (one), here
nôon	that (one) over there, over there
nɔ̀ɔj	here nɔ̀ɔj is used to make the request less abrupt
ŋəən	money

pàakkaa	pen
pə̀ət	to open, turn on (lights)
pìt	to close, turn off (lights)
phɛ̌ɛnthîi	map
phûut	to say, speak
phûut taam	to repeat after
phŷan	friend
pratuu	door, gate
pròot	please (request form)
rîak wâa	to be called
rooŋrian	school
rɔ́ɔn	to be hot (temperature)
rûup	picture
samùt	notebook
sǔaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
tó	table, desk
wát	temple, temple compound

LESSON FOUR

4.0 BASIC DIALOG: Establishing Identity and Ownership of Objects.

A:	chûaj sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêm nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp	Could you hand me that book?
B:	dâj khráp	Yes.
	náŋsy̌y lêm níi dii	This book is good.
	khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose is it?
A:	khɔ̌ɔŋ phŷan phǒm khráp	A friend of mine.
B:	phŷan khun chŷy araj khráp	What's your friend's name?
A:	(kháw chŷy) cɔɔn khráp	His name's John.
B:	khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn khráp	Which person is named John?
A:	khon nóon khráp	That person over there.
B:	lɛ́ɛw nân khraj khráp	Then who's (that) there?
A:	phûujǐŋ rý́ phûuchaaj khráp	The woman or the man?
B:	phûuchaaj khráp	The man.
A:	nân nákrian khráp	That's a student.
B:	khun rúucàk kháw máj khráp	Do you know him?
A:	rúucàk khráp	Yes, I do.
B:	kháw pen khraj khráp	Who is he?
A:	kháw pen phŷan phǒm khráp	He's my friend.

4.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The following type of construction is used to indicate the number of items when referring to concrete nouns:

Noun +	Number +	Unit Classifier[1]	
náŋsy̌y	sɔ̌ɔŋ	lêm	'two books'
nákrian	sɔ̌ɔŋ	khon	'two students'
kâwîi	sɔ̌ɔŋ	tua	'two chairs'

When specifying a particular noun in a class, the following type of construction is used:

Noun +	Unit Classifier +	Determiner	
phŷan	khon	nán	'That friend'
samùt	lêm	níi	'This notebook'
pàakkaa	dâam	nǎj	'which pen?'

A unit classifier is one of a special class of nouns which are used in constructions to enumerate or specify concrete nouns. There are about 200 unit classifiers in Thai, and each of them is normally used with a large number of concrete nouns of very different meanings.

Since the unit classifier must be used in any situation in which you wish to indicate the number of items (of concrete nouns) or wish to specify a particular item out of a group (of concrete nouns), you will have to learn which unit classifier is used with each noun. Since there is usually no obvious connection between the classifier and its Noun, using the correct one will be a matter of having learned it.

There are a few classifiers for which noun reference is relatively predictable:

---

[1] For a full treatment of unit classifiers, see Noss, Richard B., Thai Reference Grammar, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1964, pp. 104, 105.

Unit Classifier	Noun Reference
khon	People (professions and positions held by people)
tua	animals, objects with arms and legs
phɛ̀ɛn	flat objects
baj	containers
thɛ̂ŋ	sticks

b) After a noun has been mentioned or otherwise identified, Classifier+Determiner or Number+Classifier can replace it in sentences following immediately:

1) A: nîi náŋsy̌y 2 lêm — 'Here are 2 books.
x
lêm nǎj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun — Which is yours?'
x

B: lêm nán khráp — 'That one'.

2) A: mii náŋsy̌y máj — 'Do you have any books?'
x
B: mii sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm khráp — 'I have two.'
x

The classifier functions like a substitute word here, but it can not occur without either a number before it or a determiner after it.

c) khɔ̌ɔŋ 'of' or 'belonging to' is used to indicate 'possession'. It occurs after the thing possessed and before the possessor. Its occurrence in the Noun Phrase is optional when the head noun (thing possessed) is present, thus:

náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw — 'his book'

or náŋsy̌y kháw	'his book'

but the occurrence of khɔ̌ɔŋ is obligatory when the head noun is not present, thus:

khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw	'his'

The head noun can be omitted only after it has been identified since khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw acts as a replacement for the whole Noun Phrase.

d) khraj like araj (see 2.2a) has the same position in the sentence as the noun it refers to, thus:

Question:	kháw pen khraj	(lit: he is who) Who is he?
Answer:	kháw pen phŷan phǒm	'He's my friend.'
Question:	khun cɔɔn pen khraj	(lit: John is who) What is John?
Answer:	khun cɔɔn pen khruu phǒm	'John's my teacher.'

When the main verb in the sentence is pen, khraj normally occurs in the predicate. Observe that it may be translated 'what' in some situations.

e) The verb 'to be' is translated differently according to its subject and complement. Observe the following examples:

Subject	Verb	Complement	
nîi	(khyy)	phŷan kháw	'This is his friend.'
khun cɔɔn	pen	khruu phǒm	'John is my teacher.'
kháw	chŷy	cɔɔn	'He is (named) John.'

4.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

The instructor points at a student as he asks the question and gives the actual name of the student as the cue. He asks every student the question.

Questions:	nân/nîi khraj khráp	Who is that/this?
Cue:	(actual name of student pointed at)	
Answers:	nîi/nân khun (Joe) khráp	This/that is (Joe).

b) Response Drill

The instructor gives a cue and points at a student. One student asks and another answers questions like the following:

Instructor:	khun thǎawɔɔn (pointing at a student)	
Student 1:	nân/nîi khun thǎawɔɔn, chây máj khráp	That/this is Mr. Thaworn, isn't it?
Student 2:	mâj châj khráp	No, it isn't.
Student 1:	nân/nîi khraj khráp	Who is that/this?
Student 2:	(nân/nîi) khun ____	(That/this is) ____

1. khun cim
2. khruu
3. khun mɛɛrîi
4. khun cɔɔn
5. khruu kháw
6. khun prasə̀ət

Repeat the drill using actual names of students in the class.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	náŋsy̌y khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?
naalikaa	naalikaa khraj khráp	Whose watch (is it)?
dinsɔ̌ɔ	dinsɔ̌ɔ khraj khráp	Whose pencil (is it)?
rûup	rûup khraj khráp	Whose picture (is it)?
kâwîi	kâwîi khraj khráp	Whose chair (is it)?
pàakkaa	pàakkaa khráj khráp	Whose pen (is it)?
náŋsy̌yphim	náŋsy̌yphim khraj khráp	Whose newspaper (is it)?
burìi	burìi khraj khráp	Whose cigarette (is it)?
náŋsy̌y	náŋsy̌y khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?

d) Response Drill

The instructor points at an object near a student and asks him whose is it. The student's response indicates the actual owner.)

MODEL: Instructor: nân/nîi náŋsy̌y khraj khráp
'Whose book is that/this?'

Student: khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm/kháw/khun cim
'Mine/his/Jim's'

1. dinsɔ̌ɔ
2. naalikaa
3. rûup
4. pàakkaa
5. samùt
6. náŋsy̌yphim
7. náŋsy̌y
8. burìi
9. kâwîi

This drill may be repeated one time with students repetating the thing referred to in the answer: náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm and one time with students repeating the thing referred to and nân / nîi: nîi nâŋsy̌y phǒm

e) Expansion Drill

Cue	Expansion	
1)	khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
náŋsy̌y	náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose book?
nân	nân náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose book is that?
2)	khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
pàakkaa	pàakkaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose pen?
nân	nân pàakkaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose pen is that?
3)	khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
samùt	samùt khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose notebook?
nîi	nîi samùt khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose notebook is this?
4)	khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose?
dinsɔ̌ɔ	dinsɔ̌ɔ khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose pencil?
nân	nân dinsɔ̌ɔ khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj khráp	Whose pencil is that?

f) Reduction Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2)

Pattern 1	Pattern 2	
náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj	náŋsy̌y khraj	Whose book?
pàakkaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj	pàakkaa khraj	Whose pen?
phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ phɔ̌m	phŷan phɔ̌m	My friend.
kâwîi khɔ̌ɔŋ khraj	kâwîi khraj	Whose chair.
samùt khɔ̌ɔŋ nákrian	samùt nákrian	Student's notebook.
phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khun cɔɔn	phanrajaa khun cɔɔn	John's wife.
khruu khɔ̌ɔŋ raw	khruu raw	Our teacher.
saǎmii khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw	saǎmii kháw	Her husband.

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Question	Response	
khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn	khon nán khráp	Which person is named John? That one.
khon nǎj chŷy cim	khon nóon khráp	Which person is named Jim? The one over there.
khon nǎj chŷy mɛɛrîi	khon nán khráp	Which person is named Mary? That one.
khon nǎj pen phŷankhun	khon nóon khráp	Which person is your friend? The one over there.
khon nǎj pen khruu	khon nán khráp	Which person is the teacher? That one.
khon nǎj pen nákrian	khon nán khráp	Which person is a student? That one.

h) Response Drill (The instructor asks the names of students.)

Instructor: khon nǎj chŷy _____ (actual name) _____ Which person is named ______ ______?

Student: khon níi/nán (pointing to the student): This/that person.

i) Expansion Drill

1)	nǎj	Which?
	khon nǎj	Which one (person)?
	nákrian khon nǎj	Which student?
	nákrian phûuchaaj khon nǎj	Which male student?
2)	níi	This
	khon níi	This one (person).
	phûujǐŋ khon níi	This female.
	nákrian phûujǐŋ khon níi	This female student.

3)	nóon	That over there.
	khon nóon	That one over there.
	khruu khon nóon	That teacher over there.
	khruu khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khon nóon	That teacher of yours over there.
4)	nán	That.
	khon nán	That one (person).
	phŷan khon nán	That friend.
	phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khon nán	That friend of yours.
	phŷan phûujǐŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khon nán	That female friend of yours.

j) Expansion Drill

1)		khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn	Which person is named John?
	nákrian	nákrian khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn	Which student is named John?
	phûuchaaj	nákrian phûuchaaj khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn	Which male student is named John?
2)		khon nán chŷy nɔɔŋjaw	That person is named Nongyaw.
	phŷan phǒm	phŷan phǒm khon nán chŷy nɔɔŋjaw	That friend of mine is named Nongyaw.
	phûujǐŋ	phŷan phûujǐŋ phǒm khon nán chŷy nɔɔŋjaw	That female friend of mine is named Nongyaw.
3)		náŋsŷy lêm nán dii	That book is good.
	khɔ̌ɔŋ khun	náŋsŷy khɔ̌ɔŋ khun lêm nán dii	That book of yours is good.

4)	khon nán sǔaj	That one (person) is pretty.
phŷan	phŷan khon nán sǔaj	That friend is pretty.
khɔ̌ɔŋ khun	phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That friend of yours is pretty.
phûujǐŋ	phŷan phûujǐŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That female friend of yours is pretty.

k) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1	Pattern 2	
khon nǎj chŷy cim	khun cim, khon nǎj	Which one (person) is Jim?
khon nǎj chŷy praphâat	khun praphâat, khon nǎj	Which one is Prabas?
khon nǎj chŷy prasə̀ət	khun prasə̀ət, khon nǎj	Which one is Prasert?
khon nǎj chŷy nútchanan	khun nútchanan, khon nǎj	Which one is Nuchanan?
khon nǎj pen khruu khɔ̌ɔŋ khun	khruu khɔ̌ɔŋ khun, khon nǎj	Which is your teacher?
khon nǎj pen phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn	phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn, khon nǎj	Which one is Thaworn's wife?
khon nǎj pen sǎamii khun mɛɛrîi	sǎamii khun mɛɛrîi, khon nǎj	Which one is Mary's husband?

l) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Question	Response	
phûujǐŋ rý phûuchaaj	phûuchaaj khráp	Woman or man? Man.
chŷy cɔɔn rý cim	cim khráp	Is (he) named John or Jim? Jim
khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon khráp	That one or the one over there? The one over there.
kháw pen khruu rý nákrian	nákrian khráp	Is he teacher or a student? A student.
dii rý mâj dii	dii khráp	(Is it) good or not? (It's) good.
sǔaj rý mâj sǔaj	mâj sǔaj khráp	(Is she) pretty or not? (She is) not (pretty).
khɔ̌ɔŋ khun rý khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw	khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw khráp	Yours or his? His.

m) Response Drill

(Pairs of students engage in an exchange of the following kind using actual names of other students).

Student 1: kháw chŷy ________ (actual name)

Student 2: khraj khráp, khon níi rý
khon nán (pointing at students)

Student 1: khon níi/nán khráp

n) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
cim	chŷy cɔɔn rý cim	(chŷy) cim khráp
nóon	khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon khráp
khruu	pen phŷan rý pen khruu	(pen) khruu khráp
khun	khɔ̌ɔŋ khun rý khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm	khɔ̌ɔŋ khun khráp
sǔaj	phûujǐŋ khon nán sǔaj rý mâj sǔaj	sǔaj khráp
mâj	chŷy níi dii rý mâj dii	mâj dii khráp

o) Response Drill

Cue		
chŷy cim	kháw pen khraj	kháw chŷy cim
pen phŷan phǒm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen phŷan phǒm
chŷy cim, pen phŷan phǒm	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chŷy cim, pen phŷan phǒm
chŷy mɛɛrîi, pen phanrajaa khun cɔɔn	kháw pen khraj	kháw chŷy mɛɛrîi, pen phanrajaa khun cɔɔn
chŷy praphâat	kháw pen khraj	kháw chŷy praphâat
pen khruu phǒm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen khruu phǒm
chŷy praphâat, pen khruu phǒm	kháw pen khraj	kháw chŷy praphâat pen khruu phǒm
chŷy khun chótchɔ́ɔj	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chŷy chótchɔ́ɔj
pen khruu	khon nóon pen khraj	kháw pen khruu
chŷy cɔɔn, pen phŷan phǒm	khon níi pen khraj	kháw chŷy cɔɔn, pen phŷan phǒm

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

The instructor points at *two* or *more* of the objects as he asks the question and selects *one* of them as he gives the response.

	Question	Response	
1)	náŋsy̌y lêm nǎj dii	lêm nán	Which book is good? That one.
2)	pàakkaa dâam nǎj dii	dâam níi	Which pen is good? This one.
3)	dinsɔ̌ɔ thɛ̂ŋ nǎj dii	thɛ̂ŋ níi	Which pencil is good? This one.
4)	kâwîi tua nǎj dii	tua nán	Which chair is good? That one.
5)	phɛ̌ɛnthîi phɛ̀ɛn nǎj dii	phɛ̀ɛn níi	Which map is good? This one.

q) Response Drill (Selecting two each of the objects listed below, the instructor asks questions about ownership using the following model):

Instructor:	nîi náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm,	Here are 2 books.
	lêm nǎj khɔ̌ɔŋ *khun*	Which (one) is yours?
Student:	lêm níi/nán	This one/that one.

1) kâwîi
2) samùt
3) dinsɔ̌ɔ
4) pàakkaa
5) naalikaa

In the question *khun* may be replaced by *kháw* or *phǒm* / *dichán*.

r) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	náŋsy̌y lêm níi dii
samùt	samùt lêm níi dii
pàakkaa	pàakkaa dâam níi dii
dinsɔ̌ɔ	dinsɔ̌ɔ thêŋ níi dii
tó (tua)	tó tua níi dii
phɛ̌ɛnthîi	phɛ̌ɛnthîi phɛ̀ɛn níi dii
rûup (baj)	rûup baj níi dii
nákrian	nákrian khon níi dii
khruu	khruu khon níi dii
naalikaa	naalikaa ryan níi dii
náŋsy̌y	náŋsy̌y lêm níi dii

s) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	chûaj sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêm nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
pàakkaa, nóon	chûaj sòŋ pàakkaa dâam nóon hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
rûup, nán	chûaj sòŋ rûup baj nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
phɛ̌ɛnthîi, nán	chûaj sòŋ phɛ̌ɛnthîi phɛ̀ɛn nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
náŋsy̌y, nóon	chûaj sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêm nóon hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp

dinsɔ̌ɔ, nán	chûaj sòŋ dinsɔ̌ɔ thêŋ nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
naalikaa, nán	chûaj sòŋ naalikaa ryan nán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp

4.3 EXERCISE

a) One student points at an object and asks who it belongs to. Another student (the actual owner) says that it's his. Continue until ownership has been established for all the objects the students are familiar with.

b) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: What's the name of that person? A student will respond with the real name.

c) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: Who is named ______? (using the names of students). The student with the name will respond: I am (named) ______.

d) One student will point to an object and will ask another student if it's his. He will respond that it is.

e) Find out if other students think various objects in the room are good or beautiful.

f) Ask someone to pass you something. He pretends he isn't sure which one you want and asks, 'This one or that one'. You indicate which one and he passes it. You thank him.

4.4 VOCABULARY

baj	classifier for 'picture', etc.
cim	Jim (name)
chótchɔ́ɔj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chûaj	please
dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâj	can, could, be able
hâj	for (the benefit of)
khon (khon)[1]	people, also classifier for humans
khɔ̌ɔŋ	of, belonging to
khraj	who, what (in some constructions)
lêm	classifier for 'book'
noŋjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎj	which (one(s)) (determiner)
níi, nîi	this (determiner)
nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
pen	to be
phanrajaa, pharijaa, phanjaa (khon)	wife (elegant term)
phɛ̀ɛn	classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phûuchaaj (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûujǐŋ (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)

---

[1] The unit classifier for each noun is given after the noun.

prasə̀ət	Prasert (male first name)
raw	we, our, us
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
ry̌y, rý, etc.	or
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
sǎamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
sòŋ	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sɔ̌ɔŋ	two
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
thɛ̂ŋ	classifier for 'pencil', etc.

LESSON FIVE

5.0 BASIC DIALOG: Social Formulae

A:	sawàtdii khráp, khun prichaa	Hello, Pricha.
B:	sawàtdii khráp, khun sɔ̌msàk	Hello, Somsak.
	pen jaŋŋaj bâaŋ khráp	How are you?
A:	kɔ̂ rŷaj rŷaj khráp	O.K. (so, so)
B:	ɔ̂ɔ, khun prichaa khráp	Oh, Prichaa
	nîi khun cɔɔn,	This is John.
	nân khun mɛɛrîi,	That's Mary.
	phanrajaa khun cɔɔn	John's wife.
A:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
John:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
Mary:	sawàtdii khâ	Hello.

(10 minutes later)

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, phǒm paj kɔ̀ɔn na khráp	Excuse me, I must go.
B:	chəən khráp, phóp kan màj khráp	All right, I'll see you again.

5. 1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) The particular form used by one Thai when greeting another is dependent on the social status and age of the two participants. Within this framework three groups can be distinguished: (1) Equals, (2) Superiors, and (3) Inferiors. Equals are persons of the same status and greater age. Inferiors are persons of lower status, or of equal status and lesser age. Within these social groups there are formal and informal types of discourse.

Observe the following examples:

1. GREETINGS

a) Between Equals

i) Formal

A: sawàtdii khráp

B: sawàtdii khráp

(The exchange may continue as in 1.0)

ii) Informal (especially between intimates)

A: (sa) wàt dii khráp

B: (sa) wàt dii khráp

or	A:	pen (jaŋ) ŋaj bâaŋ khráp	How are you?
	B:	kɔ̂ rŷaj rŷaj	So so.
or	B:	jɛ̂ɛ	Terrible.
or	A:	paj nǎj khráp	Where are you going?
	B:	paj thîaw khráp	Out for pleasure.
		thurá	Out for business.
or	A:	paj nǎj maa khráp	Where are you coming from?
	B:	paj thîaw maa khráp	From pleasure.
		thurá	From business.

b) Inferior or Superior

i) Formal

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai (wâj). See 1.1)

Superior: (sawàtdii) (sometimes only wais in return.)

NOTE: The height of the hands when waiing is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants.

or Inferior: thâan sabaajdii ə̌ə khráp

Superior: sabaajdii, khɔ̀ɔpcaj

ii) There is no informal greeting from inferior to superior.

c) Superior to Inferior

i) Informal

Superior: pen (jaŋ) ŋaj bâaŋ

Inferior: sabaajdii khráp

ii) There is no formal greeting from superior to inferior.

NOTE: A greeting between superior and inferior may be no more than an exchange of wais with the inferior waiing first.

2 INTRODUCTIONS

a) Between Equals

A: khun sǒmsàk khráp
nîi khun prichaa

sǒmsàk: sawàtdii khráp

prichaa: sawàtdii khráp

b) Between Inferiors and Superiors

(An inferior is always introduced to a superior)

A: khun (name of inferior) khráp
nîi thân _______ (rank, position)
khun _______ (name)

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai)

NOTE: jindii thîi dâj rúucàk 'glad to know (you)' is added after sawàtdii in many social groups. Among equals a woman is introduced to a man. The woman usually wais before the greeting. If one woman is introduced to another, the wai is not necessary but is considered as polite.

3. LEAVETAKING (at all levels)

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, phǒm paj kɔ̀ɔn na khráp	'Excuse me, I must go.'
B:	chəən khráp, phóp kan màj khráp	'All right, I'll see you again.'

4. INVITATION

chəən khráp is used as an invitation to a person.

a) to take some action which is beneficial to himself (eat food, come in, sit down, etc.)

or b) to do something the person has already indicated he wants to do (take leave, etc.).

Special Note to the Student:

a) Social status and age are very important in Thailand. Most Thais are very conscious of the social status and age of the people they meet, and act accordingly. The American who has been assigned to work in Thailand may not be aware of his social position. Depending on his age and the position he holds in the government agency his status will vary from high to very high; consequently, he should use the forms designated as 'between equals' for most of the Thais he meets in his work and reserve the 'inferior to superior' forms for greeting higher ranking officials. With taxi drivers and servants he might choose to use the 'superior to interior' forms. If he should meet the King of Thailand or a Buddhist priest, none of the forms given would be correct.

b) The following are some common titles and forms of address:

1) thân It replaces khun when speaking to a superior.
thân + Title (position): thân thûut 'Mr. Ambassador'

2) mɔ̌ɔ: (khun) + mɔ̌ɔ + Name 'Doctor X' (M.D)

3) dɔ́ktə̂ə: dɔ́ktə̂ə + Name 'Doctor Y' (Ph.D.)

4) aacaan: aacaan + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (College teacher)

5) khruu: khruu + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (teacher)

5.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) There are several ways to indicate negation in Thai.[1] The choice of ways is determined by (1) the form class (noun, verb, etc.) of the thing to be negated and (2) the kind of negative meaning to be expressed.

1. mâj 'not, the contrary, etc.' is used to negate all types of verbs (stative, modals, motion, etc.)

aakàat mâj rɔ́ɔn	'The weather isn't hot.'
phǒm mâj mii naalikaa	'I don't have a watch.'

2. mâj dâj 'not, not as assumed to be' is used to negate verbs of motion, action verbs, and pen and chŷy. It is used often in past situations and in present situations that are contrary to expectations.

---

[1] See Noss, 138-143 for a fuller treatment.

phǒm mâj dâj pìt faj	'I didn't turn off the lights.'
kháw mâj dâj chŷy sǒmsàk	'He's not named Somsak.'

3. mâj châj 'not a case of' is used most frequently to negate Noun Phrases as complements in Equational sentences (sentences without verbs).

nîi mâj châj dinsɔ̌ɔ kháw	'This isn't his pencil'.
naalikaa ryan níi mâj châj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun.	'This watch isn't yours.'

In sentences with pen as the connective verb (kháw pen nákrian, etc.) either of two types of negation may occur according to the situation.

As an initial statement:

kháw mâj dâj pen nákrian	'He isn't a student.'

As a response to a question:

kháw pen khruu (kháw) mâj châj nákrian	'He's the teacher. He isn't a student.'

b) pen jaŋŋaj 'How is/are...?' can be used with subject like aakàat, etc.

aakàat pen jaŋŋaj 'How's the weather?'

(kaan) rian phaasǎa thaj pen jaŋŋaj 'How is studying Thai?'

5.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange (with accompanying wai when appropriate):

1. A: pen (jaŋ) ŋaj bâaŋ khráp

B: { kɔ̂ rŷaj rŷaj
jɛ̂ɛ

2. A: paj nǎj khráp
B: paj {thîaw khráp
thurá

3. A: paj nǎj maa khráp
B: paj {thîaw maa khráp
thurá

b. Response Drill

Have sets of 3 students participate in the following exchanges (with wai when appropriate):

1. A: khun (name of student)
nîi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp

2. A: khun (name of a student)
nîi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp
jindii thîi dâj rúucàk (khun)

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp
jindii thîi dâj rúucàk (khun)

3. Have one student take the part of Foreign Minister, Thanat Khoman.

A: khun (name of student)
nîi khun thanàt khɔɔman[1]

Student: sawàtdii khráp

c) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange:

A: khɔ̌ɔthôot, phǒm paj kɔ̀ɔn nakhráp
B: chəən khráp, phóp kan màj khráp

d) Substitution Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
prasə̀ət	kháw chŷy prichaa	kháw mâj dâj chŷy prasə̀ət
cɔɔn	kháw chŷy cim	kháw mâj dâj chŷy cɔɔn
praphâat	kháw chŷy wíchaj	kháw mâj dâj chŷy praphâat
kaandaa	kháw chŷy waanii	kháw mâj dâj chŷy kaandaa

---

	[1] nîi thân rátthamontrii krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet	'Mr. Foreign Minister',,
or	nîi thân rátthamontrii krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet, khun thanàt khɔɔman	'Mr. Foreign Minister, Mr. Thanat Khoman' might be used.

e) Substitution Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
kháw	khun malíkaa pen khruu phǒm	khun malíkaa mâj dâj pen khruu kháw
khun	khun noŋlák pen phŷan kháw	khun noŋlák mâj dâj pen phŷan khun
khun cɔɔn	mɛɛrîi pen phanrajaa khun cim	mɛɛrîi mâj dâj pen phanrajaa khun cɔɔn

f) Substitution Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
nâatàaŋ	nân pratuu	nân mâj châj nâatàaŋ
dinsɔ̌ɔ	nîi pàakkaa	nîi mâj châj dinsɔ̌ɔ
wát	nôon rooŋrian	nôon mâj châj wát
tó	nân kâwîi	nân mâj châj tó
samùt	nîi náŋsýy	nîi mâj châj samùt
rûup wát	nân rûup rooŋrian	nân mâj châj rûup wát

NOTE: Point at the objects referred to in this drill.

5.4 EXERCISES

a) Have the students discuss various objects in the room in terms of:

1. What they are and what they are not,
2. What they are called,
3. Which ones are good, or beautiful.
4. Who has them, and
5. Who they belong to.

b) Have the students discuss various people in the classroom in terms of:

1. Their names,
2. Whether they are teachers, wives, or friends, and if so, of whom,
3. Whether they (the students) are good, pretty, hot, or cold,
4. Whether they are feeling well, terrible, or so so,
5. Whether one particular student is acquainted with another particular one,
6. If anyone in the room is named sǒmcìt, ubon, reenuu, or malíkaa, and
7. If there is anything else interesting about the people in the room (including the instructor) that the students know how to ask about.

c) Using students act out the following social situations:

1. Greetings

   a) A student Mr. Brown greets a Thai friend of his from the Foreign Ministry, Mr. Praphaat.
   b) A Thai Minister, Mr. Arun, is greeted by one of the people in his ministry.
   c) A servant greets his boss, Mr. Jones.
   d) Two Thai women friend, Mrs. Aarii and Mrs. Amphɔɔn, meet and greet each other.
   e) Two Thai men, Mr. Somchit and Mr. Pridaa, greet each other. One says he feels terrible.

2. Introductions

   a) A friend introduces two men (Mr. Prasəət and Mr. Somsak) who work in the same office.
   b) Someone introduces a lady, Mrs. Wilaj to Mr. Prasit, a high ranking officer in the Ministry of Interior.
   c) Mrs. Nonglak is introduced to Mr. Wichaj. Both are teachers in the same school.

3. Leavetaking

One student says he wants to leave; another agrees.

4. Invitations

a) One student knocks at the door; another invites him to come in.

b) A lady and a gentleman are standing at the open door of the elevator. He invites her to get on.

c) You have invited a friend to dinner. After you have sat down, you invite him to eat.

5.5 VOCABULARY

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aarii	Aree (male or female first name)
amphɔɔn	Amphorn (male or female first name)
ɔ̂ɔ	Oh!
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
bâaŋ	some, any (pronominal)
chəən	please, go ahead and...
dɔ́ktə̂ə (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
jaŋraj, jaŋŋaj, ŋaj	how (question word)
jindii	(to be) glad
jɛ̂ɛ	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)
kɔ̂	connective particle; not to be translated in kɔ̂ rŷaj rŷaj.
kɔ̀ɔn	before, first
krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)	ministry (division of the government)
khɔ̀ɔpcaj	thank you (superior to inferior)

maa	to come
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
màj	again, new
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
mɔ̌ɔ (khon)	medical doctor
noŋlák	Nonglak (female first name)
ŋaj	variant form of jaŋraj
paj	to go
paj... maa	to come from
paj kɔ̀ɔn	to go first, to go ahead
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
rátthamontrii	minister (head of a ministry)
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
rŷaj rŷaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
sǒmcìt	Somchit (male or female first name)
sǒmsàk	Somsak (male first name)
tàaŋ	(to be) different, separate
tàaŋ prathêet	foreign
thanàt khɔɔman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thân	you; he, she (for persons of superior status)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thîaw	for pleasure
paj thîaw	to go out for pleasure
waanii	Wannee (female first name)
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)

LESSON SIX

6.0 BASIC DIALOG: Mr. Smith meets a Thai in the provinces.

(Part I)

A:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
B:	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ caŋ	You speak Thai very well.
	pen khon châat araj khráp	What nationality are you?
A:	phǒm pen khon ameerikan khráp	I'm an American.
B:	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii mâak khráp	You (can) speak Thai very well.
A:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.
	phǒm phûut dâj nítnɔ̀ɔj thâwnán khráp	I can only speak a little.
B:	khraj sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa thaj khun khráp	Who taught you Thai?
A:	khun noŋnút khráp	Miss Nongnut.
	kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa	She is a Thai language teacher at the language school.

6.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) caŋ 'extremely, a great deal, very much' is used as an intensifier for stative verbs like kèŋ, dii, sǔaj, etc. It is used in making comments primarily. It never occurs in questions.

b) kèŋ means 'to be skillful, adept, expert (at something)'. It occurs after Verb Phrases (rian náŋsy̌y, etc.) or before Noun Phrases (phaasǎa thaj, etc.).

1. kháw rian náŋsy̌y kèŋ (He learns with facility) 'He's a good student.'

2. kháw lên dontrii mâj kèŋ 'He plays (music) poorly.'

3. khruu kháw kèŋ phaasǎa juan 'His teacher is good in Vietnamese.'

c) The verbs rian 'study, learn', khǐan 'write', àan 'read', and sɔ̌ɔn 'to teach' do not occur without object complements; if there is no other complement, náŋsy̌y is used, thus rian náŋsy̌y 'to study (in a school)', khǐan náŋsy̌y 'to write (books)', àan náŋsy̌y 'to read', and sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y 'to teach'.

d) The Thais use the following terms to refer to people of various nationalities:

1. For all nationalities: khon + Name of Country

khon thaj	'a Thai'
khon jîipùn	'a Japanese'
khon phaamâa	'a Burmese'
khon jəəraman	'a German'
khon iijìp	'an Egyptian' etc.

2. For people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, and the Middle East only: khɛ̀ɛk + Name of Country.

khɛ̀ɛk malajuu	'a Malayan'
khɛ̀ɛk iijìp	'an Egyptian'
khɛ̀ɛk india	'an Indian', etc.

3. The terms khɛ̀ɛk and faràŋ are used alone to refer to certain large groups of people.

a) faràŋ refers to white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, and white Americans.

Q:	kháw pen faràŋ, châj máj	'He's a 'farang', isn't he?'
A:	châj khráp, kháw pen khon sapeen	'That's right. He's Spanish.'

b) khɛ̀ɛk refers to people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, Ceylon, and the Middle East. (Normally dark-skinned people).

kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, maa càak prathêet india	'He's a khɛ̀ɛk.' 'He comes from India.'

4. The Moslem people living in South Thailand are referred to as thaj ìtsalaam 'Thai Moslem'.

e) myaŋ + (name of city) or name of city alone is used in colloquial language to refer to cities, thus myaŋ wɔɔchiŋtân (or) wɔɔchiŋtân 'Washington'. In the mass media kruŋ + (name of city) is used to refer to some capitol cities, thus kruŋ room 'Rome', kruŋ parîit 'Paris', etc.

f) myaŋ + (name of country) or name of country alone is frequently used in spoken Thai to refer to a country instead of prathêet + (name of country) which is more formal and is used in newspapers, speeches, etc.

kháw maa càak jîipùn	'He comes from Japan'.
kháw maa càak myaŋ jîipùn	'He comes from Japan'.
kháw maa càak prathêet jîipùn	'He comes from Japan'.

g) As was indicated in 4.1, khraj usually occurs in the complement position after pen (kháw pen khraj, etc.); in some situations khraj precedes pen. Observe the following two examples:

1. 'Juliet' pen khraj	'Who's Juliet?' (I never heard of her.)
2. khraj pen 'Juliet'	'Who's Juliet?' (Who is playing the part of Juliet in the play by Shakespeare.)

When the main verb in the sentence is khyy 'to be', if the subject of the sentence is a pronoun, khraj is in the complement position.

kháw khyy khraj	'Who is he?'

With noun subjects khraj may precede or follow khyy optionally:

	khun nɔŋnút khyy khraj	'Who is Nongnut?'
or	khraj khyy khun nɔŋnút	

With verbs besides pen and khyy, khraj may occupy the subject or complement position:

khraj sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa thaj	'Who teaches Thai?'
khun praphâat sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa thaj hâj khraj	'Who is Prapas teaching Thai to?'

6.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw pen (khon) thaj	He's a Thai.
2.	kháw pen (khon) ameerikan	He's an American.
3.	kháw pen (khon) aŋkrìt	He's an Englishman.
4.	kháw pen (khon) faràŋsèet	He's a Frenchman.
5.	kháw pen (khon) jəəraman	He's a German.
6.	kháw pen (khon) ciin	He's a Chinese.
7.	kháw pen (khon) jîipùn	He's a Japanese.
8.	kháw pen (khon) laaw	He's a Lao.
9.	kháw pen (khon) juan	He's a Vietnamese.
10.	kháw pen (khon) phamâa	He's a Burmese.
11.	kháw pen (khon) khamɛ̌en	He's a Cambodian.
12.	kháw pen (khon) kawlǐi	He's a Korean.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw pen khon thaj
khun	khun pen khon thaj
khon aŋkrìt	khun pen khon aŋkrìt
khon ameerikan	khun pen khon ameerikan
kháw	kháw pen khon ameerikan
khun cɔɔn	khun cɔɔn pen khon ameerikan
phŷan phǒm	phŷan phǒm pen khon ameerikan
khon ciin	phŷan phǒm pen khon ciin
kháw	kháw pen khon ciin
khon phamâa	kháw pen khon phamâa
khun	khun pen khon phamâa
thaj	khun pen khon thaj

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	kháw pen khon châat araj	kháw pen khon thaj
	What nationality is he?	He's a Thai.
2.	kháw pen khon châat araj	kháw pen juan
	What nationality is he?	He's a Vietnamese.
3.	kháw pen khon châat araj	kháw pen khon ameerikan
	What nationality is he?	He's American.
4.	kháw pen khon châat araj	kháw pen khon phamâa
	What nationality is he?	He's Burmese.
5.	kháw pen khon châat araj	kháw pen ciin
	What nationality is he?	He's Chinese.

d) Transformation Drill (Change to the negative in two ways.)

Affirmative Pattern	Negative 1-Pattern	Negative 2-Pattern
kháw pen khon jîipùn	kháw mâj châj khon jîipùn	kháw mâj dâj pen khon jîipùn
kháw pen laaw	kháw mâj châj laaw	kháw mâj dâj pen laaw
kháw pen khon aŋkrìt	kháw mâj châj khon aŋkrìt	kháw mâj dâj pen khon aŋkrìt
kháw pen juan	kháw mâj châj juan	kháw mâj dâj pen juan

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
ciin	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj kháw pen khon ciin mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Chinese. He isn't Thai.
laaw	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj, kháw pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Lao. He isn't Thai.

laaw	khun pen khon thaj rýplàaw	plàaw (or) phǒm pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	Are you Thai?	No, I'm not. / I'm not. I'm Lao. I'm not a Thai.
phonlaryan	khun pen thahǎan lə̌	plàaw mâj châj phǒm pen phonlaryan mâj châj thahǎan
	You're a soldier?	No, I am not. No, I'm not. I'm a civilian. I'm not a soldier.
câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut	khun pen câwnâathîi juusít lə̌	mâj châj plàaw phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut mâj châj câwnâathîi juusít
	You are a USIS official?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an Embassy official. I'm not a USIS official.

khon tàaŋ caŋwàt	khun pen khon kruŋthêep châj máj	mâj châj plàaw phǒm pen khon tàaŋ caŋwàt mâj châj khon kruŋthêep
	You are a Bangkoker, aren't you?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an out-of-towner. I'm not a Bangkoker.
phŷan	kháw pen phanrajaa khun cɔɔn lə̌	mâj châj kháw pen phŷan mâj châj phanrajaa
	She's John's wife?	No, she isn't. She's a friend. She's not his wife.

f) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	kháw maa càak (prathêet) thaj	He's from Thailand.
ameerikaa	kháw maa càak (prathêet) ameerikaa	He's from America.
faràŋsèet	kháw maa càak (prathêet) faràŋsèet	He's from France.
wîatnaam	kháw maa càak (prathêet) wîatnaam	He's from Vietnam.

phamâa	kháw maa càak (prathêet) phamâa	He's from Burma.
rátsia	kháw maa càak (prathêet) rátsia	He's from Russia.
ciin	kháw maa càak (prathêet) ciin	He's from China.
khaměen	kháw maa càak (prathêet) khaměen	He's from Cambodia.
malajuu	kháw maa càak (prathêet) malajuu	He's from Malaya.
filíppin	kháw maa càak (prathêet) filíppin	He's from the Philippines.

g) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
kháw pen khon thaj	kháw maa càak (prathêet) thaj
kháw pen khon aŋkrìt	kháw maa càak (prathêet) aŋkrìt
kháw pen juan	kháw maa càak (prathêet) wîatnaam
kháw pen khon rátsia	kháw maa càak (prathêet) rátsia
kháw pen jîipùn	kháw maa càak (prathêet) jîipùn
kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk india	kháw maa càak (prathêet) india

h) Substitution Drill

Have two students do the following exchange substituting the cue words for those underlined.

Student 1: kháw pen juan, châj máj khráp
Student 2: mâj châj, pen khon thaj khráp

Student 1: maa càak prathêet thaj rý khráp
Student 2: khráp

1. jəəraman, faràŋsèet
2. laaw, kawlǐi
3. jîipùn, ciin
4. rátsia, sapeen
5. aŋkrìt, ameerika(a)(n)

i) Substitution Drill

Cue	Question	Response
kruŋthêep	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak kruŋ room
	What city do you come from?	Bangkok.
wɔɔchiŋtân	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak wɔɔchiŋtân
	What city do you come from?	Washington.
njuu jɔ́ɔk	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak njuu jɔ́ɔk
	What city do you come from?	New York.
kruŋ room	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak kruŋ room
	What city do you come from?	Rome.
kruŋ lɔɔndɔn	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak kruŋ lɔɔndɔn
	What city do you come from?	London.

lɔɔndɔn	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak lɔɔndɔn London.
denwə̂ə	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak denwə̂ə Denver.
saan fransisko	khun maa càak myaŋ araj What city do you come from?	phǒm maa càak saan fransisko San Francisco.

j) Substitution Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
aŋkrìt, ameerikaa	kháw maa càak aŋkrìt	kháw mâj dâj maa càak ameerikaa
lɔɔndɔn, njuu jɔ́ɔk	kháw maa càak lɔɔndɔn	kháw mâj dâj maa càak njuu jɔ́ɔk
parîit, tookiaw	kháw maa càak (kruŋ) parîit	kháw mâj dâj maa càak (kruŋ) tookiaw
wɔɔchiŋtân, denwə̂ə	kháw maa càak wɔɔchiŋtân	kháw mâj dâj maa càak denwə̂ə
faràŋsèet, jəəraman	kháw maa càak faràŋsèet	kháw mâj dâj maa càak jəəraman

k) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak parîit	He's a 'farang'. He comes from Paris.
2.	kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, maa càak malajuu	He's a 'khɛɛk'. He comes from Malaya.
3.	kháw pen khon thaj, maa càak myaŋ thaj	He's a Thai. He comes from Thailand.
4.	kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, maa càak prathêet india	He's a 'khɛɛk'. He comes from India.
5.	kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak prathêet aŋkrìt	He's 'farang'. He comes from England.
6.	kháw pen khon ciin, maa càak hɔ̂ɔŋkoŋ	He's Chinese. He comes from Hong Kong.
7.	kháw pen khon thaj ìtsalaam, maa càak pàttanii	He's a Thai Moslem. He comes from Pattani.
8.	kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak wɔɔchiŋtân	He's a 'farang'. He comes from Washington.

l) Substitution Drill

Substitute the cue words in one of the exchanges below (only one will fit the cue word):

MODEL I: (for khɛ̀ɛk) Cue word: khon malajuu

A: phŷan khun pen faràŋ, châj máj
B: mâj châj, pen khɛ̀ɛk

A: maa càak prathêet nǎj
B: maa càak (prathêet) malajuu

MODEL II: (for others) Cue word: khon faràŋsèet (or) thaj

A: phŷan khun pen faràŋ, châj máj

B: châj khráp, pen khon faràŋsèet

mâj châj khráp, pen khon thaj

1. jîipùn
2. india
3. rátsia
4. ameerikan
5. indooniisia
6. khaměen
7. sapeen
8. malajuu
9. phamâa
10. laaw

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	khonthaj phûut phaasǎa thaj	Thais speak Thai.
2.	khon ameerikan phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt	Americans speak English.
3.	khon aŋkrìt phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt	Englishmen speak English.
4.	khon ciin phûut phaasǎa ciin	Chinese speak Chinese.
5.	khon laaw phûut phaasǎa laaw	Lao speak Laotian.
6.	khɛ̀ɛk malajuu phûut phaasǎa malajuu	Malayans speak Malay.
7.	khon juan phûut phaasǎa juan.	Vietnamese speak Vietnamese.
8.	khon ɔ́ɔsatreelia phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt	Australians speak English.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
rátsia	khon rátsia phûut phaasǎa rátsia
kawlǐi	khon kawlǐi phûut phaasǎa kawlǐi
jîipùn	khon jîipùn phûut phaasǎa jîipùn
khaměen	khon khaměen phûut phaasǎa khaměen
phamâa	khon phamâa phûut phaasǎa phamâa

o) Substitution Drill

Have two students engage in the following exchange, substituting the cue words below for those underlined:

Cue: phamâa, ciin

Student 1: thîi phamâa, kháw phûut phaasǎa ciin, châj máj

Student 2: mâj châj, kháw phûut phaasǎa phamâa
kháw mâj dâj phûut phaasǎa ciin.

1. faràŋsèet, jəəraman
2. indooniisia, jîipùn
3. sapeen, italîan
4. myaŋthaj, thaj
5. ameerikaa, aŋkrìt
6. khaměen, laaw
7. hɔ̂ɔŋkoŋ, wîatnaam
8. thaj, malajuu
9. njuu jɔ́ɔk, kawlǐi
10. rát míchíkɛɛn, thaj
11. bóssatân, rátsia
12. rát indianâa, aŋkrìt

p) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
thaj	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	He can speak Thai.
laaw	kháw phûut phaasǎa laaw dâj	He can speak Lao.
jəəraman	kháw phûut phaasǎa jəəraman dâj	He can speak German.
sapeen	kháw phûut phaasǎa sapeen dâj	He can speak Spanish.
rátsia	kháw phûut phaasǎa rátsia dâj	He can speak Russian.
ciin	kháw phûut phaasǎa ciin dâj	He can speak Chinese.
juan	kháw phûut phaasǎa juan dâj	He can speak Vietnamese.
malajuu	kháw phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj	He can speak Malayan.
phamâa	kháw phûut phaasǎa phamâa dâj	He can speak Burmese.

q) Substitution Drill

Ask the students what languages they can speak, using the following patterns:

Instructor: khun phûut phaasǎa (________) dâj máj khráp

Can you speak _____?

Student: dâj khráp — Yes, I can.

mâj dâj khráp — No, I can't.

r) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	nákrian khon níi kèŋ phaasǎa thaj máj	Is that student good in Thai?
khun cɔɔn	khun cɔɔn kèŋ phaasǎa thaj máj	Is John good in Thai?
aŋkrít	khun cɔɔn kèŋ phaasǎa aŋkrìt máj	Is John good in English?
prichaa	khun prichaa kèŋ phaasǎa aŋkrìt máj	Is Prichaa good in English?
faràŋsèet	khun prichaa kèŋ phaasǎa faràŋsèet máj	Is Prichaa good in French?
khruu kháw	khruu kháw kèŋ phaasǎa faràŋsèet máj	Is his teacher good in French?
laaw	khruu kháw kèŋ phaasǎa laaw máj	Is his teacher good in Lao?

s) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	nákrian khon nán rian náŋsy̌y kèŋ	That student learns rapidly.
kháw	kháw rian náŋsy̌y kèŋ	He learns rapidly.
khǐan náŋsy̌y thaj	kháw khǐan náŋsy̌y thaj kèŋ	He writes Thai well.
khun	khun khǐan náŋsy̌y thaj kèŋ	You write Thai well.
phûut phaasǎa juan	khun phûut phaasǎa juan kèŋ	You speak Vietnamese well.
khruu phǒm	khruu phǒm phûut phaasǎa juan kèŋ	My teacher speaks Vietnamese well.
sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y	khruu phǒm sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y kèŋ	My teacher teaches well.

6.3 EXERCISES

a) Using a weekly news magazine or daily newspaper have one student find out from another what the nationality of various people is.[1]

b) Have one student find out from another what languages are spoken in Asia. (Use map on page 85.)

c) Have students find out what languages other students speak and how well.

d) Have students find out what city and state other students come from.

---

[1] To the instructor: Have the students ask the questions in as many different ways as possible.

6.4 COMPREHENSION TEST

The teacher reads each of the passages below two times at normal speed with a pause between the two readings. The students listen and take notes if they wish. Then the teacher asks them the questions below. The students are not to look at the book during this time.

A. phǒm mii phŷan. kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, maa càak malajuu. kháw phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj.

1. phŷan phǒm phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj máj
2. kháw pen faràŋ, châj máj khráp
3. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj

B. khruu phǒm kèŋ phaasǎa phaamâa. kháw pen khon ameerikan phanrajaa kháw thamŋaan thîi juusít

1. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khruu phǒm mâj dâj thamŋaan rý́ khráp
2. khruu phǒm phûut phaasǎa phaamâa dâj máj
3. khruu pen faràŋ, châj máj

C. thahǎan maa càak prathêet jəəraman. kháw pen khon jəəraman phanrajaa kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj.

1. thahǎan mii phanrajaa rý́ khráp
2. khruu phaasǎa thaj pen khon jəəraman, châj máj
3. thahǎan pen khɛ̀ɛk, châj máj

D. kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, maa càak prathêet india. kháw pen mɔ̌ɔ, thamŋaan thîi rooŋphajabaan culaa. kháw chŷy waanii.

1. khun mɔ̌ɔ chŷy araj
2. kháw thamŋaan rý́plàaw
3. kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj

4. kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, châj máj
5. kháw maa càak prathêet malajuu, châj máj
6. khun waanii pen araj thîi rooŋphajabaan culaa

E. nákrian pen khɛ̀ɛk indoniisia. kháw rian phaasǎa juan. kháw rian kèŋ mâak. phanrajaa kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak parîit. khun mɛ̂ɛ kháw maa càak kruŋ jaakaatâa

1. nákrian rian phaasǎa araj
2. kháw rian kèŋ máj
3. phanrajaa kháw mâj dâj pen khɛ̀ɛk rýkhráp
4. khun mɛ̂ɛ maa càak nǎj
5. nákrian kèŋ phaasǎa juan máj
6. nákrian pen faràŋ, châj máj
7. thîi kruŋ jaakaatâa kháw phûut phaasǎa ciin, châj máj khráp

F. phŷan phǒm kèŋ phaasǎa kawlǐi. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak prathêet italîi. kháw thamŋaan thîi kruŋ room. kháw pen thahǎan

1. phŷan khun pen mɔ̌ɔ châj máj khráp
2. kháw kèŋ phaasǎa araj
3. kháw pen khon châat araj
4. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj
5. kháw pen khɛ̀ɛk, châj máj
6. kháw thamŋaan rýplàaw
7. kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj

G. nîi rûup phanrajaa phǒm. rûup níi sǔaj mâak. kháw pen khon ciin, maa càak hɔ̂ɔŋkoŋ. kháw mâj dâj thamŋaan, pen mɛ̂ɛbâan

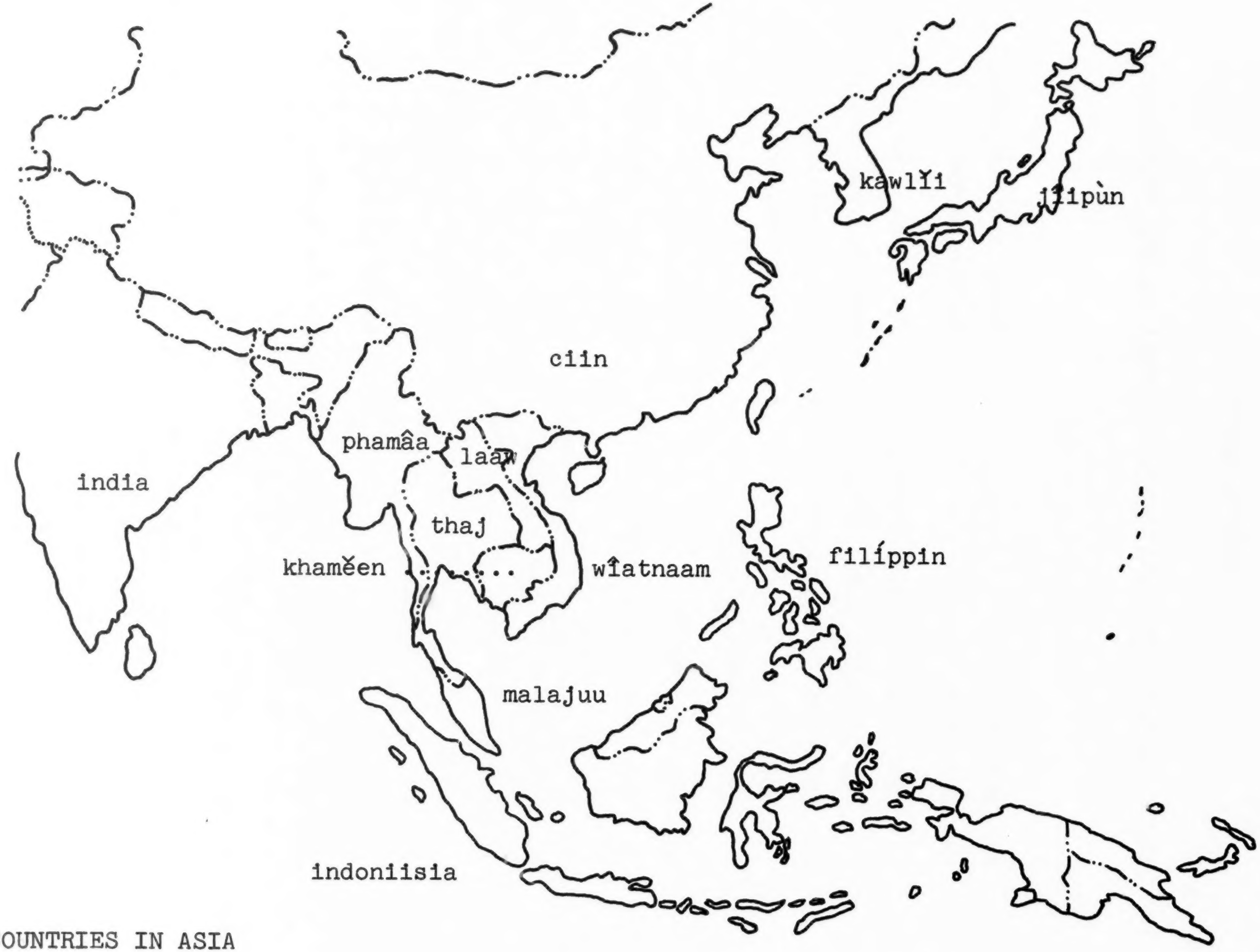
1. nîi rûup phanrajaa phǒm, châj máj
2. phanrajaa phǒm pen khon châat araj
3. kháw pen khruu thîinǎj
4. rûup phanrajaa phǒm sǔaj máj
5. phanrajaa phǒm thamŋaan rýplàaw

6.5 VOCABULARY

ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
aŋkrìt	England, English
india	India, Indian
indoniisia	Indonesia, Indonesian
indianâa	Indiana
italîan	Italian (italîi 'Italy')
ɔ́ɔsatreelia	Australia, Australian
bóssatân	Boston
càak	from
caŋ	extremely, a great deal

châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
ciin	China, Chinese
denwə̂ə	Denver
faràŋ (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Austraians, white Americans, etc.
faràŋsèet	France, French
filíppin	Philippines, Philippine
hɔ̂ɔŋkoŋ	Hong Kong
jəəraman	Germany, German
jîipùn	Japan, Japanese
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
kawlǐi	Korea, Korean
kèŋ	to be expert, skillful (at doing something)
khaměen	Cambodia, Cambodian
khɛ̀ɛk (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khǐan	to write
kruŋ (kruŋ)	city (used to refer to some capitol cities)
kruŋthêep	Bangkok
laaw	Laos, Lao, Laotian
lɔɔndɔɔn	London

mâak	very much, a lot of
malajuu	Malaya
míchíkɛɛn	Michigan
myaŋ (myaŋ)	city, country (nation)
nít nɔ̀ɔj	a little
njuu jɔ́ɔk	New York
parîit	Paris
pattanii	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
phaasǎa (phaasǎa)	language, speech
phamâa	Burma, Burmese
rát (rát)	state, nation
rian	to study, learn
room	Rome
sapeen	Spain
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sɔ̌ɔn	to teach
thaj	Thai
thâwnán	only, only that (much)
tookiaw	Tokyo
wîatnaam	Vietnam, Vietnamese


kawlǐi
jîipùn
ciin
phamâa
laaw
india
thaj
khaměen
wîatnaam
filíppin
malajuu
indoniisia

COUNTRIES IN ASIA

LESSON SEVEN

7.0 BASIC DIALOG: Mr. Smith meets a Thai in the Provinces

(Part II)

A:	paj nǎj khráp	Where are you going?
B:	paj talàat khráp	To the market.
A:	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ	You speak Thai very well.
	caŋ pen khon châat araj	What is your nationality?
B:	phǒm pen khon ameerikan khráp	I'm an American.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt pen máj khráp	Excuse me, do you speak English?
A:	mâj pen khráp	No, I don't.
B:	khun pen chaaw caŋwàt níi rýplàaw khráp	Are you a native of this changwat?
A:	plàaw khráp, phǒm maa càak caŋwàt lampaaŋ	No, I'm from Lampang changwat.
	khun khəəj paj máj khráp	Have you ever been there?
B:	mâj khəəj khráp	No, I haven't.
	jùu thîi nǎj khráp	Where is it?
A:	jùu naj phâak nýa	In the North.

7.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) a caŋwàt is an administrative unit in the Thai government. It may be translated 'province'. There are 71 in Thailand.

b) chaaw means 'resident' or 'native'.

c) Observe the difference in meaning between kèŋ 'good' (in the sense of skillful) and dii 'good' (in general).

kháw pen khon dii	'He's a good (or nice) person.'
kháw rian náŋsýy kèŋ	'He's a good student (studies well).'

d) paj nǎj is frequently used as a casual greeting.

7.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) khəəj + Verb Phrase is used to refer to experience in the past.

kháw khəəj pen khruu	'He used to be a teacher.'
khun khəəj paj myaŋthaj máj	'Have you ever been to Thailand?'

The affirmative response to khəəj + Verb Phrase + máj questions is khəəj; the negative response is mâj khəəj.

b) paj 'to go' and maa 'to come' may be followed by place expressions (rooŋrian, etc.) or by Verb Phrases indicating an activity (sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ 'buy things', etc.). Either the place expression or Verb Phrase may be replaced by nǎj in questions, thus

Q:	paj nǎj	'Where are you going? (or) 'What are you going (someplace) to do?'
A:	paj rooŋrian	'(I'm) going to school.'
(or)	paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	'(I'm) going shopping.'

c) Since the verb in Thai does not have changes in form to correlate with changes in time (tense changes), a sentence like phǒm paj rooŋrian might be interpreted as I'm going to school', 'I go to school', or 'I went to school'. This does not usually result in ambiguity, however, since the context the utterance occurs in usually makes it clear which interpretation is intended.

d) The pronoun subject may be omitted anytime its omission does not result in misunderstanding. Observe these examples:

B:	paj nǎj	'Where are (you) going?'
A:	paj talàat khráp	'(I'm) going to the market.'

The pronoun is sometimes omitted in statements; it is frequently omitted in questions, and is almost always omitted in responses to questions.

e) The sentence + dâj construction is used to indicate that something is 'possible, suitable, all right', thus

phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	'I can speak Thai.'
khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj	'Can you speak Thai?'
Affirmative response: dâj khráp	'Yes, I can.'
Negative response: mâj dâj khráp	'No, I can't.'

Since dâj is considered to be the main verb in constructions of this type, the negative mâj is placed jus before it in negative statements, thus:

kháw paj talàat mâj dâj	'She is unable to go to the market.'

The subject of the sentence is the sentence kháw paj talàat.

f) The Sentence + pen construction is used to indicate that 'someone knows how to perform some activity', thus:

Statement:	phǒm khàp rót pen	'I know how to drive a car.'
Negative statement:	kháw lên dontrii mâj pen	'He doesn't know how to play a musical instrument.'
Question:	khun lên dontrii thaj pen máj	'Can you play a Thai music?'

Affirmative response:	pen khráp	'Yes, I can.'
Negative response:	mâj pen khráp	'No, I can't.'

pen is considered the main verb in constructions of this type; consequently, the negative mâj is placed just in front of it, and it is the normal response to questions. The sentence khun lên dontrii thaj is the subject of the combined sentence.

g) In situations where ability to do something is a matter of having learned the technique of doing it, either pen or dâj may be used interchangeably, thus:

phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{dâj}\\ \text{pen}\end{array}\right.$	'I can speak Thai.'

In situations in which inability to do something results not from a lack of technique or skill but for other reasons, only dâj and not pen can be used.

phǒm khàp rót pen, tɛ̀ɛ wanníi khàp mâj dâj. phǒm mâj sabaaj	'I know how to drive a car, but I can't drive today. I don't feel well.'

h) Both khəəj 'used to' and dâj or pen can occur in the same sentence, thus:

kháw khəəj lên dontrii pen	'He used to be able to play music.'
khun khəəj phûut phaasǎa ciin pen máj	'Were you formerly able to speak Chinese?'

The affirmative response to this question is khəəj 'Yes, I was.', the negative response is mâj khəəj 'No, I wasn't.'

7.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern	
1.	ráanaahǎan	paj ráanaahǎan khráp	(I'm) going to the restaurant.
2.	rooŋrian	paj rooŋrian khráp	(I'm) going to the school.
3.	thîithamŋaan	paj thîithamŋaan khráp	(I'm) going to the office.
4.	talàat	paj talàat khráp	(I'm) going to the market.
5.	rooŋphajabaan	paj rooŋphajabaan khráp	(I'm) going to the hospital.
6.	thanakhaan	paj thanakhaan khráp	(I'm) going to the bank.
7.	bâan	klàp bâan khráp	(I'm) going home.
8.	prajsanii	paj prajsanii khráp	(I'm) going to the Post Office.
9.	ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ	paj ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ khráp	(I'm) going to the shops.
10.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan	paj rooŋrɛɛm eerawan khráp	(I'm) going to the Erawan Hotel.

b) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
rooŋrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj rooŋrian khráp To school.
thîithamŋaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj thîithamŋaan khráp To the office.
ráanaahǎan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj ráanaahǎan khráp To the restaurant?

prajsanii	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj prajsanii khráp To the Post Office.
ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ khráp To the shops.
thanaakhaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj thanaakhaan khráp To the bank.
talàat	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj talàat khráp To the market.
bâan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	klàp bâan khráp Home.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	phǒm paj thamŋaan khráp	I went[1] to work.
rian náŋsy̌y	phǒm paj rian náŋsy̌y khráp	I went to school.
kháw	kháw paj rian náŋsy̌y khráp	He went to school.
thîaw	kháw paj thîaw khráp	He went out (for fun).
sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ khráp	He went shopping.
kin kaafɛɛ	kháw paj kin kaafɛɛ khráp	He went to drink coffee.
kin khâaw	kháw paj kin khâaw khráp	He went to eat.
sòŋ còtmǎaj	kháw paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp	He went to mail a letter.
phǒm	phǒm paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp	I went to mail off a letter.
hǎa mɔ̌ɔ	phǒm paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ khráp	I went to see a doctor.
thoorasàp	phǒm paj thoorasàp khráp	I went to telephone.
thamŋaan	phǒm paj thamŋaan khráp	I went to work.

---

[1] paj could be translated as 'go, is/are going, or went'.

d) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
thamŋaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj thamŋaan khráp To work.
rooŋrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj rooŋrian khráp To school.
rian náŋsɯ̌ɯ	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj rian náŋsɯ̌ɯ khráp To study.
sɯ́ɯ khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj sɯ́ɯ khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráan khráp To buy something at a shop.
sòŋ còtmǎaj	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp To mail a letter.
thoorasàp	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj thoorasàp khráp To telephone.
thamŋaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj thamŋaan khráp To work.
kin kaafɛɛ thîi ráan thíp thɔ́p	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj kin kaafɛɛ thîi ráan thíp thɔ́p To drink cofee at the Tip Top shop.
kin khâaw thîi raamâa	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj kin khâaw thîi raamâa To eat at the Rama.
hǎa mɔ̌ɔ thîi sǎathɔɔn	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ thîi sǎathɔɔn To see a doctor on Sathorn (street).

thîaw	paj năj khráp Where are you going?	paj thîaw Out (for pleasure).
thîaw talàatnát	paj năj khráp Where are you going?	paj thîaw talàatnát Out to the market (special one day market) for fun.
thurá thîi sathǎanthûut	paj năj khráp Where are you going?	paj thurá thîi sathǎan thûut To the embassy on business.

e) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. chiaŋmàj	kháw maa càak caŋwàt chiaŋmàj He comes from Chiangmai Province.
2. ùttaradìt	kháw maa càak caŋwàt ùttaradìt He comes from Uttaradit Province.
3. phítsanulôok	kháw maa càak caŋwàt phítsanulôok. He comes from Pitsanuloke Province.
4. udɔɔn	kháw maa càak caŋwàt udɔɔn. He comes from Udorn Province.
5. khɔ̌ɔn kɛ̀ɛn	kháw maa càak caŋwàt khɔ̌ɔn kɛ̀ɛn. He comes from Khonkaen Province.
6. nakhɔɔn râatchasǐmaa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt nakhɔɔn râatchasǐmaa He comes from Korat Province.
7. lópburii	kháw maa càak caŋwàt lópburii. He comes from Lopburi Province.

8.	ajútthajaa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa. He comes from Ayuthaya Province.
9.	kruŋthêep	kháw maa càak kruŋthêep.[1] He comes from Bangkok.
10.	raâtburii	kháw maa càak caŋwàt râatburii. He comes from Ratburi Province.
11.	nakhɔɔn sǐi thàmmarâat	kháw maa càak caŋwàt nakhɔɔn sǐi thammarâat. He comes from Nakorn Sri Thammarat Province.
12.	phétburii	kháw maa càak caŋwàt phétburii. He comes from Phetburi Province.
13.	sǒŋkhlǎa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt sǒŋkhlǎa He comes from Songkla Province.
14.	jalaa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa. He comes from Yala Province.
15.	ubon	kháw maa càak caŋwàt ubon.

f) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	jalaa	kháw pen chaaw jalaa. He's a native of Yala.
2.	sǒŋkhlǎa	kháw pen chaaw sǒŋkhlǎa. He's a native of Songkla.
3.	nakhɔɔn sǐi thammarâat	kháw pen chaaw nakhɔɔn sǐi thammarâat. He's a native of Nakorn Sri Thammarat.

---

[1] By government division it is called caŋwàt phránakhɔɔn.

4.	phétburii	kháw pen chaaw phétburii. He's a native of Phetburi.
5.	râatburii	kháw pen chaaw râatburii. He's a native of Ratburi.
6.	kruŋthêep	kháw pen chaaw kruŋthêep. He's a native of Bangkok.
7.	ajútthajaa	kháw pen chaaw ajútthajaa. He's a native of Ayuthaya.
8.	lópburii	kháw pen chaaw lópburii. He's a native of Lopburi.
9.	khoorâat	kháw pen chaaw khoorâat. He's a native of Khorat.
10.	ubon	kháw pen chaaw ubon. He's a native of Ubol.
11.	khɔ̌ɔn kɛ̀ɛn	kháw pen chaaw khɔ̌ɔn kɛ̀ɛn He's a native of Khonkaen.
12.	udɔɔn	kháw pen chaaw udɔɔn He's a native of Udorn.
13.	phítsanulôok	kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok He's a native of Pitsanuloke.
14.	uttaradìt	kháw pen chaaw uttaradìt. He's a native of Uttaradit.
15.	chiaŋmàj	kháw pen chaaw chiaŋmàj He's a native of Chiangmai.

g) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
klaaŋ	lópburi jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak klaaŋ
	What part (of Thailand) is Lopburi in?	It's in the Central part.
ny̌a	chiaŋmàj jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak ny̌a
	What part is Chiangmai in?	It's in the Northern part.
isǎan	udɔɔn jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak isǎan
	What part is Udorn in?	It's in the N.E. part.
ny̌a	uttaradìt jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak ny̌a
	What part is Uttaradit in?	It's in the Northern part.
isǎan	khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak isǎan
	What part is Konkaen in?	It's in the N.E. part.
klaaŋ	phétburi jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak klaaŋ
	What part is Petburi in?	It's in the Central part.
tâj	sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj pàk tâj
	What part is Songkla in?	It's in the Southern part.
isǎan	khoorâat jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak isǎan
	What part is Korat in?	It's in the N.E. part.
tâj	jalaa jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj pàk tâj
	What part is Yala in?	It's in the Southern part.
isǎan	ubon jùu naj phâak araj	jùu naj phâak isǎan
	What part is Ubol in?	It's in the N.E. part.

h) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt chiaŋmàj. He comes from Chiangmai Province.	kháw pen khon chiaŋmàj. He's a native of Chiangmai Province.
2.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa. He comes from Yala Province.	kháw pen khon jalaa. He's a native of Yala Province.
3.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt lópburii. He comes from Lopburi Province.	kháw pen khon lópburii. He's a native of Lopburi Province.
4.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa. He comes from Ayuthaya Province.	kháw pen khon ajútthajaa. He's a native of Ayuthaya Province.
5.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt ùttaradìt. He comes from Uttaradit Province.	kháw pen khon ùttaradìt He's a native of Uttaradit Province.
6.	kháw maa càak caŋwàt phítsanulôok He comes from Pitsanuloke Province.	kháw pen khon phítsanulôok He's a native of Pitsanuloke Province.
7.	kháw maa càak kruŋthêep He comes from Bangkok.	kháw pen khon kruŋthêep He's a 'Bangkoker'.
8.	kháw maa càak tàaŋcaŋwàt He's from the provinces.	kháw pen khon tàaŋcaŋwàt He's a 'out-of-towner.'

i) Response Drill

Teacher:	jalaa	Yala.
Student 1:	kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa.	He comes from Yala Province.
Student 2:	kháw pen khon jalaa rə̌ khráp	He's a native of Yala, is he?
Student 1:	khráp	Yes (he is).

Continue the drill by substituting the following names for Yala:

1. ubon
2. udɔɔn
3. lóppburii
4. ajútthajaa
5. chiaŋmàj
6. râatburii
7. phétburii
8. sǒŋkhlǎa
9. ùttaradìt
10. phítsanulôok
11. khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn
12. nakhɔɔn sǐi thammarâat
13. nakhɔɔn râat chasǐimaa
14. phránakhɔɔn / kruŋthêep
15. jalaa

j) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
kháw pen khon lóppburii.	kháw pen chaaw lóppburii.
kháw pen khon jalaa.	kháw pen chaaw jalaa.
kháw pen khon sǒŋkhlǎa	kháw pen chaaw sǒŋkhlǎa
kháw pen khon phítsanulôok	kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok
kháw pen khon khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn	kháw pen chaaw khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn
kháw pen khon kruŋthêep	kháw pen chaaw kruŋthêep
kháw pen khon tàaŋcaŋwàt	kháw pen chaaw tàaŋcaŋwàt

k) Response Drill

Teacher:	kháw pen khon caŋwàt araj udɔɔn	What province is he native of? Udorn.
Student:	kháw pen khon / chaaw udɔɔn	He's a native of Udorn (Province).

Continue the drill by substituting the following names for Udorn:

1. jalaa
2. sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa
3. nakhɔɔn sǐi thammarât
4. phétburii
5. râatburii
6. kruŋthêep
7. ajútthajaa
8. lópburii
9. khoorâat
10. ubon
11. phítsanulôok
12. uttaradìt
13. chiaŋmàj
14. udɔɔn
15. lópburii

l) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw maa càak phâak ny̌a.	He comes from the North.
2.	kháw maa càak phâak isǎan	He comes from the Northeast (of Thailand)
3.	kháw maa càak phâak klaaŋ	He comes from the Central part.
4.	kháw maa càak pàk tâj	He comes from the South (of Thailand).

NOTE: isǎan refers only to the Northeastern part of Thailand. It is not the usual word for Northeast. Likewise pàk rather than phâak is used to refer to the Southern part of Thailand.

m) Substitution Drill

Teacher:	kháw maa càak phâak klaaŋ	He comes from the Central part.
:	isǎan	Northeast.
Student:	kháw maa càak phâak isǎan	He comes from the Northeast.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items after phâak:

1. ny̌a
2. tâj
3. isǎan
4. klaaŋ
5. isǎan
6. tâj
7. ny̌a
8. klaaŋ
9. tâj
10. klaaŋ

n) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1. ny̌a	kháw maa càak phâak ny̌a. He comes from the North.	kháw pen khon phâak ny̌a. He's a Northerner.
2. isǎan	kháw maa càak phâak isǎan. He comes from the Northeast.	kháw pen khon phâak isǎan. He's a 'Northeasterner'.
3. tâj	kháw maa càak pàk tâj. He comes from the South.	kháw pen khon pàk tâj. He's a Southerner.
4. klaaŋ	kháw maa càak phâak klaaŋ He comes from the Central part.	kháw pen khon phâak klaaŋ He's a native of the Central part.

o) Substitution Drill

Teacher:	tâj	South
Student 1.	kháw maa càak pàk tâj	He comes from the South.
Student 2:	kháw pen khon pàk tâj rýy	Is he a Southerner?
Student 1:	khráp	Yes, he is.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items for tâj:

1. klaaŋ
2. nýa
3. isǎan
4. tâj
5. nýa
6. isǎan
7. klaaŋ
8. tâj
9. nýa
10. isǎan

p) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1. nýa	kháw pen khon phâak nýa. He's a Northerner.	kháw pen chaaw nýa. He's a Northerner.
2. isǎan	kháw pen khon phâak isǎan He's a Northeasterner.	kháw pen chaaw isǎan He's a Northeasterner.
3. tâj	kháw pen khon pàk tâj. He's a Southerner.	kháw pen chaaw tâj. He's a Southerner.
4. klaaŋ	kháw pen khon phâak klaaŋ He's a native of the Central part.	kháw pen chaaw phâak klaaŋ He's a Central Thai resident.

q) Response Drill

Teacher:	tâj	South.
Student 1:	khun maa càak phâak nǎj	What part do you come from?
Student 2:	pàk tâj	From the South.
Student 1:	ɔ̂ɔ, khun pen chaaw pàk tâj rə̌khráp	Oh, you're a Southerner?
Student 2:	khráp	Yes, I am.

Continue the drill by substituting the following words for tâj:

1. ny̌a
2. isǎan
3. klaaŋ
4. tâj
5. ny̌a
6. tâj
7. isǎan
8. ny̌a

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	khon phâak klaaŋ phûut phaasǎa kruŋthêep	People from Central Thailand speak Bangkok Thai.
2.	khon pàk tâj phûut phaasǎa pàk tâj	Southerners speak Southern Thai.
3.	khon phâak isǎan phûut phaasǎa (phâak) isǎan	Northeasterners speak Northeastern Thai.
4.	khon phâak ny̌a phûut phaasǎa (phâak) ny̌a	Northerners speak Northern Thai

s) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	khun khəəj paj myaŋthaj máj Have you ever been to Thailand?
rúucàk kháw	khun khəəj rúucàk kháw máj Have you ever met him?
paj chiaŋmàj	khun khəəj paj chiaŋmàj máj Have you ever been to Chiangmai?
rian phaasǎa faràŋsèet	khun khəəj rian phaasǎa faràŋsèet máj. Have you ever studied French?
jùu tàaŋprathêet	khun khəəj jùu tàaŋprathêet máj Have you ever lived abroad?
thamŋaan kàp kháw	khun khəəj thamŋaan kàp kháw máj Have you ever worked with him?
pen khruu	khun khəəj pen khruu máj Were you ever a teacher?
lên dontrii pen	khun khəəj lên dontrii pen máj Did you used to be able to play music?

t) Response Drill (Answers based on facts)

MODEL:	Teacher:	khun khəəj paj myaŋthaj máj	Have you ever been to Thailand?
	Student:	mâj khəəj khráp	No, I haven't.
		khəəj khráp	Yes, I have.

1. khun khəəj thaan aahǎan thaj máj — Have you ever eaten Thai food?

2. khun khəəj rúucàk diin ras(k) máj	Have you ever met Dean Rusk?
3. khun khəəj paj thîaw júròop máj	Have you ever been to Europe?
4. khun khəəj paj thamŋaan kàp khun (name of a student) máj	Have you ever worked with __________?
5. khun khəəj phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khon thaj máj	Have you ever talked Thai with a Thai?
6. khun khəəj phûut phaasǎa ciin dâj máj	Did you used to be able to speak Chinese?

u) Combination Drill (Combine these sentences with dâj.)

1. kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj
2. phanrajaa kháw paj thîaw
3. phûujǐŋ khon nán tênram
4. thahǎan khon nán wâajnáam
5. nákrian khon níi àan náŋsy̌y thaj
6. khɛ̀ɛk malajuu phûut phaasǎa thaj
7. khruu faràŋsèet khon nán phûut phaasǎa jəəraman
8. khun prasə̀ət lên dontrii
9. khun prapâat paj lên kɔ́ɔf
10. faràŋ khon nán lên dontrii thaj

v) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill s with mâj dâj.)

w) Response Drill (Give an affirmative response to each questions.)

Question	Response
1. kháw phûut phaasǎa jîipùn dâj máj Can he speak Japanese?	dâj khráp Yes, he can.

2.	phanrajaa kháw paj thîaw dâj mâj Can his wife go out for pleasure?	dâj khráp Yes, she can.
3.	khun pə̀ət nâatàaŋ dâj máj Can you open the window?	dâj khráp Yes, I can.
4.	nákrian khon nán duu náŋsy̌y dâj máj Is that student able to look at the book (or do homework)?	dâj khráp Yes, he is.
5.	khon ciin phûut phaasǎa ciin dâj máj Can Chinese people speak Chinese?	dâj khráp Yes, they can.
6.	chûaj sòŋ dinsɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm dâj máj Can you hand me the pencil, please?	dâj khráp Yes, I can.
7.	khruu phŷan khun sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj máj Can your friend's teacher teach English?	dâj khráp Yes, she can.
8.	kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ dâj máj Can she go shopping?	dâj khráp Yes, she can.
9.	khun jùu tàaŋprathêet dâj máj Can you live abroad?	dâj khráp Yes, I can.
10.	kháw rian phaasǎa phamâa dâj máj Is he able to study Burmese?	dâj khráp Yes, he is.

x) Response Drill. (Give negative responses to the questions in drill u.)

y) Combination Drill (Combine the following sentences with pen.)

1. kháw khàp rót
2. phǒm lên dontrii
3. phanrajaa kháw tham kàpkhâaw
4. kháw khǐan phaasǎa ciin
5. khun thǎawɔɔn phim náŋsy̌y
6. phûuchîawchaan khon nán lên tennít
7. nákrian khon nán phûut phaasǎa tàaŋprathêet
8. phŷan khun kɛ̂ɛ rót
9. khruu kháw sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y
10. phǒm phûut phaasǎa rátsia

z) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill w with mâj pen.)

aa) Response Drill

Respond to the following questions affirmatively or negatively as the situation indicates using pen or mâj pen.

1. khun tham kàpkhâaw pen máj
2. khɛ̀ɛk india phûut phaasǎa juan pen máj
3. nákrian thîinîi wâaj náam pen máj
4. khon juan phûut phaasǎa phamâa pen máj
5. khruu khun sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y pen máj
6. khun lên dontrii pen máj
7. phŷan khon thaj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun kɛ̂ɛ rót pen máj
8. faràŋ khon nán phûut phaasǎa thaj pen máj
9. sǎamii khun mɛɛrîi sýy aahǎan pen máj
10. phŷan khun khàp rya pen máj

ab) Situation Response Drill

Listen to the description of the situation and to the cue words, then one student forms a question with pen or dâj and another answers it. Both the question and the answer should fit the situation.

	Situation	Cue words	Question	Response
1.	kháw mâj sabaaj	khàp rót	kháw khàp rót dâj máj	mâj dâj khráp
	He's ill.	drive (a car)	Can he drive?	No, he can't.
2.	kháw mâj khəəj lên dontrii	lên dontrii	kháw lên dontrii pen máj	mâj pen
	He's never played music	play music	Can he play music?	No, he can't.
3.	khun malícan tham kàpkhâaw thúk wan	tham kàpkhâaw	kháw tham kàpkhâaw pen máj	pen khráp
	Malichanh cooks everyday.	cook	Can she cook?	Yes, she can.
4.	kháw pen khon faràŋsèet	phûut phaasǎa faràŋsèet	kháw phûut phaasǎa faràŋsèet dâj máj	dâj khráp
	He's French.	speak French	Can he speak French?	Yes, he can.

5.	kháw pen phɔ̂ɔkháa	khǎaj khɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw khǎaj khɔ̌ɔŋ pen máj	pen khráp
	He's a merchant.	sell things	Can he sell things?	Yes, he can.
6.	kháw mâj khəəj rian phaasǎa thaj	khǐan phaasǎa thaj	kháw khǐan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj	mâj dâj khráp
	He has never studied Thai.	write Thai	Can he write Thai?	No, he can't.
7.	kháw pen thahǎan rya	wâaj náam	kháw wâaj náam pen máj	pen khráp
	He's a sailor.	swim	Can he swim?	Yes, he can.
8.	kháw khəəj pen khruu phaasaǎ ciin	phûut phaasǎa ciin	kháw phûut phaasǎa ciin dâj máj	dâj khráp
	He used to be a Chinese teacher.	speak	Can he speak Chinese?	Yes, he can.
9.	phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm mâj khəəj khàp rót ləəj	khàprót	kháw khàp rót pen máj	mâj pen khráp
	My friend has never driven a car at all.	drive a car	Can he drive a car?	No, he can't.
10.	saamǐi khun noŋkhraan paj talàat thúk wan	sýy kàpkhâaw	kháw sýy kàpkhâaw pen máj	pen khráp
	Nongkran's husband goes to the market everyday.	buy food	Does he know how to shop for food?	Yes, he does.

7.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out what section and province different instructors come from.

b) Find out which students in the class know how to:

1. drive a car
2. cook
3. play tennis
4. swim
5. dance
6. type
7. play music
8. repair a car

Find out if they do the above things well.

c) Ask a student if he is able to:

1. close the classroom door
2. open the window
3. open his book
4. turn off the lights
5. open the door
6. close his notebook

If he says he is able to do so, ask him to do it.
If he says he is unable to do so, tell him not to do it.

d) Find out if different student in the class have ever:

1. been to various countries
2. lived in different provinces in Thailand
3. been to different cities and countries on pleasure trips
4. lived in various cities and states in the U.S.

e) Give each student in the class an index card, on which he is to write 6 items of information taken from the following categories:

I. Name: self, wife, relations, teacher, friend, etc.

II. Occupation

III. Location of occupation: place, city, country, part of country, etc.

IV. Nationality: country, state, province, etc.

V. Language speaking ability: native, others, dialects of languages

VI. Travel experience: Travel or residence, for pleasure or business

VII. Skills: driving a car, playing tennis, playing music, etc.

The students take turns asking questions so as to find out what has been written on the card. All students take notes.

As soon as the information on a card has been discovered, another student is quizzed about the information on his card. Continue this until all cards have been examined.

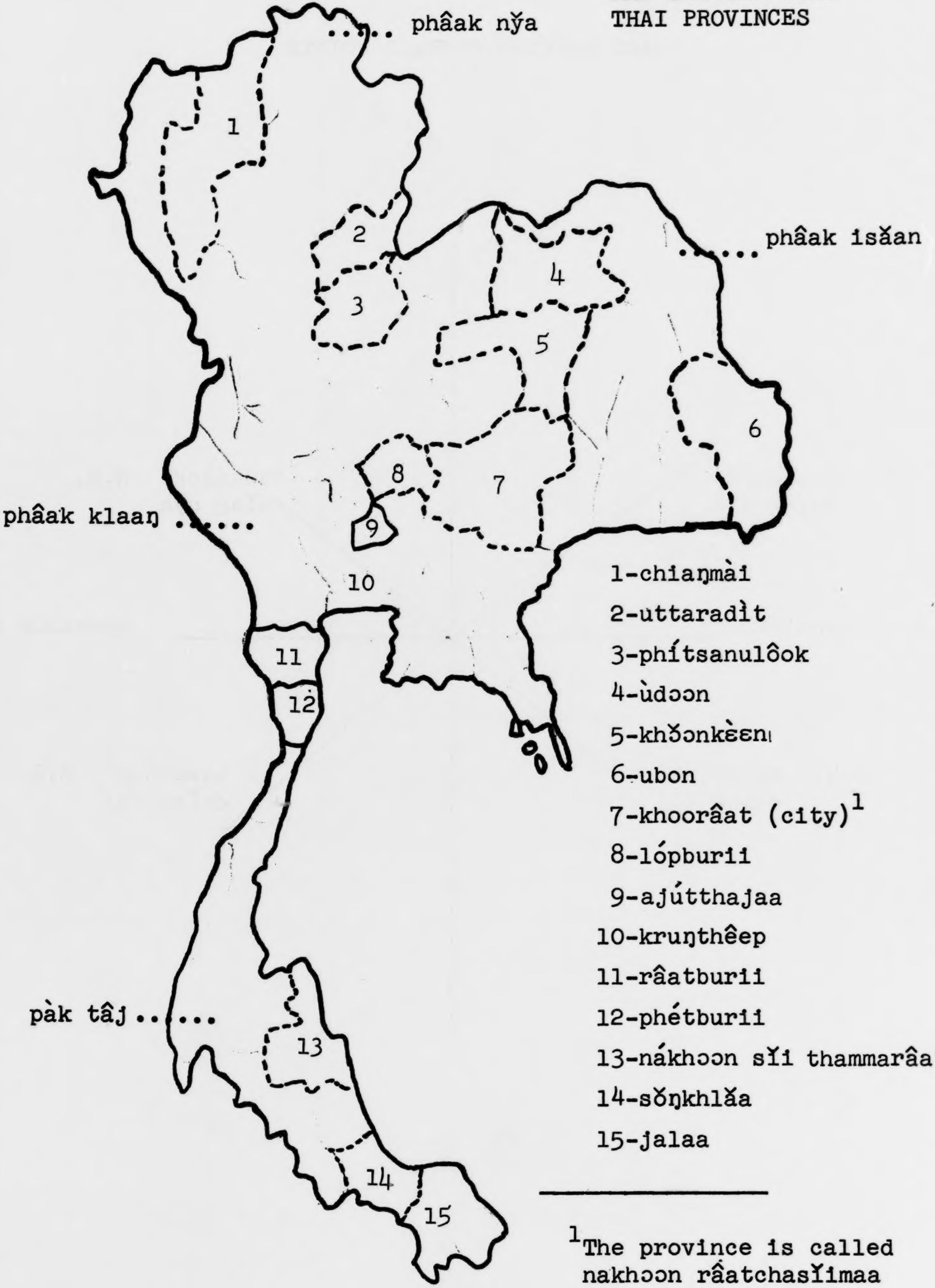
7.5 VOCABULARY

ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
isǎan	northeast (in Thailand)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udɔɔn	Udorn (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùttaradìt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)
bâan (lǎŋ)	house, home
caŋwàt	province
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chiaŋmàj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
diin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
dontrii	music
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)

jùu	to live, stay; to be located at
júròop	Europe
kaafɛɛ	coffee
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kɛ̂ɛ	to fix, correct (something)
khâaw	rice
khàp rót	to drive a car
khəəj	to have ever (done something) used to (be something, etc.)
khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand
khɔ̌ɔŋ	thing, object; of, belonging to
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaaŋ	central, middle, neutral
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lópburii	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
mɔ̌ɔ (khon)	doctor (medical)
nakhɔɔn râatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakhɔɔnsǐi thammarâat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
ny̌a	north, above
pàk	part (with pàk tâj 'Southern Part' only)
phâak (phâak)	part, region, section
phétburii	Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phim (dìit)	to typewrite
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phránakɔɔn	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
prajsanii	the post office

raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hɛ̀ŋ, ráan)	shop, store
ráanaahǎan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ (ráan)	shop, store
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
rooŋphajabaan (rooŋ, hɛ̀ŋ)	hospital
rooŋrɛɛm (rooŋrɛɛm-hɛ̀ŋ)	hotel
rót (khan)	car
rýplàaw	question word (negative)
sǎathɔɔn	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sathǎanthûut (hɛ̀ŋ)	embassy
sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sýy	to buy, (with khɔ̌ɔŋ 'to shop')
tàaŋcaŋwàt	in the provinces, out-of-town
tâj	South, under
talàat (hɛ̀ŋ)	market
talàat nát (hɛ̀ŋ)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tennít	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
tham	to do, make
thamŋaan	to work
thanaakhaan (hɛ̀ŋ)	bank
thîithamŋaan (hɛ̀ŋ, thîi)	office
thíp thɔ́ɔp	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thoorasàp	to telephone, a telephone
wâajnáam	to swim

MAP SHOWING SOME
THAI PROVINCES

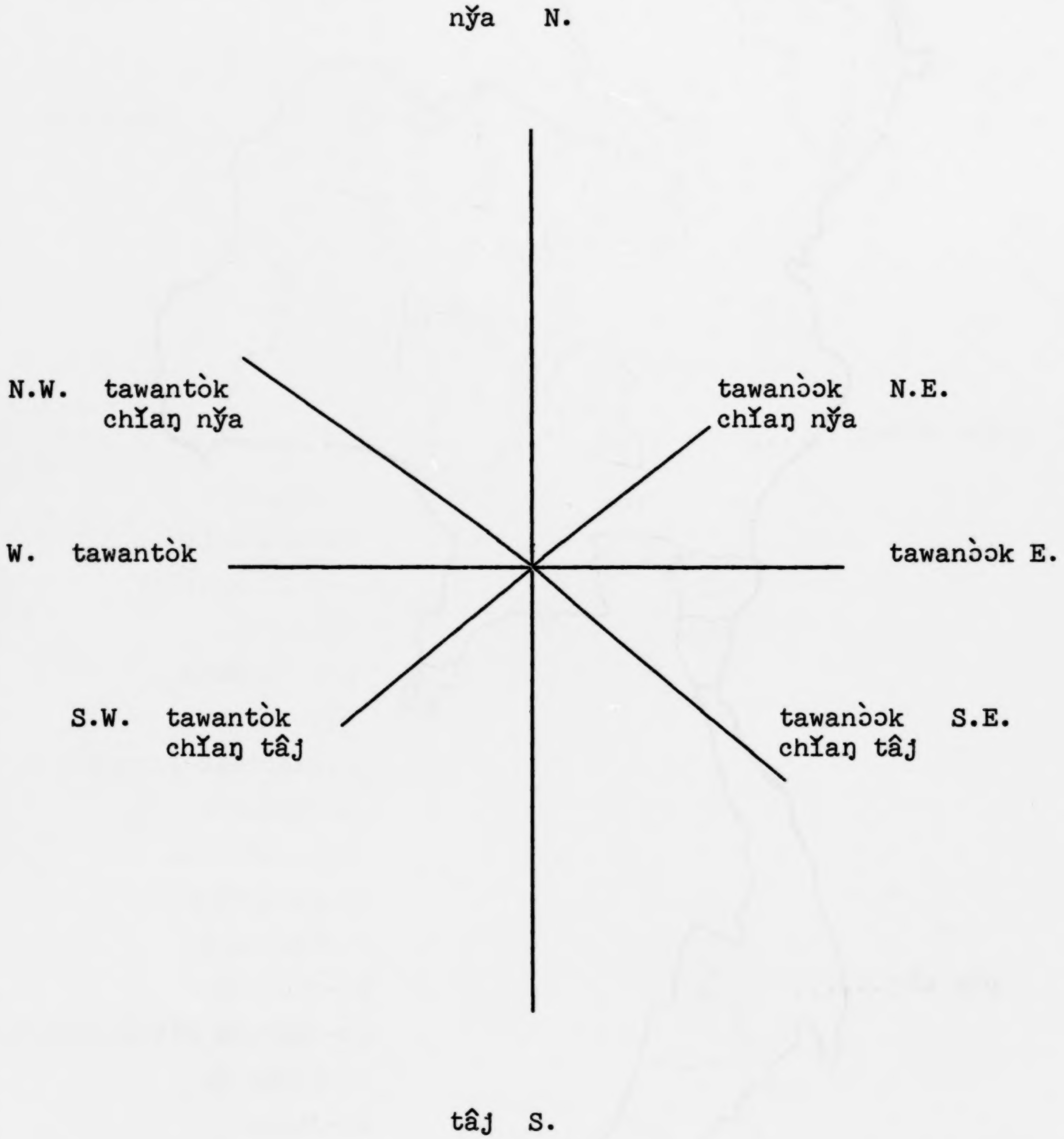

phâak ny̌a
phâak isǎan
phâak klaaŋ
pàk tâj
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

1-chiaŋmài
2-uttaradìt
3-phítsanulôok
4-ùdoon
5-khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn
6-ubon
7-khoorâat (city)[1]
8-lópburii
9-ajútthajaa
10-kruŋthêep
11-râatburii
12-phétburii
13-nákhɔɔn sǐi thammarâat
14-sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa
15-jalaa

---

[1] The province is called nakhɔɔn râatchasǐimaa

CHART SHOWING COMPASS POINTS


ny̌a N.
N.W. tawantòk chǐaŋ ny̌a
tawanɔ̀ɔk chǐaŋ ny̌a N.E.
W. tawantòk
tawanɔ̀ɔk E.
S.W. tawantòk chǐaŋ tâj
tawanɔ̀ɔk chǐaŋ tâj S.E.
tâj S.

LESSON EIGHT

8.0 BASIC DIALOG: Americans at Work in Bangkok.

A:	paj nǎj khráp	Where are you going?
B:	paj thamŋaan khráp	I'm going to work.
A:	khun thamŋaan thîinǎj khráp	Where do you work?
B:	phǒm thamŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut ameerikan khráp	I work at the American Embassy.
A:	phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ khun thamŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut mýankan rə̌khráp	Does your friend work at the Embassy too?
B:	plàaw khráp	No, he doesn't.
A:	kháw thamŋaan araj khráp	What does he do?
B:	kháw pen câwnâathîi juusít khráp	He's a USIS officer.
A:	thîithamŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu thîinǎj khráp	Where's his office?
B:	jùu thîi thanǒn sǎathɔɔn tâj khráp	On South Sathorn Street.

8.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Thai Compounds

Thai compounds like those of any other language can be explained in terms of the regular rules of syntax of the language. If asked, the native speaker can provide a derivation for any particular compound. For example, if asked to explain (provide a derivation) for the compound Parking permit, a native speaker of English would probably say 'It's a permit for parking your car', or 'It's a permit needed for parking your car', or something like that. Although there is an obvious meaning relationship between these derivations and the compound, the syntax is not the same.

The relationship between a compound and any of its derivations in Thai reveals the same kind of similarities and differences. If you do not know the meaning of a Thai compound, ask any of your instructors. They will provide you with a derivation that should make the meaning clear. If you decide to originate Thai compounds, you will find that you have only limited success. This should not inhibit you from doing this, but you should check your efforts with the native speaker before using them.

In this text compounds will be analyzed into their constituent parts and the meaning of each part will be given, and the meaning of the compound as a whole will be given. In some cases the form class of the parts will be given, thus: Noun + Noun: sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'Ambassador', This will be done to illustrate the different kinds of compounds in Thai.

1. Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

sathǎanthûut 'embassy': sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'ambassador'

câwnâathîi 'official, officer, staff member': câw 'ruler' + nâathîi 'duty'. This word is normally followed by a particular office, as in câwnâathîi tamrùat 'police official', etc.

thahǎanbòk 'soldier': thahǎan 'military person' + bòk 'earth'; rya 'boat', aakàat 'air', thus thahǎanrya 'sailor' and thahǎanaakàat 'airman'.

khâarâatchakaan 'government employee'. khâa 'servant' + râatcha- 'pertaining to the king' + kaan 'work, affairs' khâarâatchakaan thahǎan 'military government employee' khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan 'civilian government employee', krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs': krasuaŋ 'ministry' + tàaŋ 'different, other' + prathêet 'country'. krasuaŋ + kalaahǒom 'defense' means 'Ministry of Defense'.

krom tamrùat 'police Department': krom 'department' (major subdivision of a ministry) + tamrùat 'police'.

kɔɔŋ tháp bòk 'The Army': kɔɔŋ tháp 'military forces' + bòk 'land'; kɔɔŋ tháp rya 'The Navy': kɔɔŋ tháp + rya 'boat'; kɔɔŋ thap aakàat 'The Air Forces': kɔɔŋ tháp + aakàat 'air'.

nítsìt was used originally to refer to students who lived in. Now only part of the students live at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts University, but students at those universities are still called nítsìt. Students at Thammasart University are called náksỳksǎa. Other students are called nákrian.

chaawnaa 'rice farmer'; chaawsǔan 'gardener, orchardist', or 'person who works on a rubber plantation'; chaawrâj 'an upland farmer who grows crops like tobacco, tapioca, corn, etc. phɔ̂ɔkháa 'merchant': phɔ̂ɔ 'male engaged in' + kháa 'trade'. rooŋphajabaan 'hospital' : rooŋ 'building' + phajabaan 'to nurse'.

naaŋphajabaan 'female nurse': naaŋ 'woman' + phajabaan

2. Noun Compound: Noun + Verb

phûuchîawchaan 'expert': phûu 'person, one who' + chîawchaan 'to be expert, experienced.

náksỳksǎa 'student (in college or university): nák- 'one who (agent noun) + sỳksǎa 'to study'

phûu occurs before a large number of verbs to form agent noun compounds (like -er in English farmer). It rarely occurs alone.

nák- 'expert, authority' occurs before a limited number of verbs to form agent nouns. It can not occur alone. Other examples are nákkhǐan 'author', nákdontrii 'musician', etc.

b) Noun compounds (like those just described) take the same position as single nouns in compounds, for example:

câwnâathîi tamrùat khon níi	'This police official'
náksỳksǎa sìi khon nán	'Those 4 students'

c) jùu 'to be located at, live at' is normally followed by place expressions:

juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîi thanǒn phétburi	'USOM is on Petburi Street'.

d) The question khun thamŋaan araj 'What do you do?' can be answered in either of the following ways:

phǒm pen (câwnâathîi juusít, etc.) 'I am a USIS officer, etc.'

phǒm thamŋaan thîi (sathǎanthûut ameerikan, etc.) 'I work at the American Embassy, etc.'

e) Although both paj nǎj (see 7.2b) and paj thîinǎj mean 'Where are (you) going?', they are used in different situations and receive different answers:

Q: paj nǎj 'Where are you going?'

A: paj thaan khâaw 'I'm going to eat.'

Q: ca paj thaan thîinǎj 'Where are you going to eat?'

A: (thîi) ráanaahǎan sɔ̌ɔn dɛɛŋ 'at the Red Arrow Restaurant'.

paj thîinǎj is used when you wish to specify the place.

8.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw pen khruu.	He's a teacher.
2.	kháw pen nákrian.	He's a student.
3.	kháw pen mɔ̌ɔ.	He's a doctor.
4.	kháw pen mɛ̂ɛbâan.	She's a housewife.
5.	kháw pen naaŋphajabaan.	She's a nurse.
6.	kháw pen thahǎan {rya bòk aakàat}	He's a {sailor soldier. airman}

7.	kháw pen phɔ̂ɔkháa.	He's a merchant.
8.	kháw pen phûuchîawchaan.	He's an expert (or specialist).
9.	kháw pen wítsawákɔɔn.	He's an engineer.
10.	kháw pen phátthanaakɔɔn.	He's a community development worker.
11.	kháw pen khâaràatchakaan.	They're government employees.
12.	kháw pen tamrùat.	He's a policeman.
13.	kháw pen chaawnaa.	He's a rice farmer.
14.	kháw pen chaawsǔan.	He's a gardener.
15.	kháw pen chaawrâj.	He's a crop farmer.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	kháw pen khruu	He's a teacher.
phǒm	phǒm pen khruu	I'm a teacher.
tamrùat	phǒm pen tamrùat	I'm a policeman.
mɔ̌ɔ	phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ	I'm a doctor.
thahǎan rya	phǒm pen thahǎan rya	I'm a sailor.
phɔ̂ɔkháa	phǒm pen phɔ̂ɔkháa	I'm a merchant.
kháw	kháw pen phɔ̂ɔkháa	He's a merchant.
chaawnaa	kháw pen chaawnaa	He's a farmer.
naaŋphajabaan	kháw pen naaŋphajabaan	She's a nurse.
phátthanaakɔɔn	kháw pen phátthanaakɔɔn	He's a community development worker.
phǒm	phǒm pen phátthanaakɔɔn	I'm a community development worker.
wítsawákɔɔn	phǒm pen wítsawákɔɔn	I'm an engineer.
tamrùat	phǒm pen tamrùat	I'm a policeman.
khun	khun pen tamrùat	You are a policeman.

kháw	kháw pen tamrùat	He's a policeman.
thahǎanbòk	kháw pen thahǎanbòk	He's a soldier.
phûuchîawchaan	kháw pen phûuchîawchaan	He's an expert.
khâarâatchakaan	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan	They are government employees.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	khun thamŋaan araj khráp	What do you do (for a living?)
kháw	kháw thamŋaan araj khráp	What does he do?
khon níi	khon níi thamŋaan araj khráp	What does this person do?
khon nán	khon nán thamŋaan araj khráp	What does that person do?
khun prichaa	khun prichaa thamŋaan araj khráp	What does Prichaa do?

d) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	khun thamŋaan araj khráp
khun prichaa	khun prichaa thamŋaan araj khráp
khun cɔɔn	khun cɔɔn thamŋaan araj khráp
khon nán	khon nán thamŋaan araj khráp
khon níi	khon níi thamŋaan araj khráp
khun	khun thamŋaan araj khráp
kháw	kháw thamŋaan araj khráp

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
teacher	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen khruu
nurse	khun thamŋaan araj	dichán pen naaŋphajabaan
doctor	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ
soldier	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan bòk
engineer	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen wítsawákɔɔn
civilian government employee	khun thamŋaan araj	dichán pen khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan
rice farmer	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen chaawnaa
community development worker	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen phátthanaakɔɔn
merchant	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen phɔ̂ɔkháa
airman	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan aakàat
expert	khun thamŋaan araj	phǒm pen phûuchîawchaan
university student	khun thamŋaan araj	dichán pen náksỳksǎa

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi rooŋphajabaan.	I work at the hospital.
2.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi rooŋrian.	I work at the school.
3.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi juusít.	I work at USIS.
4.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi juusɔ̂ɔm.	I work at USOM.
5.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi ee-aj-dii.	I work at AID.
6.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi cát-sa-mɛ̀ɛk	I work at JUSMAG.
7.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi sathǎan thûut.	I work at the Embassy.
8.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋ tàaŋ pratheêet.	I work at the State Department.
9.	phǒm thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋ kalaahǒom	I work at the Ministry of Defense.

g) Substitution Drill

MODEL: Teacher: phǒm thamŋaan thîi rooŋphajabaan.
(éf-és-aj)

Student: phǒm thamŋaan thîi éf-és-aj.

Continue substitution using the following words:

1. juusít
2. cátsamɛ̀ɛk
3. krasuaŋ kalaa hǒom
4. juusɔ̂ɔm
5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan
6. krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet

h) Response Drill

MODEL:	Teacher:	khun thamŋaan thîinǎj	Where do you work?
	Student:	phǒm thamŋaan thîi ___	(Actual place of work)

Continue until all students have responded.

i) Response Drill

MODEL:	Teacher:	khun thamŋaan thîi ___, châj máj khráp	You work at ___, don't you?
	Student:	mâj châj, phǒm thamŋaan thîi ______.	No, I don't. I work at ___.
	or:	khráp	Yes, I do. (whichever answer is correct.)

Continue until all students have responded at least once.

j) Response Drill

MODEL:	Teacher:	khun ____ thamŋaan thîi ____, châj máj khráp	Mr. ____, works at ____, doesn't he?
	Student:	châj khráp	Yes, he does.
	or:	mâj châj khráp, kháw thamŋaan thîi ____.	No, he doesn't. He works at ____.

k) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	phǒm pen khruu thîi rooŋrian níi	I'm a teacher at (this) school.
2.	phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ thîi rooŋphajabaan culaa	I'm a doctor at Chula[1] hospital.
3.	phǒm pen nákrian thîi éf és aj	I'm a student at FSI.
4.	phǒm pen thahǎanbòk thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	I'm a soldier at the Ministry of Defense.
5.	phǒm pen wítsawákɔɔn thîi juusít	I'm an engineer at USIS.
6.	phǒm pen phátthanaakɔɔn thîi juusɔ̂ɔm	I'm a community development worker at USOM.

l) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	phǒm pen nákrian thîinîi	I'm a student here.
éf-és-aj	phǒm pen nákrian thîi éf és aj	I'm a student at FSI.
khruu	phǒm pen khruu thîi éf és aj	I'm a teacher at FSI.

---

[1] Chula is an abbreviation for Chulalonghorn.

krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	phǒm pen khruu thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	I'm a teacher at the Ministry of Defense.
thahǎan rya	phǒm pen thahǎan rya thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	I'm a sailor at the Ministry of Defense.
mɔ̌ɔ	phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	I'm a doctor at the Ministry of Defense.
krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ thîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	I'm a doctor at the Foreign Ministry.
khâarâatchakaan	phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan thîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	I'm an employee of the Foreign Ministry.
juusít	phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan thîi juusít	I'm an employee of USIS
câwnâathîi	phǒm pen câwnâathîi thîi juusít	I'm an official of USIS.
sathǎanthûut	phǒm pen câwnâathîi thîi sathǎanthûut	I'm an official at the Embassy.

m) Transformation Drill

Combine the two sentences on the left to form one sentence.

Sentences 1 and 2	Sentence 3
1. kháw pen náksỳksǎa kháw rian thîi mahǎawítthajaalaj thammasàat	kháw pen náksỳksǎa thammasàat. 'He's a student at Thammasart.
2. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan kháw thamŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan sathǎanthûut 'He's an Embassy employee.

3.	phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan phǒm thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet I'm an employee of the Foreign Ministry
4.	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan kháw thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋ mahàatthaj	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ mahàatthaj He's an employee of the Interior Ministry
5.	kháw pen nákrian kháw rian thîi rooŋrianníi	kháw pen nákrian rooŋrianníi He's a student of this school.
6.	kháw pen nítsìt kháw rian thîi culaa	kháw pen nítsìt culaa He's a Chula student.

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
kháw maa càak juusít	kháw pen câwnâathîi juusít
kháw maa càak cátsamɛ̀ɛk	kháw pen câwnâathîi cátsamɛ̀ɛk
khon nán maa càak krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	khon nán pen câwnâathîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet
phátthanaakɔɔn khon nán maa càak krasuaŋ mahàatthaj	phátthanaakɔɔn khon nán pen câwnâathîi krasuaŋ mahàatthaj
phǒm maa càak sathǎanthûut ameerikan	phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut ameerikan
phûuchiâwchaan khon nán maa càak juusɔ̂ɔm	phûuthîawchaan khon nán pen câwnâathîi juusɔ̂ɔm

thahǎan khon nán maa càak kɔɔŋtháppbòk ameerikan	thahǎan khon nán pen câwnâathîi kɔɔŋtháppbòk ameerikan
phûuchaaj khon nán maa càak krom tamrùat	phûuchaaj khon nán pen câwnâathîi tamrùat

o) Transformation Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 into 3)

1.	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan kháw jùu thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan jùu thîi krasuaŋ kalaahɔ̌om
2.	kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj kháw jùu thîi éf és aj	kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj jùu thîi éf és aj
3.	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan thahǎan kháw jùu thîi pentaakɔɔn	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan thahǎan jùu thîi pentakɔɔn
4.	kháw pen mɔ̌ɔthahǎan kháw jùu thîi rooŋphajabaan nán	kháw pen mɔ̌ɔthahǎan jùu thîi rooŋphajabaan nán
5.	kháw pen phûuchîawchaan thaaŋ kasèt kháw jùu thîi juusɔ̌ɔm	kháw pen phûuchîawchaan thaaŋ kasèt jùu thîi juusɔ̂ɔm
6.	kháw pen câwnâathîi tamrùat kháw jùu thîi (caŋwàt) udɔɔn	kháw pen câwnâathîi tamrùat jùu thîi (caŋwàt) udɔɔn

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎaniirótfaj jùu thîi thanǒn phráraam sìi
   The train station is on Rama 4 Street.

2. hǔalamphooŋ jùu thîi thanǒn phráraam sìi
   Hualamphong is on Rama 4 Street.

3. sathǎaniirótfaj hǔalamphooŋ jùu thîi thanǒn phráraam sìi
   Hualamphong station is on Rama 4 Street.

4. sathǎanthûut jùu thîi thanǒn wítthajú
   The Embassy is on Wireless Road.

5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thîi thanǒn wítthajú
   The American Embassy is on Wireless Road.

6. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thîi thanǒn phát phoŋ
   The USIS auditorium is on Pat Pong Street.

7. juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîi thanǒn phétburii
   USOM is on Petburi Street.

8. juusít jùu thîi thanǒn sǎathɔɔn tâj
   USIS is on South Sathorn Street.

9. cát-sa-mɛ̀ɛk jùu thîi thanǒn sǎathɔɔn tâj
   JUSMAG is on South Sathorn Street.

10. thanaakhaan ameerikan jùu thîi thanǒn suriwoŋ
    The Bank of America is on Suriwong Street.

11. phii-éks jùu thîi khlɔɔŋ təəj
    The PX is at Klong Toei.

12. sapɔ̀ɔt khláp jùu thîi thanǒn sanǎam máa
    The Sports Club is on Race Track Road.

13. prajsanii klaaŋ jùu thîi thanǒn carəən kruŋ
The Main Post Office is on Charoen Krung Street.

q) Substitution Drill

Cue	
	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is USOM?
juusít	juusít jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is USIS?
sathǎanii rótfaj hǔalamphooŋ	sathǎanii rótfaj hǔalamphooŋ jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is Hualampong Railroad Station?
sathǎanthûut ameerikan	sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is the American Embassy?
thanaakhaan thaj	thanaakhaan thaj jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is the Thai Bank?
sapɔ̀ɔt khláp	sapɔ̀ɔt khláp jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is the Sports Club?
cátsamɛ̀ɛk	cátsamɛ̀ɛk jùu thìinǎj khráp Where is JUSMAG?
rooŋrɛɛm eerawan	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is the Erawan Hotel?
sǎalaa ameerikan	sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is the USIS Auditorium?
juusɔ̂ɔm	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is USOM?

r) Response Drill

MODEL:

Teacher:	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîi nǎj khráp	Where is USOM?
	thanǒn phétburii	Petburi Street
Student:	juu sɔ̂ɔm jùu thanǒn phétburii	USOM is on Petburi Street.

The teacher will continue the drill using real names and places on the map of Bangkok accompanying this lesson as the cues.

s) Variations on the Dialog: (Repeat the basic dialog using the following sets.)

1. krom tamrùat, câwnâathîi krasuaŋ mahàatthaj, thanǒn rachadamnəən
2. rooŋphajabaan jǐŋ, mɔ̌ɔ thîi rooŋphajabaan faràŋ, thanǒn phétburii
3. juusìt, câwnâathîi thanaakhan ameerikan, thanǒn suriwoŋ
4. ee-aj-dii, nítsìt kasètsàat, thanǒn phahǒnjoothin
5. cátsamɛ̀ɛk, naaŋphajabaan thîi rooŋphajabaan jǐŋ, thanǒn râatchawítthǐi

8.3 EXERCISES

a) Find out where various kinds of buildings in the neighborhood are located.

For example:
1. banks
2. universities
3. embassies
4. hotels
5. schools
6. the Post Office

b) •Find out the occupations and places of work of the students, the wives of students, and the friends of the students.

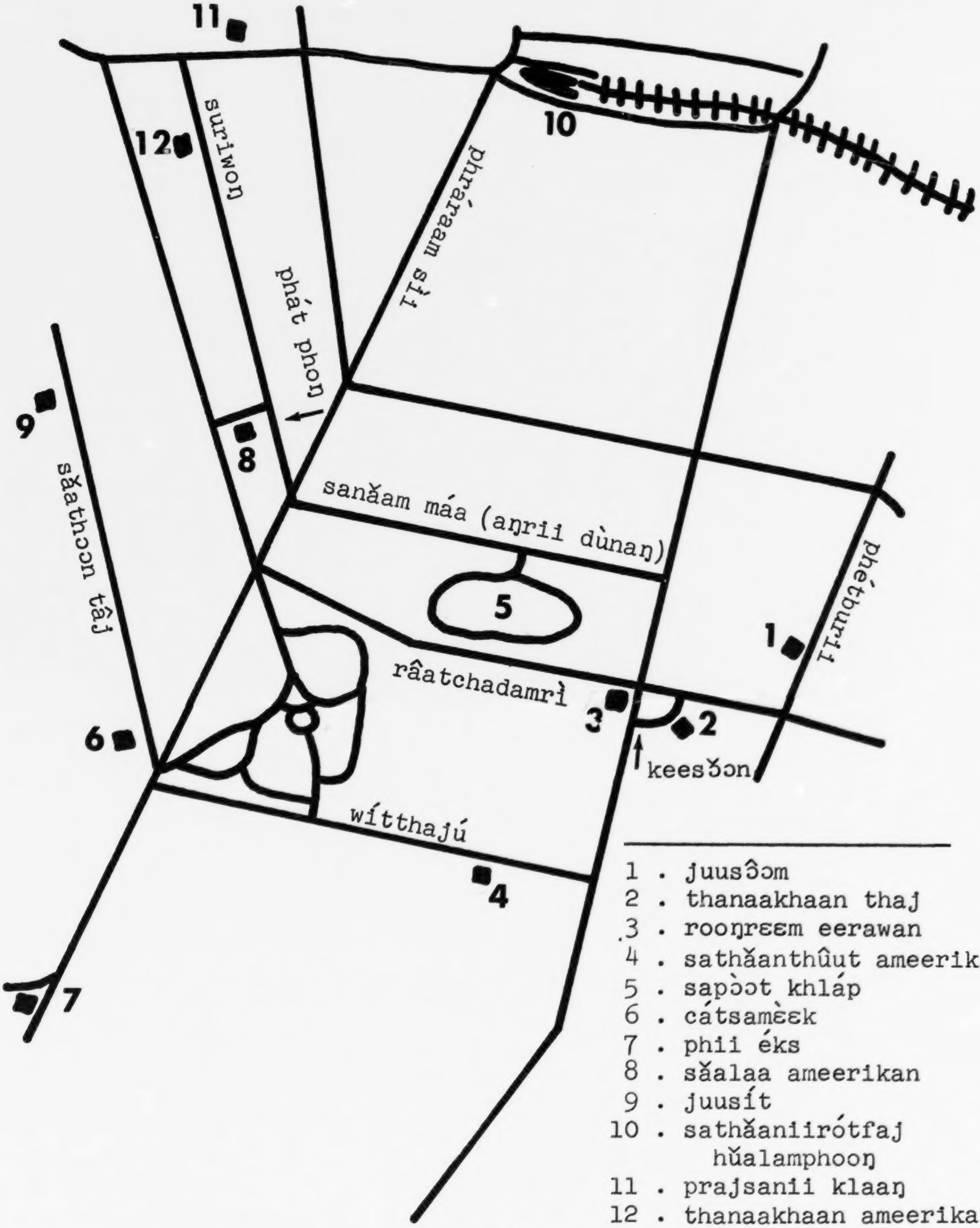
8.4 VOCABULARY

ee aj dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee juu ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
carəən kruŋ	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamὲεk	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâj (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsǔan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
culaa	Chula (an abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University)
éf és aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)
hǔalamphooŋ	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Information Service)
juusɔ̌ɔm	U.S.O.M. (United States Operations Mission)
kasètsàat	agriculture; also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thahǎan (khon)	military government employee
khlɔɔŋ təəj	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
kɔɔŋ	division (subdivision of a krom)

kɔɔŋtháp	the armed forces (of a country)
kɔɔŋtháp aakàat	the Air Forces
kɔɔŋtháp bòk	the Army
kɔɔŋtháp rya	the Navy
kaan	work, affairs
krasuaŋ kalaahǒom	Ministry of Defense
krasuaŋ mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamrùat	police department
mahǎawítthajaalaj	university
mɛ̂ɛbâan (khon)	housewife
mýankan	too, also
naaŋ (khon)	female, Mrs.
naaŋphajaabaan (khon)	female nurse
nâathîi	duty
náksỳksǎa (khon)	student
nítsìt (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
ŋaan	work
pentaakɔɔn	the Pentagon
phahǒnjoothin	Phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phát phoŋ	Pat Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakɔɔn (khon)	a community development worker
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phɔ̂ɔ (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phɔ̂ɔ kháa	merchant
phráaathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phráraam sìi	Rama the Fourth (street)

prajsanii klaaŋ	the main post office
phûuchîawchaan (khon)	an expert
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
sǎalaa (lǎŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
râatchadamnəən	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamrì	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithǐi	Rajawithee (Road)
rooŋ	building
rya (lam)	boat
sanǎam máa	race track (name of a street in Bangkok)
sapɔ̀ɔt khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sathǎan (hɛ̀ŋ)	place, location
sathǎanii (hɛ̀ŋ)	station
sathǎanii rótfaj (hɛ̀ŋ)	the railroad station
sǎathɔɔn tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sìi	four
sɔ̌ɔn dɛɛŋ	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)
suriwoŋ	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sỳksǎa	to study, learn
tamrùat (khon)	police
thaaŋ kasèt	agricultural
thahǎan aakàat (khon)	airman
thahǎan bòk (khon)	soldier
thahǎan rya (khon)	sailor
thammasàat	Thammasart (university in Bangkok)
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanǒn (sǎaj)	street, road

thîi nǎj	where (as question word); anywhere (in negative statement)
thîi nîi	here
thûut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
wítsawákɔɔn (khon)	an engineer
wítthajú	Withayu (Thai name of a street), Wireless Road (English name)


11
12
10
suriwoŋ
phát phoŋ
phráraam sìi
9
8
sǎathɔɔn tâj
sanǎam máa (aŋrii dùnaŋ)
phétburìi
5
1
râatchadamrì
3
2
keesɔ̌ɔn
6
wítthajú
4
7

1 . juusɔ̂ɔm
2 . thanaakhaan thaj
3 . rooŋrɛɛm eerawan
4 . sathǎanthûut ameerikan
5 . sapɔ̀ɔt khláp
6 . cátsamɛ̀ɛk
7 . phii éks
8 . sǎalaa ameerikan
9 . juusít
10 . sathǎaniirótfaj
hǔalamphooŋ
11 . prajsanii klaaŋ
12 . thanaakhaan ameerikan

LESSON NINE

9.0 BASIC DIALOG: Going to Don Muang to Pick up a Friend.

A:	paj nǎj maa khráp	Where have you been?
B:	paj duu nǎŋ maa	To a movie.
	khun kamlaŋ ca paj nǎj	Where are you about to go to?
A:	paj dɔɔn myaŋ	To Don Muang (airport).
	paj dûajkan máj	Want to go along?
B:	mâj ahá	No, (thanks)
	khun ca paj thammaj	Why are you going?
A:	paj ráp phŷan	To pick up a friend.
B:	mεεrîi mâj jùu lə̌	Mary isn't home?
A:	jùu	She is.
B:	kháw mâj dâj paj ajútthajaa lə̌	She didn't go to Ayuthaya?
A:	khráp	That's right.
	mâj dâj paj	She didn't go.
B:	kháw kamlaŋ tham araj	What's she doing?
A:	duu náŋsy̌y	She's studying.

9.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Thai verbs do not have tense, i.e. there are no changes in form that correlate with time as in English (see:saw, etc.) The time or state of an action is indicated by the use of time (ca, etc.) and aspect (kamlaŋ, etc.) particles. The use and meaning of these particles and various words relating to time and frequency of occurrence are illustrated on the chart on the next page, which is arranged in normal sentence word order.

Time Words	Subject	Time and aspect Particles		Verb Phrases	Freq. Word	Meaning
	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Time Unspecified(1)
	(phǒm)			paj talàat	thúk wan(2)	Repeated action
weelaa níi khanàníi (3)	(phǒm)	kamlaŋ		paj talàat		Present time action in progress
	(phǒm)	kamlaŋ	ca	paj talàat		Action imminent
	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
dǐaw wanníi phrûŋníi(4)	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
mŷawaanníi mŷa kîiníi wanníi (5)	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Past
	(phǒm)	khəəj		paj talàat		Indefinite Past
	(phǒm)			paj talàat maa		Action just completed, returned to former place

NOTES:

1) 'Time unspecified' means only that there is no formal indication of time in the sentence.
2) thúk wan 'everyday'
3) weelaa níi 'at this time', khanà níi 'at present'
4) dǐaw 'soon', wanníi 'today', phrûŋníi 'tomorrow'
5) mŷawaanníi 'yesterday', mŷakîiníi 'a short time ago'

b) In questions the question word may play a role in the indication of time or of the state of the action. For example,

Future time:	ca paj máj	'Will you go?'
Past time:	paj rýplàaw	'Did you go?'
Habitual action:	paj thúk wan rýplàaw	'Do you go everyday?'

The question word may also serve to signify the speaker's purpose in asking the question: seeking information, issuing an invitation, asking for confirmation of something he is more or less sure about, indicating surprise, etc. The chart below illustrates the meaning and use of various question words.

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirmative	Negative
paj	máj	Invitation	paj	mâj ahá lakhráp
ca paj	máj	Future	paj	mâj mâj paj
paj thúk wan	rýplàaw	Habitual	thúk wan	mâj thúkwan

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirmative	Negative
mŷawaanníi... paj	rýplàaw	Past	paj	plàaw mâj dâj paj
kháw ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ mŷawaanníi kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ maa	châj máj	Confirmation of what one is very sure about	hŷy khráp châj	mâj châj plàaw
kháw ca kamlaŋ ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	lə̌ lə̌há ry̌y khráp	Confirmation of what one is less sure about	khráp hŷy	plàaw
kháw kamlaŋ paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ				
mŷawaanníi kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	lə̌ lə̌há ry̌y khráp	Confirmation of what one is less sure about	khráp hŷy	plàaw mâj dâj paj
kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ maa			khráp hŷy	plàaw mâj dâj paj

NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

kháw ca mâj paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	lə̌ ry̌y	Future	paj	hŷy, khráp mâj paj
khun mâj paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ		Intention	paj	hŷy, khráp mâj (paj)
(mŷaaaanníi) mâj dâj paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ		Past	paj	hŷy, khráp mâj dâj paj

NOTE: Between intimates hŷy (pronounced with strong nasal quality) may replace khráp.

9.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

Cue (Teacher)	Question (Student 1)	Response (Student 2)
thúrá	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thúrá maa 'Out on business.'
thîaw ajútthajaa	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thîaw ajútthajaa maa On excursion to Ayuthaya.
duu nǎŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj duu nǎŋ maa To a movie.
thaan khâaw	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thaan khâaw maa To eat.
sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ maa Shopping.
hɔ̂ŋsamùt	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt maa To the library.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	
1. hɔ̂ŋsamùt	dǐaw (khun) ca paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt máj Are you going to the library soon?
2. hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp máj Are you going to the laboratory soon?
3. hɔ̂ŋ aahǎan	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋaahǎan máj Are you going to the dining room soon?
4. hɔ̂ŋnáam	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋnáam máj Are you going to the toilet soon?
5. hɔ̂ŋrian	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋrian máj Are you going to the classroom soon?
6. hɔ̂ŋrian phaasǎa thaj	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋrian phaasǎa thaj máj Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?
7. hɔ̂ŋthamŋaan	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋthamŋaan máj Are you going to the work room soon?
8. hɔ̂ŋthabian	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋthabian máj Are you going to the registrar's soon?
9. hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp máj Are you going to the telephone room soon?
10. hɔ̂ŋaahǎan	dǐaw ca paj hɔ̂ŋaahǎan máj Are you going to the dining hall soon?

c) Response Drill (Respond according to situation.)

MODEL: Teacher: dǐaw (khun) ca paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp máj
Are you going to the laboratory soon?

Student: Affirmative: paj khráp I am.
Negative: mâj paj khráp I am not.

1. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt máj
Are you going to the library soon?

2. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋaahǎan máj
Are you going to the dining room soon?

3. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋnám máj
Are you going to the toilet soon?

4. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋrian máj
Are you going to the classroom soon?

5. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋrian phaasǎa thaj máj
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?

6. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋthamŋaan máj
Are you going to the work room soon?

7. dǐaw khun ca paj sathǎanii rótfaj máj
Are you going to the Railroad Station soon?

8. dǐaw khun ca paj rooŋrɛɛm raamâa máj
Are you going to Hotel Rama soon?

9. dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋthabian máj
Are you going to the registrar's room soon?

10. dǐaw khun ca paj sanǎambin máj
Are you going to the Airport soon?

(Students ask each other the same questions.)

d) Response Drill

MODEL 1: Cue: No
Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráanaahǎan máj
Response: mâj paj khráp

MODEL 2: Cue: Yes.
Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ máj
Response: paj khráp

Cue	Pattern	Response
no	wanníi ca paj ráankaafɛɛ máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thîithamŋaan máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj talàat máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp máj	paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj thîaw máj	mâj paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ máj	mâj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thurá máj	paj khráp
no		mâj paj khráp

e) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	dǐaw (khun) ca paj rooŋrian máj Are you going to school soon?
prajsanii	dǐaw (khun) ca paj prajsanii máj Are you going to the post office soon?

wanníi	wanníi ca paj prajsanii máj Are you going to the Post Office today?
sathǎanthûut	wanníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy today?
phrûŋníi	phrûŋníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy tomorrow?
juusít	phrûŋníi ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS tomorrow?
dǐaw	dǐaw ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS soon?
thanakhaan ameerikan	dǐaw ca paj thanakhaan ameerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America soon?
phrûŋníi	phrûŋníi ca paj thanakhaan amerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America tomorrow?

f) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. no	dǐaw mâj paj ráanaahǎan rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the restaurant soon?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
2. yes	wanníi mâj paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the lab today?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûŋníi mâj paj sathǎanthûut rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the embassy tomorrow?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.

4.	yes	phrûŋníi mâj paj juusít rə̌khráp Aren't you going to USIS tomorrow?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
5.	no	wanníi mâj paj krasuaŋtàaŋ prathêet rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the State Department today?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
6.	yes	dǐaw mâj paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the library soon?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
7.	no	dǐaw mâj paj ráanaahǎan rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the library soon?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
8.	yes	wanníi mâj paj hɔ̂ŋprachum rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the auditorium soon?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
9.	no	wanníi mâj paj rooŋphajaabaan rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the hospital today?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
10.	yes	phrûŋníi mâj paj talàat rə̌khráp Aren't you going to the market tomorrow?	paj khráp Yes, I am.

g) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
thîithamŋaan	khun paj thîithamŋaan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the office every day?
thanakhaan	khun paj thanakhaan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the bank every day?
ráanaahǎan	khun paj ráanaahǎan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the restaurant every day?
krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet	khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the State Department every day?
juusɔ̂ɔm	khun paj juusɔ̂ɔm thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to USOM every day?
juusít	khun paj juusít thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to USIS everyday?
bâan	khun klàp bâan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go home every day?

h) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun paj thîithamŋaan thúk wan rýplàaw
Do you go to the office everyday?

Affrimative Answer: thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.

Negative Answer: mâj thúk wan khráp No, not everyday.

Cue	Question	Response
1. yes	khun paj thanakhaan thúk rýplàaw? Do you go to the bank everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.
2. no	khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the market everyday?	mâj thúk wan No, not everyday.
3. yes	khun paj krasuaŋtàaŋ prathêet thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the Foreign Ministry everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.
4. yes	khun paj rooŋrian thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the school everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.
5. no	khun paj rooŋphajaabaan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the hospital everyday?	mâj thúk wan No, not everyday.
6. no	khun paj prajsanii thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the post office everyday?	mâj thúk wan No, not everyday.
7. yes	khun paj thamŋaan thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to work everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.

8.	no	khun paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the Embassy everyday?	mâj thúk wan No, not everyday.
9.	yes	khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the Department of State everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.
10.	yes	khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go buy food everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.
11.	no	khun paj sathǎankoŋsǔn thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the Consulate everyday.	thúk wan khráp No, not everyday.
12.	yes	khun paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the laboratory everyday?	thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.

i) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the State Department every day?	khun mâj dâj paj krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go to the State Department everyday?
2.	khun paj rooŋrian thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the school everyday?	khun mâj dâj paj rooŋrian thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go to the school everyday?

3.	khun paj lên kɔ́ɔf thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go play golf everyday?	khun mâj dâj pâj lên kɔ́ɔf thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go play golf everyday.
4.	khun paj wâaj nám thúk wan rə̌khráp Do you go swimming everyday.	khun mâj dâj paj wâaj nám thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go swimming everyday?
5.	khun paj ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the shops everyday?	khun mâj dâj paj ráankhǎaj khɔ̌ɔŋ thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go to the shops everyday?
6.	khun paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the laboratory everyday?	khun mâj dâj paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go to the laboratory everyday?
7.	khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go buy food everyday?	khun mâj dâj paj sýy kàpkhâaw thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go buy food everyday?
8.	khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw Do you go to the market everyday?	khun mâj pâj paj talàat thúk wan rə̌khráp Don't you go to the market everyday?

j) Response Drill

MODEL:	Cue:	Yes[1]	
	Question:	khun mâj dâj paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan rə̌khráp	Don't you go to the Embassy everyday?
	Response:	paj (thúk wan) khráp	Yes, I do.
	Cue:	No[1]	
	Question:	khun mâj dâj paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan rə̌khráp	Don't you go to the Embassy everyday?
	Response:	khráp mâj dâj paj (thúk wan) khráp	No, I don't.

Cue		Pattern
1.	yes	khun mâj dâj paj juusɔ̂ɔm thúk wan rə̌khráp
2.	no	khun mâj dâj paj thîi thamŋaan thúk wan rə̌khráp
3.	yes	khun mâj dâj lên thennít thúk wan rə̌khráp
4.	no	khun mâj dâj paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ thúk wan rə̌khráp
5.	yes	khun mâj dâj paj rooŋrian thúk wan rə̌khráp
6.	no	khun mâj dâj wâaj nám thúk wan rə̌khráp
7.	yes	khun mâj dâj paj sapɔ̀ɔt khláp thúk wan rə̌khráp
8.	no	khun mâj dâj paj thanakhaan ameerikan thúk wan rə̌khráp
9.	yes	khun mâj dâj paj thurá thúk wan rə̌khráp

---

[1] Yes indicates that the answer is in the affirmative; No, in the negative. However, since the question is in the negative, a No answer confirms the question; whereas, a Yes answer denies it.

k) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	mŷawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut Yesterday I went to the embassy.
mŷakíiníi	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut A short time ago I went to the embassy.
hɔ̂ŋnám	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj hɔ̂ŋnám A short time ago I went to the toilet.
hɔ̂ŋsamùt	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt A short time ago I went to the library.
faŋ théep thîi hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj faŋ théep thîi hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp A short time ago I went to listen to tapes in the language laboratory.
thaan aahǎan	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj thaan aahǎan A short time ago I went to eat.
sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi talàat	mŷakíiníi phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi talàat A short time ago I went shopping at the market.
mŷawaanníi	mŷawaanníi phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi talàat Yesterday I went shopping at the market.
prajsanii	mŷawaanníi phǒm paj prajsanii Yesterday I went to the Post Office.

l) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Statements)

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
mŷawaanníi phŏm paj talàat	mŷawaanníi phŏm mâj dâj paj talàat
mŷawaanníi phŏm paj thaan aahǎan thîi rooŋrɛɛm eerawan	mŷawaanníi phŏm mâj dâj paj thaan aahǎan thîi rooŋrɛɛm eerawan
mŷawaanníi phŏm paj rooŋrian	mŷawaanníi phŏm mâj dâj paj rooŋrian
mŷawaanníi phŏm paj sathǎanthûut	mŷawaanníi phŏm mâj dâj paj sathǎanthûut
mŷawaanníi phŏm paj thurá thîi prajsanii	mŷawaanníi phŏm mâj dâj paj thurá thîi prajsanii
mŷakíiníi phŏm paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp	mŷakíiníi phŏm mâj dâj paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp

m) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	mŷawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw khráp
sathǎanthûut	mŷawaanníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp
mŷakîiníi[1]	mŷakîiníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp
hɔ̂ŋsamùt	mŷakîiníi khun paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt rýplàaw khráp
hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp	mŷakîiníi khun paj hɔ̂ŋ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp

---

[1] mŷakíiníi may be pronounced mŷakîiníi or mŷakíi or mŷakîi.

mŷawaanníi	mŷawaanníi khun paj hɔ̂ŋ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp
sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	mŷawaanníi khun paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ rýplàaw khráp
hǎa mɔ̌ɔ	mŷawaanníi khun paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ rýplàaw khráp
ráp phŷan thîi dɔɔn myaŋ	mŷawaanníi khun paj ráp phŷan thîi dɔɔn myaŋ rýplàaw khráp

n) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
no	mŷawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	mâj dâj paj plàaw khráp No, I didn't.
yes	mŷawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	paj khráp Yes, I did.
no	mŷawaanníi khun paj thurá thîi thanaakhaan rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj plàaw khráp
yes	mŷawaanníi khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet rýplàaw	paj khráp
no	mŷawaanníi khun paj thamŋaan rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj plàaw khráp
yes	mŷawaanníi khun paj aàn náŋsýy thîi hɔ̂ŋsamùt rýplàaw	paj khráp
no	mŷawaanníi khun paj sòŋ còtmǎaj rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj plàaw khráp

yes	mŷawaanníi khun paj faŋ théep thîi hɔ̂ŋ lɛ̀ɛp rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj paj khráp
no	mŷawaanníi khun paj lên thenní t thîi sapɔ̀ɔt khláp rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj plàaw khráp

o) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Question)

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
mŷawaanníi khun paj thîaw rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj thîaw rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun paj rooŋphajaabaan rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj rooŋphajaabaan rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj thîi éf-és-aj rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj maa rian phaasǎathaj thîi éf-és-aj rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun paj thamŋaan rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj thamŋaan rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun phóp kháw thîi sathǎanii rótfaj rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj phóp kháw thîi sathǎanii rótfaj rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun paj kin aahǎan thaj thîi ráanaahǎan cennîi rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj kin aahǎanthaj thîi ráanaahǎan cennîi rə̌khráp

mŷawaanníi khun paj ráp phŷan thîi sanǎambin nɛɛchanan rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj ráp phŷan thîi sanǎambin nɛɛchanan rə̌khráp
mŷawaanníi khun tham kàpkhâaw thîi bâan rýplàaw	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj tham kàp khâaw thîi bâan rə̌khráp

Ask each student one of the affirmative questions above, and then ask him the same question in the negative (or in reverse order). His answers should be based on the facts of the situation.

p) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions)

	Question	Response
1.	mŷawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj ajútthajaa lə̌khráp Didn't you go to Ayuthaya yesterday?	khráp (mâj dâj paj) mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
2.	khun mâj dâj paj duu nǎŋ lə̌ Did you go to the movies?	khráp (mâj dâj paj) mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
3.	dǐaw khun ca paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt máj Are you going to the library soon?	mâj mâj paj No, I'm not.
4.	wanníi khun ca paj lên thennít máj Are you going to play tennis today?	mâj mâj paj No, I'm not.

5.	phrûŋníi khun ca paj bâan kháw máj Are you going to his house tomorrow?	mâj mâj paj No, I'm not.

q) Response Drill (Response negatively or affirmatively according to the cue word.)

Cue	Question	Response
yes	kháw mâj dấj paj ajútthajaa lə̌ He didn't go to Ayuthaya?	paj Yes, he went.
yes	kháw mâj dâj paj krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet lə̌ Didn't he go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?	paj Yes, he went.
yes	kháw mâj dâj paj ráp phŷan thîi dɔɔn myaŋ lə̌ Didn't he go pick up his friend at Don Muang?	paj Yes, he went.
no	mɛɛrîi mâj dâj paj ajúthajaa lə̌ Didn't Mary go to Ayuthaya?	khráp (mâj dâj paj) mâj dâj paj No, she didn't.
no	khun mâj dâj paj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp lə̌ Didn't you go to the lab?	khráp (mâj dâj paj) mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
no	khun mâj dâj paj thaan khâaw maa lə̌ Haven't you been to eat?	khráp (mâj dâj paj) mâj dâj paj No, I haven't.

r) Substitution Drill (Student 2 is to supply an 'activity' that fits the location given.)

MODEL: Cue words: wanníi... prajsanii

Student 1: wanníi phǒm ca paj prajsanii

Student 2: khun ca paj sòŋ còtmǎaj rə̌khráp

Student 1: khráp

1. dǐaw... ráanaahǎan
2. phrûŋníi... rooŋphajabaan
3. wanníi... talàat
4. mŷawaanníi... thanakhaan (thurá)
5. dǐaw... hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp
6. mŷakíi... hɔ̂ŋsamùt
7. wanníi... sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ
8. dǐaw... hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp
9. mŷawaanníi... thîithamŋaan
10. dǐaw... ráankaafɛɛ

Note to the instructor: If the students have difficulty supplying an activity to go with drill, the instructor may suggest one.

9.4 EXERCISES

Find out from other students:

a. If they went to any of the following places yesterday:

1. school
2. post office
3. Bank of America
4. market
5. work
6. a restaurant

4

b) Where they will go tomorrow.

c) Where they did any of the following things:

1. went to work
2. went shopping
3. went to see the doctor
4. went to mail a letter
5. went for a walk
6. played tennis

d) If they went to the following places a short time ago.

1. laboratory
2. library
3. home
4. school
5. a restaurant
6. to work
7. Boston

e) Who did any of the following things a short time ago.

1. go to the bank
2. play golf
3. go home
4. go to the hospital
5. repair a car
6. cook food
7. do some typing
8. read a book
9. make a phone call

f) What they do everyday.

g) If they didn't do any of the following things yesterday:

1. drink coffee
2. eat food
3. go shopping
4. go to the lab
5. speak Thai
6. go to the Registrar's
7. study (at home)
8. speak English
9. went to pick up a friend
10. work

h) If they will do any of the following things today:

1. go to the doctor's
2. play music
3. teach
4. go on business
5. write a book
6. go to work
7. go home
8. go to the library
9. swim
10. eat

9.5 VOCABULARY

bin	to fly
ca	will, shall (future particle)
cennîi	Jenny (name)
dǐaw	soon
dɔɔn myaŋ	Don Muang (The name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
faŋ	to listen
hɔ̂ŋ (hɔ̂ŋ)	room
hɔ̂ŋ aahǎan (hɔ̂ŋ)	dining room, dining hall
hɔ̂ŋ lɛ̀ɛp (hɔ̂ŋ)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hɔ̂ŋ nám (hɔ̂ŋ)	toilet
hɔ̂ŋ prachum (hɔ̂ŋ)	auditorium
hɔ̂ŋ samùt (hɔ̂ŋ)	library
hɔ̂ŋ thabian (hɔ̂ŋ)	registrar's (office)
hɔ̂ŋ thamŋaan (hɔ̂ŋ)	work room
hɔ̂ŋ thoorasàp (hɔ̂ŋ)	telephone room
kamlaŋ	aspect particle indicating action in process
kàp, ka-	with
khǎaj	to sell

koŋsǔn (khon)	the Consul
kɔ́ɔf	golf
lɛ̀ɛp (hɔ̂ŋ)	lab (English loan)
mŷa kíi níi, mŷakíi, mŷakîi	a short time ago
mŷawaanníi	yesterday
phrûŋníi	tomorrow
ráan kaafɛɛ (ráan)	coffee shop
ráp	to receive, accept
(paj / maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something
samə̌ə	always, regularly, consistently
sanǎam (hɛ̀ŋ)	field (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanǎam bin (hɛ̀ŋ)	airport
sathǎan koŋsǔn (hɛ̀ŋ)	the Consulate
sòŋ	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
tɛ̀ɛ	but
thammaj	why (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thúk	every, each
wanníi	today

LESSON TEN
(REVIEW)

10.0 BASIC EPISODE:

khun cɔɔn naamsakun samít pen khon amerikan. kháw thamŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut amerikan. bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu thîi thanɔ̌n wítthajú. bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jàj lɛ́ sabaaj.

khun cɔɔn maa càak myaŋ denwə̂ə rát khoolooradôo. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw chŷy maaria, maa càak myaŋ sapriŋfil rát wəəcinia. phanrajaa khun cɔɔn sǔaj mâak.

khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ mâak. kháw khəəj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa khɔ̌ɔŋ krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj dii tɛ̀ kháw khǐan mâj pen. kháw chɔ̂ɔp phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khon thaj samə̌ə. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii mýankan. kháw mâj khəəj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi rooŋrian. kháw rian càak khon thaj naj talàat, ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ lɛ́ taam thanɔ̌n.

10.1 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE

1. khun cɔɔn naamsakun araj
2. kháw pen khon châat araj
3. kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj
4. bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu thîinǎj

5. khun cɔɔn maa càak rát araj, myaŋ araj
6. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw chŷy araj
7. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw maa càak nǎj
8. khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
9. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
10. kháw khǐan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
11. phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
12. kháw khəəj rian thîi rooŋrian máj
13. kháw rian phaasǎa thaj càak khraj

10.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS[1]

a) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: mii burii máj khráp

Do you have a cigarette?

Student: Affirmative: mii khráp Yes, I do.

Negative: mâj mii khráp No, I don't.

Cue words:

dinsɔ̌ɔ
kâwîi
kradàat
faj
naalikaa
náŋsy̌y
naŋsy̌yphim
ŋəən
pàakkaa
phŷan
phɛ̌ɛnthîi
rûup
samùt
tó
khruu

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

(mâj mii burìi rýkhráp).

---

[1] The purpose of drills a through o is to improve fluency; therefore, they should be done rapidly, so that the student will learn to respond automatically.

b) Response Drill (Perform as in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: phɛ̌ɛnthîi dii máj
Is the map good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp — Yes, it is.
Negative: mâj dii khráp — No, it isn't.

Cue words:
náŋsy̌y
kháw
rooŋrian
khruu
pàakkaa
dinsɔ̌ɔ
naalikaa
samùt
aakàat
kradàat

Repeat this drill using negative questions.

c) Response Drill (As in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: aakàat dii máj
Is the weather good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp — Yes, it is.
Negative: mâj dii khráp — No, it isn't.

Cue words:
nǎaw
khun
sǔaj
rûup
pàakkaa
dii
aahǎan
rɔ́ɔn
kháw
dii

Repeat the drill using negative questions.

d) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	nánsy̌y lêm nǎj dii	lêm nán
2.	kâwîi tua nǎj dii	tua nán
3.	phûuchaaj khon nǎj phûut phaasǎa thai kèŋ	khon nán
4.	naŋphajabaan khon nǎj sǔaj	khon nán
5.	dinsɔ̌ɔ thɛ̂ŋ nǎj dii	thɛ̂ŋ nán
6.	tó tua nǎj sǔaj	tua nán
7.	câw nâathîi khon nǎj nǎaw	khon nán
8.	rûup baj nǎj sǔaj	baj nán
9.	phɛ̌ɛnthîi phɛ̀n nǎj dii	phɛ̀n nán
10.	khruu khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn	khon nán

Repeat this drill using níi for nán in the responses.

e) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun khəəj pen thahǎan máj	khəəj khráp
2.	khun khəəj paj parîit máj	khəəj khráp
3.	khun khəəj paj thîaw kruŋ room máj	khəəj khráp
4.	khun khəəj thamŋaan thîi juusít máj	khəəj khráp
5.	khun khəəj rian phaasǎa phamâa máj	khəəj khráp
6.	khun khəəj jùu tàaŋ prathêet máj	khəəj khráp
7.	khun khəəj kin aahǎan thaj máj	khəəj khráp
8.	khun khəəj pen nítsìt culaa máj	khəəj khráp
9.	khun khəəj sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y máj	khəəj khráp
10.	khun khəəj mii rót faràŋ máj	khəəj khráp

Repeat the above drill with negative responses: (mâj khəəj).
Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

f) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun khàp rót pen máj	pen khráp
2.	khun tham kàp khâaw pen máj	pen khráp
3.	khun lên dontrii pen máj	pen khráp
4.	khun wâaj nám pen máj	pen khráp
5.	khun phim náŋsy̌y pen máj	pen khráp
6.	khun àan náŋsy̌y thaj pen máj	pen khráp
7.	khun phûut phaasǎa juan pen máj	pen khráp

Repeat the drill with negative responses: (mâj pen).

g) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj for pen in questions and responses).

h) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting kèŋ for pen in questions and responses.)

NOTE: In Drills f, g, and h, the questions may be asked in the negative, as in the following examples:

From drill f: khun khàp rót mâj pen rə̌khráp

From drill g: khun khàp rót mâj dâj rə̌khráp

From drill h: khun khàp rót mâj kèŋ rə̌khráp

i) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj dii for pen in the questions and dii for pen in answers.)

j) Response Drill (Give a negative response to each question).

	Question	Response
1.	mŷawaanníi paj thanaakhan rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj
	Did you go to the bank yesterday?	No, I didn't.
2.	mŷawaanníi paj duu nǎŋ rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj
	Did you go to the movies yesterday?	No, I didn't.
3.	mŷakîiníi paj thaan kaafɛɛ rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj
	Did you go drink coffee a short time ago?	No, I didn't.
4.	mŷakhyynníi duu thii wii rýplàaw	mâj dâj duu
	Did you watch TV last night?	No, I didn't.
5.	mŷacháawníi maa rooŋrian rýplàaw	mâj dâj maa
	Did you come to school this morning?	No, I didn't.
6.	mŷawaanníi paj wâaj nám rýplàaw	mâj dâj paj
	Did you go swimming yesterday?	No, I didn't.

k) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the questions.)

	Question	Response
1.	kháw jùu máj	mâj jùu
	Is he in?	No, he isn't.
2.	khruu jùu máj	mâj jùu
	Is the teacher in?	No, she isn't.
3.	phanrajaa khun jùu máj	mâj jùu
	Is your wife in?	No, she isn't.

4. mɔ̌ɔ jùu máj	mâj jùu
Is the doctor in?	No, he isn't.
5. nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw khun jùu máj	mâj jùu
Is your younger sister in?	No, she isn't.

Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

1) Response Drill (Respond negatively to these questions.)[1]

Question	Response
1. rooŋrian nán jùu nâj krunthêep rýplàaw	mâj dâj jùu
Is that school in Bangkok?	No, it isn't.
2. udɔɔn jùu phâak isǎan rýplàaw	mâj dâj jùu
Is Udorn in N.E. Thailand?	No, it isn't.
3. sathǎan kɔŋsǔn thaj jùu thîi myaŋ njuu jɔ́ɔk rýplàaw	mâj dâj jùu
Is the Thai consulate in New York city?	No, it isn't.
4. juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thanǒn sǐilom rýplàaw	mâj dâj jùu
Is USOM on Silom Street?	No, it isn't.
5. bâan khun jùu thanǒn sǎathɔɔn rýplàaw	mâj dâj jùu
Is your house on Sathorn Street?	No, it isn't.

NOTE: Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

---

[1] In drill K the subject of the sentence is an animate noun; in drill L it is an inanimate noun. Observe the contrast in usage:

Drill K: Question: ...jùu máj Answer: mâj jùu

Drill L: Question: ...jùu... rýplàaw Answer: mâj dâj jùu

m) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the invitations.)

	Invitation	Response
1.	paj kin khâaw dûajkan máj	paj khráp
	Shall we go eat together?	Yes, let's.
2.	paj thîaw myaŋ thaj dûajkan máj	paj khráp
	Shall we take a pleasure trip to Thailand?	Yes, let's do that.
3.	paj duu nǎŋ dûajkan máj	paj khráp
	Shall we go to a movie?	Yes, let's go.
4.	paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ dûajkan máj	paj khráp
	Shall we go shopping?	Yes, let's.
5.	paj ráp phŷan thîi sathǎanii rótfaj dûajkan máj	paj khráp
	Shall we go pick up (our) friend at the train station?	Yes, let's go.

(Respond negatively to the above invitations (mâj paj).

n) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions.)

	Questions	Response
1.	kháw ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ lə̌	plàaw khráp
	Is he going shopping?	No, he isn't.
2.	kháw ca paj thîaw lə̌	plàaw khráp
	Is he going out?	No, he isn't.

3.	khun ca tham aahǎan lə̌ Are you going to cook?	plàaw khráp No, I'm not.
4.	khun ca khǐan còtmǎj lə̌ Are you going to write a letter?	plàaw khráp No, I'm not.
5.	phanrajaa khun ca paj wîatnaam lə̌ Is your wife going to Vietnam ?	plàaw khráp No, she isn't.

Give affirmative answers (khráp) to the above questions.

o) Response Drill (Give affirmative answers.)

	Question	Response
1.	khun kamlaŋ ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ rýkhráp Are you on the point of going shopping?	khráp Yes, I am.
2.	phanrajaa khun kamlaŋ ca paj duu nǎŋ rýkhráp Is your wife just about ready to go to a movie?	khráp Yes, she is.
3.	khun kamlaŋ ca sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y rýkhráp Are you about to begin teaching?	khráp Yes, I am.
4.	lûuk khun kamlaŋ ca paj rooŋrian rýkhráp Are your children just about to leave for school?	khráp Yes, they are.
5.	khruu kamlaŋ ca paj hɔ̂ɔŋ lɛ̀ɛp rýkhráp Is the teacher on the point of going to the language lab?	khráp Yes, he is.

Respond negatively to the above questions.

p) Sentence Combination Drill

Using tɛ̀ɛ 'but' as a linking word combine the two sentences to form a new one, as in the example below:

Sentence 1: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen
He can speak Thai.

Sentence 2: kháw khǐan (phaasǎa thaj) mâj pen
He can't write Thai.

New Sentence: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen tɛ̀ɛ khǐan mâj pen
He can speak Thai, but (he) can't write it.

	Sentences 1 and 2	
1.	kháw pen khondii kháw pen khon mâj sǔaj	kháw pen khondii tɛ̀ɛ mâj sǔaj
2.	kháw pen khonsǔaj kháw pen khon mâj dii	kháw pen khonsǔaj tɛ̀ɛ mâj dii
3.	kháw phûut kèŋ kháw thamŋaan mâj kèŋ	kháw phûut kèŋ tɛ̀ɛ thamŋaan mâj kèŋ
4.	kháw pen khonthaj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj pen	kháw pen khonthaj tɛ̀ɛ phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj pen
5.	kháw nǎaw phǒm rɔ́ɔn	kháw nǎaw tɛ̀ɛ phǒm rɔ́ɔn
6.	kháw dii phanrajaa kháw mâj dii	kháw dii tɛ̀ɛ phanrajaa kháw mâj dii

7.	phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sɔ̀ŋ náŋsy̌y nɔ̀ɔj' kháw sɔ̀ŋ pàakkaa	phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sɔ̀ŋ náŋsy̌y nɔ̀ɔj' tɛ̀ɛ kháw sɔ̀ŋ pàakkaa
8.	naaŋphajabaan jùu mɔ̌ɔ mâj jùu	naaŋphajabaan jùu tɛ̀ɛ mɔ̌ɔ mâj jùu
9.	phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet dâj phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet mâj kèŋ	phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet dâj tɛ̀ɛ mâj kèŋ
10.	kháw lên thennít dâj kháw lên thennít mâj kèŋ	kháw lên thennít dâj tɛ̀ɛ mâj kèŋ

10.3 EXERCISE

a) Have each student tell his own life story in the manner of the Basic Episode (10.0).

b) When student A has finished his short biography, student B will ask student C questions about it. This procedure should continue until each student has taken all three roles.

10.4 VOCABULARY

àan	to read
chɔ̂ɔp	to like, be fond of
khoolooradôo	Colorado
sapriŋfil	Springfield
taam	along, after; to follow
wəəcinia	Virginia

LESSON ELEVEN

11.0 BASIC DIALOG: At the Language School

A:	thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa thîi khun rian mii khonthaj lǎaj khon mǎj	At the language school where you studied are there many Thais?
B:	lǎaj khon	Yes, many.
A:	mii nákrian phaasǎa thaj thâwraj	How many Thai language students are there?
B:	mâj sâap khráp	I don't know.
A:	naj chán khun mii nákrian kìi khon	How many students are there in your class?
B:	hâa khon khráp	Five.
A:	khun rian araj kan bâaŋ	What (things) are you studying?
B:	àan, phûut, khǐan lɛ́ plɛɛ	Reading, speaking, writing, and translating.
A:	kháw sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa araj bâaŋ	What languages do they teach?
B:	lǎaj phaasǎa khráp. mii phaasǎa juan, laaw, faràŋsèet, sapeen, lɛ́ phaasǎa ỳyn ỳyn	Many languages. Vietnamese, Lao, French, Spanish, and other languages.
A:	mii khruu châat tàaŋ tàaŋ (tháŋmòt) thâwraj khráp	Altogether how many teachers of different nationalities are there?
B:	lǎaj sìp khon khráp	Several tens (less than a hundred).

11.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) kan 'each other, mutually, as a group' can be used

1. As a pluralizer of the subject of the sentence: pìt pratuu kan 'you (plural) shut the door' or
2. to indicate that two or more persons or things are mutually involved in some activity or are related in some other way.

A:	khruu			phûut phaasǎa thaj	kàp nákrian
B:			nákrian	phûut phaasǎa thaj	kàp khruu
A + B:	khruu	lɛ́ kàp	nákrian	phûut phaasǎa thaj	kan

A:	'The teacher	speaks Thai	with the student'.
B:	'The student	speaks Thai	with the teacher'.
A + B:	'The teacher and student	speak Thai	with each other'.

b) araj, khraj, and nǎj all have interrogative and indefinite meaning (neither singular or plural). When used in negative sentences the meaning is indefinite:

phǒm mâj dâj duu araj	'I didn't see anything.'
mâj mii khraj sâap	(There is no one that knows.) 'No one knows.'
khun mâj dâj paj nǎj rə̌	'Didn't you go anywhere?'

araj, khraj, and nǎj can be made plural by the addition of bâaŋ. (Here they have interrogative meaning.)

mii náŋsy̌y araj bâaŋ	'What books are there?'
khun ca paj nǎj bâaŋ	'What places are you going to?'
khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khraj bâaŋ	'Who all do you speak Thai with with?'

c) Numerals[1] include all of the cardinal numbers plus some other quantity words. Numerals occur in constructions before classifiers. Some of the quantity words are lǎaj 'many, several', baaŋ 'some', kìi 'how many?', thúk 'each, every', nɔ́ɔj 'few', and mâj-kìi 'not many'.

khruu lǎaj khon	'several teachers'
náŋsy̌y baaŋ lêm	'some books'
tó kìi tua	'how many books?'
dinsɔ̌ɔ mâj-kìi thɛ̂ɛŋ	'not many pencils'
nákrian nɔ́ɔj khon	'few students'

The Thai numerical system is a decimal system, and with a few exceptions compound numbers are made by multiplying by and / or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nỳŋ '1', sɔ̌ɔŋ '2', sǎam '3', sìi '4', hâa '5', hòk '6', cèt '7', pɛ̀ɛt '8', kâaw '9', sìp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam sìp (3 x 10),

---

[1] For a full treatment of numerals, see Noss, 109 ff.

70 is cèt sìp (7 x 10), etc. Numbers to be added to 10 or multiples of 10 occur afterwards, thus 13 is sìp sǎam (1 x 10 + 3), 34 is sǎam sìp sìi (3 x 10 + 4), etc. 20 is jîi sìp; 22 is jîi sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ.

Except for the number 'one' itself, èt is used for 'one', thus 21 is jîi sìp èt; 51 is hâa sìp èt, etc.

100 is nỳŋ rɔ́ɔj or rɔ́ɔj, but 101 is rɔ́ɔj èt. 400 is sìi rɔ́ɔj; 423 is sìi rɔ́ɔj jîi sìp sǎam, etc.

1000 is nỳŋ phan or phan; 10,000 is nỳŋ mỳyn or mỳyn.

100,000 is nỳŋ sɛ̌ɛn or sɛ̌ɛn, and 1,000,000 is nỳŋ láan or láan.

15,000 is (nỳŋ) mỳyn hâa phan (1 x 10,000 plus 5 x 1000). sìp hâa phan (15 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

450,000 is sìi sɛ̌ɛn hâa mỳyn (4 x 100,000 plus 5 x 10,000), sìi rɔ́ɔj hâa sìp phan (450 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

d) One sentence may be included in another and serve as a modifier or specifier of some part of that sentence. thîi may serve as a connector between the main sentence and the included sentence.

Main sentence:	náŋsy̌y		dii
Included sentence:		kháw khǐan	
Resultant sentence:	náŋsy̌y thîi	kháw khǐan	dii

'The books he writes are good.'

thîi *kháw* *khǐan* serves as a modifier of náŋsy̌y. A response to the question *náŋsy̌y* *araj* *dii* 'what books are good?' could be *náŋsy̌y* *thîi* *kháw* *khǐan* 'the books he writes'.

Main sentence:	náŋsy̌y lêm nán		dii
Included sentence:		kháw khǐan	
Resultant sentence:	náŋsy̌y lêm thîi	kháw khǐan	dii

'The book he wrote is good'.

thîi *kháw* *khǐan* serves as a specifier of (*náŋsy̌y*) *lêm*. A response to the question *náŋsy̌y* *lêm* *nǎj* *dii* 'Which book is good?' could be *lêm* *thîi* *kháw* *khǐan* 'the one he wrote'.

e) *ỳyn* means 'other' in the sense of a different one *not* an additional one of the same kind. *ỳyn* *ỳyn* means 'others'; it acts as a pluralizer after nouns.

phaasǎa ỳyn	'another (different) language'
phaasǎa ỳyn ỳyn	'other (different) language*s*'
.... lɛ́ ỳyn ỳyn	(lit. 'and others') 'et cetera'

11.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw phûut phaasǎathaj kàp phǒm	He speaks Thai with me.
	phǒm phûut phaasǎathaj kàp kháw	I speak Thai with him.
	raw phûut phaasǎathaj *kan*	We speak Thai *together*.
2.	kháw rúucàk khon nán	He knows that person.
	khon nán rúucàk kháw	That person knows him.
	kháw rúucàk *kan*	They know *each* *other*.

3.	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj	I study Thai.
	phŷan phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj	My friend studies Thai.
	raw rian phaasǎa thaj kan	We both study Thai.

b) Combination Drill

	Patterns 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	phǒm phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kàp kháw kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kàp phǒm	raw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan
2.	khruu phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp nákrian nakrian phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khruu	khruu lɛ́ nákrian phûut phaasǎa thaj kan
3.	khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa jəəraman khun cim phûut phaasǎa jəəraman	khun cɔɔn lɛ́ khun cim phûut phaasǎa jəəraman kan
4.	phŷan phǒm rúucàk khun khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm	khun kàp phŷan phǒm rúucàk kan
5.	khun mɛɛrîi paj talàat kàp khun ceennîi khun ceennîi paj talàat kàp khun mɛɛrîi	khun mɛɛrîi lɛ́ khun ceennîi paj talàat kan
6.	khun cɔɔn paj rooŋrian khun cim paj rooŋrian	khun cɔɔn kàp khun cim paj rooŋrian kan

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	khon nán phûut phaasǎa araj dâj bâaŋ	What languages does that person speak?
	kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt, faràŋsèet, lɛ́ thaj	He speaks English, French, and Thai.
2.	khon nán phûut phaasǎa araj	What language does that person speak?
	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj	He speaks Thai.
3.	thîinîi mii khraj	Who is here?
	thîinîi mii nákrian	There are students here.
4.	thîinîi mii khraj bâaŋ	Who is here?
	thîinîi mii khruu, nákrian lɛ́ nákphaasǎa	There are teachers, students, and linguists.
5.	naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâaŋ	What are some of the countries in Asia?
	naj eesia mii prathêet india, ciin, jîipùn, thaj lé prathêet ỳyn ỳyn	In Asia there are India, China, Japan, Thailand, and other countries.
6.	naj júròop mii prathêet araj bâaŋ	What are some of the countries in Europe?
	naj júròop mii prathêet faràŋsèet, sapeen, italîi, jəəraman, lɛ́ prathêet ỳyn ỳyn	In Europe there are France, Spain, Italy, Germany, and other countries.

7.	naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ	What are some of the states in America?
	naj ameerikaa mii rát njuu jɔ́ɔk, mɛsachusèt, michikɛɛn, khɛlifɔɔnia, lɛ́ rát yỳn yỳn.	In America there are the states of New York, Massachusetts, Michigan, California, and other states.
8.	thîi sàhàprachaachâat mii khon châat araj bâaŋ	What are some of the nationalities in the U.N.?
	thîi sàhàprachaachâat mii khon aŋkrìt faràŋseèt, khon eesia lɛ́ châat yỳn yỳn	In the U.N. there are Englishmen, Frenchmen, Asians, and other nationalities.
9.	khun tham araj pen bâaŋ	What do you know how to do?
	phǒm khǐan lɛ́ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt pen	I can write and speak English.
10.	kháw tham araj pen baâŋ	What does she know how to do?
	kháw tham aahǎan lɛ́ líaŋ dèk pen	She can cook and take care of children.
11.	kháw kèŋ araj baâŋ	What things is he good at?
	kháw rian náŋsy̌y kèŋ, lên kiilaa kèŋ lɛ́ thamŋaan kèŋ	He's a good student, a good athlete, and a good worker.

d) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
aŋkrìt	kháw phûut phaasǎa araj What language does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt He speaks English.
thaj lɛ́ aŋkrìt	kháw phûut phaasǎa araj bâaŋ What languages does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj lɛ́ aŋkrìt He speaks Thai and English.
nákrian	naj hɔ̂ŋnán mii khraj Who's in that room?	mii nákrian Students.
khruu lɛ́ nákrian	naj hɔ̂ŋnán mii khraj bâaŋ Who is in that room?	mii khruu lɛ́ nákrian Teachers and students.
lǎaj châat	thîi sahàprachaachâat mii khon châat araj bâaŋ What nationalities are there at the U.N.?	mii khon châat lǎaj châat There are many.
thîithamŋaan	wanníi khun ca paj nǎj Where are you going today?	paj thîithamŋaan To the office.
talàat, prajsanii	wanníi khun ca paj nǎj bâaŋ Where (all) are you going today?	paj talàat lɛ́ prajsanii To the market and the Post Office.
khɛlifɔɔnia, njuujɔ́ɔk, flɔridâa	naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ What are some of the states in America?	mii rát khɛlifɔɔnia njuujɔ́ɔk lɛ́ flɔridâa California, New York and Florida

thaj, ciin, jîipùn, lɛ́ prathêet ỳyn ỳyn	naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâaŋ What are some of the countries in Asia?	mii prathêet thaj, ciin, jîipùn, lɛ́ prathêet ỳyn ỳyn Thailand, China, Japan, etc.
phránakhɔɔn, ubon, chiaŋmàj	myaŋ thaj mii caŋwàt araj bâaŋ What are some of the provinces in Thailand?	mii caŋwàt phránakhɔɔn, ubon, lɛ́ chiaŋmàj Phranakorn, Ubol, and Chiangmai.
chiaŋmàj, ùttaradìt	phâak ny̌a mii caŋwàt araj bâaŋ What are some of the provinces in Northern Thailand?	mii caŋwàt chiaŋmàj lɛ́ ùttaradìt Chiangmai and Uttaradit.
ubon lɛ́ udɔɔn	phâak isǎan mii caŋwàt araj bâaŋ What are some of the provinces in N. E. Thailand?	mii caŋwàt ubon lɛ̀ udɔɔn Ubol and Udorn.
kruŋthêep	khon phâak klaaŋ phûut phaasǎa araj What language do Central Thai speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa kruŋthêep Bangkok Thai.
kruŋthêep lɛ́ pàk tâj	khon pàk tâj phûut phaasǎa araj bâaŋ What languages do Southern (Thai) people speak?	kháw phûut phaasǎa kruŋthêep lɛ̀ phaasǎa pàk tâj Bangkok Thai and Southern Thai.

e) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
nákrian	nákrian hâa khon	5 students
khruu	khruu hâa khon	5 teachers
nỳŋ	khruu nỳŋ khon	1 teacher
mɔ̌ɔ	mɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ khon	1 doctor
hòk	mɔ̌ɔ hòk khon	6 doctors
chaaw ameerikan	chaaw ameerikan hòk khon	6 Americans
sìp	chaaw ameerikan sìp khon	10 Americans
thahǎan bòk	thahǎanbòk sìp khon	10 soldiers
rɔ́ɔj	thahǎanbòk rɔ́ɔj khon	100 soldiers
khon	(khon) rɔ́ɔj khon	100 people

f) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
lǎaj	nákrian lǎaj khon	many students
khruu	khruu lǎaj khon	many teachers
lǎaj sìp	khruu lǎaj sìp khon	many tens of teachers
thahǎan	thahǎan lǎaj sìp khon	many tens of soldiers
phátthanaakɔɔn	phátthanaakɔɔn lǎaj sìp khon	many tens of community Development workers

lǎaj rɔ́ɔj	phátthanaakɔɔn lǎaj rɔ́ɔj khon	many hundreds of Community Development workers
khâarâatchakaan thaj	khâarâatchakaan thaj lǎaj rɔ́ɔj khon	many hundreds of Thai government employees
lǎaj phan	khâarâatchakaan thaj lǎaj phan khon	many thousands of Thai government employees

g) Substitution Drill

MODEL:	A:	khun sýy náŋsýy rýkhráp	'You bought some books?'
	B:	khráp	'Yes, I did.'
	A:	(sýy) kìi lêm khráp	'How many?'
	B:	hòk lêm khráp	'Six.'

Pairs of students are to go through the exchange above substituting the following cue words for those underlined and making other changes where appropriate:

1. naalikaa, nỳŋ
2. dinsɔ̌ɔ, sǎam
3. pàakkaa, sɔ̌ɔŋ
4. kâwîi, sìp
5. phɛ̌ɛnthîi, sìi
6. náŋsýyphim, hâa
7. rûup, cèt
8. samùt, kâw

Repeat the drill above using khǎaj and mii for sýy .

h) Substitution Drill

MODEL:	A:	nákrian paj rýplàaw	'Did the students go?'
	B:	paj khráp	'Yes, they did.'
	A.	(paj) kìi khon khráp	'How many (went)?'
	B.	hòk khon khráp	'Six.'

Substitute the following cue words for the underlined words above:

1. khruu, 3
2. mɔ̌ɔ, 11
3. chaaw ameerikaan, 5,000
4. thahǎanbòk, 5,000
5. tamrùat, 40
6. khâarâatchakaan, 25
7. phɔ̂ɔkháa, 100

i) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
khruu	khruu baaŋ khon	some teachers
jîi-sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ	khruu jîi-sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ khon	22 teachers
sìp pɛ̀ɛt	khruu sìp pɛ̀ɛt khon	18 teachers
sìi-sìp	khruu sìi-sìp khon	40 teachers
hòk-sìp cèt	khruu hòk-sìp cèt khon	67 teachers
sǎam rɔ́ɔj	khruu sǎam rɔ́ɔj khon	300 teachers
kâw-sìp èt	khruu kâw-sìp èt khon	91 teachers
sǎam-sìp sìi	khruu sǎam-sìp sìi khon	34 teachers
nɔ́ɔj	khruu nɔ́ɔj khon	few teachers
thúk	khruu thúk khon	every teacher

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. rooŋrian thîi khun rian mii khruu phaasǎa thaj lǎaj khon

   The school you're studying at has many Thai language teachers.

2. khâarâatchakaan thîi ca paj myaŋthaj tɔ̂ɔŋ rian phaasǎa thaj

   Government employees that are going to Thailand must study Thai.

3. nákrian thîi rian thîinîi pen khon ameerikan..

   Students who study here are Americans.

4. khon thîi tham râatchakaan rîak wâa khâarâatchakaan.

   People who do government work are government employees.

5. khon thîi jùu bâan nán pen phŷan phǒm

   The people who live in that house are my friends.

6. phûujǐŋ thîi paj kàp khun sǔaj

   The girl who goes with you is pretty.

7. khon thîi ca rian phaasǎa dâj dii tɔ̂ɔŋ phûut phaasǎa nán samə̌ə

   People who are going to learn a language well must speak it constantly.

k) Expansion Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 and form Sentence 3.)

Sentence 1	Sentence 2	Sentence 3
bâan sǔaj	thîi khun jùu	bâan thîi khun jùu sǔaj
the house is pretty	that you live in	The house you live in is pretty.
náŋsy̌y dii	thîi khun sýy	náŋsy̌y thîi khun sýy dii
book is good	that you bought	The book you bought is good.
rooŋrian dii	thîi kháw khəəj rian	rooŋrian thîi kháw khəəj rian dii
school is good	that he used to study (at)	The school he used to study at is good.
náŋsy̌y dii	thîi kháw khǐan	náŋsy̌y thîi kháw khǐan dii
book is good	that he wrote	The book he wrote is good.
ráanaahǎan dii	thîi khun bɔ̀ɔk	ráanaahǎan thîi khun bɔ̀ɔk dii
restaurant is good	that you told (about)	The restaurant that you told (me about) is good.
caŋwàt dii	thîi khun ca paj	caŋwàt thîi khun ca paj dii
province is good	that you are going (to)	The province you are going to is good.

mii khruu thaj lǎaj khon thîi rooŋrian	thîi khun rian	mii khruu thaj lǎaj khon thîi rooŋrian thîi khun rian
There are many Thai teachers at the school.	that you study (at)	There are many Thai teachers at the school where you study at.
rót sǔaj	thîi phûujǐŋ khonnán khàp	rót thîi phûujǐŋ khonnán khàp sǔaj
car is pretty	that that woman is driving	The car that woman is driving is pretty.

1) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1, 2, 3 to form sentence 4.)

	Sentences 1, 2, 3	Sentence 4[1]
1.	kháw pen khruu kháw sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎathaj kháw pen khonthaj	khruu thîi sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎathaj pen khonthaj
2.	kháw pen phûujǐŋ kháw paj kàp khun kháw sǔaj	phûujǐŋ thîi paj kàp khun sǔaj
3.	kháw pen nákrian kháw rian thîinîi kháw pen khon ameerikan	nákrian thîi rian thîinîi pen khon ameerikan

---

[1] The student may give an acceptable response which differs from the one given here.

4.	kháw pen nákrian kháw jàak phûut phaasǎa tàaŋ prathêet kèŋ kháw tɔ̂ɔŋ phûut samə̌ə	nákrian thîi jàak phûut phaasǎa tàaŋprathêet kèŋ tɔ̂ɔŋ phûut samə̌ə
5.	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet kháw ca paj myaŋthaj kháw tɔ̂ɔŋ rian phaasǎathaj	khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thîi ca paj myaŋ thaj tɔ̂ɔŋ rian phaasǎathaj

m) Response Drill

	Cue	Question	Response
1.	thîi kháw khǐan that he wrote	náŋsyy lêm nǎj dii Which book is good?	lêm thîi kháw khǐan The one he wrote.
2.	thîi chŷy phimphaa who is named Pimpa	phûujǐŋ khon nǎj sǔaj Which woman is pretty?	khon thîi chŷy phimphaa The one named Pimpa.
3.	thîi maa càak juusít who came from USIS	nákrian khon nǎj kèŋ Which student is smart?	khon thîi maa càak juusít The one from USIS.
4.	thîi khun sòŋ hâj phǒm that you sent me	pàakkaa dâam nǎj dii Which pen is good?	dâam thîi khun sòŋ hâj phǒm The one you sent me.

5.	thîi kamlaŋ phûut who is speaking	khun thǎawɔɔn, khon nǎj Which person is Thaworn?	khon thîi kamlaŋ phûut The one who is speaking.
6.	thîi phûut rew that speaks fast	khun mɛɛrîi, khon nǎj Which person is Mary?	khon thîi phûut rew The one who speaks fast.
7.	thîi thamŋaan thîi juusɔ̂ɔm who works at USOM	khun cɔɔn, khonnǎj Which person is John?	khon thîi thamŋaan thîi juusɔ̂ɔm The one who works at USOM.

11.3 EXERCISES

a) Find out what some of the activities are that students engage in with their wives, friends, and others.

b) Ask questions about the number of various kinds of objects (windows, pencils, etc.) there are in your classroom.

c) Ask and answer questions concerning the number of people employed in various institutions (egs. State Department, etc.)

d) Ask and answer questions about the following:

  1. countries in Asia and Europe
  2. provinces in Thailand
  3. cities in the U.S., and in Thailand
  4. nationalities in the U.N., in Asia, in Europe, and in Thailand
  5. provinces and cities in various parts of Thailand

e) Find out how many people in the classroom have various skills, such as the ability to drive a car, play tennis, etc.

f) Find out which objects in the classroom are considered to be good by other students.

g) The instructor will put problems in addition on the board beginning with easy ones and proceding to more difficult ones, thus

6 + 7 = ? The students are to read the problems and supply the correct answers.

11.4 VOCABULARY

eesia	Asia
ỳyn ỳyn	other, others, other ones
bɔ̀ɔk	to tell
cèt	seven
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building)
flɔridâa	Florida
hâa	five
hòk	six
hòk-sìp	sixty
jàak	to want to
jîi-sìp	twenty
kâaw	nine
kâw-sìp	ninety
kâw-sìp èt	ninety one
khɛlifɔɔnia	California
kìi	how many, how much (question word)
kiilaa	sport(s), athletics

lǎaj	many, several
láan	million
lɛ́	and
líaŋ dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
michikɛɛn	Michigan
mɛsachusèt	Massachusetts
mỳyn	ten thousand
naj	in, inside
nákphaasǎa	linguistic scientist
nɔ́ɔj	few
nỳŋ (nyŋ)	one
pɛ̀ɛt	eight
phan	thousand
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
rew	fast, soon
rɔ́ɔj	hundred
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sǎam	three
sǎam-sìp	thirty
sɛ̌ɛn	hundred thousand
sìi-sìp	forty
sìp	ten
tháŋmòt	altogether
thâwraj	how many, how much (question word)
thîinân	there
tɔ̂ŋ	must, have to

LESSON TWELVE

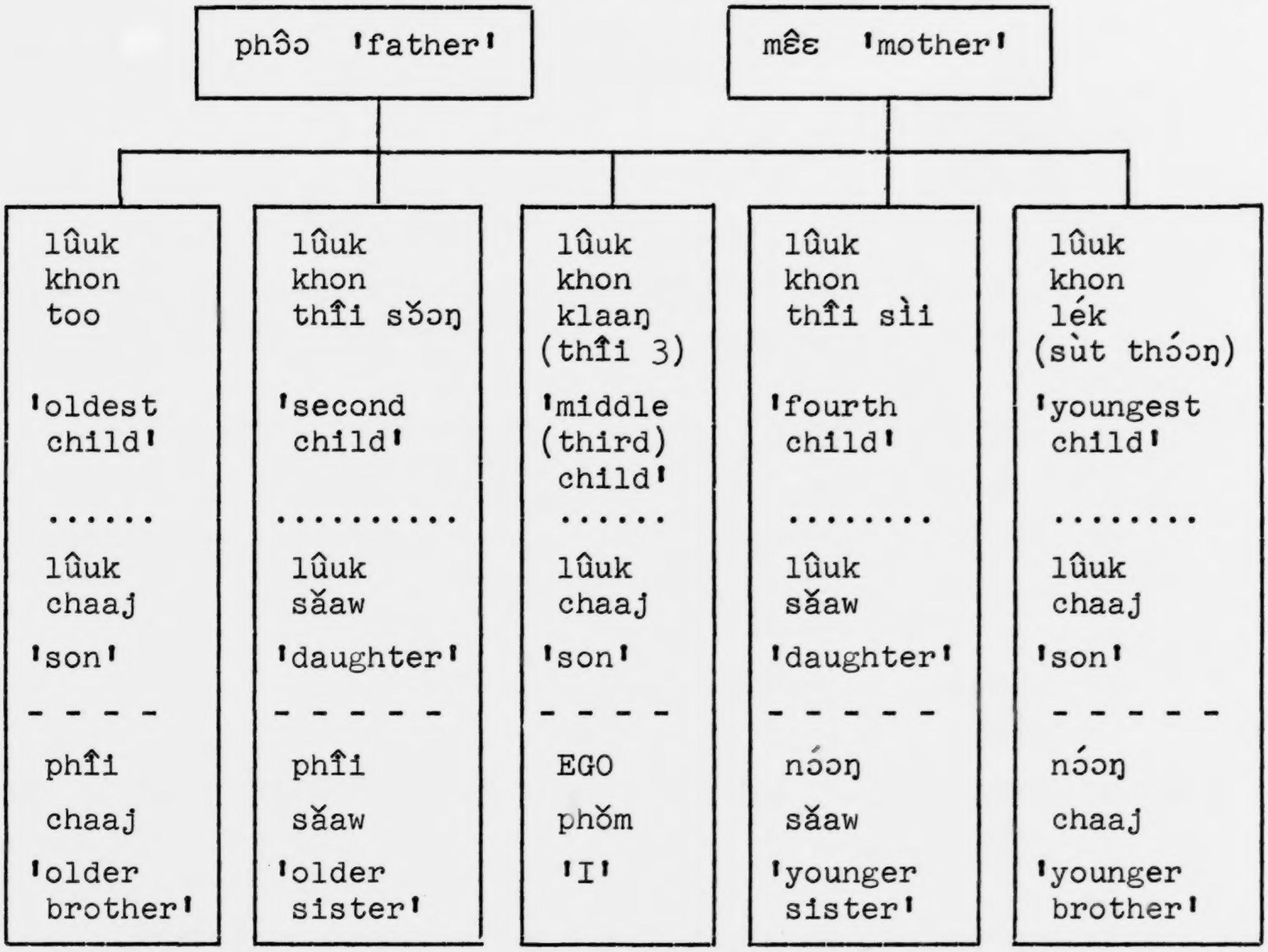
12.0 BASIC DIALOG: My Family

A:	khun mii phîinɔ́ɔŋ lǎaj khon máj khráp	Do you have many brothers and sisters?
B:	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ phǒm mii lûuk hâa khon khráp	My parents have five children.
A:	khun pen khon thîi thâwràj	Which are you?
B:	phǒm pen khon klaaŋ	I'm the middle one.
	mii phîichaaj sɔ̌ɔŋ khon, nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw sɔ́ɔŋ khon	There are two older brothers, two younger sisters.
A:	phîichaaj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan rýjaŋ	Are your older brothers married (yet)?
B:	tɛ̀ŋ lɛ́ɛw khon nyŋ, ìik khon nyŋ jaŋ pen sòot	One is married, and one is (still) single.
A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot lɛ́ɛw khun la khráp	And you?
B:	phǒm mii khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua lɛ́ɛw khráp	I have a family.
A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun mii bùt rýplàaw khráp	Do you have children?
B:	mii khon diaw khráp	I have only one.
	pen phûuchaaj	He's a boy.
A:	aajú thâwràj khráp	How old is he?
B:	hòk khùap khráp	Six.

12.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) The chart below gives the terms used in Thai for different members of the immediate family in terms of age, sex, and relationship to the speaker (Ego):

khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua phǒm 'My Family'



phɔ̂ɔ 'father'

mɛ̂ɛ 'mother'

lûuk khon too	lûuk khon thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ	lûuk khon klaaŋ (thîi 3)	lûuk khon thîi sìi	lûuk khon lék (sùt thɔ́ɔŋ)
'oldest child'	'second child'	'middle (third) child'	'fourth child'	'youngest child'
lûuk chaaj	lûuk sǎaw	lûuk chaaj	lûuk sǎaw	lûuk chaaj
'son'	'daughter'	'son'	'daughter'	'son'
phîi chaaj	phîi sǎaw	EGO phǒm	nɔ́ɔŋ sǎaw	nɔ́ɔŋ chaaj
'older brother'	'older sister'	'I'	'younger sister'	'younger brother'

1.	nɔ́ɔŋ	alone means:	'younger brothers and/or sisters'
	phîi	alone means:	'older brothers and/or sisters'
	phîinɔ́ɔŋ	alone means:	'older and younger brothers and/or sisters'

2. *bùt* = *lûuk* 'child' *bùt* is more elegant;
lûuk is more common.

3. *lûuk khon nyŋ* means '*a* child'
lûuk nỳŋ khon means '*one* child'
lûuk khon diaw means '*only one* child'.

b) *tɛ̀ŋŋaan* 'to marry'; *tɛ̀ŋ* 'decorate, adorn' + *ŋaan* 'ceremony' *tɛ̀ɛŋ* is a verb and *ŋaan* is its noun complement. In responses to questions only the verb is necessary.

12.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Ordinal number constructions consist of *thîi* + cardinal numbers (or question word replacements for them)[1].

thîi sìi	'fourth'	:	*thîi* + *sìi*	'4'
thîi cèt	'seventh'	:	*thîi* + *cèt*	'7'
thîi nyŋ rɔ́ɔj	'hundredth'	:	*thîi* + *nyŋ rɔ́ɔj*	'100', etc.
thîi thâwràj	'the how manyeth'	:	*thîi* + *thâwràj*	'how many'

b) *rêɛk* means 'to be first in time, quality, in a series or sequence, or from point of origin.

phǒm pen lûuksìt khon *rêɛk* khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw — 'I was his first student.'

thîi nyŋ refers to the first item in a numbered series of lessons, floors (in a building), etc.

chán *thîi nyŋ* 'the first floor'

bòt *thîi nyŋ* 'lesson one'

c) Ordinal numbers occur immediately after classifiers and in construction with them.

lûuk khon thîi sǎam	'the third child'
náŋsy̌y lêm thîi cèt	'the seventh book'

d) aajú 'age' is a noun and is used in equational sentences like the following:

Noun Phrase	=	Noun Phrase
kháw		aajú jîi-sìp pii
'He	(is)	20 (age-20-year).'

In questions aajú thâwràj is used generally for asking someone's age but aajú kìi pii may used for younger persons. The response is usually (number of years) + pii but for persons under 12, (number of years) + khùap is used.

For example:

Q:	lûuk khon lék aajú kìi pii	'How old is your youngest?'
A:	hòk khùap	'(He's) six.'
Q:	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun aajú thâwràj	'How old is your father?'
A:	hâa-sìp sǎam pii	'53'

e) lɛ́ɛw rý jaŋ 'or not yet?' is used in questions to find out the state of an action (complete or not complete). lɛ́ɛw is often omitted or occurs in reduced form in lýjaŋ or lə́jaŋ. It may occur as ýjaŋ or ə́jaŋ in very rapid speech. The responses to it are either:

1. jaŋ 'not yet' (or) 2. Verb + lɛ́ɛw 'Action completed'.

Q:	khun thaan khâaw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ	'Have you eaten yet?'
R:	Negative: jaŋ khráp	'No.' (lit. 'not yet.')
	Affirmative: thaan lɛ́ɛw khráp	'(Yes), I have.'

f) Observe the use of jaŋ mâj and jaŋ mâj dâj in the examples below:

1. kháw jaŋ jùu thîinii. 'She's still here.
   kháw jaŋ mâj paj. 'She hasn't gone yet.'

2. phǒm khít wâa kháw paj thurá lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj paj 'I thought he had gone on business already, but he hadn't.'

The meaning of the first example is 'He hasn't gone yet (because he doesn't want or need to), but he may go yet'. The meaning of the second example is 'He could (or should) have gone, but he didn't. (See 5.2a).

g) When classifier phrases with diaw or lǎaj refer to the pronoun subject of the sentence, they occur after the main verb, usually at the end of the sentence.

kháw paj khon diaw 'He went by himself.'
kháw paj kan lǎaj khon 'Several of them went together.'

12.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw pen phîichaj phǒm He is my older brother.	phǒm pen nɔ́ɔŋchaaj kháw I am his younger brother.
2.	thâan pen khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm He is my father.	phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan I am his son.
3.	kháw pen khun phɔ̂ɔ phûujǐŋ khon nán He's that girl's father.	phûujǐŋ khon nán pen lûuksǎaw kháw That girl is his daughter.

4.	kháw pen nɔ́ɔŋchaaj phǒm He is my younger brother.	phǒm pen phîichaaj kháw I'm his older brother.
5.	kháw pen nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw phǒm She's my younger sister.	phǒm pen phîichaaj kháw I'm her older brother.
6.	kháw pen nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw dichán She is my younger sister.	dichán pen phîisǎaw kháw I'm her older sister.
7.	kháw pen phîisǎaw phǒm She's my older sister.	phǒm pen nɔ́ɔŋchaaj kháw I'm her younger brother.
8.	kháw pen phîichaaj phǒm He's my older brother.	phǒm pen nɔ́ɔŋchaaj kháw I'm his younger brother.
9.	kháw pen nɔ́ɔŋchaaj dichán He's my younger brother.	dichán pen phîisǎaw kháw I'm his older sister.
10.	thâan pen khun mɛ̂ɛ phǒm She's my mother.	phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan I'm her son.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
too	kháw pen lûuk khon too	He's the oldest child.
sɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ	She's the second child.
rɛ̂ɛk	kháw pen lûuk khon rɛ̂ɛk	He's the first child.
sǎam	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi sǎam	She's the third child.
klaaŋ	kháw pen lûuk khon klaaŋ	He's the middle child.
hâa	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi hâa	He's the fifth child.
lék	kháw pen lûuk khon lék	She's the smallest child. (youngest)

sìi	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi sìi	He's the fourth child.
cèt	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi cèt	She's the seventh child.
too	kháw pen lûuk khon too	He's the oldest child.

c) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	sǎam	lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj Which son (is it)?	(lûukchaaj) khon thîi sǎam The third.
2.	sìi	nákrian khon thîi thâwràj Which student (is it)?	(nákrian) khon thîi sìi The fourth.
3.	hòk	khruu khon thîi thâwràj Which teacher (is it)?	(khruu) khon thîi hòk The sixth.
4.	sɔ̌ɔŋ	mɔ̌ɔ khon thîi thâwràj Which doctor (is it)?	(mɔ̌ɔ) khon thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ The second.
5.	sǎam	chaawnaa khon thîi thâwràj Which farmer (is it)?	(chaawnaa) khon thîi sǎam The third.
6.	nỳŋ	náŋsɯ̌ɯ lêm thîi thâwràj Which book (is it)?	(náŋsɯ̌ɯ) lêm thîi nỳŋ The first.
7.	sɔ̌ɔŋ	pàakkaa dâam thîi thâwràj Which pen (is it)?	(pàakkaa) dâam thìi sɔ̌ɔŋ The second.
8.	pɛ̀ɛt	rót khan thîi thâwràj Which car (is it)?	(rót) khan thîi pɛ̀ɛt The eighth.

9.	cèt	kradàat phɛ̀n thîi thâwràj Which sheet of paper (is it)?	(kradàat) phɛ̀ɛn thîi cèt The first.
10.	nỳŋ	bòtnán bòt thîi thâwràj Which lesson (is it)?	(bòtnán) bòt thîi nỳŋ The first.

d) Response Drill

1.	lék	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi thâwràj Which child is he?	kháw pen lûuk khon lék He's the youngest (child).
2.	too	kháw pen lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj Which son is he?	kháw pen lûukchaaj khon too He's the oldest (son).
3.	klaaŋ	khun pen lûuk khon thîi thâwràj Which child are you?	phǒm pen lûuk khon klaaŋ I'm the middle child.
4.	too	kháw pen lûuksǎaw khon thîi thâwràj Which daughter is she?	kháw pen lûuksǎaw khon too She's the oldest daughter.
5.	lék	khun pen lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj Which son are you?	phǒm pen lûukchaaj khon lék I'm the youngest son.
6.	klaaŋ	dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon thîi thâwràj khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw Which of his children is that child?	dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon klaaŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw That child is his middle child.

7.	lék	dèk khonníi pen nɔ̌ɔŋ khon thîi thâwràj khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw Which of his younger siblings is this child?	dèk khonníi pen nɔ́ɔŋ khon lék khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw That child is the youngest of his siblings.
8.	too	khun pen lûuk khon thîi thâwràj Which child are you?	phǒm pen lûuk khon too I'm the oldest (child).

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	phǒm pen lûuksìt khon rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw	I was his first student.
2.	kháw pen khruu phaasǎathaj khon rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ éf-és-aj	She was the first Thai teacher at FSI.
3.	náŋsy̌y lêm níi pen náŋsy̌y lêm rɛ̂ɛk thîi kháw khǐan	This book was the first book he wrote.
4.	rót khan níi pen rót khan rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm	This car is my first car.
5.	phaasǎathaj pen phaasǎa tàaŋprathêet phaasǎarɛ̂ɛk thîi phǒm rian	Thai is the first foreign language I studied.
6.	kháw pen khon rɛ̂ɛk thîi phǒm rúucàk	He is the first person I met.

7. mɔ̌ɔ khon nán pen mɔ̌ɔ khon rɛ̂ɛk naj caŋwàt níi	That doctor was the first doctor in this province.
8. prathaanaathípbadii wɔɔchiŋtân pen prathaanaathípbadii khon rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ ameerikaa	President Washington was the first American president.

f) Response Drill

Cues	Question	Response
1. phûujǐŋ khonnán kìi pii	phûujǐŋ khonnán aajú kìi pii How old is that woman?	kháw aajú sìp hòk pii She's 16.
2. khun phɔ̂ɔ khun, thâwràj (50)	khun phɔ̂ɔkhun aajú thâwràj How old is your father?	thâan aajú hâa sìp pii He's 50.
3. phŷan khun, thâwràj (30)	phŷan khun aajú thâwràj How old is your friend?	kháw aajú sǎam-sìp pii She's thirty.
4. phîichaaj khun, thâwràj (29)	phîichaaj khun aajú thâwràj How old is your older brother?	kháw aajú jîi-sìp kâw pii He's 29.
5. lûukchaaj khun, kìi khùap (2)	lûukchaaj khun aajú kìi khùap How old is your son?	kháw aajú sɔ̌ɔŋ khùap He's 2.

6.	nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw khun, thâwràj (10)	nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw khun aajú thâwràj How old is your sister?	kháw aajú sìp khùap She's 10.

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw mii lûuk	khon diaw	He has only one child.
		khon nyŋ	He has a child.
		nỳŋ khon	He has one child.
2.	kháw mii phanrajaa	khon diaw	He has only one wife.
		khon nyŋ	He has a wife.
		nỳŋ khon	He has one wife.
3.	phǒm mii náŋsy̌y	lêm diaw	I have only one book.
		lêm nyŋ	I have a book
		nỳŋ lêm	I have one book.
4.	phǒm mii pàakkaa	dâam diaw	I have only one pen.
		dâam nyŋ	I have a pen.
		nỳŋ dâam	I have one pen.
5.	kháw mii nákrian	khon diaw	He has only one student.
		khon nyŋ	He has a student.
		nỳŋ khon	He has one student.

h) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. diaw	kháw mii lûuk kìi khon How many children does he have?	kháw mii lûuk khon diaw He has only one child.
2. lǎaj	kháw mii phŷan kìi khon How many friends does he have?	kháw mii phŷan lǎaj khon He has many friends.
3. diaw	kháw mii náŋsy̌y kìi lêm How many books does he have?	kháw mii náŋsy̌y lêm diaw He has only one book.
4. diaw	kháw sýy samùt kìi lêm How many notebooks did he buy?	kháw sýy samùt lêm diaw He bought only one notebook.
5. lǎaj	kháw rúucàk khon thaj kìi khon How many Thais does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon thaj lǎaj khon He knows many Thais.
6. diaw	kháw rúucàk khon aŋkrìt kìi khon How many Englishmen does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon aŋkrìt khon diaw He knows only one Englishman.
7. diaw	kháw paj kàp khraj Who did he go with?	kháw paj khon diaw He went by himself.

8.	lǎaj	kháw paj kàp khraj Who did they go with?	kháw paj kan lǎaj khon Several of them went together.
9.	diaw	kháw thaan khâaw kàp khraj Who does he eat with?	kháw thaan khon diaw He eats alone.

i) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	chŷy cim, cɔɔn	khon nyŋ chŷy cim, ìik khon nyŋ chŷy cɔɔn One person is named Jim; another,John.
2.	pen thaj, ameerikan	khon nyŋ pen thaj, ìik khon nyŋ pen ameerikan One person is Thai; another, American.
3.	pen khruu, thahǎan	khon nyŋ pen khruu, ìik khon nyŋ pen thahǎan One person is a teacher; another, a soldier.
4.	pen phîi, nɔ́ɔŋ	khon nyŋ pen phîi, ìik khon nyŋ pen nɔ́ɔŋ One is an older sibling; another is a younger sibling.
5.	sǔaj, mâj sǔaj	khon nyŋ sǔaj, ìik khon nyŋ mâj sǔaj One person is pretty; another, not.
6.	kèŋ, mâj kèŋ	khon nyŋ kèŋ, ìik khon nyŋ mâj kèŋ One person is skillful; another isn't.
7.	phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj, mâj dâj	khon nyŋ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj, ìik khon nyŋ phûut mâj dâj One person can speak English; another can't.

8.	jùu myaŋ thaj, jùu ameerikaa	khon nyŋ jùu myaŋ thaj, ìik khon nyŋ jùu ameerikaa One person is in Thailand; another in America.
9.	tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw jaŋ pen sòot	khon nyŋ tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw, ìik khon nyŋ jaŋ pen sòot One person is married; another is still single.
10.	paj lɛ́ɛw, jaŋ jùu	khon nyŋ paj lɛ́ɛw, ìik khon nyŋ jaŋ jùu One person has gone; another is still here.

j) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	cim, cɔɔn	sɔ̌ɔŋ khon nán chŷy araj What are those two people named?	chŷy cim khon nyŋ, ìik khon nyŋ chŷy cɔɔn One is named Jim, the other John.
2.	tɛ̀ŋ lɛ́ɛw, jaŋ pen sòot	nɔ́ɔŋchaaj khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Are your younger brothers married yet?	tɛ̀ŋ lɛ́ɛw khon nyŋ, ìik khon nyŋ jaŋ pen sòot One is; one isn't.
3.	pen mɔ̌ɔ, pen khâarâatchakaan	phŷan khun sɔ̌ɔŋ khon nán thamŋaan araj khráp What do your two friends do for a living?	pen mɔ̌ɔ khon nyŋ, ìik khon nyŋ pen khâarâatchakaan One's a doctor; the other a government employee.

4.	phûut dâj phûut mâj dâj	sɔ̌ɔŋ khon nán phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj máj	phûut dâj khon nyŋ ìik khon nyŋ phûut mâj dâj
5.	dii, mâj dii	náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm nán dii máj Are those two books good?	dii lêm nyŋ, ìik lêm nyŋ mâj dii One is good; the other isn't.

k) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	rúucàk phŷan phǒm	khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you met my friend yet?
2.	kháw rúucàk	kháw rúucàk phŷan phǒm lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Has he met my friend yet?
3.	paj thamŋaan	kháw paj thamŋaan lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Has he gone to work yet?
4.	phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Can he speak Thai yet?
5.	khun	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Can you speak Thai yet?
6.	sýy náŋsy̌y	khun sýy náŋsy̌y lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you bought the books yet?

7.	thaan khâaw	khun thaan khâaw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you eaten yet?
8.	mii khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua	khun mii khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Do you have a family yet?
9.	àan náŋsy̌y lêm nán	khun àan náŋsy̌y lêm nán lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you read that book yet?
10.	rian bòt thîi sìp	khun rian bòt thîi sìp lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you studied lesson 10 yet?

1) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	yes	khun rian bòt thîi sìp lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you studied lesson 10 already?	rian lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, we have.
2.	no	khun thaan khâaw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you eaten yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
3.	yes	kháw paj thamŋaan lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Has he gone to work yet?	paj lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, he has.
4.	no	khun sɔ̌ɔŋ khon rúucàk kan lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you two met yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
5.	no	kháw mii náŋsy̌y lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Does he have the books yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.

6.	yes	thîinân aakàat nǎaw rýjaŋ Is it cold there yet?	nǎaw lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, it is.
7.	no	khun phûut kàp kháw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you spoken with him yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
8.	yes	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Can you speak Thai yet?	dâj lɛ́ɛw Yes, I can.
9.	no	khun khǐan phaasǎa thaj dâj lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Can you write Thai yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
10.	yes	kháw khàp rót pen lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Does he know how to drive yet?	pen lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, he does.
11.	no	kháw wâaj nám pen lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Can he swim yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.

m) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with jaŋ to the affirmative statement.)

	Affirmative Statement	Negative Statement
1.	phǒm maa lɛ́ɛw I've come already	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj maa but he hasn't yet.
2.	phǒm mii náŋsy̌y lɛ́ɛw I have books already	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj mii but he doesn't yet.
3.	phaasǎa thaj phǒm dii lɛ́ɛw My Thai's good already	tɛ̀ɛ phaasǎa thaj khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jaŋ mâj dii but his isn't yet.

4.	khun kèŋ lɛ́ɛw You are already good (at something)	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj kèŋ but he isn't yet.
5.	phǒm khəəj paj myaŋ thaj lɛ́ɛw I've already been to Thailand	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj khəəj but he hasn't yet.
6.	phǒm khàp rót pen lɛ́ɛw I already know how to drive	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj pen but he doesn't yet.
7.	phǒm rúucàk khun lɛ́ɛw I've already met you	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj rúucàk but he hasn't yet.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue		
1.	klàp bâan	kháw jaŋ mâj klàp bâan He hasn't gone home yet.
2.	khəəj thaan aahǎan thaj	kháw jaŋ mâj khəəj thaan aahǎan thaj He hasn't ever eaten Thai food.
3.	kèŋ	kháw jaŋ mâj kèŋ He isn't good (at doing something) yet.
4.	phûut phaasǎathaj	kháw { phûut phaasǎa thaj jaŋ mâj kèŋ kháw { jaŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj kèŋ He doesn't speak Thai well yet.
5.	pen	kháw jaŋ mâj pen He doesn't know how to do it yet.

6. wâaj nám pen

kháw { wâaj nám jaŋ mâj pen
{ jaŋ wâaj nám mâj pen

He doesn't know how to swim yet.

7. dâj

kháw jaŋ mâj dâj

He is unable to do it yet.

8. paj thamŋaan dâj

kháw { jaŋ paj thamŋaan mâj dâj
{ paj thamŋaan jaŋ mâj dâj

He is unable to go to work yet.

o) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with jaŋ mâj dâj to the affirmative statement.)

	Affirmative Statement	Negative Statement
1.	phǒm khít wâa kháw paj lɛ́ɛw	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj paj
	I thought he had gone already,	but he hadn't.
2.	phǒm khít wâa kháw tham lɛ́ɛw	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj tham
	I thought he had already done it,	but he hadn't.
3.	phǒm khít wâa kháw rian bòt níi lɛ́ɛw	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj rian
	I thought he had already studied this lesson,	but he hadn't.
4.	phǒm khít wâa kháw thaan lɛ́ɛw	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj thaan
	I thought he had already eaten,	but he hadn't.
5.	phǒm khít wâa kháw pen koŋsǔn lɛ́ɛw	tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj pen
	I thought he was already the consul,	but he wasn't.

6. phǒm khít wâa kháw sɔ̌ɔn khun lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sɔ̌ɔn

I thought he had already taught it to you, but he hadn't.

7. phǒm khít wâa kháw àan náŋsy̌y lêm níi lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj àan

I thought he had already read this book, but he hadn't.

8. phǒm khít wâa kháw phim còtmǎaj lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj phim

I thought he had already typed the letter , but he hadn't.

9. phǒm khít wâa kháw sýy náŋsy̌y lêm nán lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sýy

I thought he had already bought that book , but he hadn't.

10. phǒm khít wâa kháw faŋ théep an níi lɛ́ɛw tɛ̀ɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj faŋ

I thought he had already listened to this tape , but he hadn't.

p) Sentence Construction Drill

One student forms a sentence like Sentence 1 and another forms a question like Sentence 2 from the cues given. The first student answers the question.

Cue	Sentence 1	Sentence 2
1. paj sòŋ còtmǎaj	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj paj sòŋ còtmǎaj I haven't mailed the letters yet.	khun jaŋ mâj dâj paj sòŋ còtmǎaj rə̌khráp Haven't you mailed the letters yet?
2. thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan I haven't eaten lunch yet.	khun jaŋ mâj dâj thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan rə̌khráp Haven't you eaten lunch yet?
3. kèŋ	phǒm jaŋ mâj kèŋ I'm not good yet.	khun jaŋ mâj kèŋ rə̌khráp Aren't you good yet?
4. phûut phaasǎathaj	phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj jaŋ mâj dâj (phǒm jaŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj dâj) I can't speak Thai yet.	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj jaŋ mâj dâj rə̌khráp Can't you speak Thai yet?
5. rúucàk kháw	phǒm jaŋ mâj rúucàk kháw I haven't met her yet.	khun jaŋ mâj rúucàk kháw rə̌khráp Haven't you met her yet?

6. sýy náŋsy̌y	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sýy náŋsy̌y I haven't bought books yet.	khun jaŋ mâj dâj sýy náŋsy̌y rə̌khráp Haven't you bought books yet?

12.4 EXERCISES

a) Make up a family chart (like the one in 12.1) for each member of the class and the tutor.

b) Ask questions about each memeber of the family in order to find out the following information:

1. name
2. age
3. present and past occupations
4. residence
5. place of work
6. travel experience
7. languages spoken
8. skill in sports and other activities

c) If some of the people in the class have children, find out the name, sex, and age of them.

12.5 VOCABULARY

aahǎan klaaŋwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
an	classifiers of things
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)

diaw	one only, only
jaŋ	still, not yet
khan	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khít	to think
khon klaaŋ	the middle one (of children)
khon lék	the youngest one (of children)
khon sùt thɔ́ɔŋ	the youngest one (of children)
khon too	the oldest one (of children)
khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua (khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua)	the family
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ (khon)	parents (polite usage)
klaaŋwan	in the daytime, by day
lék	small, little (in size)
lɛ́ɛw	already (used to indicate completed action)
lɛ́ɛw rý jaŋ	or not yet? (used in questions)
lɛ́ɛw lý jaŋ	
lɛ́ɛw lə́ jaŋ	
lɛ́ɛw ý jaŋ	
lɛ́ɛw ə́ jaŋ	
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuksìt (khon)	student, pupil
mɛ̂ɛ (khon)	mother
nɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nɔ́ɔŋ chaaj (khon)	younger brother(s)
nɔ́ɔŋ sǎaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
ŋaan	ceremony

phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîi chaaj (khon)	older brother(s)
phîi nɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîi sǎaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phɔ̂ɔ (khon)	father
pii	year
prathaan aathípbɔɔdii (khon)	the president of a country
rɛ̂ɛk	to be first
rýjaŋ	yet (question word)
sòot	to be single, unmarried
tɛ̀ŋ	to decorate, adorn (the verb in tɛ̀ŋ ŋaan)
tɛ̀ŋ ŋaan	to marry, to get married, to be married
thîi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence thîi sǎam 'third', etc.
too	big, large, mature

LESSON THIRTEEN

13.0 BASIC DIALOG: Telling Time

A:	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp	What time is it?
B:	hâa mooŋ cháaw kwàa lɛ́ɛw khráp	It's after 11 a.m.
	naalikaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khun weelaa thâwràj khráp	What time is it by your watch?
A:	naalikaa phǒm ìik hâa naathii ca hâa mooŋ cháaw	By my watch it's five minutes to 11 a.m.
B:	naalikaa khun cháa paj sìp hâa naathii khráp	Your watch is fifteen minutes slow.
A:	ŋán, phǒm hěn ca tɔ̂ŋ rîip paj dǐawníi	In that case, it seems I will have to hurry.
B:	khun ca rîip paj nǎj khráp	Where are you hurrying to?
A.	ca paj aw ŋən thîi thanaakaan kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj prajsanii	I'll go get some money at the bank first, then go to the Post Office.
B:	ca klàp mŷaràj khráp	When will you return?
A:	tɔɔn bàaj bàaj khráp	Sometime in the afternoon.

13.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) kwàa 'more than, to a greater extent or degree'

hâa	mooŋ	cháaw	kwàa	lɛ́ɛw
(11 (lit. 5)	o'clock	a.m.	more than	already)

'It's after 11 a.m.'

b) khrŷŋ 'half'

sɔ̌ɔŋ	mooŋ	cháaw	khrŷŋ
(8 [lit. 2])	o'clock	a.m.	half [hour]

'8:30 a.m.'

c) troŋ 'exactly, sharp (of time)'

hâa	mooŋ	cháaw	troŋ
(11 [lit. 5]	o'clock	a.m.	sharp)

'11 a.m. sharp'

13.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) lìik... ca is used to indicate time in the future.

lìik	Period of Time	ca	Clock Time
lìik (additional	hâa naathii 5 minutes	ca will be	sǎam mooŋ cháaw 9 a.m.)
'It's five minutes to 9 a.m.'			

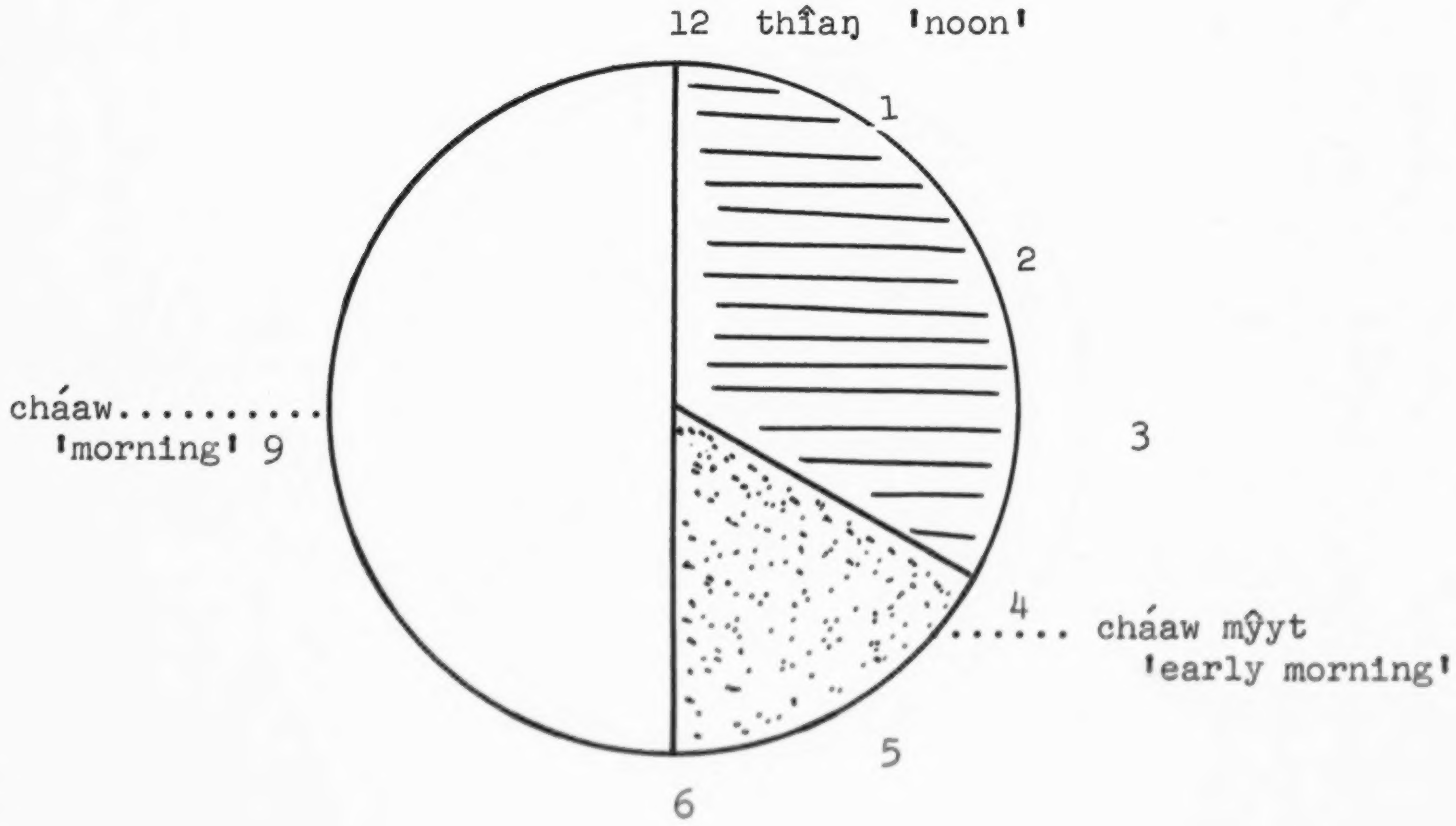
b) To indicate the extent of error of a timepiece the following construction is used:

Direction of Error	Excess	Amount of Time
cháa / rew (slow / fast	paj too much	hâa naathii 5 minutes)
'(It's) five minutes slow/fast.'		

13.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaŋwan 'daytime'


12 thîaŋ 'noon'
1
2
3
4
5
6
cháaw..........
'morning' 9
...... cháaw mŷyt
'early morning'

cháaw:	hòk mooŋ cháaw	'6 a.m.'	cháaw mŷyt:	tii sìi	'4 a.m.'
	mooŋ cháaw[1]	'7 a.m.'		tii hâa	'5 a.m.'
	sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ cháaw	'8 a.m.'			
	sǎam mooŋ cháaw	'9 a.m.'			
	sìi mooŋ cháaw	'10 a.m.'			
	hâa mooŋ cháaw	'11 a.m.'			
	thîaŋ	'noon'			

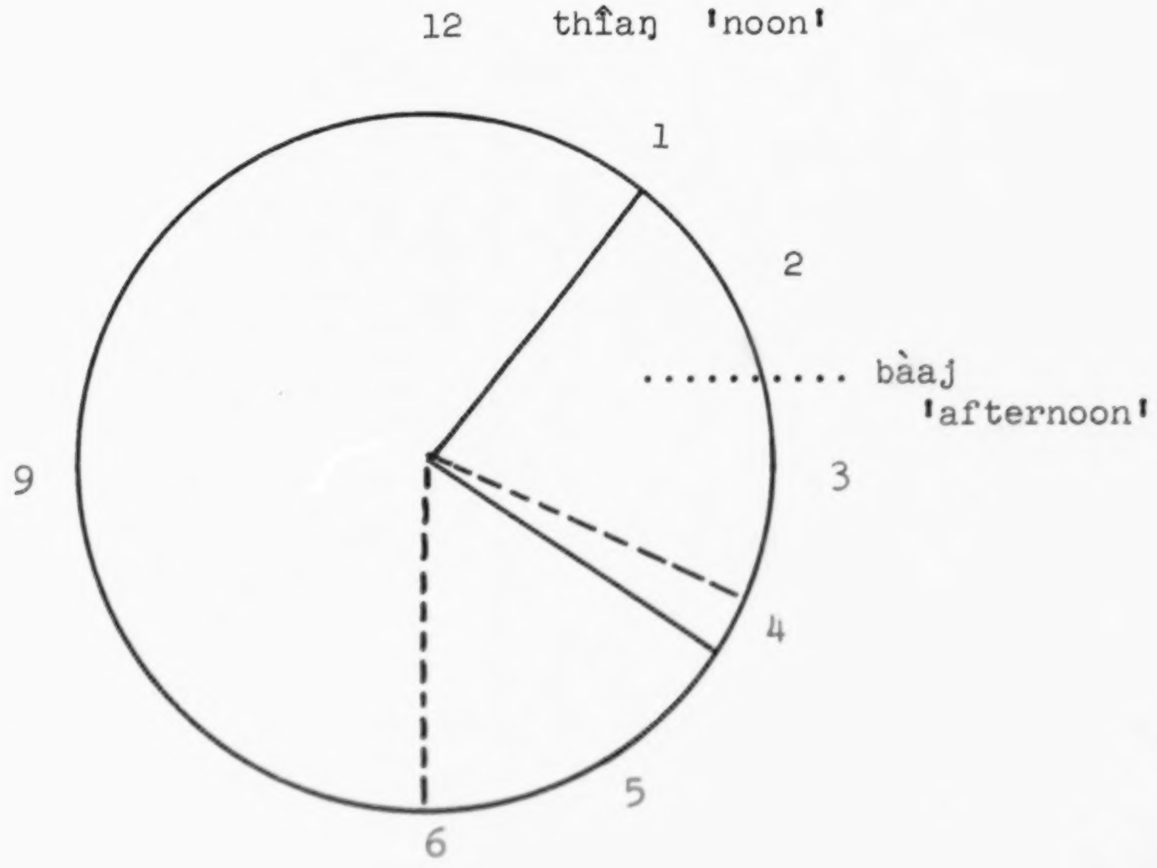
---

[1] Bangkok speakers prefer mooŋ cháaw, but many other persons say cèt mooŋ cháaw.

Note to the Instructor: A real clock or a facsimile clock face should be used in performing many of the drills in this lesson.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaŋwan 'daytime'


12
thîaŋ 'noon'
1
2
bàaj
'afternoon'
9
3
4
5
6

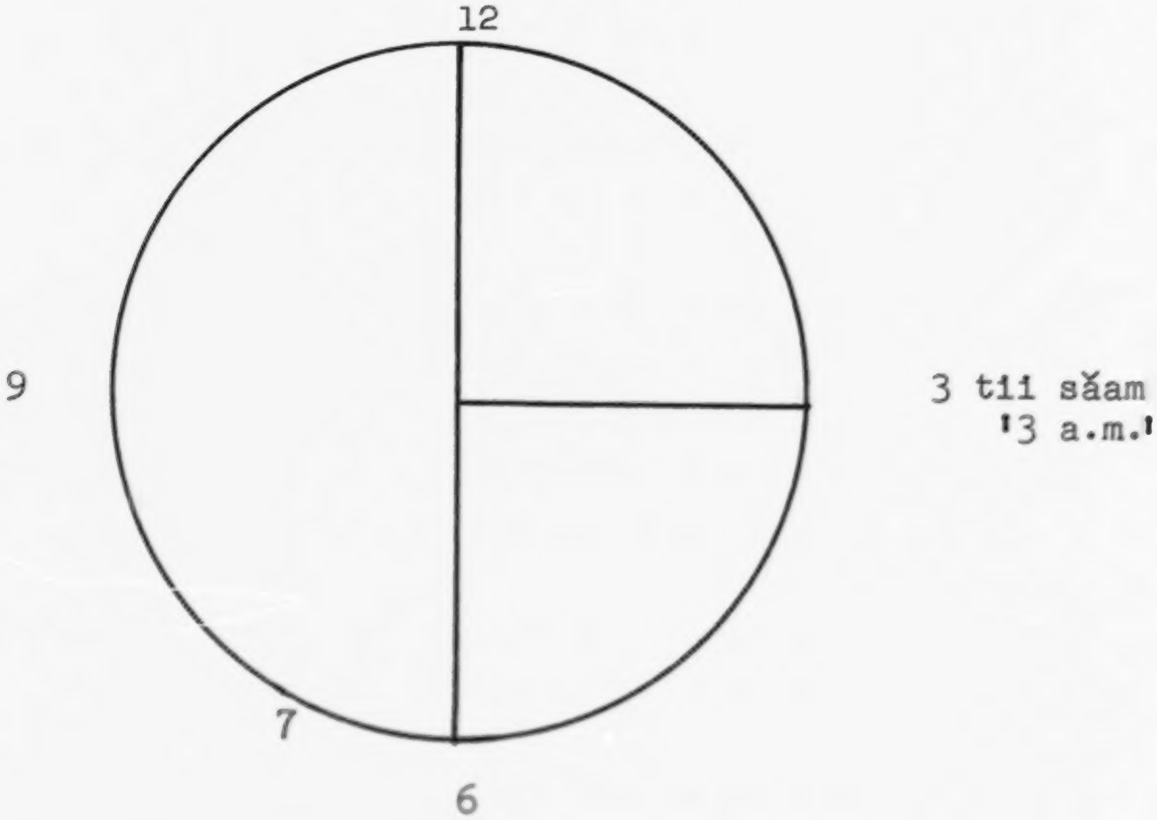
bàaj:	bàaj mooŋ	'1 p.m.'
	bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ	'2 p.m.'
	bàaj sǎam mooŋ	'3 p.m.'
	bàaj sìi mooŋ	'4 p.m.[1]'
jen:	sìi mooŋ jen	'4 p.m.'
	hâa mooŋ jen	'5 p.m.'
	hòk mooŋ jen	'6 p.m.'

---

[1] Both bàaj sìi mooŋ and sìi mooŋ jen are used for 4 p.m.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaŋkhyyn 'nighttime'



nỳŋ thûm	' 7 p.m.'
sɔ̌ɔŋ thûm	' 8 p.m.'
sǎam thûm	' 9 p.m.'
sìi thûm	'10 p.m.'
hâa thûm	'11 p.m.'
thîaŋ khyyn	'12' (midnight)
tii nỳŋ	' 1 a.m.'
tii sɔ̌ɔŋ	' 2 a.m.'
tii sǎam	' 3 a.m.'

d) Response Drill (Point at the time on the clock face.)

Cue	Question	Response
1. 11 a.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	hâa mooŋ cháaw lɛ́ɛw khráp 11 a.m.
2. 9 a.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	sǎam mooŋ cháaw khráp 9 a.m.
3. 10 a.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	sìi mooŋ cháaw khráp 10 a.m.
4. 12 a.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	thîaŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp It's noon.
5. 1 p.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	bàaj mooŋ khráp 1 p.m.
6. 3 p.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	bàaj sǎam mooŋ khráp 3 p.m.
7. 4 p.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	sìi mooŋ jen khráp 4 p.m.
8. 6 p.m.	kìi mooŋ lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	hòk mooŋ jen khráp 6 p.m.

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. 7 p.m.	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	nỳŋ thûm (lɛ́ɛw) khráp 7 p.m.
2. 8 p.m.	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	sɔ̌ɔŋ thûm khráp 8 p.m.
3. 10 p.m.	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	sìi thûm khráp 10 p.m.
4. 11 p.m.	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	hâa thûm khráp 11 p.m.
5. Midnight	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	thîaŋ khyyn Midnight.
6. 2 a.m.	kìi thûm lɛ́ɛw khráp What time is it?	tii sɔ̌ɔŋ khráp 2 a.m.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. tii sìi sǎam naathii	4:03 a.m.
2. tii hâa sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii	5:02 a.m.
3. hòk mooŋ cháaw sìp hâa naathii	6:15 a.m.
4. mooŋ cháaw jîi-sìp naathii	7:20 a.m.
5. sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ cháaw khrŷŋ	8:30 a.m.
6. sǎam mooŋ cháaw sìi sìp hâa naathii	9:45 a.m.
7. hâa mooŋ cháaw troŋ	11:00 a.m.
8. thîaŋ khrŷŋ	12:30 p.m.
9. bàaj mooŋ hâa-sìp naathii	1:50 p.m.

10.	hâa mooŋ jen jîi-sìp hâa naathii	5:25 p.m.
11.	thûm khrŷŋ	7:30 p.m.
12.	thîaŋ khyyn hâa naathii	12:05 a.m.

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	ìik jîi-sìp naathii ca sǎam mooŋ cháaw	8:40 a.m.
2.	ìik sìp hâa naathii ca hâa mooŋ cháaw	10:45 a.m.
3.	ìik sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii ca thîaŋ	11:48 a.m.
4.	ìik cèt naathii ca bàaj mooŋ	12:53 p.m.
5.	ìik hâa naathii ca sìi mooŋ jen	3:55 p.m.
6.	ìik pɛ̀ɛt naathii ca hâa mooŋ khrŷŋ	11:22 a.m.
7.	ìik jîi-sìp hâa naathii ca thîaŋ khyyn	11:35 p.m.

h) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. sìp cèt	naalikaa phǒm cháa paj sìp cèt naathii My watch is seventeen minutes slow.
2. khun	naalikaa khun cháa paj sìp cèt naathii Your watch is 17 minutes slow.
3. khrŷŋ chûamooŋ	naalikaa khun cháa paj khrŷŋ chûamooŋ Your watch is half an hour slow.
4. jîi sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii	naalikaa khun cháa paj jîi-sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii Your watch is 22 minutes slow.
5. phǒm	naalikaa phǒm cháa paj jîi-sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii My watch is 22 minutes slow.

i) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	kâaw	naalikaa phǒm rew paj kâaw naathii My watch is 9 minutes fast.
2.	khrŷŋ chûamooŋ	naalikaa phǒm rew paj khrŷŋ chûamooŋ My watch is half an hour fast.
3.	kháw	naalikaa kháw rew paj khrŷŋ chûamooŋ His watch is half an hour fast.
4.	sìp hâa naathii	naalikaa kháw rew paj sìp hâa naathii His watch is 15 minutes fast.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Parts of the Day)

1.	tɔɔn cháaw	5 a.m. to 9:00 a.m.[1]
2.	tɔɔn sǎaj	9 a.m. to 11:59 a.m.
3.	tɔɔn thîaŋ	12 a.m. to 12:50 p.m.
4.	tɔɔn bàaj	1 p.m. to 4:00 p.m.
5.	tɔɔn jen	4 p.m. to 6:30 p.m.
6.	tɔɔn khâm	From 6:30 p.m. until around midnight
7.	tɔɔn hǔakhâm	6:30 p.m. to 9 p.m.
8.	tɔɔn dỳk	10:00 p.m. to 3 a.m.

---

[1] Time periods are approximate only.

k) Transformation Drill Change from one pattern to the other.

tɔɔn cháaw[1]	weelaa cháaw
tɔɔn sǎaj	weelaa sǎaj
tɔɔn thîaŋ	weelaa thîaŋ
tɔɔn bàaj	weelaa bàaj
tɔɔn jen	weelaa jen
tɔɔn khâm	weelaa khâm

l) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

Pattern 1:	cháaw tɔɔn cháaw	'In the morning'
Pattern 2:	cháaw cháaw tɔɔn cháaw cháaw	'Sometime in the morning'

Pattern 1	Pattern 2
tɔɔn cháaw In the morning.	tɔɔn cháaw cháaw Sometime in the morning.
tɔɔn sǎaj In the late morning.	tɔɔn sǎaj sǎaj Sometime in the late morning.
tɔɔn thîaŋ At noon.	tɔɔn thîaŋ thîaŋ Sometime around noon.

---

[1] The meaning of these two patterns is the same. They are given in drill 'j'

tɔɔn bàaj In the afternoon.	tɔɔn bàaj bàaj Sometime in the afternoon.
tɔɔn jen In the late afternoon.	tɔɔn jen jen Sometime in the late afternoon.
tɔɔn khâm khâm In the evening.	tɔɔn khâm khâm Sometime in the evening.
tɔɔn dỳk Late at night.	tɔɔn dỳk dỳk Sometime late at night.

m) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	tɔɔn bàaj bàaj	khun ca klàp mŷaràj When will you return?	(klàp) tɔɔn bàaj bàaj khráp Sometime in the afternoon.
2.	tɔɔn khâm khâm	khun ca duu náŋsʏ̌y mŷaràj When will you study?	(duu) tɔɔn khâm khâm khráp In the evening.
3.	tɔɔn thîaŋ thîaŋ	khun ca thaan khâaw mŷaràj When will you eat?	(thaan) tɔɔn thîaŋ thîaŋ khráp Sometime around noon.
4.	tɔɔn jen jen	khun ca paj bâan kháw mŷaràj When will you go to his house?	(paj) tɔɔn jen jen khráp Sometime in the late afternoon.

5.	tɔɔn bàaj	khun ca paj aw ŋəən mŷaràj When will you go get the money?	(paj) tɔɔn bàaj khráp In the afternoon.
6.	tɔɔn hâa mooŋ cháaw	khun ca paj sòŋ phŷan mŷaràj When will you see your friend off?	(paj) tɔɔn hâa mooŋ cháaw At 11 a.m.
7.	tɔɔn jen jen	khun ca wâaj nám mŷaràj When will you go swimming?	(wâaj) tɔɔn jen jen khráp Sometime late in the afternoon.
8.	tɔɔn dỳk	kháw maa mŷaràj When did he come?	(maa) tɔɔn dỳk Late at night.
9.	mŷawaanníi	kháw paj mŷaràj When did he go?	(paj) mŷawaanníi Yesterday.
10.	mŷa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ	kháw paj mŷaràj When did she go?	(paj) mŷa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ At 2 p.m.
11.	mŷa kîiníi	kháw phûut kàp khun mŷaràj When did he speak to you?	(phûut) mŷakîiníi A short time ago.

n) Transformation Drill

Observe the following examples:

A:	bàaj níi	'this afternoon'	(Present or future time)
	mŷa bàaj níi	'this afternoon'	(Past time)
B:	khyynníi	'tonight'	(Present or future time)
	mŷa khyynníi	'tonight'	(Past time)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	jenníi this afternoon	mŷajenníi this afternoon
2.	bàaj sǎam mooŋ 3 p.m.	mŷa bàaj sǎam mooŋ 3 p.m.
3.	cháawníi this morning	mŷacháawníi this morning
4.	khâmníi this evening	mŷakhâmníi this evening
5.	thîaŋníi this noon	mŷathîaŋníi this noon
6.	sìi mooŋ jen 4 p.m.	mŷa sìimooŋ jen 4 p.m.
7.	sǎam mooŋ cháaw 9 a.m.	mŷa sǎam mooŋ cháaw 9 a.m.

o) Substitution Drill

Using the cues given form pairs of sentences like the following with lɛ́ɛw as the connective:

Cue: paj aw ŋən, paj prajsanii

Sentences: ca paj aw ŋən kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj prajsanii
I'll get the money (first), then go to the Post Office.

	Cue	Pattern
1.	paj aw náŋsy̌y paj hɔ̂ŋrian	ca paj aw náŋsy̌y kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj hɔ̂ŋrian I'll get a book first, then go to the classroom.
2.	paj thaan khâaw paj duu nǎŋ	ca paj thaan khâaw kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj duu nǎŋ I'll eat first, then go to the movies.
3.	paj faŋ théep, paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt	ca paj faŋ théep kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt I'll listen to tapes first, then go to the library.
4.	paj talàat, paj bâan	ca paj talàat kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj bâan I'll go to the market, then home.
5.	paj jùu kruŋthêep, jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt	ca paj jùu kruŋthêep kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt I'll go live in Bangkok first, then go live in the provinces.

p) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. thîaŋ	thîaŋ rýjaŋ Is it noon yet?	jaŋ mâj thîaŋ Not yet.
2. bàaj	bàaj rýjaŋ Is it afternoon yet?	jaŋ mâj bàaj Not yet.
3. khâm	khâm rýjaŋ Is it evening yet?	jaŋ mâj khâm Not yet.
4. dỳk	dỳk rýjaŋ Is it late (at night) yet?	jaŋ mâj dỳk Not yet.
5. cháaw	cháaw rýjaŋ Is it morning yet?	jaŋ mâj cháaw Not yet.

13.4 EXERCISES (Use a cardboard clock face with movable hands with the following exercises.)

a) Set the hands on the clock face. One student asks what time it is and another responds according to the position of the hands.

b) Set the hands on the clock face, then ask different students what time it will be in ten minutes, twenty minutes, one hour, etc.

c) One student asks another what time it is by his watch; when he responds, the first student says that his watch is slow or fast by a certain number of minutes according to the time indicated by the classroom clock.

d) Set the clock hands. Student A announces the time indicated. Student B asks Student C if it is (*part of the day*) (*tɔɔn bàaj*, *tɔɔn jen*, etc.) yet. Student C responds either (1) that it is, or (2) that it isn't yet according to the time announced by Student A.

e) Concerning the activities listed below, find out from other students:

1. If they did any of them *yesterday*, and if so, at what time;
2. If they will do any of them *tomorrow*, and if so, at what time;
3. If they do any of them *every day*, and if so, at what time; and
4. If they have done any of them *yet*. If the reply is that they haven't yet, find out if they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time.

Activities:

a) come to school
b) go mail a letter
c) play music
d) drive a car
e) go to the bank
f) drink coffee
g) go see a doctor
h) go for a walk
i) go shopping
j) go eat in a restaurant
k) go to work
l) write a letter
m) study lessons
n) play tennis
o) go to the market

13.5 VOCABULARY

aw	to get, to take
bàaj / bàaj bàaj	afternoon, o'clock used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.
cháa	late, slow
cháaw	morning, a.m.
cháawmŷyt	early morning
chûamooŋ	hour (measure of Time)
dǐawníi	right now
dỳk	11 p.m. - 3 a.m.
hěn	to see
hěn ca	think
hɔ̂ŋsamùt (hɔ̂ŋ)	library
hǔakhâm	6 p.m. - 9 p.m.
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)
khâm	6 p.m. - 12 a.m.
khrŷŋ	half
khyyn	to be night
khyynníi	tonight
klaaŋkhyyn	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
lɛ́ɛw	then
mooŋ	o'clock, time
mŷa	used for past time
mŷaràj	when, question word
mŷyt	dark
naathii	minutes
ŋán	in that case
(cháa) paj	too much

rew	early, fast
rîip	to hurry
sǎaj	late, the time 9 a.m. - 11:59 a.m.
thîaŋ	noon
thîaŋ khyyn	midnight
thûm	o'clock, used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.
tii	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
tɔɔn	sometime, time, part of (something)
troŋ	exactly, sharp (of time)
weelaa	time

LESSON FOURTEEN

14.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (1)

A:	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráantàtphǒm máj khráp	Is there a barber shop around here?
B:	mii khráp, jùu fàŋnóon	Yes, there is. On the other side (of the street)
A:	jùu troŋnǎj khráp	Exactly where?
B:	jùu khâaŋkhâaŋ ráankaafɛɛ[1]	Next to the coffee shop
A:	jùu thaaŋsáaj rý thaaŋkhwǎa khráp	To the left or right?
B:	jùu thaaŋsáaj	To the left.
A:	thaaŋkhwǎa khɔ̌ɔŋ ráankaafɛɛ pen araj khráp	What's to the right of the coffee shop?
B:	pen ráanaahǎan	A restaurant.
A:	chŷy khiinóot, châj máj khráp	It's named 'Key Note' isn't it?
B:	mâj châj khráp	No, it isn't.
	ráan khiinóot jùu thîinân	The Key Note is over there.
A:	thanǒn thîi jùu thaaŋ khwǎa nân chŷy thanǒn araj khráp	What's the name of the street on the right?
B:	thanǒn nán rə̌khráp	That street?
	chŷy thanǒn suriwoŋ	It's Suriwong.

---

[1] Bangkok is a rapidly changing city. Here today, gone tomorrow.

A:	(thanǒn suriwoŋ) phàan sathǎanthûut ameerikan máj khráp	Does it (Suriwong Street) pass the American Embassy?
B:	mâj phàan khráp	No, it doesn't.
	sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thɛ̌ɛw thanǒn phləəncìt klâj klâj kàp sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasǒŋ	The American Embassy is in the Ploenchit street area very near Ratprasong Corner.

14.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Constructions with klâj 'near' and klaj 'far' are illustrated below:

jùu	klaj	càak	kruŋthêep	'far from Bangkok'
	klâj	kàp ka- —	kruŋthêep	'near Bangkok'

ka can only be used after klâj when the word following begins with a consonant.

b) The pairs of sentences below are equivalent in meaning:

A:	kruŋthêep jùu klaj càak udɔɔn	'Bangkok is far from Udorn.'
B:	kruŋthêep kàp udɔɔn jùu klaj kan	'Bangkok and Udorn are far apart.'

A:	sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut aŋkrìt	'The American Embassy is near the British Embassy.'
B:	sathǎanthûut ameerikan kàp sathǎanthûut aŋkrìt jùu klâj kan	'The American Embassy and the British Embassy are close to each other.'

c) The extent of the distance between two places can be indicated by constructions like the following:

<table>
<tr><th>NP¹</th><th>Verb Phrase</th><th>NP²</th><th>Extent of distance</th></tr>
<tr><td>kruŋthêep
kruŋthêep</td><td>jùu klaj càak
jùu klaj càak</td><td>chiaŋmàj
chiaŋmàj</td><td>kìi kiloo
900 kiloo</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">'How far (how many kilometers) is Bangkok from Chiangmai?'<br>'Bangkok is 900 kilometers from Chiangmai.'</td></tr>
</table>

d) mii has the meaning 'to be in existence' in constructions like the one below:

<table>
<tr><th>Location (optional)</th><th>mii</th><th>NP Complement</th></tr>
<tr><td>(thɛ̌ɛw níi)</td><td>mii</td><td>ráantàtphǒm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">'In this area (there) is a barber shop.'</td></tr>
</table>

There is no subject of the sentence.

14.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drills

Cue	Pattern
1. ráantàtphǒm	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráantàtphǒm máj khráp Is there a barber shop in this area?
2. ráantàtsŷa	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráantàtsŷa máj khráp Is there a tailor shop in this area?
3. ráankhǎaj náŋsɯ̌yphim	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráankhǎaj náŋsɯ̌yphim máj Is there a newstand in this area? ?
4. pámnámman	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii pámnámman máj khráp Is there a gas pump in this area?
5. thoorasàp sǎathaaraná	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii thoorasàp sǎathaaraná máj khráp Is there a public telephone in this area?
6. ráanmɔ̌ɔ	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráanmɔ̌ɔ máj khráp Is there a doctor's place in this area?
7. ráankhǎaj jaa	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráankhǎaj jaa máj khráp Is there a pharmacy in this area?
8. ráanaahǎan diidii	thɛ̌ɛwníi mii ráanaahǎan dii dii máj khráp Are there good restaurants in this area?

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	ráantàtphǒm	thɛ̌ɛwnii mii ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barber shops in the area?
2.	thaaŋ khwǎa	thaaŋkhwǎa mii ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops to the right?
3.	thîi hooten	thîi hooten mii ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops at the hotel?
4.	thoorasàp	thîi hooten mii thoorasàp máj Are there telephones at the hotel?
5.	thîinîi	thîinîi mii thoorasàp máj Are there telephones here?
6.	aahǎan faràŋ khǎaj	thîinîi mii aahǎan faràŋ khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale here?
7.	thîi ráan nán	thîi ráan nán mii aahǎan faràŋ khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale at that shop?
8.	thɛ̌ɛw nán	thɛ̌ɛw nán mii aahǎan faràŋ khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale in this area?
9.	ráankaafɛɛ	thɛ̌ɛw nán mii ráankaafɛɛ máj Are there coffee shops around here?

10.	klâj klâj (kàp) thîithamŋaan	klâj klâj (kàp) thîithamŋaan mii ráankaafɛɛ máj Are there coffee shops near the office?

c) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	pratuu náam	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is U.S.O.M?	jùu (thîi) pratuu náam khráp On Pratunam.
2.	dɔɔn myaŋ	sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's Don Muang airport?	jùu thîi dɔɔn myaŋ khráp At Don Muang.
3.	saphaan khwaaj	rooŋrɛɛm kɛ́ɛppitɔ̂ɔn jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) saphaan khwaaj khráp At the Water Buffalo bridge.
4.	sìijɛ̂ɛk pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Sports Stadium?	jùu (thîi) sìijɛ̂ɛk pathumwan At Pathumwan Corner.
5.	baaŋkapì	bâan khun jùu thîi nǎj Where's your house?	jùu baaŋkapì At Bangkapi.

d) Response Drill

Cue Words: bâan khun.... baaŋ kapì

Student 1: bâan khun jùu thîinǎj khráp — Where's your house?

Student 2: jùu baaŋkapì khráp — In Bangkapi.

Cue	Question	Response
1. sanǎam kiilaa, thɛ̌ɛw sìijɛ̂ɛk pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj Where's the Sport Stadium?	jùu (thîi) thɛ̌ɛw sìijɛ̂ɛk pathumwan Near Pathumwan Corner.
2. juusɔ̂ɔm, pratuunáam	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu thîinǎj Where is USOM?	jùu thîi pratuunáam At Pratunam.
3. bâan khun, klâj klâj (kàp) anúsǎawarii	bâan khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your house?	jùu klâj klàj (kàp) anúsǎawarii Quite close to the monument.
4. rooŋrɛɛm kɛ́ɛpitɔ̂n, saphaan khwaaj	rooŋrɛɛm kɛ́ɛpitɔ̂n jùu thîinǎj Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) saphaan khwaaj Near the Water Buffalo Bridge.
5. sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ, dɔɔn myaŋ	sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ jùu thîinǎj Where's Don Muang Airport?	jùu (thîi) dɔɔn myaŋ At Don Muang.

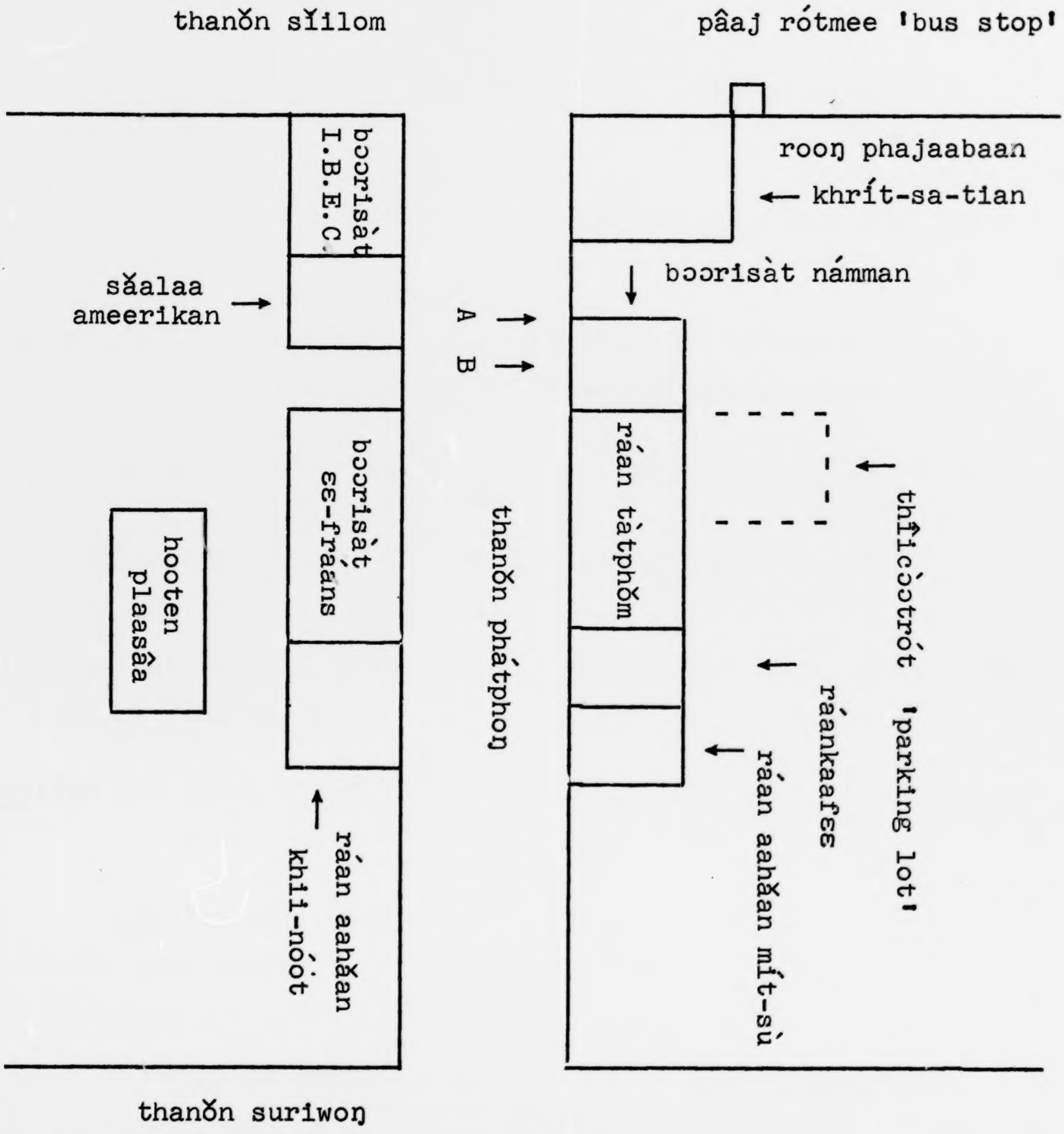
e) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

	Cue	Pattern
1.	khwǎa	ráantàtphǒm jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The barber shop is to the right.
2.	ráanaahǎan	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The restaurant is to the right.
3.	bɔɔrisàt námman	bɔɔrisàt námman jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The oil company is on the right.
4.	thanǒn suriwoŋ	thanǒn suriwoŋ jùu thaaŋkhwǎa Suriwong street is on the right.
5.	hooten plaasâa	hooten plaasâa jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The Plaza Hotel is on the right.

f) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

	Cue	Pattern
1.	sáaj	rooŋphajaabaan jùu thaaŋsáaj The hospital is to the left.
2.	thanǒn sǐilom	thanǒn sǐilom jùu thaaŋsáaj Silom Street is to the left.
3.	bɔɔrisàt aj-bèk	bɔɔrisàt aj-bèk jùu thaaŋsáaj I.B.E.C. is on the left.

Continue the drill with additional examples from the map on the next page.


thanǒn sǐilom
pâaj rótmee 'bus stop'
rooŋ phajaabaan
khrít-sa-tian
bɔɔrisàt I.B.E.C.
bɔɔrisàt námman
sǎalaa ameerikan
A
B
bɔɔrisàt ɛɛ-fráans
ráan tàtphǒm
thîicɔ̀ɔtrót 'parking lot'
hooten plaasâa
thanǒn phátphoŋ
ráankaafɛɛ
ráan aahǎan mít-sù
ráan aahǎan khii-nóot
thanǒn suriwoŋ

g) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions)

Cue:	Cue:	Pattern	
nîi	thîi	thîinii	here
nân	thîi	thîinân	there
nôon	thîi	thîinôon	way over there

h) Response Drill

Cue		
1. nîi	bâan khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your house?	(bâan phǒm) jùu thîinîi It's here.
2. nân	sathǎanthûut jùu thîinǎj Where's the Embassy?	(sathǎanthûut) jùu thîinân It's there.
3. nôon	sìijêɛk râatprasǒŋ jùu thîinǎj Where's Ratprasong Intersection?	(sìijêɛk râatprasǒŋ) jùu thîinôon It's way over there.
4. nîi	phŷan khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your friend?	(phŷan phǒm) jùu thîinîi (My friend) is here.
5. nân	náŋsyǐy khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your book?	(náŋsyǐy phǒm) jùu thîinân It's there.
6. nôon	rót jùu thîinǎj Where's the car?	(rót) jùu thîinôon It's way over there.

i) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions.)

Cue	Cue	Pattern	
1. níi	troŋ	troŋ níi	right here
2. nán	troŋ	troŋ nán	right there
3. nóon	troŋ	troŋ nóon	right over there
4. níi	thɛ̌ɛw	thɛ̌ɛw níi	(in) this section
5. nán	thɛ̌ɛw	thɛ̌ɛw nán	(in) that section

6.	nóon	thɛ̌ɛw	thɛ̌ɛw nóon	(in) that section over there
7.	níi	fàŋ	fàŋ níi	(on) this side (of the street)
8.	nóon	fàŋ	fàŋ nóon	(on) the far side (of the street)

j) Response Drill (Have one student form a question from cue 1, and another respond to it using cue 2.)

Cue 1	Question	Cue 2	Response
1. thîi	thîinǎj Where?	nîi	thîinîi Here.
2. troŋ	troŋnǎj (Exactly) where?	níi	troŋníi Right here.
3. thɛ̌ɛw	thɛ̌ɛwnǎj (in) which section?	nóon	thɛ̌ɛwnóon (In) that section.
4. fàŋ	fàŋnǎj Which side?	níi	fàŋníi This side.
5. thîi	thîinǎj Where?	nôon	thîinôon Way over there
6. troŋ	troŋnǎj (Exactly) where?	nóon	troŋnóon Right over there.

k) Response Drill (Have one student form a question with the first cue, and a second student respond to it using the second cue.)

Cue		
1. ráanaahǎan, thaaŋkhwǎa	ráanaahǎan jùu thîinǎj Where's the restaurant?	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋkhwǎa khráp It's on the right.
2. ráantàtphǒm, thaaŋsáaj	ráantàtphǒm jùu thîinǎj Where's the barber shop?	ráantàtphǒm jùu thaaŋsáaj khráp It's on the left.
3. rooŋrɛɛm eerawan, thɛ̌ɛw sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasǒŋ	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu thîinǎj Where's the Erawan Hotel?	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu thɛ̌ɛw sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasǒŋ It's Ratprasong Corner area.
4. talàat, troŋnóon	talàat jùu thîinǎj Where's the market?	talàat jùu troŋnóon It's right over there.

l) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klaj càak krasuaŋtàaŋ prathêet.
   The American Embassy is far from the Foreign Ministry.

2. rooŋrɛɛm kɛ́ɛp-pi-tɔ̂ɔn jùu klaj càak cátsamɛ̀ɛk
   The Capitol Hotel is far from JUSMAG.

3. sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ jùu klaj càak juusít
   Don Muang Airport is far from USIS.

4. phii-éks jùu klaj cààk juusɔ̂ɔm
   The PX is far from USOM.

5. talàat jùu klaj cààk bâan phǒm.
   The market is far from my house.

6. sathǎanii rótfaj jùu klaj cààk bâan kháw
   The R.R. station is far from his house.

7. hɔ̂ŋ aahǎan jùu klaj cààk hɔ̂ŋ rian.
   The dining room is far from the classroom.

m) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	sathǎanthûut jùu klaj cààk krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet The Embassy is far from the Foreign Ministry.	sathǎanthûut kàp krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet jùu klaj kan. The Embassy and the Foreign Ministry are far apart.
2.	dɔɔn myaŋ jùu klaj cààk sathǎanthûut Don Muang is far from the Embassy.	dɔɔn myaŋ kàp sathǎanthûut jùu klaj kan. Don Muang and the Embassy are far apart.
3.	rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klaj cààk rooŋrɛɛm eerawan The Oriental Hotel is far from the Erawan Hotel.	rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu klaj kan. The Oriental Hotel and the Erawan Hotel are far apart.

4.	bâan phǒm jùu klaj càak bâan khun My house is far from your house.	bâan phǒm kabâan khun jùu klaj kan My house and your house are far apart.
5.	caŋwàt sǒŋkhlǎa jùu klaj càak caŋwàt udɔɔn Songkla Province is far from Udorn Province.	caŋwàt sǒŋkhlǎa kàp caŋwàt udɔɔn jùu klaj kan Songkla Province and Udorn Province are far apart.
6.	thanǒn wítthajú jùu klaj càak thanǒn phahǒnjoothin Wireless Road is far from Paholyotin Street.	thanǒn wítthajú kàp thanǒn phahǒnjoothin jùu klaj kan Wireless Road and Paholyotin Street are far apart.

n) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. prajsanii (no)	prajsanii jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is the Post Office far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.
2. krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet (yes)	krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is the Foreign Ministry far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
3. sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ (no)	sanǎambin dɔɔn myaŋ jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is Don Muang Airport far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.

4.	juusɔ̂ɔm (yes)	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is USOM far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
5.	hɔ̂ŋ prachum (no)	hɔ̂ŋ prachum jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is the auditorium far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.
6.	thanakhaan (yes)	thanakhaan jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is the bank far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
7.	sathǎanii tamrùat	sathǎanii tamrùat jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is the Police Station far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
8.	prathêet faràŋsèet (yes)	prathêet faràŋsèet jùu klaj càak nîi máj Is France far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan
   The American Embassy is near the Erawan Hotel.

2. cátsamɛ̀ɛk jùu klâj kàp juusít.
   JUSMAG is near USIS.

3. sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ jùu klâj kàp thanǒn wítthajú.
   The Ratprasong Intersection is near Wireless Road.

4. thonburii jùu klâj kàp kruŋthêep
Thonburi is near Bangkok.

5. sapɔ̀ɔt khláp jùu klâj kàp culaa.
The Sports Club is near Chula.

6. sanǎam lǔaŋ jùu klâj kàp thammasàat
The Pramane Grounds are near Thamasart (University).

7. bâan phǒm jùu klâj kàp talàat
My house is near the market.

Note to the instructor: Repeat the drill using ka- for kàp.

p) Substitution Drill

Cue	
1. talàat	bâan kháw jùu klâj talàat His house is near the market.
2. rooŋphajabaan	bâan kháw jùu klâj rooŋphajabaan. His house is near the hospital.
3. thanǒn sǐilom	bâan kháw jùu klâj thanǒn sǐilom His house is near Silom Street.
4. hɔ̂ŋsamùt	bâan kháw jùu klâj hɔ̂ŋsamùt His house is near the library.
5. thîithamŋaan	bâan kháw jùu klâj thîithamŋaan His house is near the office.

6. hooten ramâa
bâan kháw jùu klâj hooten ramâa
His house is near Rama Hotel.

7. thanǒn jàj
bâan kháw jùu klâj thanǒn jàj
His house is near the main street.

8. rooŋŋaan
bâan kháw jùu klâj rooŋŋaan
His house is near the factory.

9. tua muaŋ
bâan kháw jùu klâj tua myaŋ
His house is near down town.

q) Sentence Formation Drill

Cue

1. talàat, thîithamŋaan
talàat jùu klâj thîithamŋaan máj
Is the market near the office?

2. bâan khun, bâan khun thǎawɔɔn
bâan khun jùu klâj bâan khun thǎawɔɔn máj
Is your house near Thaworn's?

3. thîithamŋaan khun, prajsanii
thîithamŋaan khun jùu klâj prajsanii máj
Is your office near the Post Office?

4. sathǎanthûut ameerikan, juusɔ̂ɔm
sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj juusɔ̂ɔm máj
Is the American Embassy near USOM?

5. kruŋthêep, ajúthajaa
kruŋthêep jùu klâj ajúthajaa máj
Is Bangkok near Ayuthaya?

6. prathêet jîipùn, prathêet jəəraman
prathêet jîipùn jùu klâj prathêet jəəraman máj
Is Japan near Germany?

r) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	cátsamɛ̀k jùu klâj kàp juusít JUSMAG is near USIS.	cátsamɛ̀k kàp júusít jùu klâj kan JUSMAG and USIS are near each other.
2.	sathǎanthûut ɔ́ɔssatreelia jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut filíppin The Australian Embassy is near the Philippine Embassy.	sathǎanthûut ɔ́ɔssatreelia kàp sathǎanthûut filíppin jùu klâj kan. The Australian Embassy and the Philippine Embassy are near each other.
3.	rooŋrɛɛm ammarin jùu klâj kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan The Amarin Hotel is near the Erawan Hotel.	rooŋrɛɛm ammarin kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj kan The Amarin Hotel and the Erawan Hotel are near each other.
4.	juusɔ̂ɔm jùu klâj kàp talàat pratuunám USOM is near the Pratunam Market.	juusɔ̌ɔm kàp talàat pratuunám jùu klâj kan USOM and the Pratunam Market are close together.
5.	ee-juu-ee jùu klâj kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan A.U.A. is near the Erawan Hotel.	ee-juu-ee kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj kan The A.U.A. and the Erawan Hotel are close together.
6.	wɔɔchiŋtân jùu klâj kàp wəə-ci-nia Washington is near Virginia.	wɔɔchiŋtân kàp wəə-cinia jùu klâj kan Washington and Virginia are close together.

s) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The restaurant is on the right.	ráanaahǎan mâj dâj jùu thaaŋsáaj The restaurant is not on the left.
2.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu thîinôon His house is over there.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw mâj dâj jùu thîinîi His house isn't here.
3.	talàat jùu thaaŋsáaj The market is to the left.	talàat mâj dâj jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The market is not to the right.
4.	prajsanii jùu troŋnóon The P.O. is right over there.	prajsanii mâj dâj jùu troŋníi The P.O. is not right here.
5.	sathǎanthûut jùu thaaŋsáaj The Embassy is to the left.	sathǎanthûut mâj dâj jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The Embassy is not to the right.
6.	náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋkhun jùu thîinôon Your book is over there.	náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khun mâj dâj jùu thîinîi Your book isn't here.
7.	sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thîi thanǒn nóon The USIS auditorium is on the street over there.	sǎalaa ameerikan mâj dâj jùu thîi thanǒn níi The USIS auditorium is not on this street.

t) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋkhwǎa The restaurant is on the right.	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋkhwǎa, mâj châj thaaŋsáaj The restaurant is on the right. It's not on the left.
2.	hooten jùu thaaŋsáaj The hotel is to the left.	hooten jùu thaaŋsáaj, mâj châj thaaŋkhwǎa The hotel is to the left. It's not to the right.
3.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋkháw jùu thɛ̌ɛwnóon His house is in the area over there.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋkháw jùu thɛ̌ɛwnóon, mâj châj thɛ̌ɛwníi His house is in the area over there. It's not in this area.
4.	rót khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒmjùu troŋníi My car is right here.	rót khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm jùu troŋníi, mâj châj troŋnóon My car is right here.
5.	talàat jùu thaaŋsáaj The market is on the left.	talàat jùu thaaŋsáaj, mâj châj thaaŋkhwǎa The market is on the left. It isn't on the right.

u) Transformation Drill (Change to the Negative.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj ka sathǎanthûut The Erawan Hotel is near the Embassy.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu mâj klaj càak sathǎanthûut The Erawan Hotel is not far from the Embassy.
2.	rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klâj ka prajsaniiklaaŋ The Oriental Hotel is near the Central Post Office.	rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu mâj klaj càak prajsaniiklaaŋ The Oriental Hotel is not far from the Central Post Office.
3.	sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu klâj ka sathǎanthûut ameerikan The Spanish Embassy is near the American Embassy.	sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu mâj klaj càak sathǎanthûut ameerikan The Spanish Embassy is not far from the American Embassy
4.	cátsamɛ̀ɛk jùu klâj ka juusít JUSMAG is near USIS.	cátsamɛ̀ɛk jùu mâj klaj càak juusít JUSMAG is not far from USIS.
5.	sìijɛ̂ɛk sàpràthum jùu klâj ka sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ Sapratum Corner is near Ratprasong Corner.	sìijɛ̂ɛk sàpràthum jùu mâj klaj càak sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ Sapratum Corner is not far from Ratprasong Corner.

14.3 EXERCISES

a) Find out if any of the following things are in this area: barber shop, bank, restaurant, Post Office, gas pump, oil company, public telephone, pharmacy, coffee shop, hospital, railroad station, airport, police station.

b) Starting from some particular spot (in front of a bank, etc.) find out where other buildings are in relation (to the left, right over there, etc.) to your position.

c) Using the map following page 133, discuss what places are near each other and which are far apart in Bangkok.

d) Using the map following page 112 discuss what provinces are near each other and which are far apart.

e) Ask other students if particular buildings are near their homes.

f) Ask where particular buildings are located. In the answer you will be told that they are near other buildings.

14.4 VOCABULARY

aj bèk (bɔrisàt)	I.B.E.C., Name of a company
ammarin	Amarin, name of a hotel in Bangkok
anúsǎwarii (hɛ̀ŋ)	monument
ɛɛ fráans	Air France, name of an airline
ɔɔrianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
baaŋkapi	Bangkapi (section of Bangkok)
bɔɔrisàt	company
bɔɔrisàt námman	Oil Company
fàŋ	side (of the street/river/canal/sea)
hôŋ aahǎan (hɔ̂ŋ)	dining room
hooten	hotel

jaa	medicine
jàj	big, large
kɛ́ɛpitɔ̂ɔn	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
khâaŋ	next to (something or someone), side
khiinóot	keynote (name)
khrítsatian	Christian (name of a hospital)
klaj	to be far
klâj	to be near, close
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
pâaj (pâaj)	poster, sign, tag
pâaj rótmee (pâaj)	bus stop
pámnámman	a gas pump
pathumwan	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
phàan	to pass, to go past
phahǒnjoothin	Phaholyotin Street in Bangkok
plaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
prajsanii klaaŋ	The Central Post Office
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
ráankhǎajnáŋsy̌yphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráan khǎajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráanmɔ̌ɔ (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphǒm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsŷa (ráan)	a tailor shop
râatprasǒŋ	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
rooŋŋaan (rooŋ)	factory
rótmee (khan)	bus
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS Auditorium
sǎathaaraná	public (not private)
sanǎam (hɛ̀ŋ)	field, yard, lawn

sanǎam kilaa (hɛ̀ŋ)	the sports stadium
sanǎam lǔaŋ (hɛ̀ŋ)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok)
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)
sathǎanii tamrùat (hɛ̀ŋ)	police station
sìijɛ̂ɛk	corner
sǐilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
thaaŋ	way, path, direction, means
thaaŋ khwǎa	to the right
thaaŋsáaj	to the left
thanǒn jàj	the main street
thîi	at
thîi cɔ̀ɔt rót (thîi)	parking lot
thîinôon	way over there
thɛ̌ɛw	section, district (of a town)
thonburii	Thonburii, Name of a province in Thailand, used to be the capital during the year 1767 through 1782
troŋ	right, exactly
troŋ (nǎj)	(exactly) where

LESSON FIFTEEN

15.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Interview at Korat.

A:	sawàtdii khráp, phǒm chŷy thɔɔm	Hello, my name is Tom.
B:	phǒm chŷy mɛ́ɛn khráp	My name is Maen.
A:	jindii thîi dâj rúucàk	Glad to meet you.
B:	khun pen thahǎan rə̌khráp	You're a soldier, aren't you?
A:	plàaw khráp	No, I'm not.
	phǒm pen phonlaryan	I'm a civilian.
B:	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ mâak	You speak Thai very well.
A:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.
B:	khun maa tham araj thîinii khráp	What did you come here to do?
A:	phǒm maa thamŋaan thîi juusít khráp	To work at USIS.
B:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun mii khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp	Do you have a family?
A:	mii lɛ́ɛw khráp, tɛ̀ weelaaníi,	I do, but at present
	phǒm jùu khondiaw	I live by myself.
B:	thammaj lâ khráp, phanrajaa ka lûuklûuk khɔ̌ɔŋ khun jùu thîi ameerikaa rə̌khráp	Why? Are your wife and children in America?

A:	plàaw khráp	No, they aren't.
	kháw jaŋ jùu thîi kruŋthêep, phrɔ́ kɔ̀ɔn thîi phǒm ca maa thîinîi, phǒm thamŋaan thîi kruŋthêep	They're still in Bangkok, because before I came here I worked in Bangkok.
B:	khun mii bùt kìi khon khráp	How many children do you have?
A:	sɔ̌ɔŋ khon khráp	Two.
B:	phûujǐŋ rý phûuchaaj khráp	Girls or boys?
A:	khontoo pen phûujǐŋ, khonlék pen phûuchaaj	The oldest is a girl; the youngest, a boy.
B:	aajú thâwraj khráp	What ages?
A:	khontoo aajú sìp khùap, khonlék aajú hâa khùap	The oldest is 10; the youngest is 5.
B:	rian náŋsýy thîinǎj khráp	Where do they go to school?
A:	lûuk phǒm rə̌khráp	My children?
	khonnyŋ rian thîi rooŋrian naanaachâat, ìik khonnyŋ jaŋ mâj rian náŋsýy	One goes to the International School; the other doesn't go to school yet.
B:	rooŋrian naanaachâat pen rooŋrian khɔ̌ɔŋ ameerikan, châj máj khráp	The International School is the American School, isn't it?
A:	châj khráp	Yes, it is.
	tɛ̀ɛ kháw mii khruu lɛ́ nákrian châat ỳyn ỳyn lǎaj khon	But they have many teachers and students of other nationalities.
B:	rooŋrian níi jùu thîinǎj khráp	Where is that school?

A:	jùu thîi sɔɔj rûamcaj, thanǒn sukhǔmwít khráp	It's at Ruamchaj Lane Sukhumwit Road.
B:	phǒm jaŋ mâj khəəj paj sǎmnákŋaan juusít ləəj, jùu thîinǎj khráp	I've never been to (the USIS (office). Where is it?
A:	jùu klâjklâj katalàat khráp. wanlǎŋ wanlǎŋ chəən paj jîam raw bâaŋ nakhráp	It's quite close to the market. Why don't you come over and visit us some day?
B:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.
	thîithamŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋkhun pə̀ət kìi mooŋ khráp	When does your office open?
A:	hɔ̂ŋsamùt pə̀ət weelaa thîaŋ, pìt raaw nỳŋthûm tɛ̀ɛ phǒm khâw thamŋaan weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ khrŷŋ, lə̂ək hâa mooŋ jen	The library opens at noon, (and) closes around 7 p.m. but I begin at 8.30 a.m., and quit at 5 p.m.
B:	ŋán, wanlǎŋ phǒm ca paj jîam khun. phǒm laa kɔ̀ɔn nakhráp. ca rîip paj thúrá	Then someday I'll go visit you. I'll say 'Goodbye'. I have urgent business (to take care of).
A:	khráp	All right.
	wǎŋ wâa raw khoŋ dâj phóp kan ìik	I hope we'll meet again.

15.1 QUESTIONS ON THE INTERVIEW

a) khun thɔɔm phóp khraj

b) kháw khəəj rúucàk kan máj

c) khun thɔɔm pen khraj

d) khun thɔɔm tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ

e) weelaaníi khun thɔɔm jùu kakhraj, thammaj

f) thammaj phanrajaa kalûuklûuk khɔ̌ɔŋkháw jaŋ jùu thîi kruŋthêep

g) lûuk khontoo khɔ̌ɔŋkhun thɔɔm aajú thâwràj

h) kháw rian náŋsɯ̌ɯ thîinǎj

i) rooŋrian naanaachâat mii khon châat ɯ̀ɯn ɯ̀ɯn máj

j) sǎmnákŋaan juusít thîi khoorâat jùu klaj càak talàat máj

k) khun thɔɔm khâw thamŋaan kìi mooŋ

l) kháw lə̂ək ŋaan kìi mooŋ

m) hɔ̂ŋsamùt pə̀ət kìi mooŋ, pìt kìi mooŋ

n) khun mɛ́ɛn ca rîip paj nǎj

15.2 EXERCISES

One student will take the part of a Thai and will interview another student who will take the part of an American who has just arrived in a provincial city in Thailand for duty. The interview should follow the general format of the one in 15.0 but additional material may be included. As far as possible, all information given should be correct. The other students in the class should take notes on the interview and be prepared to answer questions about the information contained in it.

15.3 VOCABULARY

jîam	to visit
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khoŋ (ca)	probably
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lə̂ək	quit, finish, to be over or through
mɛ́ɛn	Maen (male or female first name)

phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phrɔ́	because
raaw	around, about
rîip	to hurry, to be urgent
rooŋrian naanaachâat (rooŋrian)	The International School
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
sǎmnákŋaan (hɛ̀ŋ)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sɔɔj	lane (narrow street)
sukhǔmwít	Sukhumwit Road
thɔɔm	Tom (a name)
thammaj	why (question word)
wanlǎŋ	some day (in the future)
wǎŋ	to hope
weelaaníi	at present

LESSON SIXTEEN

16.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (2)

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot khráp, prajsanii klaaŋ paj thaaŋnǎj	Excuse me, which way is the main Post Office
B:	troŋ paj khâaŋnâa khráp	Straight ahead.
A:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.

(10 minutes later)

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot khráp, nîi prajsanii klaaŋ, châj máj	Excuse me, this is the main Post Office, isn't it?
B:	châj khráp	Yes, it is.
A:	thîisòŋ thooralêek jùu troŋnǎj, sâap máj khráp	Where's the place to send telegrams, do you know?
B:	jùu khâaŋnaj khráp	It's inside.
A:	paj thaaŋnǎj khráp	Which way do you go?
B:	dəən troŋ khâw paj khâaŋnaj, lɛ́ɛw líaw khwǎa, thîisòŋ thooralêek ca jùu thaaŋsáaj (myy) (khɔ̌ɔŋ) khun	Go straight in, then turn right the place to send telegrams will be to your left.
A:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun mâak khráp	Thank you very much.
B:	mâj pen raj khráp	You're welcome.

16.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	náŋsy̌y phǒm jùu naj hɔ̂ŋ My book is in the room.	náŋsy̌y phǒm jùu khâaŋnaj My book is inside.
2.	thîisòŋ thooralêek jùu naj tỳk The place to send telegrams is in the building.	thîisòŋ thooralêek jùu khâaŋnaj The place to send telegrams is inside.
3.	thîi thamkaan prajsanii jùu naj rooŋrɛɛm The office of the Post Office is in the hotel.	thîi thamkaan prajsanii jùu khâaŋnaj The office of the Post Office is inside.
4.	khruu jùu naj hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp The teacher is in the lab.	khruu jùu khâaŋnaj The teacher is inside.
5.	lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu naj hɔ̂ŋ My daughter is in the room.	lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu khâaŋnaj My daughter is inside.
6.	hɔ̂ŋthabian jùu naj tỳk The registrar's room is in the building.	hɔ̂ŋthabian jùu khâaŋnaj The registrar's room is inside.
7.	khun wíchaj jùu naj sǎalaa ameerikan Wichai is in the USIS auditorium.	khun wíchaj jùu khâaŋnaj Wichai is inside.

b) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	phŷan phǒm jùu nɔ̂ɔk hɔ̂ŋrian	phŷan phǒm jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	My friend is outside the classroom.	My friend is outside.
2.	rooŋrót jùu nɔ̂ɔk bâan	rooŋrót jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	The garage is outside the house.	The garage is outside.
3.	phanrajaa phǒm jùu nɔ̂ɔkbâan	phanrajaa phǒm jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	My wife is outside the house.	My wife is outside.
4.	ráanaahǎan jùu nɔ̂ɔk tỳk rian	ráanaahǎan jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	The restaurant is outside the school building.	The restaurant is outside.
5.	khruu jùu nɔ̂ɔk hɔ̂ŋrian	khruu jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	The teacher is outside the classroom.	The teacher is outside.
6.	lûuk phǒm jùu nɔ̂ɔk bâan	lûuk phǒm jùu khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
	My children are outside the house.	My children are outside.

c) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw jùu nâa raw	kháw jùu khâaŋnâa
	He is in front of us.	He is in front.
2.	khruu jùu nâa chán	khruu jùu khâaŋnâa
	The teacher is in front of the class.	The teacher is in front.
3.	pâajrótmee jùu nâa rooŋrian	pâajrótmee jùu khâaŋnâa
	The bus stop is in front of the school.	The bus stop is in front.
4.	ráanaahǎan jùu nâa hooten	râanaahǎan jùu khâaŋnâa
	The restaurant is in front of the hotel.	The restaurant is in front.
5.	rót jùu nâa bâan	rót jùu khâaŋnâa
	The car is in front of the house.	The car is in front.

d) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	thîi cɔ̀ɔt rót jùu lǎŋ bâan	thîi cɔ̀ɔt rót jùu khâaŋlǎŋ
	The parking lot is behind the house.	The parking lot is in the back.
2.	kâw îi jùu lǎŋ chán	kâw îi jùu khâaŋlǎŋ
	The chairs are in the back of the class.	The chairs are in back.

3. bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu lǎŋ hooten His house is behind the hotel.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu khâaŋlǎŋ His house is behind.
4. pám námman jùu lǎŋ sathǎanthûut The gas pump is behind the Embassy.	pám námman jùu khâaŋlǎŋ The gas pump is out back.

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. khâaŋnâa ahead	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way?	troŋ paj khâaŋnâa Go straight ahead.
2. sáaj left	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way?	paj thaaŋsáaj Go to the left.
3. níi this	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way.	paj thaaŋníi Go this way.
4. khâaŋnâa ahead	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way?	troŋ paj khâaŋnâa Go straight ahead.
5. khwǎa right	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way?	paj thaaŋ khwǎa Go to the right.
6. sáaj left	paj thaaŋ nǎj Go which way?	paj thaaŋ sáaj Go to the left.

f) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. mâj líaw	troŋ paj rý líaw	troŋ paj
not turn	Straight ahead or turn?	Straight ahead.
2. khwǎa	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa	líaw khwǎa
right	Turn left or turn right?	Turn right.
3. sáaj	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa	líaw sáaj
left	Turn left or turn right?	Turn left.
4. mâj troŋ paj	troŋ paj rýy líaw	líaw
not go straight ahead	Go straight ahead or turn?	Turn.
5. mâj líaw	troŋ paj rý líaw	troŋ paj
not turn	Go straight ahead or turn?	Go straight ahead.
6. khwǎa	líaw khwǎa rýy líaw sáaj	líaw khwǎa
right	Turn right or turn left?	Turn right.
7. sáaj	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa	líaw sáaj
left	Turn left or turn right?	Turn left.

g) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. hɔ̂ŋrian	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj hɔ̂ŋrian He's going into the classroom.
2. bâan khun	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj bâan khun He's going into your house.
3. hɔ̂ŋsamùt	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj hɔ̂ŋsamùt He's going into the library.
4. thanaakhaan	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj thanaakhaan He's going into the bank.
5. prajsanii	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj prajsanii He's going into the Post Office.
6. ráanaahǎan	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj ráanaahǎan He's going into the restaurant.
7. rooŋrɛɛm	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj rooŋrɛɛm He's going into the hotel.
8. hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp	kháw kamlaŋ khâw paj naj hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp He's going into the telephone booth.

h) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. kháw	kháw kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk He's going outside.
2. khruu	khruu kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk The teacher's going outside.
3. nákrian	nákrian kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk The student's going outside.
4. khun ceennîi	khun ceennîi kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk Jenny's going outside.
5. phanrajaa kháw	phanrajaa kháw kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk His wife's going outside.
6. lûuksǎaw khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw	lûuksǎaw khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk His daughter's going outside.
7. phŷan dichán (phǒm)	phŷan dichán kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk My friend's going outside.
8. khun mɔ̌ɔ	khun mɔ̌ɔ kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk The doctor's going outside.
9. khun	khun kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk You're going outside.

i) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill g, using khâw maa 'come in' for khâw paj 'go in'.)

j) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill h, using ɔ̀ɔk maa 'come out' for ɔ̀ɔk paj 'go out'.)

k) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	kháw	kháw ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has he come out yet?
2.	thahǎan	thahǎan ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the soldier come out yet?
3.	mɔ̌ɔ	mɔ̌ɔ ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the doctor come out yet?
4.	khruu	khruu ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the teacher come out yet?
5.	naaŋphajabaan	naaŋphajabaan ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the nurse come out yet?
6.	khon aŋkrìt	khon aŋkrìt ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the Englishman come out yet?
7.	phanrajaa kháw	phanrajaa kháw ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has his wife come out yet?
8.	lûukchaaj phǒm	lûukchaaj phǒm ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has my son come out yet?
9.	sǎamii khun	sǎamii khun ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has your husband come out yet?
10.	tamrùat	tamrùat ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the policeman come out yet?

l) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. no	thahǎan ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the soldier come out yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
2. yes	mɔ̌ɔ ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the doctor come out yet?	ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, he has.
3. no	khruu ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the teacher come out yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
4. no	lûukchaaj kháw ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has his son come out yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
5. yes	phŷankhun ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has your friend come out yet?	ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, he has.
6. yes	chaawnaa ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Has the farmer come out yet?	ɔ̀ɔk maa lɛ́ɛw khráp Yes, he has.

m) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. yes	kháw khâw paj naj hɔ̂ŋrian rýplàaw Did he go into the classroom?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.
2. no	kháw khâw paj naj rooŋphajabaan rýplàaw Did he go into the hospital?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
3. no	kháw khâw paj naj thanakhaan rýplàaw Did he go into the bank?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
4. yes	kháw khâw paj naj ráanaahǎan rýplàaw Did he go into the restaurant?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.

5.	no	kháw khâw paj naj sathǎanthûut ameerikan rýplàaw	plàaw khráp
		Did he go into the American Embassy?	No, he didn't.
6.	yes	kháw khâw paj naj sathǎanii tamrùat rýplàaw	khráp, khâw paj
		Did he go into the police station?	Yes, he did.

n) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	prajsanii jùu troŋ paj khâaŋnâa, phǒm khuan ca dəən troŋ paj rý líaw	dəən troŋ paj khráp
	If the Post Office is straight ahead, should I go straight or turn?	Go straight ahead.
2.	ráanaahǎan jùu thaaŋ khwǎa, phǒm khuan ca líaw paj thaaŋnǎj	líaw paj thaaŋ khwǎa khráp
	If the restaurant is to the right, which way should I turn?	Turn to the right.
3.	rooŋrian jùu thaaŋ sáaj, phǒm khuan ca líaw paj thaaŋ nǎj	líaw paj thaaŋ sáaj khráp
	If the school is to the left, which way should I turn?	Turn to the left.
4.	sathǎanii rótfaj jùu troŋ paj khâaŋnâa, phǒm khuan ca líaw paj thaaŋ nǎj	dəən troŋ paj khráp
	If the train station is straight ahead, which way should I turn?	Go straight ahead.

16.2 EXERCISES

a) Have students take turns playing the following roles:

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Who is sitting in the classroom, describes what Student A is doing ('He is going out of the classroom, he is coming in (to) the classroom', etc.)

Student : Who is standing outside the classroom, also says what student A is doing.

b) Have students take turns playing the following roles.

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Asks Student C questions about Student A's actions (for example, 'Has he gone out of the classroom yet?, etc.) (Both Student B and C are in the classroom).

Student : Responds to Student B's questions according to where Student A is at the time.

c) Repeat exercise (b) with Student B and C standing outside the classroom.

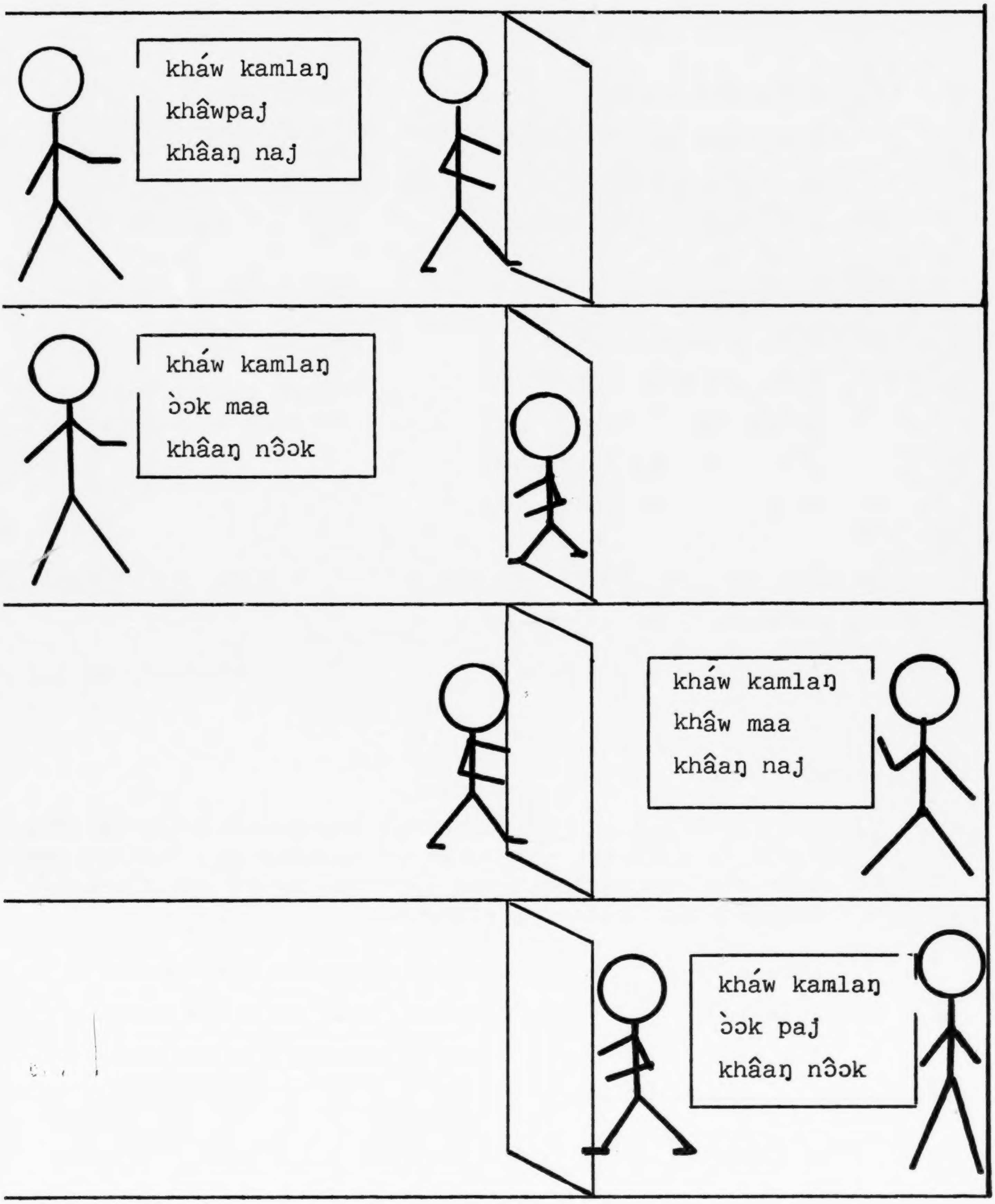
d) Ask various students to give directions to places in the neighborhood starting from where they are.

e) Starting from specific places in the neighborhood, ask how you go to get to other specific places. (For Example, 'I'm at X. Which way do I go to get to Y,' etc.)

16.3 VOCABULARY

ɔ̀ɔk / maa	come out
paj	go out
chán	class
dəən	to walk
hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp (hɔ̂ŋ)	telephone booth
khâaŋlǎŋ	the back, behind
khâaŋnâa	ahead, in front
khâaŋnaj	inside
khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk	outside
khuan ca	should
lǎŋ	behind
líaw	to turn
myy	hand
nâa	in front; face
nɔ̂ɔk	outside
araj	what (question word)
rooŋrót (rooŋ)	garage, carport
sâap	to know (a fact)
thaaŋ	way, path, direction
thîisòŋ thooralêek	the place to send telegrams
thîi thamkaan	the office
thooralêek	telegram
troŋ	straight
tỳk (lǎŋ)	building

Chart illustrating use of khâw paj 'go in', ɔ̀ɔk maa 'come out', khâw maa 'come in', and ɔ̀ɔk paj 'go out'.


kháw kamlaŋ khâwpaj khâaŋ naj
kháw kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk maa khâaŋ nɔ̂ɔk
kháw kamlaŋ khâw maa khâaŋ naj
kháw kamlaŋ ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋ nɔ̂ɔk

LESSON SEVENTEEN

17.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (3)

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot khráp khun sâap máj khráp wâa rooŋrɛɛm présidên jùu thîinǎj	Excuse me, do you know where the President Hotel is?
B:	thîi thanǒn keesɔ̌ɔn khráp	It's on Gaysorn street.
A:	paj thaaŋ nǎj khráp	Which direction is it?
B:	dəən troŋ paj thaaŋ níi thy̌ŋ sìijɛ̂ɛk khâam thanǒn paj lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋkhwǎa hooten ca jùu thaaŋsáaj myy	Go straight this way to the corner cross the street, then go to the right. The hotel is on the left.
A:	jùu troŋ kan khâam kàp rooŋrɛɛm eerawan, châj máj khráp	It's directly opposite the Erawan Hotel, isn't it?
B:	jùu jýaŋ kan nɔ̀j khráp	It's catercornered to it.

17.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The verbs paj and maa occur as postpositions with other verbs to indicate direction of motion; paj 'motion away from the speaker' and maa 'motion toward the speaker'. Observe the following examples:

khâw maa[1]	'enter (towards the speaker)'
khâw paj	'enter (away from the speaker)'
ɔ̀ɔk maa	'exit (towards the speakers)'

---

[1] The meaning of khâw paj, khâw maa, ɔ̀ɔk maa, and ɔ̀ɔk paj is illustrated in the chart on the preceeding page.

ɔ̀ɔk paj	'exit (away from the speaker)'
thoo(rasàp) paj	'telephone (away)from the speaker)'
thoo(rasàp) maa	'telephone (towards the speaker)'
dəən maa	'walk (towards the speaker)'
dəən paj	'walk (away from the speaker)'
klàp paj	'turn back (away from the speaker)'
klàp maa	'turn back (towards the speaker)'

b) Prepositions such as naj 'in', nɔ̂ɔk 'outside of', etc. may occur with nouns like khâaŋ (or khâŋ) 'side' and thaaŋ 'way, path' to form derivatives with the meaning 'space relationship'[1]. The following are examples:

khâaŋnaj 'inside', khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk 'outside', khâaŋnâa 'in front of' khâaŋbon 'up above', khâaŋlǎŋ 'behind', khâaŋlâaŋ 'down below', thaaŋsáaj 'to the left', thaaŋkhwǎa 'to the right', thaaŋnýa 'North', thaaŋtâj 'South'.

17.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill[2] (Change from pattern 1 to 2.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	rooŋrɛɛm présidên jùu troŋkan khâam kàp rooŋrɛɛm ammarin	rooŋrɛɛm présidên kàp rooŋrɛɛm ammarin jùu troŋ khâam kan
	The President Hotel is opposite the Amarin.	The President Hotel and the Amarin are across from each other.

---

[1] For a fuller description see Noss, 147 ff.

[2] The instructor can extend this drill and the three that follow by using other place names from the map on page 289.

2.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan jùu troŋkan khâam kàp krom tamrùat The Erawan Hotel is opposite the Police Department.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan kakrom tamrùat jùu troŋ khâam kan The Erawan Hotel and the Police Department are opposite each other.
3.	rooŋrɛɛm sajǎam intəə jùu troŋkan khâam kàp rooŋnǎŋ sajǎam The Siam International is opposite the Siam Cinema.	rooŋrɛɛm sajǎam intəə ka rooŋnǎŋ sajǎam jùu troŋ khâam kan The Siam International Hotel and the Siam Cinema are opposite each other
4.	sapɔ̀ɔt khláp jùu troŋ kan khâam kàp culaa The Sports Club is opposite Chula(longkorn).	sapɔ̀ɔt khláp kàp culaa jùu troŋ khâam kan The Sports Club and Chulalongkorn are across from each other.

b) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	diisaaj thaj jùu jýaŋ kàp rooŋrɛɛm presidên Design Thai is diagonally across from the President.	diisaaj thaj ka rooŋrɛɛm présidên jùu jýaŋ kan Design Thai and the President are diagonally across from each other.
2.	rooŋphajaabaan culaa jùu jýaŋ kàp (mahǎawítthajaalaj) culaa Chula Hospital is diagonally across from Chula (University).	rooŋphajaabaan culaa kàp culaa (loŋkɔɔn mahǎawítthajaalaj) jùu jýaŋ kan Chula Hospital and Chulalongkorn University are diagonally across from each other.

3.	ráan ee jùu jýaŋ kàp ráan bii Shop A is diagonally across from Shop B.	ráan ee karáan bii jùu jyaŋkan Shop A and Shop B are diagonally across from each other.
4.	rooŋnǎŋ lidôo jùu jýaŋ kàp rooŋrɛɛm sajǎam intəə The Lido Cinema is diagonally across from the Siam International Hotel.	rooŋnǎŋ lidôo kàp rooŋrɛɛm sajǎam intəə jùu jýaŋ kan The Lido Cinema and the Siam International Hotel are diagonally across from each other.

c) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	dəən paj thaaŋ sáaj	khâam thanǒn paj, lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋ sáaj Cross the street, then go to the left.
2.	dəən paj thaaŋ níi	khâam thanǒn paj, lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋ níi Cross the street, then go this way.
3.	dəən troŋ paj khâaŋnâa	khâam thanǒn paj, lɛ́ɛw dəən troŋ paj khâaŋnâa Cross the street, then do straight ahead.
4.	dəən paj thaaŋkhwǎa	khâam thanǒn paj, lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋ khwǎa Cross the street, then go to the right.

5)	líaw sáaj	khâam thanón paj, lέεw líaw sáaj Cross the street, then turn left.
6.	dəən troŋ paj khâaŋnâa	khâam thanŏn paj, lέεw dəən troŋ paj khâaŋnâa Cross the street, then go straight ahead.
7.	líaw khwǎa	khâam thanŏn paj, lέεw líaw khwǎa Cross the street, then turn right.

d) Response Drill

Cue			
1.	sáaj	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ nǎj Cross the street, and go which way?	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ sáaj Cross the street, and go to the left.
2.	khwǎa	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ nǎj Cross the street, and go which way?	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ khwǎa Cross the street and go to the right.
3.	troŋ paj	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ nǎj Cross the street, and go which way?	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən troŋ paj Cross the street and go straight.
4.	troŋ paj khâaŋ nâa	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən paj thaaŋ nǎj Cross the street, and go which way?	khâam thanŏn, lέεw dəən troŋ paj khâaŋ nâa Cross the street, and go straight ahead.

5.	sáaj	khâam thanɔ̌n, lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋ nǎj Cross the street and go which way?	khâam thanɔ̌n, lɛ́ɛw dəən paj thaaŋ sáaj Cross the street, and go to the left.

e) Response Drill

	Cue		
1.	bàaj mooŋ	weelaa thîaŋ khun ca paj kin khâaw, ca klàp maa kìi mooŋ khráp You're going to eat at noon. When will you return?	ca klàp maa bàaj mooŋ khráp I'll be back at 1 p.m.
2.	sɔ̌ɔŋ thûm	khun ca paj ráp phŷan weelaa jen, ca klàp maa kìi mooŋ You're going to pick up a friend in the late afternoon. When will you return?	ca klàp maa sɔ̌ɔŋ thûm At 8 p.m.
3.	hâa mooŋ	khun paj faŋ théep thîi hɔ̂ŋ lɛ́ɛp toon cháaw, ca klàp maa kìi mooŋ You're going to listen to tapes in the lab in the morning. When will you come back?	ca klàp maa hâa mooŋ cháaw At 11 p.m.

4.	khâm khâm	khun paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi talàat weelaa jen, ca klàp maa kìi mooŋ You're going shopping at the market in the late afternoon. When will you be back?	ca klàp maa khâm khâm Sometime in the evening.
5.	hòk mooŋ jen	mŷawaanníi kháw paj bɔ́ɔsatân·wanníi kháw ca klàp maa kìi mooŋ Yesterday he went to Boston. What time today will he get back?	kháw ca klàp maa hòk mooŋ jen At 6 p.m.
6.	sǎam mooŋ	khun ca paj prachum weelaa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ khun ca klàp kìi mooŋ You are going to the meeting at 2 p.m. What time will you get back?	ca klàp maa sǎam mooŋ At 3 p.m.

f) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	sìi mooŋ jen	khun maa rooŋrian sǎam mooŋ cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan kìi mooŋ You came to school at 9. What time are you going home?	ca klàp (paj) bâan sìi mooŋ jen khráp At 4 p.m.

2.	hâa mooŋ khrŷŋ	khun maa thîi thamŋaan mooŋ cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan kìi mooŋ You came to the office at 7. When will you go home?	ca klàp (paj) bâan hâa mooŋ khrŷŋ At 5.30 p.m.
3.	jen jen	bàajníi khun ca paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ, khun ca klàp (paj) bâan kìi mooŋ You're going to the doctor's this afternoon. What time will you go home?	ca klàp (paj) bâan jen jen Sometime the late afternoon.
4.	thîaŋ thîaŋ	phrûŋníi cháaw khun ca paj ráp phŷan thîi dɔɔn myaŋ, khun ca klàp paj thamŋaan kìi mooŋ Tomorrow morning you are going to pick up a friend at Don Muang. What time will you get back to the office?	ca klàp paj thîaŋ thîaŋ Around noon.
5.	bàaj sǎam mooŋ	mŷawaanníi khun paj sathǎanthûut khun klàp paj rooŋrian kìi mooŋ Yesterday you went to the Embassy. What time did you get back to school?	klàp paj bàaj sǎam mooŋ At 3 p.m.

6.	sìi thûm	kháw maa ŋaanlíaŋ thîi bâan phǒm weelaa nỳŋ thûm. kháw klàp (paj) bâan kìi thûm He came to a party at my house at 7 p.m. What time did he get home?	kháw klàp (paj) bâan sìi thûm At 10 p.m.

g) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. no	mŷacháawníi khun dəən maa rooŋrian rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to school this morning?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dəən) No, I didn't.
2. yes	bàajníi khun ca dəən paj bâan rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk home this afternoon?	dəən khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûŋníi khun ca dəən maa rooŋrian rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk to school tomorrow?	plàaw khráp (mâj dəən) No, I'm not.
4. no	mŷakíiníi khun dəən paj prajsanii rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to the Post Office a short time ago?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dəən) No, I didn't.

h) Substitution Dialog: thoo maa : thoo paj

MODEL:	A:	phanrajaa thoo maa hǎa khun	'Your wife called.'
	B:	bɔ̀ɔk wâa araj khráp	'What did she say?'
	A:	khɔ̌ɔ hâj thoo paj hǎa kháw	'Please call her.'

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa:

1. phŷan khun
2. lûukchaaj kháw
3. khon thaj
4. phîisǎaw khun
5. khruu khɔ̌ɔŋ khun
6. khɛ̀ɛk malajuu

i) Substitution Dialog

MODEL:	A:	khun thoo paj hǎa phanrajaa lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ	'Have you called your wife yet?'
	B:	thoo lɛ́ɛw khráp	'I did.'
	A:	kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa araj	'What did she say?'
	B:	(bɔ̀ɔk wâa) bàaj mooŋ ca maa hǎa phǒm	(She said) she would come to see me at 1 p.m.

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa.

1. lûuksǎaw khun
2. phŷan khun
3. nɔ́ɔŋchaaj khun
4. khun phɔ̂ɔ
5. khruu khun
6. khun mɛ̂ɛ

17.3 EXERCISES (Use the maps on pages 288 and 289 with exercise a.)

a) One student asks another if he knows where various buildings are. A second student gives the location either in terms of another building (directly opposite the Erawan Hotel, etc.) or gives directions as to how to get there (cross the street, go to the corner, etc.) Use the points marked A, B, C, D, and E as starting points for directions.

b) One student reports to another that someone has telephoned him. There follows an exchange concerning (1) the person that called, (2) time of the call, and (3) the contents of the message.

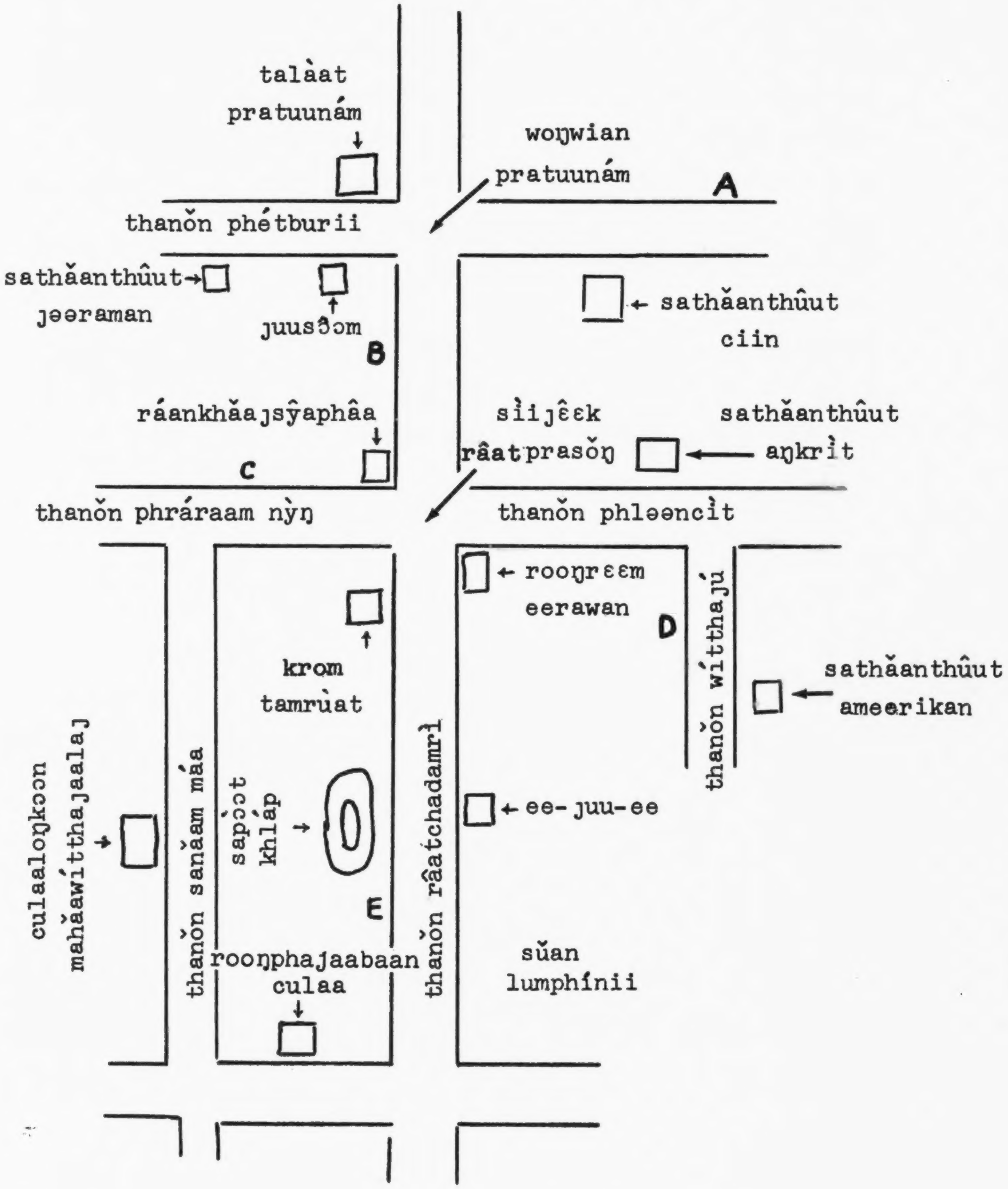
c) One student tells another one that he called him up last night (or yesterday, etc.). They discuss the time of the call and the message.

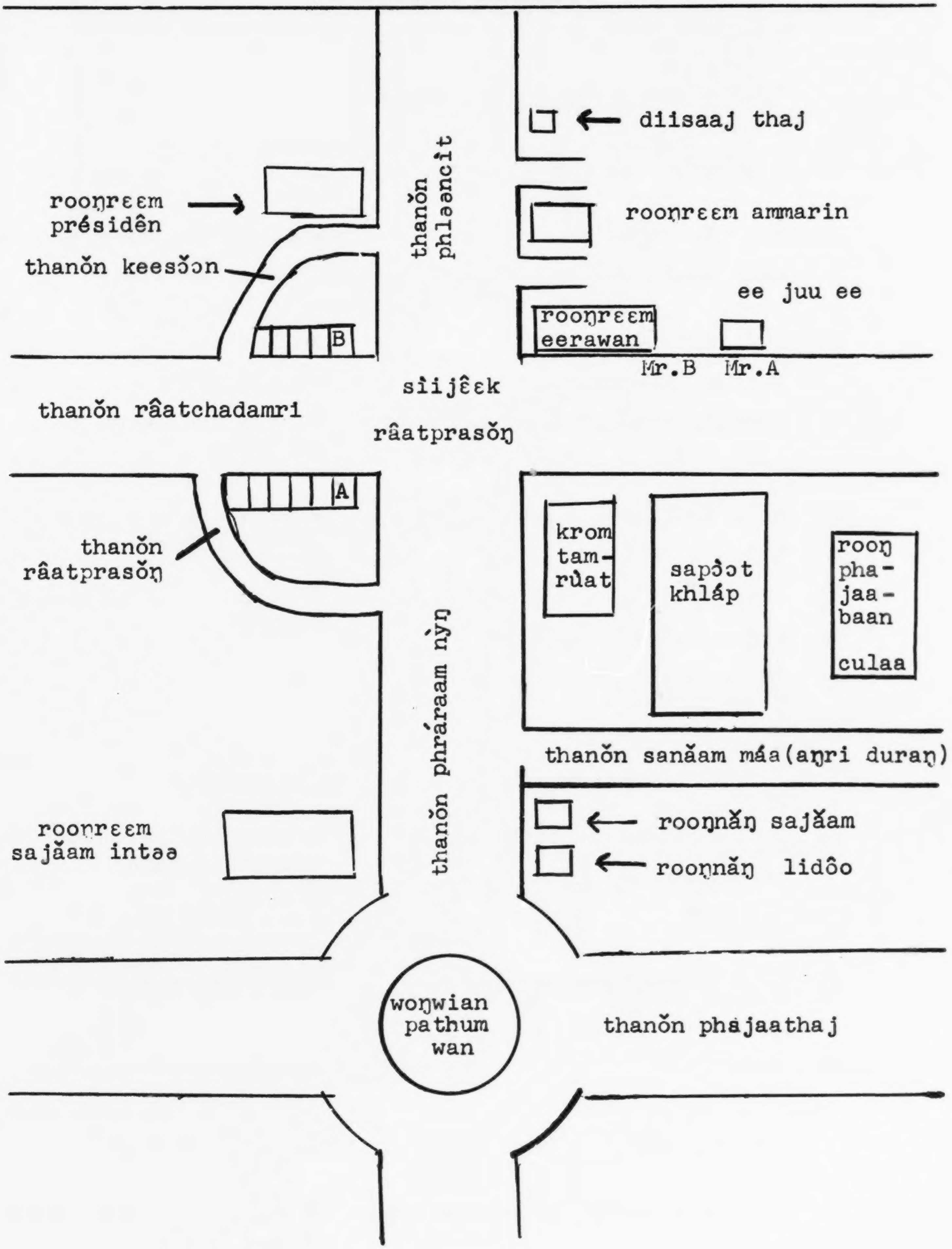
d) Each student describes a 'trip' he has made recently in terms of places visited and times of visits. Another student asks questions about the trip (the location of places visited, the time he left home, the time he returned home, etc.).

17.4 VOCABULARY

aŋrii duray	Henri Durant (name of a street)
amarin	Amarin (name of a hotel)
bon	above, on top of
diisaaj thaj	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
jýaŋ kàp /ka kan	diagonally across
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
lidôo	Lido (name)
mum	corner
ŋaanlíaŋ	party (entertainment)

présidên	President (English name)
rooŋnǎŋ	movie house, cinema
sajǎam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajǎam intəə	Siam International Hotel
sanǎam máa (hɛ̀ŋ)	race track
sâap	to know
sŷaphâa (tua, chút)	cloth
thaaŋnŷa	North
thaaŋtâj	South
thŷŋ	to reach, get to
trɔŋkhâam kan kàp/ka	opposite


talàat
pratuunáam
woŋwian
pratuunáam
A
thanǒn phétburii
sathǎanthûut
ȷəəraman
ȷuusɔ̂ɔm
B
sathǎanthûut
ciin
ráankhǎaȷsŷaphâa
C
sìiȷɛ̂ɛk
râatprasǒŋ
sathǎanthûut
aŋkrìt
thanǒn phráraam nỳŋ
thanǒn phləəncìt
rooŋrɛɛm
eerawan
D
krom
tamrùat
thanǒn wítthaȷú
sathǎanthûut
ameerikan
culaaloŋkɔɔn
mahǎawítthaȷaalaȷ
thanǒn sanǎam mâa
sapɔ̀ɔt
khláp
E
thanǒn râatchadamrì
ee-ȷuu-ee
rooŋphaȷaabaan
culaa
sǔan
lumphínii


diisaaj thaj
roonrɛɛm présidên
thanǒn phləəncit
roonrɛɛm ammarin
thanǒn keesɔ̌ɔn
ee juu ee
roonrɛɛm eerawan
B
Mr.B
Mr.A
siijɛ̂ɛk râatprasǒŋ
thanǒn râatchadamri
A
thanǒn râatprasǒŋ
krom tam-rùat
sapɔ̀ɔt khláp
rooŋ pha-jaa-baan culaa
thanǒn phráraam nỳŋ
thanǒn sanǎam máa(aŋri duraŋ)
roonrɛɛm sajǎam intəə
rooŋnǎŋ sajǎam
rooŋnǎŋ lidôo
woŋwian pathum wan
thanǒn phájaathaj

LESSON EIGHTEEN

18.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Appointment

A:	maa hǎa khraj khá	Who did you come to see?
B:	khun sawàt jùu máj khráp	Is Mr. Sawat in?
A:	mâj jùu khâ	No, he isn't.
	ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk	He went out.
B:	ca klàp mŷaràj, sâap máj khráp	Do you know when he'll be back?
A:	kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ	He said he'd be back before noon.
	chəən khâw maa nâŋ khɔɔj khâaŋ naj kɔ̀ɔn sikhá	Please come in (and) sit down and wait.
B:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.
	(khun B khâw maa naj hɔ̂ŋ rápkhɛ̀ɛk):	(Mr. B comes into the reception room):
B:	ɔ̂ɔ khɔ̌ɔthôot, thîinîi mii thoorasàp máj khráp	Excuse me, is there a telephone here?
A:	mii khâ	Yes, there is.
B:	(phǒm) cháj (thoorasàp) nɔ̀ɔj dâj máj khráp	May I use it?
A:	chəən khâ	Go ahead.
	jùu bon tó tua nán	It's on that desk.
	hěn máj khâ	Do you see it?
B:	hěn lɛ́ɛw khráp, khɔ̀ɔpkhun mâak	I see it. Thanks very much.

18.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG:

a) maa hǎa means to come to see someone.

b) Both sâap and rúu mean to know a fact. sâap is more formal than rúu. In many constructions they are interchangeable, but not in all. In the following examples only rúu may be used.

kháw rúu náŋsy̌y	'He's literate'.
kháw rúu phaasǎa aŋkrìt	'He knows English'.
phaasǎa thaj khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jɛ̂ɛ mâak. phǒm faŋ mâj rúu rŷaŋ	'His Thai is very bad. I don't understand what he's saying.'

c) rúucàk means to be acquainted with a person or thing.

18.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Sentence embedding

One sentence (called a 'constituent sentence') may be embedded in another sentence (called a 'matrix sentence'). The embedded sentence stands in a particular relationship to the matrix sentence; for example, it may serve as object complement of the main verb, or in some other relationship. The examples below illustrate this.

(i) jùu + Location with Motion Verbs

A:	kháw	nâŋ		He's sitting.
B:	kháw		jùu khâaŋnâa	He's in front.
A/B:	kháw	nâŋ	jùu khâaŋnâa	He's sitting in front.

The sentence jùu + Location is embedded in the sentence kháw nâŋ and indicates the location of the action. It has the same function when it occurs with other verbs of motion like jyyn, paj, etc.

(ii) Included sentence as Object Complement of Main verb.

A:	khun sâap	...		You know.
B:			kháw jùu thîinǎj	Where does he live?
A/B:	khun sâap	wâa	kháw jùu thîinǎj	You know where he lives.

Certain verbs like sâap 'to know a fact', phûut 'to speak', etc. normally have sentences as object complements. wâa serves as an obligatory connector when the verb precedes its object.

(iii) khɔ̌ɔ as Request Form

A:	phǒm	khɔ̌ɔ			I request....
B:			phǒm	cháj thoorasàp	I use the telephone.
A/B: 1)	phǒm	khɔ̌ɔ		cháj thoorasàp	I request (to be allowed) to use the telephone. 'May I use the telephone?'
A/B: 2)		khɔ̌ɔ	phǒm	cháj thoorasàp	
A/B: 3)		khɔ̌ɔ		cháj thoorasàp	

Either (1), (2), or (3) may be used. (3) is probably more common than (1) or (2). There is no difference in meaning in the three. The subject pronoun may be omitted only when it is phǒm or dichán.

This request form is often followed by dâj máj khráp as in khɔ̌ɔ cháj thoorasàp (nɔ̀ɔj), dâj máj khráp, to which the response is dâj khráp 'go ahead'.

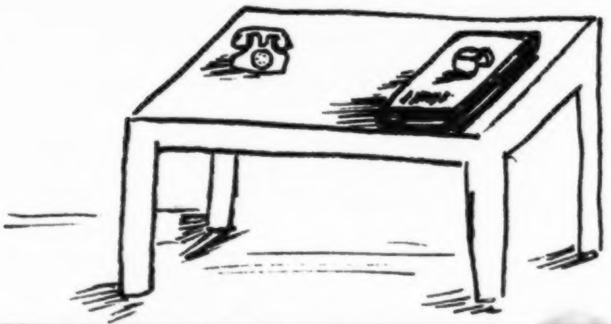
18.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill (Use Chart I.)

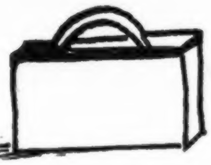
	Question	Answer
1.	thoorasàp jùu thîinǎj Where's the telephone?	jùu bon tó On the table.
2.	thuâj kaafɛɛ jùu thîinǎj Where's the coffee cup?	jùu bon náŋsýy (tó) On the book. (table)
3.	krapǎw jùu thîinǎj Where's the suitcase?	jùu bon phýyn On the floor.
4.	phɛ̌ɛnthîi jùu thîinǎj Where's the map?	jùu bon fǎa On the wall.
5.	kháw jùu thîinǎj Where is he?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
6.	rót jùu thîinǎj Where's the car?	jùu bon thanǒn On the street.

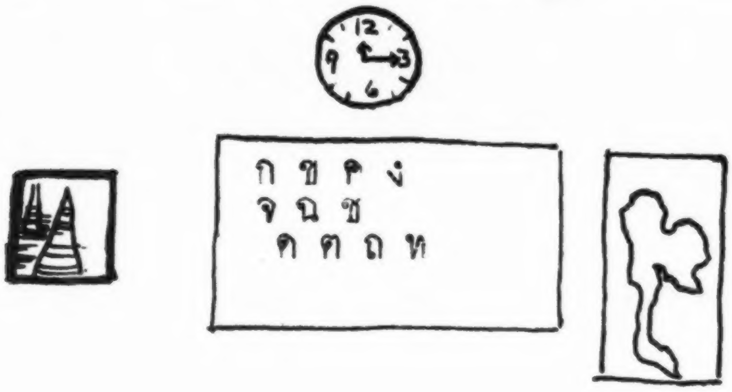
CHART I

náŋsỳy jùu bon tó. thûaj kaafɛɛ jùu bon náŋsỳy thoorasàp jùu bon tó.

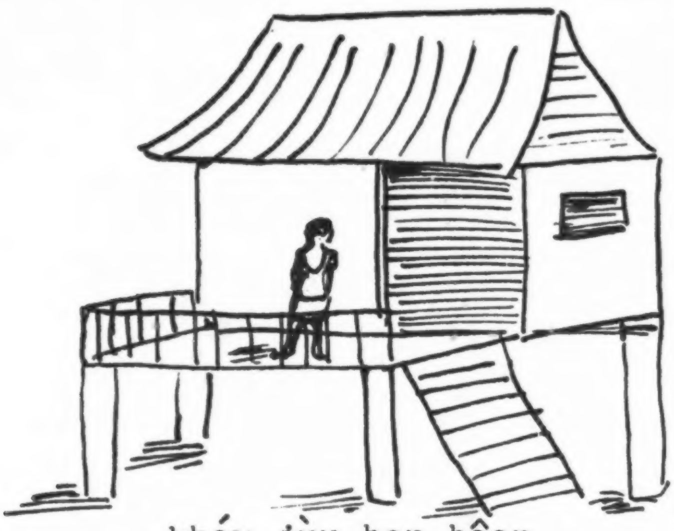


krapǎw jùu bon phýyn

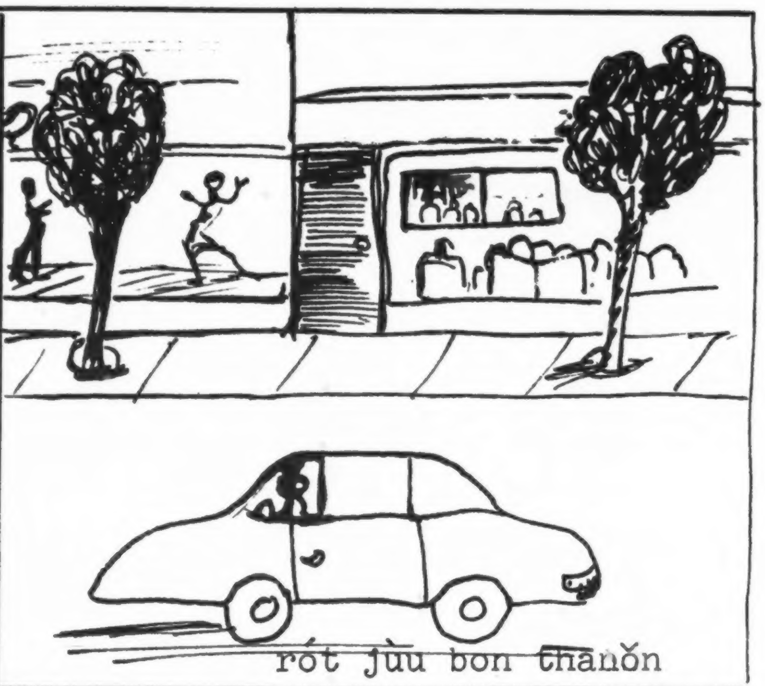



ก ข ค ง
จ ฉ ช
ด ต ถ ท

naalikaa jùu bon fǎa
kradaandam jùu bon fǎa
phɛ̌ɛnthîi jùu bon fǎa
rûup jùu bon fǎa
tua náŋsỳy jùu bon kradaandam



kháw jùu bon bâan



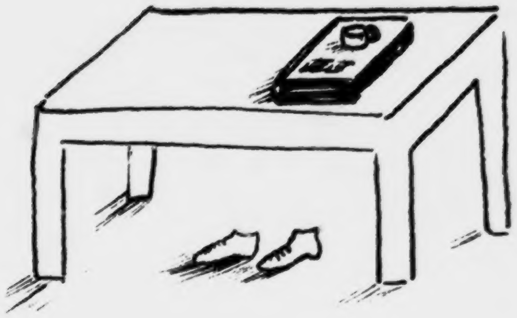
rót jùu bon thanǒn

b) Response Drill (Use Chart II.)

	Question	Answer
1.	rɔɔŋtháaw jùu thîinǎj Where are the shoes?	jùu tâj tó. Under the table.
2.	náŋsy̌y jùu thîinǎj Where's the book?	jùu bon tó On the table... tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ under the coffee cup.
3.	khon jùu thîinǎj Where is the person?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
4.	mǎa jùu thîinǎj Where's the dog?	jùu tâjthǔn bâan In the space under the house.
5.	caŋwàt udɔɔn jùu thîinǎj Where's Udorn Province?	jùu ny̌a khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn It's north of Konkaen.
6.	caŋwàt khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀n jùu thîinǎj Where's Konkaen Province?	jùu { nyǎ khooràat tâj udɔɔn It's north of Korat/ south of Udorn.
7.	naalikaa jùu thîinǎj Where's the clock?	jùu ny̌a kradaandam. It's above the blackboard.
8.	kradaandam jùu thîinǎj Where's the blackboard?	jùu tâj naalikaa It's below the clock.

tâj - bon

CHART II



tâj

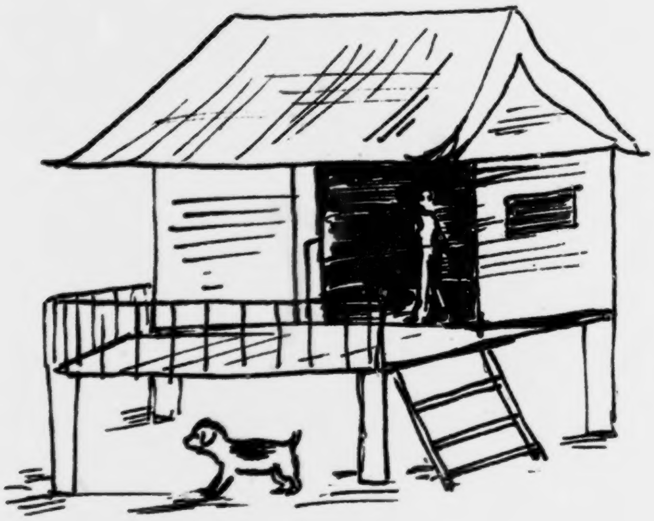
náŋsy̌y jùu tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ

rɔɔŋtháaw jùu tâj tó

bon

thûaj kaafɛɛ jùu bon náŋsy̌y

tâjthǔn bâan : bon bâan



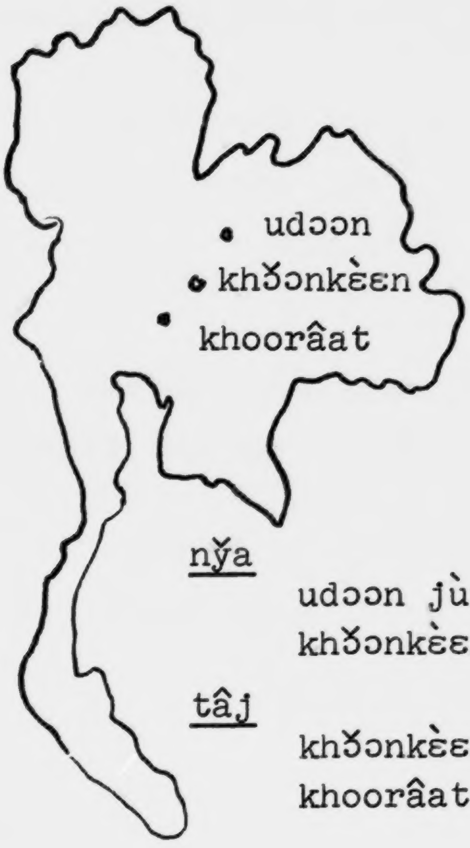
tâj

mǎa jùu tâjthǔn bâan

bon

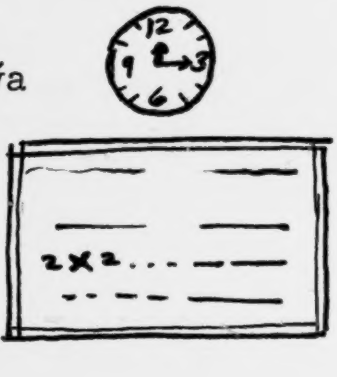
khon jùu bon bâan

tâj - ny̌a



ny̌a

naalikaa jùu ny̌a kradaandam



tâj

kradandam jùu tâj naalikaa

ny̌a

udɔɔn jùu ny̌a khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn

khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu ny̌a khoorâat

tâj

khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu tâj udɔɔn

khoorâat jùu tâj khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn

c) Sentence Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	kháw nâŋ kháw jùu khâaŋnâa	kháw nâŋ jùu khâaŋnâa He's sitting in front.
2.	kháw jyyn kháw jùu khâaŋkhâaŋ pratuu	kháw jyyn jùu khâaŋkhâaŋ pratuu. He's standing beside the door.
3.	kháw nɔɔn kháw jùu bon tiaŋ	kháw nɔɔn jùu bon tiaŋ He's sleeping on (in) the bed.
4.	kháw nâŋ kháw jùu naj rót	kháw nâŋ jùu naj rót He's sitting in the car.
5.	kháw jyyn kháw jùu thîi sìijɛ̂ɛk	kháw jyyn jùu thîi sìijɛ̂ɛk He's standing on the corner.
6.	kháw nâŋ kháw jùu thîi kâwîi	kháw nâŋ jùu thîi kâwîi He's sitting in the chair.
7.	kháw nâŋ kháw jùu thaaŋ khwǎa	kháw nâŋ jùu thaaŋkhwǎa He's sitting on the right.
8.	kháw jyyn kháw jùu thaaŋsáaj phǒm	kháw jyyn jùu thaaŋsáaj phǒm He's standing to the left of me.
9.	kháw nâŋ kháw jùu bon bâan	kháw nâŋ jùu bon bâan He's sitting in the house.

d) Expansion Drill

1. nâŋ
   nâŋ sikhráp
   nâŋ kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən nâŋ kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən nâŋ thîinîi kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən nâŋ khɔɔj thîinîi kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp

2. khâw maa
   khâw maa sikhráp
   khâw maa kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən khâw maa kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən khâw maa khâaŋnaj kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən khâw maa nâŋ khâaŋnaj kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp
   chəən khâw maa nâŋ khɔɔj khâaŋnaj kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp

e) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	(kháw) ca klàp mŷaràj, (khun) sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw ca klàp mŷaràj Do you know when he will return?
2.	(kháw) paj mŷaràj (khun) sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw paj mŷaràj Do you know when he went?
3.	(kháw) thamŋaan thîinǎj (khun) sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj Do you know where he works?

4.	(kháw) chŷy araj (khun) sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw chŷy araj Do you know what his name is?
5.	sathǎanthûut aŋkrìt jùu thîinǎj (khun) sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa sathǎanthûut aŋkrìt jùu thîinǎj Do you know where the British Embassy is?
6.	kháw pen khraj khun sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw pen khraj Do you know who (what) he is?
7.	kháw ca paj kìi wan khun sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw ca paj kìi wan. Do you know how many days he'll be gone?
8.	thîi sathǎanthûut mii khon thâwràj khun sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa thîi sathǎanthûut mii khon thâwràj Do you know how many people are at the embassy?

f) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	ryâŋ	kháw rúu ryâŋ He understands.
2.	ryâŋ níi	kháw rúu ryâŋ níi He understands this matter.

3. ryâŋ khon ameerikan	kháw rúu ryâŋ khon ameerikan He understands Americans.
4. bəə thoorasàp phǒm	kháw rúu bəə thoorasàp phǒm He knows my telephone number.
5. wâa khun pen khraj	kháw rúu wâa khun pen khraj He knows who you are.
6. wâa phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw	kháw rúu wâa phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw He knows I don't like him.

g) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. khun	kháw rúucàk khun He knows you.
2. phǒm	kháw rúucàk phǒm He knows me.
3. chŷy khun	kháw rúucàk chŷy khun He knows your name.
4. sanǎamluǎŋ	kháw rúucàk sanǎamlǔaŋ He's acquainted with (knows where it is) the Pramane Grounds.
5. kham níi	kháw rúucàk kham níi He's familiar with this word.

6.	khonthaj lǎaj khon	kháw rúucàk khonthaj lǎaj khon He knows many Thais.
7.	thaaŋ paj bâan khun	kháw rúucàk thaaŋ paj bâan khun He knows the way to your house.

h) Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	talàat jùu thîinǎj phǒm sâap	phǒm sâap wâa talàat jùu thîinǎj I know where the market is.
2.	kháw thamŋaan araj phǒm sâap	phǒm sâap wâa kháw thamŋaan araj. I know where he works.
3.	kháw pen khon dii phǒm sâap	phǒm sâap wâa kháw pen khondii I know he's a good person.
4.	thɛ̌ɛw nǎj mii ráanaahǎan diidii kháw sâap	kháw sâap wâa thɛ̌ɛw nǎj mii ráanaahǎan diidii He knows in which section there are good restaurants.
5.	khun kèŋ kháw sâap	kháw sâap wâa khun kèŋ He knows you are skillful.

i) Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	nân, khraj khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj wâa nân khraj Do you know who that over there is?
2.	kháw chɔ̂ɔp araj khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw chɔ̂ɔp araj Do you know what he likes?
3.	hɔ̂ŋsamùt jùu thîinǎj khun sâap máj khráp	khun sâap máj khráp wâa hɔ̂ŋsamùt jùu thîinǎj Do you know where the library is?
4.	kháw maa mŷaràj khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw maa mŷaràj Do you know when he came?
5.	phrûŋníi kháw ca maa máj khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa phrûŋníi kháw ca maa máj Do you know if he's coming tomorrow?
6.	myâwaanníi kháw paj thamŋaan rýplàaw khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj wâa mŷawaanníi kháw paj thamŋaan rýplàaw Do you know whether he went to work yesterday or not?
7.	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj rýplàaw khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj rýplàaw Do you know if he speaks Thai or not?

8.	kháw phimdìit dâj dii rý plàaw khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw phimdìit dâj dii rý plàaw Do you know whether he can type well?
9.	kháw chɔ̂ɔp thaan aahǎan faràŋ rý plàaw khun sâap máj	khun sâap máj khráp wâa kháw chɔ̂ɔp thaan aahǎan faràŋ rý plàaw Do you know if he likes foreign food?

j) Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	kháw nâŋ jùu thîinǎj phǒm mâj sâap	phǒm mâj sàap wâa kháw nâŋ jùu thîinǎj I don't know where she's sitting.
2.	khun mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw phǒm mâj sâap	phǒm mâj sâap wâa khun mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw I didn't know that you didn't like her.
3.	kháw jaŋ pen sòot phǒm mâj sâap	phǒm mâj sâap wâa kháw jaŋ pen sòot I didn't know that he was still single.
4..	kháw tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw rý jaŋ phǒm mâj sâap	phǒm mâj sâap wâa kháw tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw rý jaŋ I didn't know whether he was married or not.

5.	kháw ca maa máj phǒm mâj sâap	phǒm mâj sâap wâa kháw ca maa máj I don't know if she will come or not.

k) Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	kháw tham dâj rý plàaw phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)	phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa kháw tham dâj rý plàaw I didn't ask if he could do it.
2.	kháw ca klàp maa máj phǒm mâj dâj thǎam	phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa kháw ca klàp maa máj I didn't ask if he would return.
3.	kháw khəəj thamŋaan araj phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)	phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa kháw khəəj thamŋaan araj I didn't ask what he used to do.
4.	kháw pen khondii máj khun thǎam phŷan khun rýplàaw	khun thǎam phŷan khun rýplàaw wâa kháw pen khondii máj Did you ask your friend if he is a good person?
5.	kháw jùu thîinǎj khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw	khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw wâa kháw jùu thîinǎj Did you ask him where he lived?

6.	kháw kháwcaj máj khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw	khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw wâa khâw khâwcaj máj Did you ask him if he understood?
7.	khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw	khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw wâa khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu Did you ask him if Somsak was in or not?
8.	kháw ca maa dâj máj khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw	khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw wâa kháw ca maa dâj máj Did you ask him if he would be able to come?

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khɔ̌ɔ cháj thoorasàp nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
   May I use the telephone?
2. khɔ̌ɔ thǎam araj nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
   May I ask something?
3. khɔ̌ɔ duu nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp
   May I look?
4. khɔ̌ɔ ɔ̀ɔk kɔ̀ɔn weelaa, dâj máj khráp
   May I leave ahead of time?
5. khɔ̌ɔ ɔ̀ɔk kɔ̀ɔn weelaa sák sìphâa naathii, dâj máj khráp
   May I leave 15 minutes ahead of time?

Repeat the drill above two times. Use phǒm khɔ̌ɔ... one time and khɔ̌ɔ phǒm... one time.

m) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. bɔ̀ɔk	kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ He said he would return before noon.
2. khít	kháw khít wâa ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ He thought he would return before noon.
3. phûut	kháw phûut wâa ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ He said he would return before noon.
4. sàŋ	kháw sàŋ wâa ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ He left a message that he would return before noon.
5. thoo maa bɔ̀ɔk	kháw thoo maa bɔ̀ɔk wâa kháw ca klàp kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ He called and said he would return before noon.

18.4 EXERCISES

a) One student asks another where various classroom objects are; another responds that they are on, above, under, etc. other objects.

b) Using the map following page 74 (or a classroom map) discuss the relative positions ('north of', 'south of') of various Thai cities and provinces.

c) Different students assume different positions in the classroom (standing by the door, sitting on the table, etc.). Other students describe the positions they are in.

d) Have the students find out information about each other (where they live, whether they play tennis, if they are cold, etc.). Use conversational exchanges like the one below:

Student A: Do you know where Mr. C lives?
Student B: No, I don't.

(to Student D): Where does Mr. C live?

Student D: I think he lives on Birch Street.
Student C: No, I don't. I live on Elm Street.

(Student A to Student B): Did you ask Mr. C where he lives?

Student B: No, I didn't. I asked Mr. D.
Student A: What did Mr. D say?

Student B: He said he didn't know.
Student A: Then you didn't ask Mr. C?

Student B: No, I didn't.
Student A: Ask him now.

(Student B to Student C): Where do you live?

Student C: On Elm Street.
Student B: He said he lived on Elm Street.
Student A: Thanks very much.

e) Student A asks Student B if he is familiar with a certain person or place. Student B responds that he is not familiar with the person or place and asks for further information (where a thing is or who a person is). Student A provides the information.

f) Student A asks the instructor for permission to perform some act (close the window, open his book, etc.) The instructor responds to the request either negatively or affirmatively.

g) One student asks another his opinion about something. The second student gives an opinion.

18.5 VOCABULARY

ɔ̌ɔ	oh
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
chəən	please
chɔ̂ɔp	to like
fǎa (fǎa)	wall
hěn	to see
hɔ̂ŋráp khɛ̀ɛk (hɔ̂ŋ)	reception room, living room
jyyn	to stand
kham	word
khít	to think
khon	person (classifier for person)
khɔ̌ɔ	to request, ask
khɔɔj	to wait
krapǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
mǎa	dog
nâŋ	to sit
nɔɔn	to sleep
phimdìit	to type, print
phýyn	floor
rɔɔŋtháaw (khûu)	shoes (pair)
rúu rŷaŋ	to understand
rŷaŋ	story (about), about (classifier for story)
sák	a little, bit
sanǎam lǔaŋ	the Pramane Grounds
sàŋ	to order, to leave instructions or a message

sawàt	Sawat (name)
sii, sí	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
tâj	under
tâjthǔn	the space under the house
thǎam	to ask,(a question)
thuâj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
tiaŋ (tiaŋ)	bed (to sleep on)
tua náŋsy̌y (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)

LESSON NINETEEN

19.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions to the Bathroom

A:	khɔ̌ɔthôot, hɔ̂ŋnám sámràp phûuchaaj jùu thîinǎj khráp	Excuse me, where's the men's bathroom?
B:	hɔ̂ŋnám phûuchaaj lə̌ jùu khâaŋlâaŋ	The men's bathroom? It's downstairs.
A:	paj thaaŋnǎj khráp	Which way?
B:	paj thaaŋníi	Go this way.
	loŋ kradaj paj, lɛ́ɛw líaw khwǎa hɔ̂ŋnám ca jùu thaaŋ khwǎa myy	Go down the stairs, then turn right. The bathroom will be on your right.
A:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun khráp	Thank you.
B:	mâj pen raj khráp	You're welcome.

19.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drill

1.	loŋ	down
	loŋ paj	Go down.
	loŋ kradaj paj	Go down the stairs.
	dəən loŋ kradaj paj	Walk down the stairs.
2.	loŋ	down
	loŋ paj	Go down.
	loŋ líf paj	Go down on the elevator.
	loŋ líf paj chán sɔ̌ɔŋ	Go down to the second floor on the elevator.

3.	khŷn	up
	khŷn paj	Go up.
	khŷn kradaj paj	Go up the stairs.
	dəən khŷn kradaj paj	Walk up the stairs.
	dəən khŷn kradaj paj chán pɛ̀ɛt	Walk up the stairs to the eighth floor.
4.	khŷn	up
	khŷn paj	Go up.
	khŷn líf paj	Go up on the elevator.
	khŷn líf paj khâaŋbon	Go upstairs on the elevator.
5.	loŋ	down
	loŋ maa	Come down.
	loŋ kradaj maa	Come down the stairs.
	dəən loŋ kradaj maa	Walk down the stairs.
6.	loŋ	down
	loŋ maa	Come down.
	loŋ líf maa	Come down on the elevator.
7.	khŷn	up
	khŷn maa	Come up.
	khŷn kradaj maa	Come up the stairs.
	dəən khŷn kradaj maa	Walk up the stairs. (towards the speaker)
8.	khŷn	up
	khŷn maa	Come up.
	khŷn líf maa	Come up on the elevator.

9.	khŷn	up
	khŷn maa	Come up.
	chəən khŷn maa kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp	Please come up first.
	chəən khŷn maa bon bâan kɔ̀ɔn sikhráp	Please come in the house first.

b) Response Drill (See Chart I)

1. Teacher: kháw kamlaŋ dəən paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt
She's walking to the library.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj What is she doing?	kháw kamlaŋ dəən She's walking.
kháw kamlaŋ ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	paj hɔ̂ŋsamùt To the library.
kháw paj jaŋŋaj How is she going?	kháw kamlaŋ dəən She's walking.

2. Teacher: kháw kamlaŋ dəən maa hɔ̂ŋrian
She's coming to the classroom.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj What's she doing?	dəən Walking.
kháw kamlaŋ ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	maa hɔ̂ŋrian To school.

kháw maa jaŋŋaj	dəən maa.
How is she coming?	Walking.

3. **Teacher:** kháw kamlaŋ nâŋ loŋ bon kâwîi
She's sitting down on the chair.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj	nâŋ
What is she doing?	(She's) sitting.
kháw nâŋ loŋ bon[1] araj	bon kâwîi
What is she sitting on?	On a chair.

4. **Teacher:** kháw kamlaŋ nɔɔn loŋ bon tiaŋ
He's lying down on the bed.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj	nɔɔn
What's he doing?	Lying.
nɔɔn loŋ bon araj	bon tiaŋ
What's he lying on?	On the bed.

5. **Teacher:** kháw kamlaŋ jyyn khŷn
She's standing.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj	jyyn khŷn
What's she doing?	Standing (up).

---

[1] This type of question is not common. It is used here in order to elicit a certain kind of response.

6. Teacher: kháw kamlaŋ lúk khŷn càak tiaŋ
He's getting up out of bed.

Question	Response
kháw kamlaŋ tham araj What's he doing?	lúk khŷn Getting up.
lúk khŷn càak araj[1] What is he getting up from?	càak tiaŋ From bed.

c) Contraction Drill

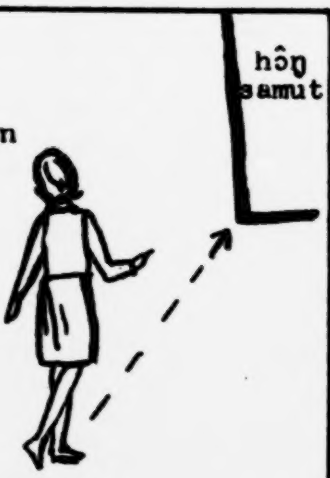
	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	hɔ̂ŋnám sámràp phûuchaaj Men's toilet	hɔ̂ŋnám phûuchaaj Men's toilet
2.	hɔ̂ŋnám sámràp phûujǐŋ Women's toilet	hɔ̂ŋnám phûujǐŋ Women's toilet
3.	náŋsy̌y sámràp dèk A book for children	náŋsy̌y dèk A book for children
4.	rót sámràp thûut The ambassador's car	rót thûut The ambassador's car.
5.	thîi cɔ̀ɔt rót sámràp câwnâathîi The parking place for officials	thîi cɔ̀ɔt rót câwnâathîi The parking place for officials

---

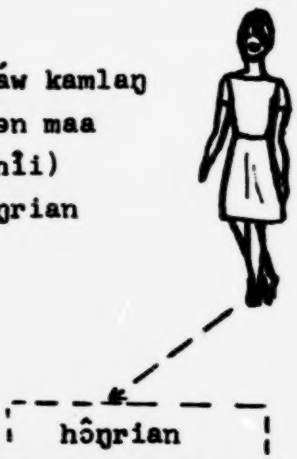
[1] This type of question is not common. It is used in this exercise only in order to get a certain kind of response.

CHART I

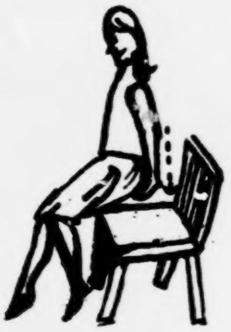
1.
kháw kamlaŋ dəən
paȷ (thîi)
hɔ̂ŋsamùt



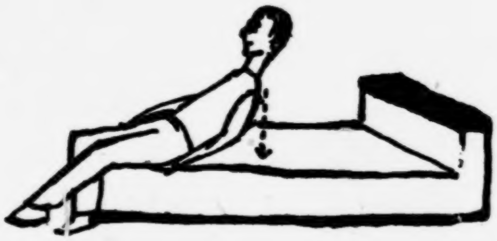
2.
kháw kamlaŋ
dəən maa
(thîi)
hɔ̂ŋrian



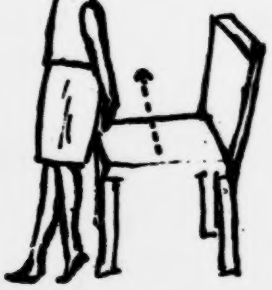
3.
kháw kamlaŋ
nâŋ loŋ
bon kâwîi



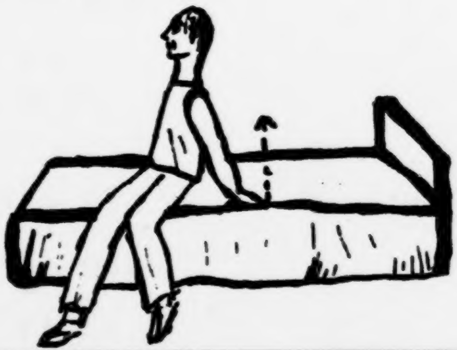
4.
kháw kamlaŋ nɔɔn
loŋ bon tiaŋ



5.
kháw kamlaŋ
ȷyyn khŷn



6.
kháw kamlaŋ lúk khŷn
càak tiaŋ



6. tó sámràp khruu The teacher's desk.	tó khruu The teacher's desk.

d) Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1. phûujǐŋ	nîi hɔ̂ŋnám sámràp phûuchaaj This is a men's toilet.	mâj cháj sâmràp phûujǐŋ It's not for women.
2. phûujàj	nîi náŋsýy sámràp dèk This is a book for children.	mâj châj sámràp phûujàj It's not for adults.
3. nákrian	nîi tó sámràp khruu This is the teacher's desk.	mâj châj sámràp nákrian It's not for students.
4. dỳym	nîi náam sámràp cháj This is water for use.	mâj châj sámràp dỳym It's not for drinking.
5. khon con	nîi bâan sámràp khon ruaj This is a house for rich people.	mâj châj sámràp khon con It is not for poor people.
6. rian	nîi náŋsýy sámràp àan lên This is a book to read for pleasure.	mâj châj sámràp rian It is not a text to study.

7.	thahǎan	nîi khrŷaŋbin sámràp phonlaryan This is a plane for civilians.	mâj châj sámràp thahǎan It is not for soldiers.
8.	prathaan aathípɔdii	nîi rót sámràp thûut This is the car for the Ambassador.	mâj châj sámràp prathaanaathípɔdii It is not for the President.
9.	chaawnaa	nîi khrŷaŋmyy sámràp chaawsǔan This is a tool for gardeners.	mâj châj sámràp chaawnaa It is not for rice farmers.

19.2 EXERCISES

a) The instructor will ask different students to do different things (stand up, sit down, sit down on the table, etc.). As the student performs the action, another student will ask a third student questions like these: (1) What's he doing? (2) What's he doing it on? (If appropriate)

b) Ask directions to:
1. Registrar's room.
2. The library.
3. Language laboratory.
4. The restaurant.
5. Other places in the vicinity.

19.3 VOCABULARY

chʹáj	to use
chán	floor, story
con	to be poor (in wealth)
cɔ̀ɔt	to park
dỳym	to drink
hɔ̂ŋnáam	bathroom
jyyn	to stand
khrŷaŋbin (khrŷaŋ)	airplane
khrŷaŋmyy (khrŷaŋ)	tool
khŷn	(to go) up
kradaj	stairs, steps
loŋ	to (go) down
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator
lúk	to get up
myy	hand
phûujàj (khon)	an adult
prathaanaathípbɔdii	The President
ruaj	to be rich, wealthy
sámràp	for
thîi cɔ̀ɔtrót	parking place

LESSON TWENTY

20.0 BASIC EPISODE: Tambon Bangchak

nîi khyy tambon baaŋcàak. tambon níi jùu naj caŋwàt hɛ̀ŋ nỳŋ naj phâak klaaŋ. tambonníi tâŋ jùu rim khlɔɔŋ wát pen sǔunklaaŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ tambon níi. wát jùu rim khlɔɔŋ. khâaŋkhâaŋ wát mii rooŋrian. rooŋrian níi pen rooŋrian lékléк, mii khruu hâa khon. khonnyŋ maa càak kruŋthêep, ìik sìi khon pen khon caŋwàtníi. thîi rooŋrian mii nákrian raawraaw rɔ́ɔj khon.

fàŋ troŋkan khâam kàp wát mii talàat, ráan lɛ́ sathǎanii tamrùat. talàat jùu jýaŋ kàp wát. khâaŋkhâaŋ talàat mii ráan tàaŋtàaŋ chên ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ, ráantàtphǒm. thîi tambon níi mâj mii rooŋnǎŋ, rooŋrɛɛm lɛ́ prajsanii. rooŋphajaabaan kɔ̂ mâj mii tɛ̀ mii sùksǎalaa. thîi sùksǎalaa mii naaŋphajaabaan sɔ̌ɔŋ khon. sùksǎalaa jùu klâj kàp talàat. thîinîi mii sathǎanii tamrùat. sathǎanii tamrùat jùu mâj klaj càak talàat.

tambonnii mii rótfaj phàan. sathǎanii rótfaj jùu klaj càak talàat.

hǔanâa khɔ̌ɔŋ tambon rîak wâa kamnan. kháw chŷy naaj prasìt kèŋŋaan. naaj prasìt pen chaawnaa mýankan. chaaw baaŋcàak kỳap thúk khon pen chaawnaa. bâan kamnan prasìt jùu fàŋ diaw kàp wát tɛ̀ jùu klaj càak wát lɛ́ talàat. nâabâan kháw pen khlɔɔŋ. lǎŋbâan pen naa.

20.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. tambonníi chŷy araj
2. tambonníi jùu naj phâak nǎj
3. tambonníi tâŋ jùu bon khlɔɔŋ rýy mɛ̂ɛnám
4. araj pen sǔunklaaŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ tambon níi
5. rooŋrian jùu thîi nǎj
6. thîi rooŋrian mii khruu kìi khon. mii nákrian thâwràj
7. khruu maa càak thîinǎj bâaŋ
8. fàŋ troŋkan khâam kàp wát mii araj bâaŋ
9. thîi tambonníi mii rooŋphajaabaan máj
10. thîi tambonníi mii sathǎanii tamrùat máj . jùu thîinǎj
11. tambonníi mii rótfaj phàan máj
12. hǔanâa khɔ̌ɔŋ tambon rîak wâa araj
13. chaaw baaŋcàak kyàp thúk khon thamŋaan araj
14. bâan kamnam prasìt jùu thîinǎj
15. nâa bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw pen araj . lǎŋ bâan pen araj

Translation of the Basic Episode

This is Bangchak tambon.[1] This tambon is in a province in the central part. This tambon is located on a canal. The temple is the center of this tambon. The temple is on the bank of the canal. Beside the temple is the school. This school is a very small school. It has five teachers. One comes from Bangkok; the other four are natives of this province. At the school there are around one hundred and fifty pupils.

On the opposite bank from the temple are the market, shops, and the police station. The market is diagonally opposite the temple. Next to the market are various shops, such as a store, and a barber shop. There is no movie house, hotel, or post office in this tambon. There is no hospital either, but there is a public health center. At the center are two nurses. The center is near the market. There is a police station here. The police station is not far from the market.

The train passes through this tambon. The train station is far from the market.

---

[1] A tambon is a subdivision of an amphoe, which is a subdivision of a changwat. changwat, amphoe, and tambon may be translated roughly as province, district, and precinct.

The head of the tambon is called the kamnan. He is Mr. Prasit Kengngan. Mr. Prasit is also a rice farmer. Almost all the residents of Bangchak are rice farmers. Kamnan Prasit's house is on the same side of the canal (lit. bank) as the temple, but is far from the temple and the market. In front of his house is the canal. Behind are rice fields.

20.2 EXERCISE

Student A takes the part of a resident of Bangchak (precinct).

Student B takes the part of an American writer who has just come to Bangchak with the intention of writing a magazine article about it. He asks questions of one or more residents in order to get information of the following kind:

a) People (how many there are, ages, how many children they have, etc.)

b) Physical layout of the tambon (location of buildings, rice fields, the canal, etc.)

c) Occupations of people.

d) Daily habits (time of eating, going to bed, going to work, etc.)

e) Weather

f) Religion (if there is a wat, where it is, when people go to it).

g) Market (where it is located, when it is open, who goes there, etc.)

h) Language (which dialect of Thai is spoken in the tambon, in the school, etc.)

i) Health Facilities (where does one go when he is sick, if there is a clinic, how many doctors and nurses does it have, etc.)

j) Travel experience of people (have they been outside the tambon, to Bangkok, to some other place, etc.)

k) Any other information that may be of interest

Students should take turns carrying out each of the roles in the interview. Students not participating should be taking notes on the conversation. After each interview students not taking part in it may question other students about information contained in it.

20.3 VOCABULARY

amphəə (amphəə)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
baaŋcaak	Bangchak, name of tambon in Thailand
chên	such as
fàŋ	bank (of a river, street)
hɛ̀ŋ	classifier for places
hŭanâa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organization)
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kèŋŋaan	Kengngan (last name)
kɔ̂	then, also, too, consequently
kyàp	almost
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khlɔɔŋ (khlɔɔŋ)	canal
mɛ̂ɛnám (săaj)	river
naa (râj)	rice field
naaj (khon)	Mr. (title)
prasìt	Prasit (male first name)

phàan	to pass
raaw/raawraaw	around, approximately
rim	bank, edge
sùksǎalaa (hɛ̀ŋ)	public health center or clinic
sǔunklaaŋ (hɛ̀ŋ)	center
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tâŋ	to be located
troŋkan khâam	opposite

CHART I

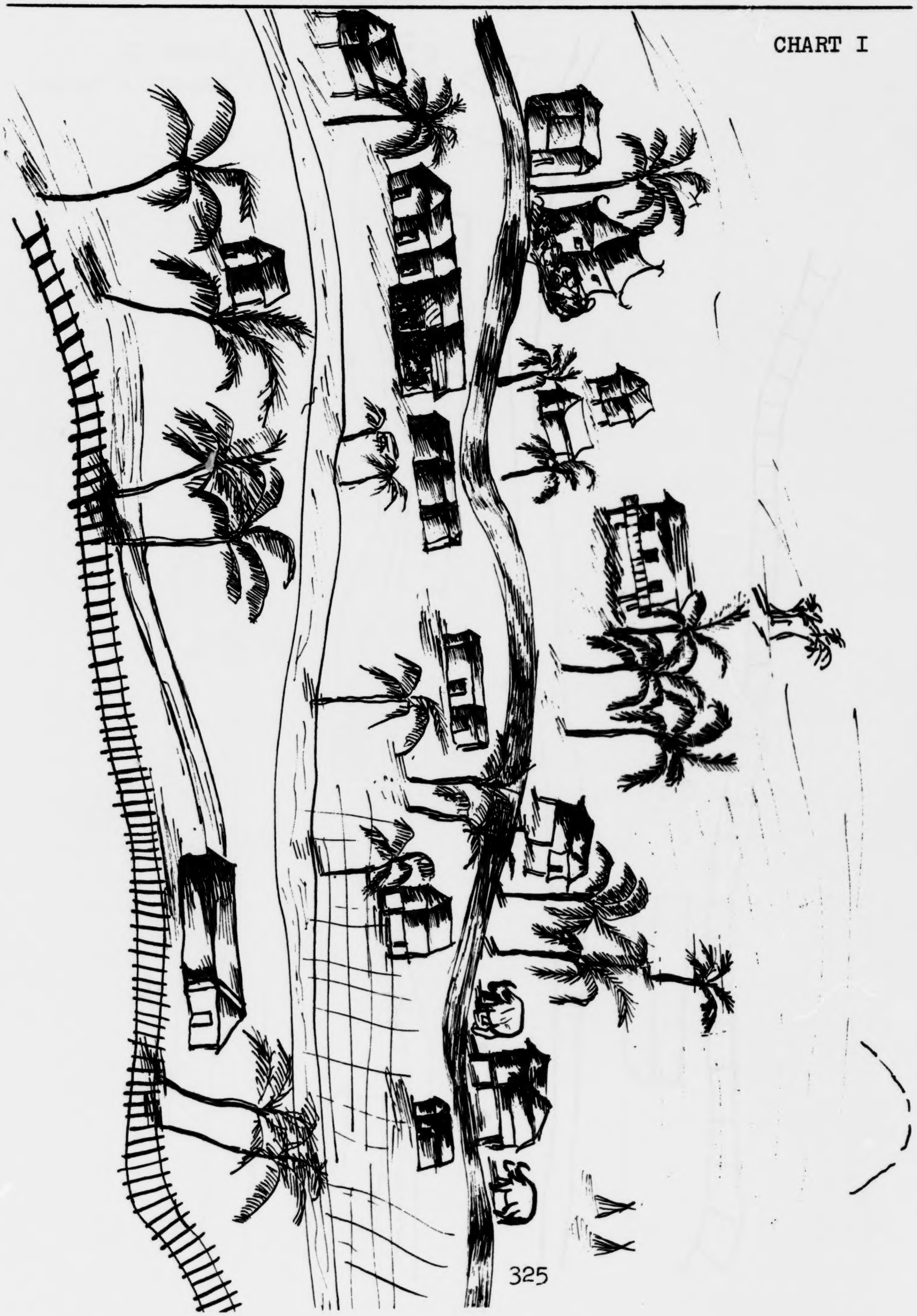
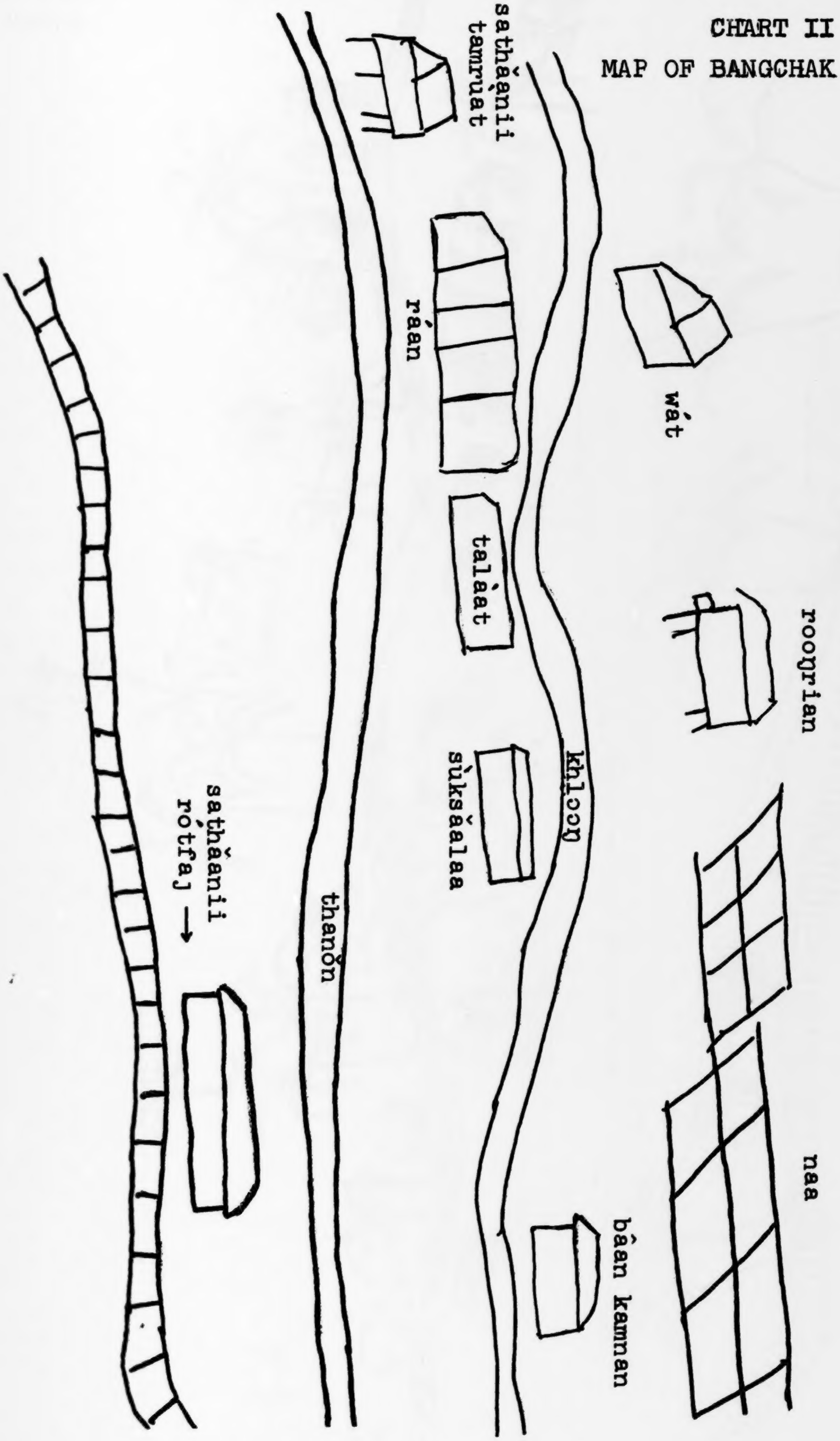


CHART II

MAP OF BANGCHAK TAMBON


sathǎanii tamrùat
ráan
wát
talàat
roogrian
sùksǎalaa
khlɔɔŋ
sathǎanii rótfaj →
thanǒn
naa
bâan kamnan

COMPREHENSIVE GLOSSARY

For Volumes I and II

This glossary contains all of the words that have been used in this volume, a total of approximately 1400 entries. It gives the following information about each entry:

(1) A phonemic transcription using Roman letters with some special symbols added, and (2) English definitions or equivalents.

The entries are arranged in the order of the English alphabet except that all words beginning with vowels are placed at the beginning of the glossary in the following order:

a, e, ɛ, ə, i, o, ɔ, u, and y.

Noun and Verb Compounds that occur in the text are listed after the head of the compound, thus

hǔa (hǔa) .... head

hǔakhâm .... early evening (6 to 9 p.m.)

a

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aachîip	profession
áafarikaa (thawîip)	Africa (continent)
aahǎan (jàaŋ, mýy)	food
aahǎan klaaŋwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
aakàat	weather, air
àan	to read
aarii	Aree (male or female first name)
aa sii ee	R.C.A.
aathít	week
âaw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aj bèk (bɔrisàt)	I.B.E.C. (name of a company)

ajpaanaa	Ipana
ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
ammarin	Amarin (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
amphəə (amphəə)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
amphɔɔn	Amphorn (male or female first name)
an	classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers.
anujâat ... (hâj)	to permit
anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
anúsǎawarii (hɛ̀ŋ))	monument
aŋkrìt	England, English
aŋrii duraŋ	Henri Durant (name of a street in Bangkok)
apháatmên (lǎŋ)	apartment
araj	what (question word)
àt	to tape, to copy
athíbaaj	to explain
aw	to get, to take; to want (to have) cf. tɔ̂ŋkaan
aw máj	will you accept? (question word. It is similar in usage to dii máj.)

e

ee-aj-dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee-juu-ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
eeŋ	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence
tua phǒm eeŋ	I (myself)
... kháw eeŋ	he (himself)
... raw eeŋ	we (ourself), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
eeŋ	is used to emphasize the shortness shortness of the distance in klâj khɛ̂ɛníi eeŋ 'right near here'.
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
eesia (thawîip)	Asia
eethén	Athens
éf-és-aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)

ɛ

ɛɛ fráans	Air France (name of an airline)
ɛ́ɛpə̂n (lûuk, phǒn, baj)	apple
ɛ́ɛsphajrin (mét)	aspirin

ə

əə	by the way

i

ìik	in addition, more
ìik thii	again, one more time
imphiirîan	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
india (prathêet)	India, Indian
indianâa (rát)	Indiana
indoniisia (prathêet)	Indonesia, Indonesian
isǎan (phâak)	northeast (in Thailand)
italîan	Italian (italîi 'Italy')
ìtsalaam	Moslem

o

ookàat (khráŋ)	chance, occasion
okinaawaa (kɔ̀)	Okinawa
oŋ	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen

ɔ

ɔ̂ɔ	Oh, yes! (suddenly remembering something)
ɔ̌ɔ	Oh! (I see, I get it.)
ɔ̀ɔk (ŋən)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
ɔ̀ɔk maa	to come out
... paj	to go out
ɔ̀ɔk sǐaŋ	to pronounce, to voice
(khít) (nýk) ɔ̀ɔk	(to figure) out (a completive verb)

ɔ̀ɔn	light (color)
ɔɔrianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
ɔ́ɔsatreelia (prathêet)	Australia, Australian

u

ûan	(to be) fat, stout
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udɔɔn	Udorn (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùtnǔn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
ùttaradìt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)

y

yỳn yỳn	other, others, other ones

b

bàaj	afternoon, o'clock (used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.)
baan	classifier for door
bâan (lǎŋ)	house, home
bâanchâw (lǎŋ)	a house to rent
bâanmáaj (lǎŋ)	a wooden house
bâantỳk (lǎŋ)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
baaŋ	(to be) thin
bâaŋ, mâŋ	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent

baaŋcaak	Bangchak,(name of tambon in Thailand)
baaŋkapì	Bangkapi (section of Bangkok)
baaŋpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
bàat	'baht' (Thai unit of currency)
baj	classifier for 'picture , etc.
baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bajmáaj	leaf
baw	(to be) light (in weight)
bɛ̀ɛp	model, type, style
bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j	small bill (change)
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
bə̀ək	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bə̀ək ŋən	to get money (from the bank)
bin	to fly
bin	Bill (name)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
bon	above, on top of
boolîŋ	bowling
bóssatân	Boston
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bɔ̀ɔk	to tell
bɔɔrisàt	company
bɔɔrisàt námman	Oil company
bɔɔriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
burìi (muan)	cigarette
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
bỳa	(to be) bored

c

ca	will, shall (future particle)
càaj (ŋən)	to pay refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
càak	from
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
cam... dâj	to remember
camnuan	amount
caŋ	extremely, a great deal
caŋwàt	province
carəən kruŋ	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamɛ̀ɛk	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw (oŋ)	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwkhɔ̌ɔŋ (khon)	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member, the man in charge
câwbàaw (khon)	bridegroom
câwsǎaw (khon)	bride
cennîi	Jenny (name)
cèt	seven
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
ciin (prathêet)	China, Chinese
cim	Jim (name)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
con	(to be) poor (in wealth)
coo	Joe

còp	to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
cɔ́ɔc	George (name)
cɔɔn	John (name)
cɔ̀ɔt	to park
culaa	Chula (abbreviation for Chulalonghorn University)

ch

cháa	(to be) late, slow
chaaj (hɛ̀ŋ)	edge, rim, border
chaajthalee (hɛ̀ŋ)	the beach
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chaan (chaan)	patio, porch without a roof
châaŋ-	a person who has skill in some craft or trade. (It is the head noun in many noun compounds.)
châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâj (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsǔan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
cháaw	morning, a.m.
cháawmŷyt	early morning
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
châj	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)

châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money), to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chalǐaŋ (chalǐaŋ)	terrace, balcony, porch
chán	I, me. (Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.)
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building), story
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story
chánkhrŷŋ	one and a half story
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
châw	to rent
chên	such as
chəən	please, go ahead and...
chiaŋmàj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)

chîawchaan	(to be) expert, experienced
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chomphûu	rose apple
chótchɔ́ɔj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chɔ̂ɔ	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
chɔ̂ɔp	to like, be fond of
chûaj	please (do something); help
chûammoŋ	hour (60 minutes)
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glassware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chútrápkhɛ̂ɛk (chút)	living room furniture
chútthaankhâaw (chút)	a dining set
chŷak	rope, cord, classifier for 'elephant'
chŷy	name, to be named

d

dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâj	can, could, be able
dâj	to get, obtain, procure
(hǎa) dâj	to get (it indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
dâjjin	to hear
(sǐi) dam	black (color)
daŋ	loud
deewít	David
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)
denwə̂ə	Denver
(sǐi) dɛɛŋ	(to be) red (color)
dəən	to walk
dəənthaaŋ	to travel
dichǎn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
diicaj	(to be) glad
diaw	one only, only
dǐawníi	right now
dǐaw	soon
dǐaw	or else, otherwise
diin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
diisaj thaj	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
dík	Dick (name)
dinsɔ̌ɔ (thɛ̂ŋ)	pencil
dontrii	music
dooj	by (means of transportation)
doojtroŋ	directly

dɔ́ktə̂ə (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
dɔ́ktə̂ə wés	Dr. West
dɔ̀ɔkmáaj (dɔ̀ɔk)	flower
dɔɔlâa	dollar
dɔɔn myaŋ	Don Muang (the name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
duu ŋaan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (something) in operation
dûaj	also, too, as well
duu	to look at
dyan	month
dỳk	late at night (11 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
dỳym	to drink

f

fǎa (fǎa)	wall
fáa (sǐi fáa)	sky (sky blue)
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you
fàak ŋən	to deposit money (in the bank)
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
faŋ (sîi)	tooth
faŋ	to listen
fàŋ	bank (of a river), side (of the street)
faràŋ (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc.

faràŋsèet (prathêet)	France, French
fɛɛn (khon)	girl or boy friend
filíppin (prathêet)	Philippines, Philippine
fĭi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
flɔridâa (rát)	Florida
fɔ̀ɔt	a Ford (brand name)
frét	Fred (name)
frii	to be free (no cost)
fút	foot, English system

h

hâ and há	They replace the polite female particles khâ and khá respectively in informal use.
háʔ	It replaces the male polite particle khráp in informal use.
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
hǎa { phóp cəə	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
hâa	five
hǎaj (paj)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
hàaŋ	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
haawaaj (kɔ̀)	Hawaii
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hanlŏo	Hello.
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train

hěn	to see, perceive
hěn ca	to think
hɛ̀ŋ	classifier for places
hòk	six
hók cèt	6 or 7
hòk-sìp	sixty
hooten	hotel
hòt	to shrink
hɔ̀ɔ	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper
hɔ̌ɔm	to smell sweet
hɔ̂ŋ (hɔ̂ŋ)	room
hɔ̂ŋaahǎan (hɔ̂ŋ)	dining room, dining hall
hɔ̂ŋkèpkhɔ̌ɔŋ (hɔ̂ŋ)	storage, space, storage room
hɔ̂ŋkhrua (hɔ̂ŋ)	kitchen
hɔ̂ŋlɛ̀ɛp (hɔ̂ŋ)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hɔ̂ŋnáam	bathroom
hɔ̂ŋprachum (hɔ̂ŋ)	auditorium
hɔ̂ŋrápkhɛ̀ɛk (hɔ̂ŋ)	reception room, living room
hɔ̂ŋrian (hɔ̂ŋ)	classroom
hɔ̂ŋsamùt (hɔŋ)	library
hɔ̂ŋthabian (hɔ̂ŋ)	registrar's (office)
hɔ̂ŋthamŋaan (hɔ̂ŋ)	work room
hɔ̂ŋthoorasàp (hɔ̂ŋ)	telephone room
hɔ̂ŋkoŋ	Hong Kong
hǔa (hǔa)	head
hǔakhâm	early evening (6 p.m. - 9 p.m.
hǔanâa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organization)
hǔalamphooŋ	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)

j

jaa (jàaŋ)	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hɔ̌ɔm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jàa	don't (negative request form)
jâa	grass
jáaj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{maa}\\ \text{paj}\end{array}\right.$ (+ jùu)	to move (in)
jâak	(to be) difficult
jàak hâj	to want to, would like to
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality); classifier for things
jàaŋdii	good quality
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj	at least
jâat (khon)	relative(s)
jàj	(to be) large, big, major, main
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)
jaŋ	still, not yet
jaŋraj, jaŋŋaj, ŋaj	how (question word)
jaŋŋán, jàaŋnán	so
jáp	to wrinkle
jeel	Yale (University)
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.
jɛ́, jəjɛ́	(to be) a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
jɛ̂ɛ	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way

jəəraman (prathêet)	Germany, German
jîam	to go to see, to visit
jîihɔ̂ɔ	brand or trade name
jîipùn (prathêet)	Japan, Japanese
jîi-sìp	twenty
jindii	(to be) glad
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
jɔ́ɔm (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
júròop (thawîip)	Europe
jùt	to stop
jùt phák	to take a break
jùu	to live, stay; to be located at
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Information Service)
juusɔ̂ɔm	U.S.O.M. (United States Operations Mission)
jýaŋ kàp	(to be) diagonally across (from)
jyyn	to stand

k

kà	to guess, estimate
kaafɛɛ	coffee
kaan	work, affairs
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaan lŷak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
kâan	classifier for matches
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)

kaaŋkeeŋ (tua)	trousers, pants
kâaw	nine
kâw-sìp	ninety
kâw-sìp èt	ninety one
kamlaŋ	aspect particle indicating action in process
kamlaŋ phɔɔdii	just right
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kanjaa (jon)	September
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kaprooŋ	woman's skirt
karákkadaa (khom)	July
karunaa	please, kindly
kasètsàat	agriculture; also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kàw	(to be) old (of non living things), former (of living and non-living things)
kâwîi (tua)	chair
kawlǐi (prathêet)	Korea, Korean
keem (keem)	game (sports)
kèŋ	(to be) expert, skillful (at doing something)
kèŋŋaan	Kengngan (last name)
kɛɛ	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status

kɛ̂ɛ	to fix, correct (something)
kɛ̀ɛ	dark (color)
kɛ̀ɛ	to, for
kɛ́ɛpitɔ̂ɔn	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
kɛ̀salàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
kəən	too much
kəən paj	too..., in excess
kìaw kàp	about, concerning
kìi	how many, (question word)
kiilaa	Sport(s), athletics
kiloo	kilometer
kiloo(kram)	kilogram (metric system)
kiloo(méet)	kilometer (metric system)
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaaŋ	central, middle, neutral
klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj	not old but not new
klaaŋkhyyn	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
klaaŋwan	in the daytime, by day
klaj	(to be) far
klâj	(to be) near, close
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
klètthɔɔŋ	Gold Flake (name of cigarettes)
klɔ̀ŋ	a small carton or plastic box
klɔ̂ŋthaajrûup (an)	camera

klua	to be afraid of
klûaj (lûuk)	banana
koŋsǔn (khon)	the Consul
kɔ̂	then, also, too, consequently (connective particle)
kɔ̂ rŷaj rŷaj	so so
kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
kɔ́ɔf	golf
kɔ̂ɔn	bump, cube, bar (classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks of coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money)
kɔ̀ɔn	before, first; used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kɔɔŋ	division (subdivision of a krom)
kɔɔŋtháp	the armed forces (of a country)
kɔɔŋtháp aakàat	the Air Forces
kɔɔŋtháp bòk	the Army
kɔɔŋtháp rya	the Navy
kracòk (baan, phɛ̀ŋ)	glass
kradaan	board
kradaandam (phɛ̀n)	blackboard
kradàat (phɛ̀n)	paper
kradaj	stairs, steps
kram	gram (metric system)

krapǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)	ministry (division of the government)
krasuaŋ (kaan)tàaŋ prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
krasuaŋ kalaahǒom	Ministry of Defense
krasuaŋ mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
kratàaj (tua)	rabbit
kratìknàm (baj)	thermos bottle
krítsàkàrâat	Christian Era (A.D.)
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamrùat	police department
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
kruŋ (kruŋ)	city (used to refer to some capital cities)
kruŋthêep	Bangkok
kumphaa(phan)	February
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
kwâaŋ	(to be) broad, wide
kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ	(to be) wide, to be large, to be roomy
kyàp	almost

kh

khâ	polite particle, statement by a female
khá	polite particle, question by a female
khâa	servant (as in khâarâatchakaan)
khâa	fee, cost, price, value

khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khâachâw	the rent
khâadoojsaan	fare
khâajùu	lodging
khâakɛ́ɛs	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatìttâŋ	installation fee
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan (khon)	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thaahǎan (khon)	military government employee
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khǎaj	to sell
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋ	next to (something or someone), side
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
khâaŋlǎŋ	the back, behind
khâaŋnâa	ahead, in front
khâaŋnaj	inside
khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk	outside
khàat (tɛ̀ɛ)	to be lacking, missing shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khâaw	rice
khǎaw	white
(pen) khâj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) khâjwàt	(to have) flu
kham	word

khambanjaaj (khɔ̂ɔ)	lecture
khamthǎam (khɔ̂ɔ)	question
khamtɔ̀ɔp (khɔ̂ɔ)	the answer
khâm	evening
khamɛ̌en (prathêet)	Cambodia, Cambodian
khamooj (khon)	thief, robber
khan	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khǎnŋən (baj)	silver bowl
khanàat	size
khanáthîi	while
khàp rót	to drive a car
khanɛɛn (khanɛɛn)	grade, score point(s)
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khâwcaj	to understand
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khǎw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does not refer to things
khɛ̀ɛk (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khɛlifɔɔnia	California
khɛ̌ŋ	(to be) hard, firm, strong, stiff
khɛ̂ɛp	(to be) narrow
khəəj	to have ever (done something), to be used to (be something, etc.)
khə̌ən	to lacquer
khǐan	to write
khǐaw	green (in color)
khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn	light green

khiinóot	keynote (name)
khìit	to strike, scratch
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khít jaŋŋaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
khít ɔ̀ɔk	to figure out
khɛ̂ɛ níi nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khlɔɔŋ (khlɔɔŋ)	canal
khlɔɔŋ təəj	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khon (khon)	people, also classifier for humans
khonchái (khon)	servant
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khonkhàprót (khon	chauffeur, driver
khonklaaŋ (khon)	the middle one (of children)
khonlék (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khonnaj (khon)	insider
khonnɔ̂ɔk (khon)	outsider or layman
khonsùtthɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khon too (khon)	the oldest one (of children)
khoŋ (ca)	probably
khoolooradôo (rát)	Colorado
khɔ̂j	softly, low (of sound)
khɔ̌ɔ	to request, ask
khɔ̌ɔ jyym/jyym	to borrow
khɔ̌ɔthôot	excuse me
khɔɔj	to wait

khɔɔlkèet	Colgate (trade name)
khɔ̌ɔnkɛ̀ɛn	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)
khɔ̌ɔŋ	thing, object; of, belonging to
khɔ̌ɔŋcháj (jàaŋ, an, chín)	something useful, utensils, things for use
khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn (jàaŋ)	present, gift
khɔ̌ɔŋlên (jàaŋ)	toys
khɔ̌ɔŋkɛ̀salàk (jàaŋ)	carvings
(khɔ̌ɔŋ)naj (jàaŋ)	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
(khɔ̌ɔŋ)nɔ̂ɔk (jàaŋ)	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
khɔ̀ɔpcaj	thank you (superior to inferior)
khɔ̀ɔpkhun	Thank you.
khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ	A.D.
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)
khraj	who, what (in some constructions)
khráŋ	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khráp, háʔ, kháp	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
khrítsàkàrâat (khɔɔ sɔ̌ɔ)	Christian Era
khrítsamâat	Christmas
khrítsatian	Christian (name of a hospital)
khrooŋkaan	project
khróp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua (khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua)	the family

khruu (khon)	teacher
khrŷaŋ	engine; -ware
khrŷaŋbin (khrŷaŋ)	airplane
khrŷaŋàttheép (an)	tape recorder
khrŷaŋ (cák) (an)	machine
khrŷaŋfajfáa (khrŷaŋ)	electrical equipment
khrŷaŋchájfajfáa (khrŷaŋ)	electrical
khrŷaŋjon (khrŷaŋ)	engine
khrŷaŋkhə̌ən	lacquerware
khrŷaŋkhrua (khrŷaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khrŷaŋmyy (khrŷaŋ)	tool
khrŷaŋŋən	silverware
khrŷaŋpə̀ətkrapɔ̌ɔŋ (an)	an electric can opener
khrŷaŋphét khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ	jewelry
khrŷaŋpràpaakàat (khrŷaŋ)	air conditioning
khrŷaŋryan (chút)	furniture
khrŷaŋsákphâa (khrŷaŋ)	washing machine
khrŷaŋthɔ̌m	nielloware
khrŷaŋthɔɔŋsǎmrít	bronzeware
khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ	things of gold
khrŷaŋtiikhàj (khrŷaŋ)	an electric (egg) beater
khrŷŋ	half
khrŷŋ lǎa	half yard
khuan ca	should
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khuj	to converse
khun	you (singular only) polite form
khun	Mr., Mrs., Miss (a polite title)

khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ (khon)	parents (polite usage)
khûu	pair
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamhĕn	opinion
khwaamkhíthĕn	opinion
kwâaŋ	(to be) wide, to be broad
khŷn	(to go) up
khŷn ŋən	to cash a check
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khyyn	night
khyynníi	tonight

l

la	question word
la, lá	per, a, the
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lăa	yard (36")
lăakhrŷŋ	one and one half yards
lăaj	many, several
láan	million
laaŋsàat (lûuk, phŏn)	bangsa (small fruit)
laaw (prathêet)	Laos, Lao, Laotian
làks	Lux (brand name)
lambàak	(to be) hard, difficult, troublesome
lăŋ	behind
lăŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
lèek	iron, steel
lék	(to be) small, little (in size)
lékchə̂ə (khɔ̂ɔ)	lecture
lêm	classifier for 'book'
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lɛ́	and
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lɛ̀ɛp (hɔ̂ŋ)	lab (English loan)
lɛ́ɛw	and then (sentence connective)
lɛ́ɛw	(used to indicate completed action)
lɛ́ɛw rý jaŋ lɛ́ɛw lý jaŋ lɛ́ɛw lə́ jaŋ lɛ́ɛw ý jaŋ lɛ́ɛw ə́ jaŋ	or not yet? (used in questions)
ləəj	quite
ləəj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently
lə̂ək	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
líaŋ dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
lidôo	Lido (name)
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator

lít	liter (metric system)
loŋ	to (go) down
lôok	world
lópburii	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lɔɔndɔɔn (kruŋ)	London
lɔ̀ɔt	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lɔ̀ɔt fajfáa (lɔ̀ɔt)	light bulb
lûaŋnâa	in advance
lúk	to get up
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lûuknɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	subordinate (employee)
lûukthɔ́ɔ (lûuk)	peach (a Chinese loan word)
lûuksìt (khon)	student, pupil
ly̌akəən	too..., so...
lŷak	to choose, pick out, select, elect
lŷaktâŋ	to elect (as in a political election)
ly̌aŋ	(to be) yellow
lyym	to forget

m

maa	to come
(paj)... maa	to come from
maa kɔ̀ɔn	previously
maa lɛ́ɛw	ago
maa thỹŋ	to arrive (towards speaker)
máa (tua)	horse
mǎa (tua)	dog
máaj (an, phɛ̀ɛn)	wood, stick
máajkɛ̀salak	woodcarvings
májkhìit (faj)	matches
máaj sàk	teak
mâak	(to be) much, many; a lot; very
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
mahǎawítthajaalaj	university
mai	mile
mǎj, máj	question word
màj	again, new
mâj	no, not (a negative word)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
mâj khɔ̂j (ca)	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mâj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)

mák ca	usually, likely to
mâŋ	some, any (pronominal, another form of bâaŋ)
malajuu	Malaya
malakɔɔ (lûuk)	papaya (fruit)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mamûaŋ (lûuk)	mango (fruit)
maŋkhút (lûuk)	mangosteen (fruit)
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
míchíkɛɛn (rát)	Michigan
meesǎa(jon)	April
méet	meter (metric system)
mɛsachusèt(rát)	Massachusetts
mét	seed, grain, pill; classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
mɛ̂ɛ (khon)	mother
mɛ̂ɛbâan (khon)	housewife
mɛ̂ɛkháa (khon)	salesperson (female)
mɛ̂ɛnám (sǎaj)	river
mɛ́ɛn	Maen (male or female first name)
mɛɛrîi	Mary (name)
mii	to have
mii	there is, are (existence)
mii... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
miinaa(khom)	March
míssís	Mrs.
místə	Mr.
mítchân	Mission (name of a hospital in Bangkok)

míthunaa(jon)	June
mítraphâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
mókkaraa(khom)	January
mooŋ	o'clock, time
mɔ̌ɔ (khon)	medical doctor
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
mum (mum)	corner
múŋ (lǎŋ)	mosquito net
múŋlûat (lǎŋ)	screen (for window, etc.)
mŷa	used for past time
mŷakíkíníi, mŷakíi, mŷakîi	a short time ago
mŷawaanníi	yesterday
mŷaràj	when, question word
mýankan, my̌ankan	too, also
myaŋ (myaŋ)	city, country (nation)
myy (myy)	hand
mỳyn	ten thousand
mŷyt	(to be) dark

n

na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naa (râj)	rice field
nâa kwâaŋ	in front; face
nâa	width (for fabric)
nâa khɛ̂ɛp	narrow
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or -able -(It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds)

nâa-àan		interesting to read
nâabỳa		(to be) dull
nâacháj		(to be) nice to use
nâachâw		(to be) nice to rent
nâaduu		(to be) interesting to look at
nâafaŋ		(to be) interesting to listen to
nâajùu		(to be) cozy, livable
nâakhàp		(to be) nice to drive
nâarák		(to be) lovable, cute
nâasǒncaj		(to be) interesting
nâasɔ̌ɔn		(to be) nice to teach
nâasýy		(to be) nice to buy
nâathaan		to look delicious
nâatàaŋ (nâatàaŋ)		window
nǎa		(to be) heavy (of material), heavy texture
naaj (khon)		Mr. (title)
naajnâa (khon)		agent
naajók	(thân)	prime minister (short form)
naajók rátthamontrii		prime minister (official name)
naalikaa (ryan)		watch, clock
naamsakun		family name
naan		(to be) long (in time)
naanaaphan		Nanaphan (name of a shop)
naaŋ (khon)		female, Mrs.
naaŋphajaabaan (khon)		female nurse
naathii		minute
nâathîi		duty
nǎaw		(to be) cold
naj		in, inside

(khɔ̌ɔŋ) naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or country
nǎj	which (one(s)) (determiner)
nák-	one who - (agent noun) (never alone)
nàk	(to be) heavy (in weigh); hard (of work); severely, very
nák	so, so much
nákkaanmyaŋ (khon)	a politician
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist, linguist
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
nákrian naj (khon)	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nɔ̂ɔk (khon)	Thais who were educated abroad
náksỳksǎa (khon)	student
nakhɔɔn râatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakkhɔɔnsǐi thammarâat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
(sǐi) námŋən	(to be) blue (in color)
(sǐi) námtaan	(to be) brown (in color), sugar
nân	that (one), there
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎŋ (rŷaŋ)	movie (story)
náŋsy̌y (lêm)	a book
náŋsy̌yphim (chabàp)	newspaper
nâŋ	to sit
nɛ́nam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnɛ́nam	advice, suggestion, instruction
nîi	this (one), here

níi, nîi	this (determiner)
nít nɔ̀ɔj	a little
nítsìt (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
niw delhii	New Delhi
níw	inch (English system)
njuu jɔ́ɔk	New York
nók (tua)	bird
nókjuuŋ (tua)	peacock
nókkɛ̂ɛw (tua)	parrot
noŋjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
noŋlák	Nonglak (female first name)
nôon	over there
nôon	that (one) over there, over there (pronominal)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
nɔ̀ɔj	maybe used to make a request less abrupt
nɔ́ɔj	few
nɔ́ɔj	(to be) little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
nɔ̂ɔk	outside, external
(khɔ̌ɔŋ) nɔ̂ɔk	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand
nɔɔn	to sleep
nɔ̌ɔn (tua)	worm
nɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nɔ́ɔŋchaaj (khon)	younger brother(s)
nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
nɔɔrawee (prathêet)	Norway

nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
ny̌a	north, above
nýaphâa	texture of cloth
nýk	think about, can recall, can remember
nýk ɔ̀ɔk	to be able to recall to memory
nyŋ, nỳŋ	one, a

ŋ

ŋâaj	to be simple, easy
ŋaan	ceremony
ŋaan	work
ŋaanlíaŋ	party (entertainment)
ŋaan phátthanaa	community development
ŋaj	variant form of jaŋraj
ŋán	in that case
ŋən	silver, money
ŋənbə̀ək	a deposit (in a bank)
ŋənthɔɔn	change (money returned)
ŋɔ́ (lûuk)	rambuttan (fruit)
ŋuâŋnɔɔn	to be sleepy

p

pâaj (pâaj)	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign poster
pâaj rótmee (pâaj)	bus stop
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaknáam	Paknam (name of an Amphoe)
pàaksɔɔj	the entrance into a lane

pàakkaa (dâam)	pen
páak kə̂ə	Parker
paj	to go
paj kɔ̀ɔn	to go first, to go ahead
paj... maa	to come from
paj thỹŋ	to arrive (away from speaker)
(cháa) paj	too (much)
pàk	part (with pàk tâj 'Southern Part' only)
pámnámman	a gas pump
parîit (kruŋ)	Paris
pathumwan	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
pattanii	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
pen	to be
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pentaakɔɔn	the Pentagon
pɛ̀ɛt	eight
pə̀ət	to open, turn on (lights)
pii	year
pìt	to close, turn off (lights)
plaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
pláatsatìk	plastic
plàaw	no (it isn't so) - particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question
plɛɛ	to translate
plɛ̀ɛk (plɛ̀ɛk)	(to be) unusual, (to be) strange
plɔ̀ɔtphaj	to be safe, out of danger

plyaŋ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
pɔɔn	pound (weight)
pracam	to be stationed
prachaathíppataj	freedom (also the name of a monument in Bangkok
prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting; meeting, assembly
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
prajsanii	the post office
prajsaniiklaaŋ	The Central Post Office
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prasàat	Prasat, male first name
prasə̀ət	Prasert (male first name)
prasìt	Prasit (male first name)
prathaan (khon)	president, chairman
prathaan aathípbɔɔdii (khon)	the president of a country
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
pratuu (baan)	door, gate
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
présidên	President (English name)
prɛɛŋ (prɛɛŋ)	brush
prɛɛŋsǐifan (prɛɛŋ)	toothbrush
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
pròot	please (request form)
prỳksǎa	to talk it over, consult
pùat	to ache, have a pain

phaa... { paj maa	to take, or escort someone
phâafâaj	cotton
phâamǎj	silk
phâanajlɔ̂n	nylon
phâak (phâak)	part, region, section
phàan	to pass, to go past
phaasǎa (phaasǎa)	language, speech
phahǒnjoothin	phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phajabaan	to nurse
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
phák phɔ̀n	to rest
phamâa (prathêet)	Burma, Burmese
phan	thousand
-phan	ending for month of February
phanákŋaan (khon)	employee
phanrajaa, pharijaa, phanjaa (khon)	wife (elegant term)
phátlom (khrŷaŋ)	electric fan
phát phoŋ	Pat Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakɔɔn (khon)	a community development worker
phét	diamond
phétphlɔɔj	jewelry
phétburii	Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phὲɛn	classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phὲnsǐaŋ	records (phonograph)

phɛ̌ɛnthîi (phɛ̀n)	map
phɛɛŋ	(to be) expensive
phə̂ŋ	just (immediately before)
phíchaj	Phichai (male first name)
phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîichaaj (khon)	older brother(s)
phîinɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîisǎaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phim	to type
phim (dìit)	to typewrite, print
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
phimsěen	smelling salts
phìt	(to be) incorrect, a mistake
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phlɔɔj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
phǒm	I (male speaker)
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaj	fruit
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
phɔɔ	to be enough, sufficient
phɔ̂ɔ (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phɔ̌ɔm	(to be) thin (not fat)
phɔ̂ɔkháa (khon)	merchant
phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ	B.E.

phrá-aathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phráraam sìi	Rama the Fourth (street)
phránakɔɔn	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
phrɔ́ ... (wâa)	because
phrɔ́ɔm	to be ready, set, completed
phrûŋníi	tomorrow
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phuaŋ	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
phúttha sàkàràat (phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ)	Buddhist Era
phûu	person, one who
phûuchaaj (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
phûuchîawchaan (khon)	an expert
phûujàj (khon)	an adult
phûujǐŋ (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)
phûut	to speak, talk, say
phûut taam	to repeat after
phŷan (khon)	friend
phýyn	floor

7

r

raaj la-ìat	details
raakhaa	price
raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hɛ̀ŋ, ráan)	shop, store
ráanaahǎan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankaafɛɛ (ráan)	coffee shop
ráankhǎajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ (ráan)	shop, store
ráannáŋsy̌yphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráanmɔ̌ɔ (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphǒm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsŷa (ráan)	a tailor shop
raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	prize (kind)
râatcha-	pertaining to the king
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
râatchadamnəən	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamrì	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithǐi	Rajawithee (Road)
râatprasɔ̌ŋ	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
raaw, raawraaw	around, approximately
rabiaŋ (rabiaŋ)	corridor
rák	to love
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
ráp	to receive, accept, to take on, to eat (something)
(paj/maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something

ráprooŋ dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
rát (rát)	state, nation
rátsia (prathêet)	Russia
rátthamontrii	minister (head of a ministry)
raw	we, our, us
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
rew	fast, soon, early
rêɛk	to be first
rɛɛŋthian	watt (measure of electricity)
rə̂əm	to start
rîak wâa	to be called
rian	to study, learn
rǐan	coin, dollars
rîip	to hurry, to be urgent
rîit	to iron (cloth)
rim (rim)	edge, rim, bank
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bìt	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
room (kruŋ)	Rome
rooŋ (rooŋ)	building
rooŋnǎŋ (rooŋ)	movie house, cinema
rooŋnǎŋ khiŋ (rooŋ)	King's Cinema
rooŋrian (hɛ̀ŋ)	school
rooŋrian naanaachâat (rooŋrian)	The International School
rooŋrót (rooŋ)	garage, carport
rooŋŋaan (rooŋ)	factory
rooŋphajabaan (rooŋ, hɛ̀ŋ)	hospital

rooŋrɛɛm (rooŋrɛɛm, hɛ̀ŋ)	hotel
rópkuan	to bother, trouble (someone)
rót (khan)	car
róttúktúk (khan)	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rótmee (khan)	bus
rótsǎamlɔ́ɔ (khan)	samlor (3 wheeled vehicle)
rót	flavor
rɔ, rɔ̀k, rɔk, rɔ̀ɔk, rɔɔk, rə-	particle often used with statement of negation
rɔ́ɔj	hundred
rɔ́ɔn	(to be) hot (temperature)
rɔɔŋtháw (khûu, khâaŋ)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ruaj	(to be) rich, wealthy
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
rúu rŷaŋ	to understand (a subject)
rûup (baj)	picture
rə́, ry̌y, rý, ly̌y, lý	question word
rýjaŋ	yet (question word)
rýplàaw	question word (negative)
ry̌y, rý	or
rya khrŷaŋ } bin (lam, khrŷaŋ)	airplane

rya (lam)	boat
ryabaj (lam)	sail boat
ryacâaŋ (lam)	rented boat
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
rŷaj rŷaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)
ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
rŷaŋ	story (about), about (classifier for story)

s

sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sa-àat	to be clean
sǎaj	late, the time (9 a.m.-11:59 a.m.)
sǎaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sǎalaa (lǎŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
sǎam	three
sǎam-sìp	thirty
sǎamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sâap	to know (a fact)
sǎathaaraná	public (not private)
sǎathɔɔn	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)

sǎathɔɔn tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sabaajdii	to feel well, be in good health
sabùuhɔ̌ɔm (khɔ̂ɔn)	toilet soap
sabùu(láks) (kɔ̂ɔn)	(Lux) soap
sabùunaj (khɔ̂ɔn)	local soap
sabùunɔ̂ɔk (khɔ̂ɔn)	imported soap
sabùusákphâa (khɔ̂ɔn)	laundry soap
sabùuthaj (khɔ̂ɔn)	Thai soap
sadùak	to be convenient
sajǎam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajǎam intəə	Siam International Hotel
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sák (or) sàk	a little, bit
sák pradǐaw	a minute
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
sák hɛ̂ɛŋ	to dry clean
sák náam	to wash (in water), to be washable
sakòt	to spell (words)
sakruu	one fourth yard
samǎan	Saman, male or female first name
samǎj	time, period, era, age, reign
samǎj màj	modern
samə̌ə	always, regularly, consistently
sǎmnákŋaan (hɛ̀ŋ)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sámràp	for
samít	Smith (name)
samoosɔ̌ɔn	club, association
samùt (lêm)	notebook

samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sân	(to be) short (in length)
sanǎam (sanǎam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sanǎam (hɛ̀ŋ)	field, (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanǎamjâa (sanǎam)	lawn, yard
sanǎambin (hɛ̀ŋ)	airport
sanǎamkilaa (hɛ̀ŋ)	the sports stadium
sanǎamlǔaŋ (hɛ̀ŋ)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
sanǎammǎa (hɛ̀ŋ)	race track
sanìt	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
sǎnjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sanùk	(to be) amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sawàt	Sawat (name)
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)
sawít (prathêet)	Switzerland
sàŋ	to order, to leave instructions or a message
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sàpdaa, sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sapeen (prathêet)	Spain
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road)
sapɔ̀ɔt khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sàpparót (lûuk, baj)	pineapple
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)

sapriŋfil	Springfield
sàt (tua)	animal
...líaŋ (tua)	pet
satàaŋ	satang (Thai coinage)
sathǎan (hɛ̀ŋ)	place, location
sathǎankoŋsǔn (hɛ̀ŋ)	the Consulate
sathǎanii (hɛ̀ŋ)	station
sathǎaniirótfaj (hɛ̀ŋ)	the railroad station
sathǎaniitamrùat (hɛ̀ŋ)	police station
sathǎanthîi (hɛ̀ŋ)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sathǎanthûut (hɛ̀ŋ)	embassy
sǎw	Saturday
sèet satàaŋ	change (in coin)
sen (tikram)	centigram (metric system)
sen (timéet)	centimeter (metric system)
sên	for rope, cord
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
sɛ̌ɛn	hundred thousand
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
si, sî, sí	to request someone to do something, to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
sǐa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sǐa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)

sìi	four
sìijɛ̂ɛk	corner
sìi-sìp	forty
sǐi (sǐi)	color
sǐi	to polish
sǐilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
sǐisà	head (elegant word)
sǐnkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
sǐŋhǎa(khom)	August
sìp	ten
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sôm (lûuk)	orange
sôm oo (lûuk)	pomelo
sǒmsàk	Somsak (male first name)
sòŋ	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sòŋ	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
sǒŋkhlǎa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sǒmcìt	Somchit (male or female first name)
sòot (khon)	to be single, unmarried state single person, bachelor, spinster
sòt	(to be) fresh (of fruit, etc.)
sɔɔj	lane (narrow street)
sɔ̌ɔn	to teach
sɔ̌ɔn dɛɛŋ	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)

sɔɔŋ	classifier for cigarettes; envelope
sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sɔ̌ɔŋ	two
sɔ̌ɔŋchán	two story
sɔ̌ŋkhraam	war
sɔ̀ɔp	to test, be tested
sǔaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔandɔ̀ɔkmáaj	flower garden
sùanmâak	most of, in the main
sùk	to be ripe
sùksǎalaa (hɛ̀ŋ)	public health center or clinic
sukhǔmwít	Sukhumwit Road
sǔnthɔɔn	Sunthorn (male first name)
suriwoŋ	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sùttháaj	last, final
sǔunklaaŋ (hɛ̀ŋ)	center
sǔuŋ	to be high, tall
sŷa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sŷa kaaŋkeeŋ	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)
sŷanɔ̂ɔk	jacket
sýaphâa (tua, chút)	cloth
sy̌a (tua)	tiger

sỳksǎa	to study, learn
sýy	to buy, (with khɔ̌ɔŋ 'to shop')
sýy... $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\\text{maa}\end{matrix}\right\}$ ...fàak	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone

t

taam	along, after; to follow
tàaŋ	(to be) different, separate
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
tàaŋcaŋwàt	in the provinces, out-of-town
(jùu) tàaŋhàak	to be separate
tàaŋ prathêet	foreign
tâj	South, under
tâjthǔn	the space under the house
talàat (hɛ̀ŋ)	market
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi
talàat nát (hɛ̀ŋ)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tamnɛ̀ɛŋ	position (rank)
tamrùat (khon)	police
tâŋ	as much as, as many as
tâŋ	to be located
tâŋtɛ̀ɛ	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
tàt	to cut, sever

taw (taw)	stove
tawkɛ́ɛs (taw)	gas stove
tawrîit (an)	to iron (for clothing)
teeharaan (myaŋ)	Teheran
tennít	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
tɛ̀ɛ	but
tɛ̀ɛ ta } cháaw	very early
tɛɛŋmoo (lûuk)	watermelon
tɛ̀ŋ	to decorate, adorn (the verb in tɛ̀ŋ ŋaan)
tɛ̀ŋ ŋaan	to marry, to get married, to be married
tîa	to be short, low (in height)
tiaŋ (tiaŋ)	bed (to sleep on)
tii	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
tìt	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
rót tìt	the traffic's heavy
tìt (múŋlûat)	to (be) screen(ed)
tìttâŋ	to install
tìttòɔ kàp	to contact or get in touch with someone
tó (tua)	table, desk
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto), to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

tòkloŋ	right, O.K.; to agree (to something)
tônmáaj (tôn)	plant, tree
too	(to be) big, large, mature
tookiaw (kruŋ)	Tokyo
tɔ̀ɔ (raakhaa)	to bargain
tɔ̀ɔ (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call
tɔɔn	sometime, time, part of (something)
tɔɔn (thîi)	during, section (of space or time), part
tɔ̂ŋ	must, have to
tɔ̂ŋkaan	to want, need
tɔ̀ɔp	to answer
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
troŋ	right, exactly sharp (of time)
troŋ (nǎj)	(exactly) where
troŋ { ka- kàp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
troŋkan khâam	opposite
troŋkhâam kan kàp	opposite
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
tua phǒm eeŋ	I (myself)
... kháw ...	he (himself), etc. tua... eeŋ is more emphatic than tua alone.
tua myaŋ	the business district
tua náŋsýy (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)

tulaa(khom)	October
tûu (baj)	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book)cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator
tỳk (lǎŋ)	building

th

thaa (sǐi)	to smear, spread (on), to paint
thâa (thâa, hɛ̀ŋ)	port, harbor
thàaj rûup	to take pictures
thǎam	to ask, (a question)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
thàanfajchaaj (kɔ̂ɔn)	flashlight batteries
thaaŋ	way, path, direction, means
thaaŋkhwǎa	to the right
thaaŋlŷak	choice (as a means)
thaaŋny̌a	North
thaaŋsáaj	to the left
thaaŋtâj	South
thaaŋkasèt	agricultural
thǎawɔɔn	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thahǎan (khon)	serviceman
thahǎan aakàat (khon)	airman
thahǎan bòk (khon)	soldier
thahǎan rya (khon)	sailor
thaj	Thai
thalee	sea
tham	to do, make
thamŋaan	to work

tham dûaj...	made of...
thammaj	why (question word)
thammadaa	usually, normally
thammasàat	Thammasart (university of Bangkok)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
thân	you, he, she (for persons of superior status)
thanaakhaan (hèŋ)	bank
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanàt khɔɔman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thanǒn (sǎaj)	street, road
thanǒn jàj	the main street
thanwaa(khom)	December
thǎŋ (baj)	pail
tháŋmòt	altogether
thaw	grey (color)
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thâwnán	only, only that (much)
thâwraj	how many, how much (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thêŋ	classifier for 'pencil', etc.
thɛ́ɛksîi (khan)	taxi
thɛ̌ɛw	section, district (of a town)
thɛ̌ɛwnán	over there, that area

(kan) thə̀, (thə, thə̀ət)	why not, let's
thîaŋ	noon
thîaŋ khyyn	midnight
thîaw	for pleasure
paj thîaw	to go out for pleasure
thii	instance, case, time
thiidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thii	may be used in the place of nɔ̀ɔj to soften a request if something is to be done for the speaker
thii wii (khrŷaŋ)	TV
thîi	place; at, in (means 'place where' as head of noun compounds)
thîi nǎj	where (as question word); anywhere (in negative statement)
thîinân	there
thîinîi	here
thîinôon	way over there
thîicɔ̀ɔtrót (thîi)	parking lot
thîilɛ̂ɛkŋen	place to exchange money
thîiprachum (hɛ̀ŋ)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)
thîisòŋ thooralêek	the place to send telegrams
thîithamŋaan (hɛ̀ŋ, thîi)	office
thîithamkaan	the office
thîi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence thîi sǎam 'third', etc.
thîi nyŋ	first
thîi sǎam	third

thîi sìi	fourth
thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ	second, etc.
thîisùt	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thîi lɛ́ɛw	ago
(aathít) thîi lɛ́ɛw	last (week, etc.)
thîi-	means 'simple device' when used as the head of certain noun compounds.
thîitiikhàj (thîi)	an ordinary (egg) beater
thîipə̀ətkrapɔ̌ŋ (thîi)	an ordinary can opener
thìip	to ride, pedal
thíp thɔ́ɔp	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thɔ̌m	to make nielloware
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thonabàt	bank note
thonburii	Thonburii, name of a province in Thailand. It used to be the capital during the period from 1767 through 1782.
thoomás	Thomas
thooralêek (chabàp)	telegram
thoo (rasàp)	
.... (rasàp) paj	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) maa	
thoorathát (khŷaŋ)	T.V.
thɔɔ (phâa)	to weave cloth
thɔɔm	Tom (a name)
thɔɔn	to give change (money)

thɔɔŋ	gold
thɔ́ɔŋ (thɔ́ɔŋ)	stomach, intestinal area
thɔɔŋly̌aŋ	bronze (the market term)
thɔɔŋsǎmrít	bronze (technical name)
thûaj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
thûan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
thúk	every, each
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
thǔŋ (baj)	a bag
thûm	o'clock,(used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thúrian (lûuk)	durian (fruit)
thùuk	(to be) right, correct
thûut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
thy̌ŋ, thýŋ	to reach, get to; that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

w

wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion; that (when used with verbs like phûut)
wâajnáam	to swim
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wâan	(to be) sweet (in flavor)

waanii	Wannee (female first name)
wâaŋ	(to be) free, not busy, not occupied
wâj	a salute made by placing the hands palm to palm and raising them towards the face
wájt	White (English name)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)
wanníi	today
wanaŋkhaan	Tuesday
wanathít	Sunday
wancan	Monday
wanph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wanphút	Wednesday
wansǎw	Saturday
wansùk	Friday
wanlǎŋ	some day (in the future)
wanphrá	Buddhist day of worship
wanthîi	date; (the... th)
wǎŋ	to hope
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold
wát (wát)	temple, temple compound
wátthanátham	culture
weelaa	time (to do something, etc.)
weelaaníi	at present
wɛ́	to stop in, over
wəəcinia (rát)	Virginia
wîatnaam (prathêet)	Vietnam, Vietnamese
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

wítsawákɔɔn (khon)	an engineer
wítthajú (khrŷaŋ, an)	radio; Withayu (Thai name of a street); Wireless Road (English name)
wɔɔchiŋtân	Washington

☆U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1970 O - 396-398 (143)

FSI Language Publications Available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	$2.25
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	$2.50
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	$2.00
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)	
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	$1.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12	$4.00
	(Units 13-24	
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	$2.75
* German	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* German	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. I)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. II)	$1.00
* Greek	(Vol. III)	$2.00
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	$5.00
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	$2.75
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	$2.25
* Korean	(Vol. I)	$3.00
* Korean	(Vol. II)	$4.75
* Lao	(Vol. I)	
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	$2.75
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	$2.25
* Moré	(Units 1-48)	$1.75
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	$3.50
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	$4.00
Shona	(Units 1-49)	$2.50
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15	$12.25
	(Units 16-30	
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	$3.25
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	$4.00
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	$3.00

* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	$3.75
* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	$2.25
* Twi	(Units 1-20)	$1.25
* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	$2.75
* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	$1.50
* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	$2.75

* Finnish Graded Reader	$4.50
* French Supplemental Exercises	$3.25
Hindi-An Active Introduction	
* Hungarian Graded Reader	$3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader	$1.75
* Luganda Pretraining Program	
Modern Written Arabic	$4.00
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)	$0.75
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. I)	$2.25
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)	
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. II)	
* Swahili General Conversation	$0.75
* Swahili Geography	$0.65
Thai Reference Grammar	$1.25
Turkish Graded Reader	
Vietnamese Familiarization Course	$1.75
Yoruba Intermediate Texts	$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.

BR. 7-0541
PA-48
OE/115

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

THAI

ED0 40403

BASIC COURSE

Volume 2

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

1946

AL 002 460

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

THAI

BASIC COURSE

Volume 2

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

AL 002 460

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price $3.75

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume 2

LESSON 21.

- BASIC DIALOG 327
- Questions on the Basic Dialog 328
- Notes on the Basic Dialog 328
- Grammar Notes 329
  - 1. Responses to paj jaŋŋaj 329
  - 2. Use of phaa... paj and aw... paj 330
  - 3. maa naan lɛ́ɛw Used to Indicate 'Action long in Process' 330
- DRILLS 331
- EXERCISES 344
- VOCABULARY 345

LESSON 22.

- BASIC DIALOG 347
- Notes on the Basic Dialog 348
- Grammar Notes 349
  - 1. thîi in Dates 349
  - 2. jàak + hâj + Verb Phrase 350
- DRILLS 351
- EXERCISES 366
- VOCABULARY 367

LESSON 23.

- BASIC DIALOG 369
- Notes on the Basic Dialog 370
- Grammar Notes 370
  - 1. Aspect Particles (jùu, dâj, lɛ́ɛw) 370
  - 2. thammaj, Used to Indicate 'purpose' or 'explanation' 372
  - 3. thy̌ŋ with thammaj 373
- DRILLS 373
- COMPREHENSION EXERCISES 382
- EXERCISES 384
- VOCABULARY 384

LESSON 24.

BASIC EPISODE (Part I) 385
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) 385
DRILLS 386

BASIC EPISODE (Part II) 394
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) 395
EXERCISES 395
VOCABULARY 396

LESSON 25.

BASIC DIALOG 397
Vocabulary Notes 398
DRILLS 400
EXERCISES 414
VOCABULARY 414

LESSON 26.

BASIC DIALOG 416
Notes on the Basic Dialog 417
Grammar Notes 417
  1. hâj + Object + Recipient 418
  2. Distributive Constructions 418
  3. kɔ̂ in Parallel Sentence Constructions 419
  4. tháŋ + Classifier Phrase 419
  5. Question + dii as a Request for Advice 419
DRILLS 420
EXERCISES 439
VOCABULARY 440

LESSON 27.

BASIC DIALOG 442
Notes on the Basic Dialog 443
Grammar Notes 443
  1. hâj (all uses) 443
  2. bɔ̀ɔk and Other Verbs with hâj as Causative 444
  3. eeŋ as Subject Modifier 444
DRILLS 445
EXERCISES 469
VOCABULARY 470

LESSON 28.

BASIC DIALOG 472
Grammar Notes 473

1. Reduplicated Stative Verbs in Affirmative Requests 473
2. ɔ̀ɔk in Statements of Negation or Contradiction 473
3. na / ná as a Comment 474
4. Use of sí, (si, sî) in Request 474
5. kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan to Indicate Preference for a Particular Course of Action 474

DRILLS 475
EXERCISES 484
VOCABULARY 485

LESSON 29.

BASIC DIALOG 487
Notes on the Basic Dialog and Other Notes 488
Grammar Notes 489
1. sèt and than as Completive Verbs 489
2. máj as Voluntary Choice Question Word 489
3. rýplàaw as 'Past time' Question Word 490
4. thə̀ in Suggestions 490
5. dǐaw as a Sentence Connective 490

DRILLS 491
EXERCISES 515
VOCABULARY 516

LESSON 30.

BASIC EPISODE (Part I) 518
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) 519

BASIC EPISODE: A VISIT TO THE SUNDAY MARKET 519
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) 520
Grammar Notes 521
1. mŷa in Time Constructions 521
2. set and còp Compared in Usage 522

DRILLS 523
VOCABULARY 529

LESSON 31.

BASIC DIALOG 530
Grammar Notes 531
1. hǎa with phóp / dâj / cəə 531
2. kwàa after Stative Verbs 532
3. khít + jaŋŋaj / araj 533

DRILLS 534
EXERCISES 550
VOCABULARY 551

LESSON 32.

BASIC DIALOG (Part II) 553
Vocabulary Notes 554
Grammar Notes 556
    paj and maa as Direction Words 556
DRILLS 557
EXERCISES 569
VOCABULARY 570

LESSON 33.

BASIC DIALOG (Part III) 572
Grammar Notes 573
  1. Use of kɔ̂ dâj 573
  2. jàak Versus jàak dâj 573
  3. Two Types of Noun Compounds 574
VOCABULARY NOTES 575
DRILLS 576
EXERCISES 582
VOCABULARY 583

LESSON 34.

BASIC DIALOG (Part IV) 586
Grammar Notes 587
  1. sǐa, ɔ̀ɔk, càaj + ŋən 587
  2. Sentence / NP + khróp 588
VOCABULARY NOTES 588
DRILLS 589
EXERCISES 598
VOCABULARY 598

LESSON 35.

REVIEW DIALOG 601
Grammar Notes 603
  Use of khŷyn and loŋ with Stative Verbs 603
DRILLS 604
EXERCISES 621
VOCABULARY 622

LESSON 36.

BASIC DIALOG 624
Vocabulary Notes 625
Grammar Notes 626
  1. Types of Comparison 626
  2. Equational Sentences 627
  3. Sentences + dii kwàa 628

DRILLS 628
EXERCISES 643
VOCABULARY 645

LESSON 37.

BASIC DIALOG 647
Vocabulary Notes 648
Grammar Notes 650
1. Verbs of Measurement with Metric Classifiers .. 650
2. An Optional Transformation 650
Chart I: Dimensions 651
DRILLS 652
EXERCISES 661
VOCABULARY 662

LESSON 38.

BASIC DIALOG 666
Vocabulary Notes 667
Grammar Notes 670
1. Noun Classifiers 670
2. Nominalization (thîi + VP) 673
DRILLS 673
EXERCISES 682
VOCABULARY 682

LESSON 39.

BASIC DIALOG 687
Grammar Notes 688
1. Types of Noun Phrases.
(a) Noun + Stative Verbs 688
(b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verbs 689
DRILLS 690
EXERCISES 712
VOCABULARY 713

LESSON 40.

BASIC DIALOG 716
Vocabulary Notes 717
Grammar Notes 719
1. châaŋ in Compounds 719
2. Completive Verbs 719
3. Pronoun Immediately After its Antecedent 720

4. Constructions with jyym 720
5. Constructions with faak 721
6. tham dûaj + Materials 721
DRILLS 722
EXERCISES 734
VOCABULARY 736

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

21.0 BASIC DIALOG: Planning a Trip to the Floating Market

A:	wanthîi cèt meesǎa níi pen wanjùt	April 7th is a holiday.
	khun wâaŋ máj	Are you free?
B:	wanthîi cèt troŋ kawan araj khráp	What day of the week is the 7th?
A:	wancan	Monday.
B:	ŋán phǒm wâaŋ khráp	Then I'm free.
	khun mii thúrá araj rə̌khráp	You have something in mind?
A:	jàak ca chuan paj thîaw talàat náam	I'd like to invite you to go to the Floating Market.
B:	dii thiidiaw khráp	Very good.
	phǒm jàak paj maa naan lɛ́ɛw, tɛ̀ɛ mâj mii ookàat	I've been wanting to go for a long time, but haven't had the chance.
	raw ca paj kan jaŋŋaj khráp	How shall we go?
A:	ca nâŋ rót paj bâan phŷan phǒm kɔ̀ɔn, lɛ́ɛw ca paj loŋ rya thîinân	We'll go by car to the house of a friend of mine and then get in a boat there.
B:	bâan kháw jùu rim khlɔɔŋ rə̌khráp	His house is on the edge of the canal, eh?
A:	khráp	Right.
	kháw ca phaa raw paj duu talàat náam	He will take us to see the Floating Market.

B:	raw ca phóp kan thîinǎj	Where'll we meet?
A:	phǒm ca paj ráp khun thîi bâan weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ cháaw	I'll pick you up at home at 8 a.m.
B:	phǒm khuan ca aw araj paj bâaŋ	What should I take with me?
A:	aw ŋəən paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ kàp klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup kɔ̂ phɔɔ lɛ́ɛw khráp	Take some money for shopping and your camera. That'll be enough.

21.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC DIALOG

1. khun A kàp khun B ca paj thîaw thîinǎj kan
2. kháw ca paj kan mŷaràj
3. khraj chuan khraj
4. khun B jàak paj thîaw talàat náam máj
5. kháw ca paj kan jaŋŋaj
6. khraj ca phaa kháw paj duu talàat náam
7. khun B bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun A aw araj paj bâaŋ

21.2 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) wâaŋ when used with people means 'free' in the sense of 'unoccupied, at leisure, not busy'.

b) troŋ kàp (ka) means 'correspond to, agree with, coincide with' and it is used to indicate correspondence in time, such as the date with the day of the week, years of the Christian era with those of the Buddhist, etc.

c) chəən 'to invite' is used for formal invitations. It carries the meaning that the person issuing the invitation is acting as the host.

chuan 'to invite' is less formal. It indicates that the person making the request is urging someone to join him in some activity.

21.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The question $\left.\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{matrix}\right\}$ jaŋŋaj 'How are you going?' can be answered in several ways.

	Type of Vehicle		Meaning
(1) paj maa	rótfaj	(No destination given)	'train'
(2) nâŋ loŋ khŷn khàp thìip	rót túktúk rya khrŷaŋbin rótjon càkrajaan	$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + Destination	'3 wheeled bus' 'boat' 'plane' 'car' 'bicycle'
(3) bin dəən		$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + Destination	'to fly' 'to walk'
(4) $\left.\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + Destination + dooj		rótmee	'bus'

The construction with dooj (4) is used largely in written language or formal speech.

b) The verb phaa 'to escort, to take' normally has sentence complements as indicated in the following:

(1)	kháw	phaa...				
(2)			raw	paj...		
(3)			raw		duu	talàat náam
	kháw	phaa	raw	paj	duu	talàat náam

'He escorted us to (go see) the Floating Market.'

phaa is used when referring to human beings. When objects are referred to aw 'to take,' is used. When the direction of the action is away from the speaker paj is used with phaa or aw; when it is toward the speaker, maa.

Observe the following construction with aw:

(1)	kháw	aw	ŋəən		
(2)			ŋəən	maa...	
(3)	kháw				sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ
	kháw	aw	ŋəən	maa	sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ

'He brought money for buying things.'

On occasion Thai speakers may use aw... paj/maa instead of phaa... paj/maa when referring to human beings.

c) When the Verb Phrase maa naan lɛ́ɛw is added to a sentence, it indicates that the action referred to in the sentence has been in process for a long period of time and is still going on. (See 23.2.)

SENTENCE			+	maa	naan	lɛ́ɛw
phǒm	jàak	phóp	khun	maa	naan	lɛ́ɛw
(I	want	meet	you	come	long	time already)

'I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.'

21.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan aŋkhaan	Tuesday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan sùk	Friday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship

b) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. wanníi pen wancan	wanníi wan araj	wan can
	phrûŋníi lâ	wan aŋkhaan
	mŷawaanníi lâ	wan aathít
Today is Monday.	What day is it?	Monday.
	Tomorrow?	Sunday.
	Yesterday?	Sunday.

2.	mŷawaanníi pen wansǎw	wanníi wan araj	wan aathít
		phrûŋníi lâ	wan can
		mŷawaanníi lâ	wan sǎw
		lɛ́ɛw maryynníi lâ	wan aŋkhaan
	Yesterday was Saturday.	What day is today?	Sunday.
		Tomorrow?	Monday.
		Yesterday?	Saturday.
		The day after tomorrow?	Tuesday.
3.	phrûŋníi pen wan phárýhàt	wanníi wan araj	wan phút
		mŷawaanníi lâ	wan aŋkhaan
		phrûŋníi lâ	wan phrýhàt
		lɛ́ɛw maryynníi lâ	wan sùk
	Tomorrow is Thursday.	What is today?	Wednesday.
		Yesterday?	Tuesday.
		Tomorrow?	Thursday.
		And the day after tomorrow?	Friday.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw chuan phǒm paj thîaw talàat nám
   He invited me to go to the Floating Market.

2. kháw chuan phǒm paj thamŋaan kàp kháw
   He asked me to go work for him.

3. phǒm chuan kháw khuj ryâŋ myaŋthaj
   I invited him to converse about Thailand.

4. phanrajaa khun chuan phanrajaa phǒm paj sýykhɔ̌ɔŋ phrûŋníi
   Your wife asked my wife to go shopping tomorrow.

5. phyân phǒm chuan phǒm paj sýy bâan klâj klâj ka kháw

   My friend tried to talk me into buying a house near him.

6. kháw chuan phǒm thaan lâw thîi bâan

   He invited me to have a drink at his house.

7. phǒm ca chuan phyânphyân paj thaan khâaw thîi bâan

   I'm going to invite some friends to eat at my house.

d) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	phǒm jàak paj maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to go for a long time.
1. phóp khun	phǒm jàak phóp khun maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.
2. hěn kháw	phǒm jàak hěn kháw maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to see her for a long time.
3. thǎam khun	phǒm jàak thǎam khun maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to ask you (that) for a long time.
4. bɔ̀ɔk kháw	phǒm jàak bɔ̀ɔk kháw maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to tell him (that) for a long time.
5. phûut rŷaŋníi kàp khun	phǒm jàak ca phûut ryâŋníi ka khun maa naan lέεw I have been wanting to talk about this matter with you for a long time.

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question		Response	
1.	paj jaŋŋaj	'How are you going?'	paj rótmee	By bus.
2.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rótjon	By car.
3.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rótfaj	By train.
4.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rót thɛ́ɛksîi	By taxi.
5.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rya	By boat.
6.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rya khrŷaŋ } bin	By plane.
7.	paj jaŋŋaj		paj rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ	By samlor.

f) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	rót	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót
2.	rót thɛ́ɛksǐi	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót thɛ́ɛksîi
3.	rótfaj	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótfaj
4.	khrŷanbin	paj jaŋŋaj	paj khrŷaŋbin
5.	rya phŷan	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rya
6.	rótmee	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rótmee
7.	rót	paj jaŋŋaj	paj rót phŷan
8.	rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ	paj jaŋŋaj	paj sǎamlɔ́ɔ

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question		Response	
1.	paj jaŋŋaj	'How are you going?'	nâŋ rót paj	By car.
2.	paj jaŋŋaj		nâŋ rótmee paj	By bus.
3.	paj jaŋŋaj		nâŋ rót thɛ́ɛksîi	By taxi.
4.	paj jaŋŋaj		khàp rót paj	Drive (a car).
5.	paj jaŋŋaj		nâŋ rya paj	By boat.
6.	paj jaŋŋaj		bin paj	Fly.
7.	paj jaŋŋaj		thìip càkrajaan paj	Ride a bicycle.

h) Response Drill

	Cue	Question	Response
1.	nâŋ rót	paj jaŋŋaj	nâŋ rót paj
2.	nâŋ rótmee	paj jaŋŋaj	nâŋ rótmee paj
3.	nâŋ thɛ́ɛksîi	paj jaŋŋaj	nâŋ thɛ́ɛksîi paj
4.	khàp rót	paj jaŋŋaj	khàp rót paj
5.	nâŋ rya	paj jaŋŋaj	nâŋ rya paj
6.	bin	paj jaŋŋaj	bin paj
7.	thìip càkkrajaan	paj jaŋŋaj	thìip càkkrajaan paj

i) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. A: cháaw cháaw, khun paj thamŋaan jaŋŋaj
How do you go to work mornings?

B: phǒm khàp rót paj
I drive.

2. A: phanrajaa khɔ̌ɔŋ khun paj thamŋaan jaŋŋaj
How does your wife go to work?

B: phǒm paj sòŋ kháw
I take her.

3. A: lûuksǎaw khɔ̌ɔŋ khun paj rooŋrian jaŋŋaj
How does your daughter go to school?

B: kháw paj rót phyân
She goes in a friend's car.

4. A: phyân khun khonnán paj (ajútthajaa) jaŋŋaj
How does that friend of yours go to Ayuthaya?

B: kháw nâŋ rya paj.
By boat.

5. A: naaj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun ca paj ameerikaa jaŋŋaj
How is your boss going to America?

B: kháw ca bin paj
He'll fly.

6. A: thammadaa, khun maa rooŋrian jaŋŋaj
How do you usually come to school?

B: phǒm dəən maa.
I walk.

7. A: phyân khɔ̌ɔŋkhun maa rooŋrian jaŋŋaj
How does your friend come to school?

B: kháw maa rótmee.
By bus.

8. A: khun cɔɔn maa rooŋrian jaŋŋaj
How does John come to school?

B: kháw thìip càkkrajaan maa
He rides a bike.

j) Response Drill

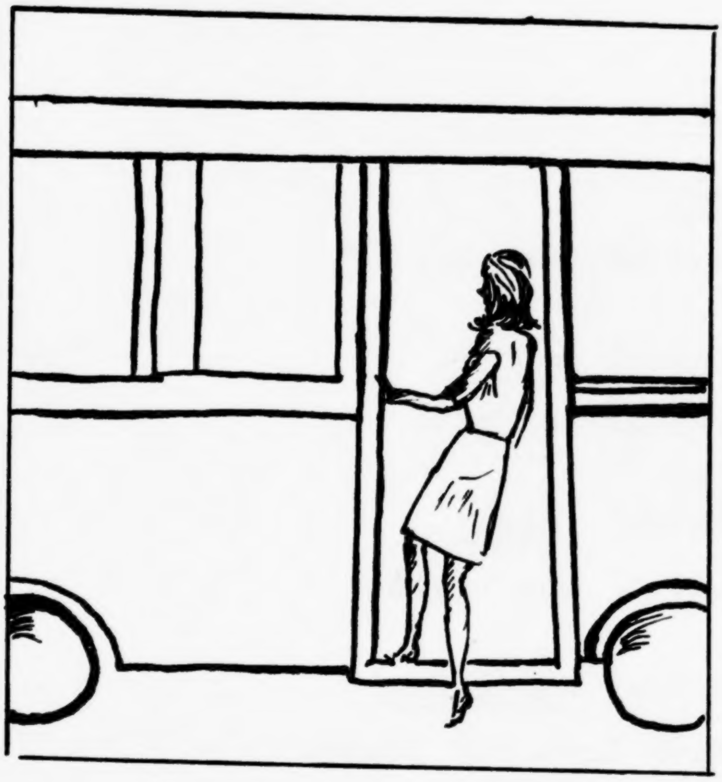
Cue	Question	Response
1. khun cɔɔn thìip càkkrajaan maa rooŋrian	khun cɔɔn maa rooŋrian jaŋŋaj How did John come to school?	kháw thìip càkkrajaan maa He rode a bike.
2. phanrajaa khun cim maa sɔ̀ŋ sǎamii kháw thúkwan	khun cim maa rooŋrian jaŋŋaj How did Jim come to school?	phanrajaa kháw maa sɔ̀ŋ His wife brought him.
3. khun sǔnthɔɔn bin paj ameerikaa	khun sǔnthɔɔn paj jaŋŋaj How did Mr. Sunthorn go?	kháw { bin paj paj khrŷaŋbin He flew.
4. khun thɔɔm nâŋ rya paj júròop	khun thɔɔm paj jaŋŋaj How did Tom go?	kháw { nâŋ rya paj paj rya He went by boat.

5.	khun praphâat nâŋ rótmee paj thamŋaan	khun praphâat paj thamŋaan jaŋŋaj How did Prapas go to work?	kháw { nâŋ rótmee paj paj rótmee By bus.
6.	chaawnaa dəən paj naa	chaawnaa paj naa jaŋŋaj How did the farmer to the field?	kháw dəən paj He walked.
7.	phanrajaa kháw nâŋ sǎamlɔ́ɔ paj talàat	phanrajaa kháw paj talàat jaŋŋaj How did his wife go to the market?	kháw { paj sǎamlɔ́ɔ nâŋ rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ paj By samlor.

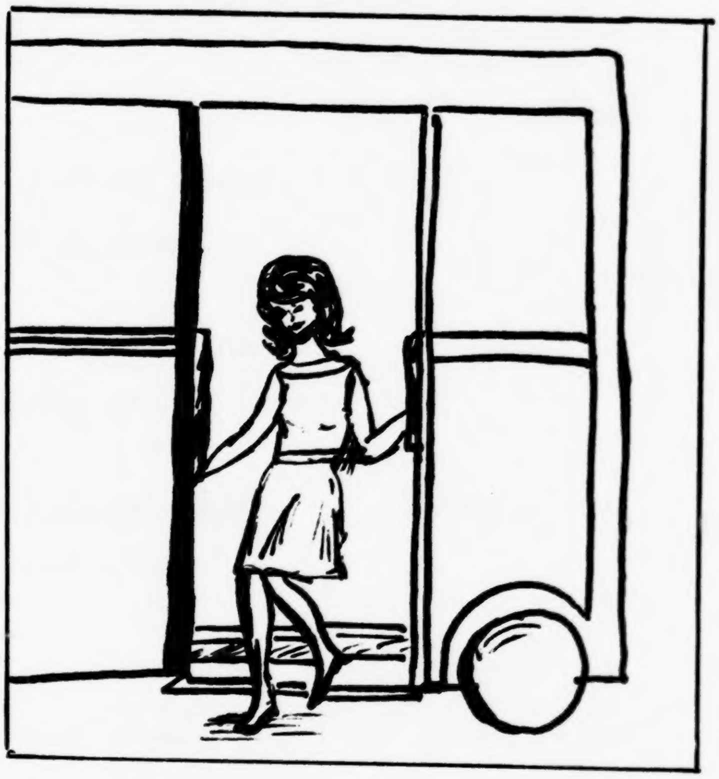
k) Substitution Drill (Use Chart I with this Drill.)

	Cue	Pattern
		kháw kamlaŋ khŷn rót He's getting in (to) the car.
1.	rótmee	kháw kamlaŋ khŷn rótmee He's boarding the bus.
2.	rótfaj	kháw kamlaŋ khŷn rótfaj. He's boarding the train.
3.	khrŷaŋbin	kháw kamlaŋ khŷn khrŷaŋbin He's boarding the plane..
4.	rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ	kháw kamlaŋ khŷn rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ He's getting into the samlor.

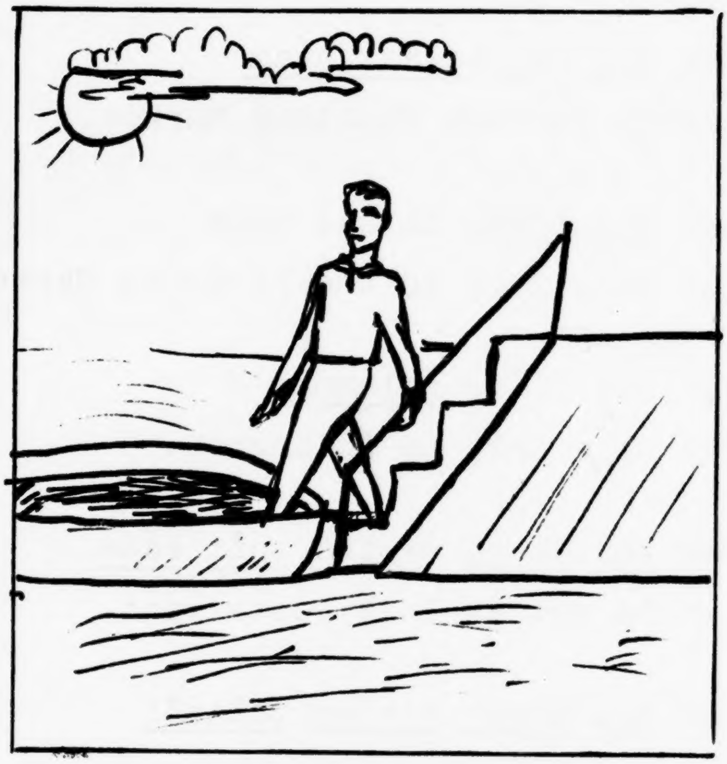
CHART I



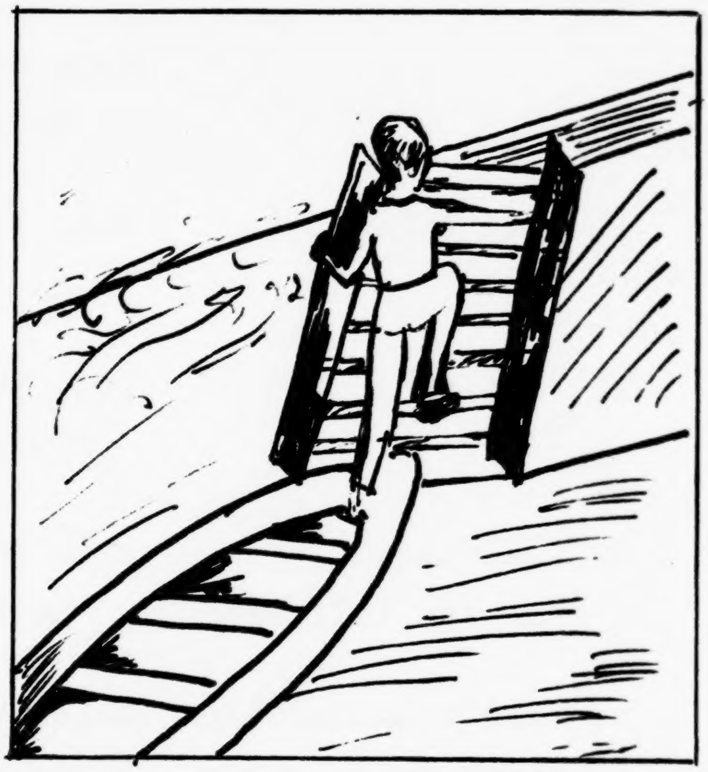
kháw kamlaŋ khŷn rót



kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rót



kháw kamlaŋ loŋ rya



kháw kamlaŋ khŷn càak rya

l) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw kamlaŋ loŋ rót He's getting out of the car.
1. rótmee	kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rótmee. He's getting out of the bus.
2. rótfaj	kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rótfaj He's getting out of the train.
3. khryâŋbin	kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) khryâŋbin He's disembarking from the plane.

m) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw phaa raw paj duu talàat náam He took us to see the Floating Market.
1. paj thîaw	kháw phaa raw paj thîaw talàat náam He took us on a trip to the Floating Market.
2. chiaŋmàj	kháw phaa raw paj thîaw chiaŋmàj He took us on a trip to Chiangmai.
3. paj thaan aahǎan thîi ráan	kháw phaa raw paj thaan aahǎan thîi ráan He took us to eat at that restaurant.
4. maa thaan aahǎan thîinîi	kháw phaa raw maa thaan aahǎan thîinîi He took us to eat here.

5.	sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw phaa raw maa sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi He took us shopping here.
6.	maa loŋ rya	kháw phaa raw maa loŋ rya thîinîi He took us into the boat.
7.	maa sòŋ	kháw phaa raw maa sòŋ thîinîi He took us here.

n) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		kháw aw náŋsy̌y paj thîinôon He took the books over there.
1.	kâwîi	kháw aw kâwîi paj thîinôon He took the chairs over there.
2.	hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn	kháw aw kâwîi paj hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn He took the chairs into the bedroom.
3.	náŋsy̌y	kháw aw náŋsy̌y paj hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn He took the books into the bedrooms.
4.	bâan	kháw aw náŋsy̌y paj bâan He took the books home.
5.	klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup	kháw aw klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup paj bâan He took the camera home.
6.	thîi ráan	kháw aw klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup paj thîi ráan He took the camera to the shop.

o) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw aw náŋsy̌y maa thîinîi He brought the books here.
1. kâwîi	kháw aw kâwîi maa thîinîi He brought the chairs here.
2. hɔ̂ŋníi	kháw aw kâwîi maa hɔ̂ŋníi He brought the chairs into this room.
3. aahǎan	kháw aw aahǎan maa hɔ̂ŋníi He brought the food into this room.
4. klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup	kháw aw klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup maa hɔ̂ŋníi He brought a camera into this room.

p) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw aw aahǎan maa thaan (thîinîi) He brought food to eat here.
1. ŋəən, sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw aw ŋəən maa sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ He brought money for shopping.
2. náŋsy̌y, àan	kháw aw náŋsy̌y maa àan He brought books to read.
3. rót, kɛ̂ɛ	kháw aw rót maa kɛ̂ɛ He brought cars to be repaired.

4. klɔ̂ŋthàaj rûup, thàaj rûup — kháw aw klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup maa thàaj rûup
He brought a camera for picture taking.

5. pàakaa, khǐan — kháw aw pàakaa maa khǐan
He brought a pen to write with.

Change thîinîi to thîinôon and repeat the drill using paj instead of maa.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	mii thúrá araj lə̌	Do you have something in mind?
2.	mii khamthǎam araj máj	Any questions?
3.	mii khwaamhěn araj máj	Any comments?
4.	rúucàk khraj máj	Recognize anybody?
5.	wanjùt, ca paj nǎj rýplàaw	Are you going anywhere this holiday?
6.	ca kin araj máj	Would you like something to eat?

21.5 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES

Listen to the episodes and answer the questions:

a) khun cɔɔn nâŋ rya paj ajútthajaa . kháw loŋ thîi thâa phrácan . kháw khŷn rya thîi talàat ajútthajaa

1. khun cɔɔn paj nǎj
2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
3. kháw loŋ rya thîinǎj
4. kháw khŷn rya thîinǎj

b) míssís brawn nâŋ thɛ́ɛksîi paj pratuunáam . kháw khŷn rót thîi sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ . kháw loŋ rót thîi nâa juusɔ̂ɔm

1. míssís brawn paj nǎj
2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
3. kháw khŷn rót thîinǎj
4. kháw loŋ rót thîinǎj

c) místə samít paj bâan khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ klâj klâj kàp bɔ́ssatân . kháw khŷn khrŷaŋbin thîi wɔɔchiŋtân . kháw loŋ thîi bɔ́ssatân

1. místə samít paj nǎj
2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
3. kháw khŷn khrŷaŋbin thîinǎj
4. kháw loŋ thîinǎj

21.6 EXERCISES

Using the format of the basic dialog as a guide plan an excursion to some point of interest. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Date and time of the trip,
2. The place,
3. The means of conveyance,
4. The persons included,
5. The arrangements for meeting beforehand,
6. What should be taken along, and
7. Any other relevant factors (weather conditions, etc.)

21.7 VOCABULARY

ookàat (khráŋ)	chance
bin	to fly
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
dooj	by (means of transportation)
kɛ̂ɛ	to repair, correct
khuj	to converse
klɔ̂ŋthaajrûup (an)	camera
lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
míssís	Mrs.
místə	Mr.
naaj (khon)	boss
naan	to be long (in time)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan '('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phaa... paj phaa... maa	to take, or escort someone
phɔɔ	to be enough, sufficient
rim (rim)	edge, rim
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rót sǎamlɔ́ɔ (khan)	samlor
rót túk túk	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rya bin khrŷaŋ bin (lam, khrŷaŋ)	airplane
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi

thâa (thâa, hɛ̀ŋ)	port, harbor
thàajrûup	to take a picture
thɛ́ɛksîi (khan)	taxi
thiidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thìip	to ride, pedal
thammadaa	usually, normally
troŋ { ka- kàp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
wan aŋkhaan	Tuesday
wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan sùk	Friday
wâaŋ	to be free, not busy, not occupied

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

22.0 BASIC DIALOG: An American Contacts a Thai Friend

A Voice:	hânloo, thîinîi kâaw nỳŋ thoo pɛ̀ɛt sǔun há	Hello, this is 91280.
David:	khɔ̌ɔ phûut kakhun sǔnthɔɔn nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj há	Could I speak with Mr. Sunthorn?
Voice:	rɔɔ dǐaw nahá	Just a minute.
Sunthorn:	sǔnthɔɔn phûut khráp	Sunthorn speaking.
David:	sawàtdii khráp phǒm, deewít, phûut khráp cam phǒm dâj máj	Hello, It's David speaking. Remember me?
Sunthɔɔn:	ɔ̂ɔ, khun deewít lə̌ə maa thy̌ŋ tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj há	Oh, it's David! When did you get here?
David:	mŷa wansùk thîi lɛ́ɛw	Last Friday.
Sunthorn:	khun ɔ̀ɔk càak ameerikaa mŷaràj há	When did you leave America?
David:	mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̀ɔn há raaw wanthîi kâaw kumphaa	Two months ago. Around February the ninth.
Sunthorn:	weelaaníi khun phák thîinǎj há	Where are you staying?
David:	thîi hooten imperîan troŋ sɔɔj rûamrýdii	At the Imperial Hotel, On Ruam Rudee Lane.

Sunthorn:	jenníi wâaŋ máj há	Are you free this evening?
	jàak ca chəən maa thaan	I'd like to invite you to
	khâaw thîi bâan	eat at my house.
David:	jàa rópkuan ləj há	Don't put yourself out.
Sunthorn:	mâj rópkuan rɔk há	No trouble at all.
	phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk	I'd like you to know where
	bâan phǒm dûaj	my house is.
David:	khɔ̀pkhun mâak há	Thanks very much.
	bâan khun jùu thîinǎj lahá	Where is your house?
	phǒm paj mâj thùuk	I don't know how to get there.
Sunthorn:	phǒm ca paj ráp khun	I'll pick you up
	thîi hooten	at the hotel.
	raaw sák hòk mooŋ	Around 6:30, O.K.?
	khrŷŋ, nahá	
David:	tòk loŋ há	Right.
	phǒm ca khɔɔj jùu nâa	I'll wait for you in front
	hooten	of the hotel.

22.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

a) There are three ways to express the meaning of 'ago' in Thai:

$$(\text{mŷa} +)\quad \text{Period of Time} + \left\{\begin{array}{l}\underline{\text{kɔ̀ɔn}}\\ \underline{\text{thîi}}\ \underline{\text{lɛ́ɛw}}\\ \underline{\text{maa}}\ \underline{\text{lɛ́ɛw}}\end{array}\right.$$

Example: (mŷa) sǎam aathít kɔ̀ɔn
(mŷa) sǎam aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw 'three weeks ago'
(mŷa) sǎam aathít maa lɛ́ɛw

b) tâŋtɛ̀ɛ 'since, from (such and such time) may be used with the time expressions above:

tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̀ɔn 'since two months ago'

It may also be used with particular points in time, as in

tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) (dyan) phrýtsacikaa 'Since November'

c) khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ (ค.ศ.) is an abbreviation for khrít sàkàràat
(A.D. or Christian Era).

phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ (พ.ศ.) is an abbreviation of phútthá sàkàràat
(B.E. or Buddhist Era).

22.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The following constructions are used in asking and giving the date:

Q: wanníi (pen) wan thîi	thâwràj
A: wanníi (pen) wan thîi	pɛ̀ɛt (meesǎa [jon])
'What day of the month is it? It's the eighth (of April)'	

b) The verb jàak 'want to, would like' normally has a sentence as a complement.

When the subject of the main verb (jàak) and of its complement are the same, the subject of the complement does not occur.

A:	phǒm jàak		'I would like ...'
B:	phǒm	phóp khun	'I meet you.'
A/B:	phǒm jàak	phóp khun	'I would like to meet you.'

When the subject of the main verb and of the complement are different and the meaning is causative (i.e. 'to have or cause someone to do something'), both subjects occur and hâj occurs after jàak.

A:	phǒm jàak ...		'I would like ...'
B:		kháw phóp khun	'He meets you.'
A/B:	phǒm jàak hâj	kháw phóp khun	'I would like him to meet you.'

22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. sìi	wanníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date today?	wanníi wanthîi sìi It's the fourth.
2. hâa	phrûŋníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date tomorrow?	phrûŋníi wanthîi hâa It's the fifth.
3. sǎam	mŷawaanníi wanthîi thâwraj What was the date yesterday.	mŷawaanníi wanthîi sǎam It was the third.
4. hòk	maryynníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthîi hòk It's the sixth.
5. sìp sìi	wanníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date today?	wanníi wanthîi sìp sìi It's the fourteenth.
6. sìp hâa	phrûŋníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date tomorrow.	phrûŋníi wanthîi sìp hâa It's the fifteenth.
7. sìp hòk	maryynníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthîi sìp hòk It's the sixteehth.
8. sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ	waansyyn(níi) wanthîi thâwraj What was the day before yesterday?	waansyynníi wanthîi sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ It was the twelfth.

b) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	mókkaraakhom, rɛ̂ɛk	dyan mókkaraa khom[1] pen dyan rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ pii January is the first month of the year.
2.	kumphaaphan, sɔ̌ɔŋ	dyan kumphaaphan pen dyan thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ pii February is the second month of the year.
3.	miinaakhom, sǎam	dyan miinaakhom pen dyan thîi sǎam khɔ̌ɔŋ pii March is the third month of the year.
4.	meesǎajon, sìi	dyan meesǎajon pen dyan thîi sìi khɔ̌ɔŋ pii April is the fourth month of the year.
5.	phrýtsaphaakhom, hâa	dyan phrýtsaphaakhom pen dyan thîi hâa khɔ̌ɔŋ pii May is the fifth month of the year.
6.	míthunaajon, hòk	dyan míthunaajon pen dyan thîi hòk khɔ̌ɔŋ pii June is the sixth month of the year.

---

[1] Months having 31 days end in khom; those having 30 end with jon. Only February ends in phan. In spoken Thai these endings are usually omitted.

7.	karákkadaakhom, cèt	sǐŋhǎakhom pen dyan thîipɛ̀ɛt khɔ̌ɔŋ pii August is the eighth month of the year.
8.	kanjaajon, kâaw	kanjaajon pen dyan thîi kâaw khɔ̌ɔŋ pii September is the ninth month of the year.
9.	tulaakhom, sìp	tulaakhom pen dyan thîi sìp khɔ̌ɔŋ pii October is the tenth month of the year.
10.	phrýt(sa) cikaajon, sìp-èt	phrýtsacikaajon pen dyan thîi sìp-èt khɔ̌ɔŋ pii November is the eleventh month of the year.
11.	thanwaakhom, sùt tháaj	thanwaakhom pen dyan sùt tháaj khɔ̌ɔŋ pii December is the last month of the year.

c) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	dyan araj pen dyan thîisɔ̌ɔŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) kumphaa(phan)
2.	dyan araj pen dyan rɛ̂ɛk khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) mókkaraa(khom)
3.	dyan araj pen dyan sùt tháaj khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) thanwaa(khom)
4.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi pɛ̀ɛt khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) sǐŋhǎa(khom)
5.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi hâa khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) phrýtsaphaa(khom)
6.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi sǎam khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) minaa(khom)

7.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi sìp-èt khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) phrýt(sa) cikaa(jon)
8.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi cèt khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) karákkadaa(khom)
9.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi hòk khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) míthunaa(jon)
10.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi sìp khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) tulaa(khom)
11.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi sìi khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) meesǎa(jon)
12.	dyan araj pen dyan thîi kâaw khɔ̌ɔŋ pii	(dyan) kanjaa(jon)

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (YEARS)

I.	1.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan cèt rɔ́ɔj cèt sìp hòk	1776	A.D.
	2.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan cèt rɔ́ɔj pɛ̀ɛt sìp kâaw	1789	
	3.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan pɛ̀ɛt rɔ́ɔj hòk sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ	1862	
	4.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan pɛ̀ɛt rɔ́ɔj hòk sìp hâa	1865	
	5.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâw rɔ́ɔj sìi sìp	1940	
	6.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâw rɔ́ɔj sìi sìp pɛ̀ɛt	1948	
	7.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâw rɔ́ɔj hâa sìp sìi	1954	
	8.	khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâw rɔ́ɔj hòk sìp hòk	1966	
II.	1.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan sǎam rɔ́ɔj sìp	2310	B.E.
	2.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan sǎam rɔ́ɔj jîi sìp hâa	2325	
	3.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan sìi rɔ́ɔj cèt sìp hâa	2475	
	4.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan sìi rɔ́ɔj kâw sìp sìi	2494	
	5.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj	2500	
	6.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj nỳŋ	2501	
	7.	phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj kâaw	2509	

e) Response Drill (Use actual dates in the responses below)

	Question	Response
1.	pii níi pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (A.D.) is this?	pii níi pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòksìp kâaw It's 1969.
2.	pii nâa pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (A.D.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj cèt-sìp It's 1970.
3.	pii thîiléɛw pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (A.D.) was last year?	pii thîi léɛw pen pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòksìp pɛ̀ɛt It was 1968.
4.	pii níi pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (B.E.) is this?	pii níi pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ It's 2512. (A.D. 1969)
5.	pii nâa pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (B.E.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj sìp sǎam It's 2513.
6.	pii thîi léɛw pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj What year (B.E.) was last year?	pii thîiléɛw pen pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ hâa rɔ́ɔj sìp-èt It was 2511.

f) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
June 1, 1960	wanthîi nỳŋ míthunajon khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòk-sìp
July 14, 1966	wanthîi sìp sìi karákadaakhom khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòk-sìp hòk
February 23, 1969	wanthîi jîi-sìp sǎam kumphaaphan khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòk-sìp kâaw
May 20, B.E. 2509	wanthîi jîi-sìp phrýtsaphaakhom phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâarɔ́ɔj kâaw
December 5, B.E. 2510	wanthîi hâa thanwaakhom phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔj phan hâa rɔ́ɔj sìp

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mŷa sǎam wan kɔ̀ɔn '3 days ago'
   mŷa sǎam wan thîi lɛ́ɛw
   mŷa sǎam wan maa lɛ́ɛw

2. mŷa sìp wan kɔ̀ɔn '10 days ago'
   mŷa sìp wan thîi lɛ́ɛw
   mŷa sìp wan maa lɛ́ɛw

3. mŷa sǎam aathít kɔ̀ɔn '3 weeks ago'
   mŷa sǎam aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw
   mŷa sǎam aathít maa lɛ́ɛw

4. mŷa hâa dyan kɔ̀ɔn '5 months ago'
mŷa hâa dyan thîi lɛ́ɛw
mŷa hâa dyan maa lɛ́ɛw

5. mŷa hòk pii kɔ̀ɔn '6 years ago'
mŷa hòk pii thîi lɛ́ɛw
mŷa hòk pii maa lɛ́ɛw

h) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan	raw rə̂əm rian phaasǎathaj mŷaràj When did we start studying Thai?	raw rə̂əm rian phaasâathaj mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̀ɔn We started studying Thai two months ago.
2. hâa pii	kháw khəəj jùu myaŋthaj mŷaràj When did he live in Thailand?	kháw khəəj jùu myaŋthaj mŷa hâa pii kɔ̀ɔn He lived in Thailand five years ago.
3. sǎam dyan	kháw klàp paj myaŋ thaj mŷaràj When did he return to Thailand?	kháw klàp paj myaŋ thaj mŷa sǎam dyan kɔ̀ɔn He returned to Thailand three months ago.
4. sǎam sìi wan	khun phóp kháw mŷaràj When did you meet him?	phǒm phóp kháw mŷa sǎam sìi wan kɔ̀ɔn I met him three or four days ago.

NOTE: Repeat the drill using ...thîi lɛ́ɛw and once more using ...maa lɛ́ɛw in place of kɔ̀ɔn

1) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. hɔ̂ŋsamùt	mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ kɔ̀ɔn khun jùu thîinǎj Where were you two hours ago?	mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ kɔ̀ɔn, phǒm jùu naj hɔ̂ŋsamùt Two hours ago I was at the library.
2. duu náŋsy̌y	mŷa jîi-sìp naathii maa lɛ́ɛw, khun tham araj What were you doing ten minutes ago?	mŷa jîi-sìp naathii maa lɛ́ɛw, phǒm duu náŋsy̌y Ten minutes ago I was studying.
3. sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa	mŷa sǎam aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw khun paj nǎj Where did you go three weeks ago?	mŷa sǎam aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw phǒm paj sɔ̌ŋkhlǎa Three weeks ago I went to Songkla.
4. tham râatchakaan	mŷa cèt pii kɔ̀ɔn, kháw thamŋaan araj khráp Seven years ago what was he doing?	mŷa cèt pii kɔ̀ɔn, kháw tham râatchakaan Seven years ago he was in government service.
5. rian náŋsy̌y thîi kruŋthêep	mŷa hòk pii kɔ̀ɔn, khun rian náŋsy̌y thîi nǎj Where were you studying (going to school) six years ago.	mŷa hòk pii kɔ̀ɔn, phǒm rian náŋsy̌y thîi kruŋthêep I was going to school in Bangkok six years ago.

6. jùu thîi myaŋ bɔ́ɔsatân	mŷa pɛ̀ɛt pii thîi lɛ́ɛw, khun jùu thîi nǎj Where were you living eight years ago?	mŷa pɛ̀ɛt pii thîi lɛ́ɛw phom jùu thîi myaŋ bɔ́ɔssatân Eight years ago I was living in Boston.

j) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. mŷa dyan phrýtsacikaa	khun maa thýŋ nîi tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long have you been here?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) dyan phrýtsacikaa Since November.
2. mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̀ɔn	khun maa thýŋ nîi tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj? How long have you been here?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̀ɔn Since two months ago.
3. mŷa sǎam pii maa lɛ́ɛw	khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long have you been living in Thailand?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) sǎam pii maa lɛ̂ɛw Since three years ago.
4. mŷa pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj	khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long have you been living in Thailand?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ (mŷa) pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâa rɔ́ɔj Since B.E. 2500.

5.	mŷa dyan thanwaa pii thîilɛ́ɛw	khun maa jùu thîinîi tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long have you been living here?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷa dyan thanwaa pii thîilɛ́ɛw Since last December.
6.	mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ kɔ̀ɔn	kháw paj tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long has he been gone?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ kɔ̀ɔn Since two hours ago.
7.	mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw	kháw paj tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷaràj How long has he been gone?	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ mŷa sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít thîi lɛ́ɛw Since two weeks ago.

k) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		jàak ca chəən maa thaan khâaw thîi bâan
1.	thîinîi	jàak ca chəən maa thaan khâaw thîinîi I'd like to invite you to eat here.
2.	thîaw	jàak ca chəən maa thîaw thîinîi I'd like to invite you to go out here.
3.	sɔ̌ɔn	jàak ca chəən maa sɔ̌ɔn thîinîi I'd like to invite you to come teach here.
4.	wâaj nám	jàak ca chəən maa wâaj nám thîinîi I'd like to invite you to go swimming here.
5.	phóp kháw	jàak ca chəən maa phóp kháw thîinîi I'd like to invite you to meet him here.

l) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	jàak ca chəən paj than khâaw thîi bâan
1. thîi ráan	jàak ca chəən paj thaan khâaw thîi ráan
2. thîi nân	jàak ca chəən paj thaan khâaw thîi nân
3. sɔ̌ɔn	jàak ca chəən paj sɔ̌ɔn thîinân
4. phóp kháw	jàak ca chəən paj phóp kháw thîinân

m) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	phǒm jàak phóp khun
1. kháw jàak	kháw jàak phóp khun
2. rúucàk khun	kháw jàak rúucàk khun
3. paj myaŋthaj	kháw jàak paj myaŋthaj
4. pen mɔ̌ɔ	kháw jàak pen mɔ̌ɔ
5. sýy rót	kháw jàak sýy rót
6. khàp rót pen	kháw jàak khàp rót pen
7. phǒm	phǒm jàak kháp rót pen
8. phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	phǒm jàak phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj

n) Sentence Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	phǒm jàak... khun rúucàk bâan phǒm	phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan phǒm I'd like for you to know where my house is.
2.	phǒm jàak... khun phûut phaasǎathaj kan	phǒm jàak hâj khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kan I'd like to have you speak Thai together.
3.	khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm jàak... phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ	khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm jàak hâj phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ My father would have liked for me to become a doctor.
4.	phǒm jàak... khun àan náŋsy̌y lêm níi	phǒm jàak hâj khun àan náŋsy̌y lêm níi I'd like to have you read this book.
5.	phɔ̂ɔmɛ̂ɛ thúk khon jàak... lûuklûuk rian rooŋrian diidii	phɔ̂ɔmɛ̂ɛ thúk khon jàak hâj lûuklûuk rian rooŋrian dii dii All parents would like to have their children go to good schools.

o) Sentence Combination Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	phǒm jàak... phǒm rúucàk kháw	phǒm jàak rúucàk kháw I'd like to meet him.
2.	phǒm mâj jàak kháw maa hǎa phǒm thîinîi	phǒm mâj jàak hâj kháw maa hǎa phǒm thîinîi I wouldn't like to have him come to see me here.
3.	phǒm jàak... phanrajaa phǒm khàp rót pen	phǒm jàak hâj phanrajaa phǒm khàp rót pen I'd like to have my wife able to drive a car.
4.	phǒm mâj jàak... phǒm jùu kruŋthêep	phǒm mâj jàak jùu kruŋthêep I wouldn't like to live in Bangkok.
5.	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ phǒm jàak... phǒm tham râatchakaan	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ phǒm jàak hâj phǒm tham ráatchakaan My parents would like me to be a government employee.

p) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. mɔ̌ɔ	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun jàak hâj khun pen khruu máj Would your father like for you to be a teacher?	mâj jàak khráp, khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm jàak hâj phǒm pen mɔ̌ɔ No, he wouldn't. My father would like for me to be a doctor.
2. tàaŋcaŋwàt	khun jàak jùu kruŋthêep máj Would you like to live in Bangkok?	mâj jàak khráp, phǒm jàak jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt No, I wouldn't. I'd like to live in the provinces.
3. eesia	khun jàak paj áafarikaa máj Would you like to go to Africa?	mâj jàak khráp, phǒm jàak paj eesia No, I wouldn't. I'd like to go to Asia.
4. aahǎan thaj	khun jàak thaan aahǎan faràŋ máj Would you like to eat foreign food?	mâj jàak khráp, phǒm jàak thaan aahǎan thaj No, I wouldn't. I'd like to eat Thai food.
5. thɔɔm	khun jàak hâj kháw rîak khun wâa mísatə braawn máj Would you like to have him call you Mr. Brown?	mâj jàak khráp, phǒm jàak hâj kháw rîak phǒm wâa thɔɔm No, I wouldn't.. I'd like to have him call me Tom.

6. jùu kabâan	khun jàak hâj phanrajaa khun thamŋaan nɔ̂ɔk bâan máj	mâj jàak khráp, phǒm jàak hâj kháw jùu kabâan
	Would you like to have your wife work (outside)?	No, I wouldn't. I would like to have her stay at home.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Suppose today is Thursday. Focus your attention on 'wannií (today)' and notice what the days in the past weeks and the future weeks are called. Repeat the words in the left column after the instructor.

	can	Monday of last week
	aŋkhaan	Tuesday of last week
aathít	phút	Wednesday of last week
thiîlεέw	phrýhàt	Thursday of last week
Last week	sùk	Friday of last week
	sǎw	Saturday of last week
	aathít	Sunday of last week

	can	mŷa wan can nií		Last Monday
	aŋkhaan	mŷa wan aŋkhaan nií		Last Tuesday
	phút	mŷa waannií		Yesterday
aathítnií	phrýhàt	wannií		Today
This week	sùk	phrûŋ nií		Tomorrow
	sǎw	maryynníi	(or)	This coming Sunday
		wan sǎw	níi	This Saturday
			thîi ca thyŋ níi	
	aathít	wan aathít	níi	This Sunday
			thîi ca thyŋ níi	

	can	wan can nâa	Next Monday
		wan can thiî ca thy̌ŋ nií	This coming Monday
	aŋkhaan	wan aŋkhaan nâa	Next Tuesday
aathít	phút	wan phút nâa	Next Wednesday
nâa	phrýhàt	wan phrýhàt nâa	Next Thursday
Next	sùk	wan sùk nâa	Friday of Next week
week	sǎw	wan sǎw nâa	Saturday of next week
	aathít	wan aathít nâa	Sunday of next week

22.4 EXERCISES

a) Assume that you have just arrived in Thailand. Call up your friend, Mr. Prasert. He invites you to dinner at his house so that you can meet his wife.

(Use the approximate date of your arrival in Thailand as a basis for responses.)

b) The instructor points at various dates on the calendar asks the students what the date is. (This should be continued until all students can give any date in the year readily).

c) Student A asks Student B his birthdate. Student B responds with the correct information.

d) Student A asks Student B how long he has been doing various things (below are some examples). Student A responds with the correct information.

1. living in the Washington area (or some other area)
2. studying Thai
3. married
4. sitting here, etc.

e) The students question each other about things they have wanted to do in the past and whether or not other people wanted them to do these things. Below is a sample exchange:

A: mŷa sìp pii maa lɛ́ɛw phǒm jàak pen mɔ̌ɔ

B: khun phɔ̂ɔ jàak hâj khun pen mɔ̌ɔ rýplàaw

A: mâj jàak khráp . kháw jàak hâj phǒm pen khruu

A: Ten years ago I wanted to be a doctor.
B: Did your father want you to be a doctor?
A: No, he didn't. He wanted me to be a teacher.

22.5 VOCABULARY

áafarikaa (thawîip)	Africa (continent)
aathít	week
imphiirîan	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
cam... dâj	to remember
chûammoŋ	hour (60 minutes)
deewít	David
dyan	month
hanlǒo	Hello
jàak	to want to, would like to
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
kanjaa (jon)	September
karákkadaa(khom)	July
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khrítsàkàràat (khɔɔ sɔ̌ɔ)	Christian Era
kumphaa(phan)	February
ləəj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently

9

maa lɛ́ɛw	ago
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
meesǎa(jon)	April
miinaa(khom)	March
míthunaa(jon)	June
mókkaraa(khom)	January
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
-phan	ending for month of February
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phútthá sàkàràat (phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ)	Buddhist Era
rə̂əm	to start
rópkuan	to bother, trouble (someone)
rɔ, rɔ̀k, rɔk, rɔ̀ɔk, rɔɔk, rə-	particle often used with statement of negation
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
sǐŋhǎa(khom)	August
sǔnthɔɔn	Sunthorn (male first name)
sùttháaj	last
thîi lɛ́ɛw	ago
tâŋtɛ̀ɛ	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
thanwaa(khom)	December
thîi lɛ́ɛw	last
thùuk	to be right, correct
tòklɔŋ	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tulaa(khom)	October
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wanthîi	date

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

23.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation About Length of Residence

A:	khun jùu myaŋ thaj maa dâj kìi pii lɛ́ɛw	How long have you been living in Thailand?
B:	sɔ̌ɔŋ pìi kwàa lɛɛw khráp	More than two years.
A:	lɛ́ɛw phyân khun la khráp maa jùu naan lɛ́ɛw rɘ̌ə	And your friend? Has he been here long?
B:	kháw phɘ̂ŋ maa khráp	He just came.
A:	kháw ca jùu kìi pii khráp	How many years will he be (here)?
B:	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj sɔ̌ɔj pii, jàaŋ mâak sìi pii	At least two years. At most four years.
A:	thammaj kháw thýŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaŋŋan lakhráp	How is it that he speaks Thai so clearly?
B:	phrɔ́ kháw khəəj rian maa kɔ̀ɔn khráp	He studied it previously.
A:	thîinǎj khráp	Where?
B:	thîi ameerikaa	In America.
A:	kháw rian jùu naan thâwràj khráp	How long did he study?
B:	sìp dyan khráp	Ten months.

23.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) After constructions giving numerical amounts kwàa is translated as 'more than'. For example,

sɔ̌ɔŋ pii kwàa	'More than 2 years'
sìp lít kwàa	'More that 10 liters'

When used with bàat 'baht' (Thai currency), the position of kwàa is important, thus

	sìp bàat kwàa	means	'more than ten baht but less than eleven',
but	sìp kwàa bàat	means	'more than ten but less than twenty'.

b) phə̂ŋ 'just' occurs just before the main verb in the sentence and refers to the recent past.

kháw phə̂ŋ maa	'He just came.'

c) phûut thoorasàp means 'to talk on the telephone.'

23.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The verbs jùu, and maa may be used in conjunction with dâj and lɛ́ɛw to indicate whether (1) an activity is complete or incomplete, and (2) whether it lasted for a long or short period of time. When verbs are used in this manner, they may be called Aspect Particles.

1. When jùu is used as an aspect particle, it indicates that the activity referred to continued for a particular period of time. jùu does not itself indicate the time of an action but may be used in combination with time expressions as in the following example.

kháw ca rian náŋsy̌y jùu sɔ̌ɔŋ pii

'He'll be studying for 2 years (no more or less)'.

2. When maa... lɛ́ɛw occur together as aspect markers there is indication that the action originated in the past and is continuing into the present.

   kháw thamŋaan maa 2 pii lɛ́ɛw

   'He has been working for 2 years (and still is)'.

3. dâj + Time Expression refers only to the passage of a specific period of time; when it is followed by lɛ́ɛw, there is indication that the period of time referred to continues into the present; when used without time or aspect particles, it is interpreted as 'indefinite past time'.

kháw thamŋaan dâj 2 pii	'He worked for 2 years.'
kháw thamŋaan dâj 2 pii lɛ́ɛw	'He's been working for 2 years (and still is working)'.

In the chart below the use and meaning of jùu, dâj, maa, and lɛ́ɛw are illustrated:

MAIN SENTENCE	Aspect Particles and Time Expressions				Meaning
kháw thamŋaan	jùu		2 pii		Past Time; Specific Period of Time[1]
kháw thamŋaan	jùu	dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamŋaan		dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamŋaan	jùu	...	.....		Present Progressive[2]
kháw kamlaŋ thamŋaan	jùu	...	.....		
kháw thamŋaan	jùu maa		2 pii	lɛ́ɛw	Present Perfect[3]
kháw thamŋaan	jùu maa	dâj	2 pii	lɛ́ɛw[4]	
kháw thamŋaan		dâj	2 pii	lɛ́ɛw	
kháw ca thamŋaan	...	...	2 pii		Future[5]
kháw ca thamŋaan	jùu	...	2 pii		Future; Specific period of time

1. He worked (for) two years.
2. He is working.
3. He has been working...
4. He has been working... (focus on starting point)
5. He will be working two years.

Special note: If either maa or jùu occurs in the main sentence, it can not occur as a particle,

thus kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj dâj 2 pii lɛ́ɛw

(Two years have passed since he came to live in Thailand).
'He's been living in Thailand for 2 years.'

Neither maa dâj 2 pii lɛ́ɛw nor jùu dâj 2 pii lɛ́ɛw can occur after kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj.

b) thammaj 'why' may occur at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. Its position is determined by the expected answer, thus

1. thammaj is at the end of the sentence if the response is a Verb Phrase indicating purpose, thus

Q:	paj thammaj	'Why are you going?' (What is the purpose?)
A:	paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	'To shop.'

2. thammaj is at the beginning of the sentence if the response expected normally begins with phrɔ́ 'because', and provides an explanation as to why certain actions took place or why certain situations exist; thus

Q:	thammaj paj sýy thîinân	'Why did you buy there?'
	thammaj mâj sýy thîinîi	'Why not shop here?'
A:	phrɔ́ thîinân (khɔ̌ɔŋ) thùuk kwàa	'Because things are cheaper there.'

3. *thammaj* *always* occurs at the beginning of *negative* questions.

4. *thýŋ* may occur with *thammaj*. It serves as an intensifier of the question. Observe the following example:

   thammaj khun mâj jàak jùu wɔɔchiŋtân
   'Why don't you like living in Washington?'

   thammaj khun *thýŋ* mâj jàak jùu wɔɔchiŋtân
   'How is that you don't like living in Washington?'

22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun jùu myaŋ thaj maa (dâj) $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{kìi pii}\\ \text{naan thâwràj}\end{array}\right.$ lɛ́ɛw	phǒm jùu myaŋ thaj maa (dâj) sɔ̌ɔŋ pii lɛ́ɛw
	How long have you been living in Thailand?	Two years.
2.	khun thamŋaan thîinîi maa (dâj) $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{kìi pii}\\ \text{naan thâwràj}\end{array}\right.$ lɛ́ɛw	phǒm thamŋaan thîinîi maa (dâj) lǎaj pii lɛ́ɛw
	How long have you been working here?	Several years.
3.	khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) kìi dyan lɛ́ɛw	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) hâa dyan lɛ́ɛw
	How many months have you been studying Thai?	Five months.

4. khun pen khruu maa (dâj) kìi pii lɛ́ɛw How many years have you been a teacher?	phǒm pen khruu maa (dâj) (nỳŋ) pii kwàa lɛ́ɛw More than a year.
5. khun rúucàk kháw maa (dâj) naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw How long have you been knowing him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw maa (dâj) sǎam pii lɛ́ɛw Three years.
6. khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan maa (dâj) kìi pii lɛ́ɛw How many years have you been married?	phǒm tɛ̀ŋŋaan maa (dâj) kỳap pii lɛ́ɛw Almost a year.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Question	Response
1. khun maa jùu thîinîi dâj naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw khráp How long ago was it that you you came to live here?	phǒm maa jùu thîinîi dâj hòk dyan lɛ́ɛw khráp Six months (ago).
2. khun maa thamŋaan thîinîi dâj naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw khráp How long ago was it that you came to work here?	phǒm maa thamŋaan thîinîi dâj nỳŋ pii lɛ́ɛw khráp One year (ago).
3. khun maa rian náŋsy̌y thîinîi dâj kìi dyan lɛ́ɛw How many months ago was it that you came to study here?	phǒm maa rian náŋsy̌y thîinîi dâj sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan lɛ́ɛw Two months (ago).

4.	khun maa pen khruu thîinîi dâj kìi pii lɛ́ɛw How many years ago was it that you came to be a teacher here?	phǒm maa pen khruu thîinîi dâj kỳap nỳŋ pii lɛ́ɛw khráp Almost a year (ago).

c) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	lǎaj pii	khun tham râatchakaan maa dâj naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw How long have you been a government employee?	phǒm tham râatchakaan maa dâj lǎaj pii lɛ́ɛw Several years.
2.	sǎam dyan	khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj thîi ef-és-aj dâj kìi dyan lɛ́ɛw How many months have you been studying Thai at FSI?	phǒm maa rian phaasǎa thaj thîi éf-és-aj dâj sǎam dyan lɛ́ɛw Three months.
3.	aathít kwàa	khun rian phaasǎa thâj maa dâj kìi aathít lɛ̀ɛw How many weeks have you been studying Thai?	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj maa dâj aathít kwàa lɛ́ɛw More than a week.
4.	sɔ̌ɔŋ pii	khun rúucàk kháw maa dâj naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw How long have you been knowing him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw maa dâj sɔ̌ɔŋ pii kwàa lɛ́ɛw More than two years.

5.	hâa dyan	khun klàp maa ameerikaa dâj dìi dyan lɛ́ɛw How many months has it been since you came back to America?	phǒm klàp maa ameerikaa dâj hâa dyan lɛ́ɛw Five months.
6.	sǎam chûamooŋ	khun nâŋ khɔɔj kháw maa dâj kìi chûamooŋ lɛ́ɛw How many hours have you been sitting waiting for him?	phǒm nâŋ khɔɔj kháw maa dâj sǎam chûamooŋ lɛ́ɛw Three hours.
7.	khrŷŋ chûamooŋ	raw khuj kan maa dâj kìi naathii lɛ́ɛw How many minutes have you been conversing?	raw khuj kan maa dâj khrŷŋ chûamooŋ lɛ́ɛw A half hour.

d) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	khun rúucàk kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been knowing him for a long time.	khun rúucàk kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been knowing him for long?
2.	khun thamŋaan thîinîi maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been working here for a long time.	khun thamŋaan thîinîi maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been working here long?

3.	khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been studying Thai for a long time.	khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been studying Thai for long?
4.	khun jùu thîinîi maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been living here for a long time.	khun jùu thîinîi maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been living here long?
5.	khun sâap ryâŋníi maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been knowing about this matter for a long time.	khun sâap ryâŋníi maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been knowing about this matter for long?
6.	khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've been wanting to see him for a long time.	khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been wanting to see him for long?
7.	khun chɔ̂ɔp kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw You've liked her for a long time.	khun chɔ̂ɔp kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you liked her long?

e) Response Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun maa jùu myaŋthaj dâj naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been living in Thailand long?	phə̂ŋ maa khráp I just came.
2.	khun maa khɔɔj phǒm dâj naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been waiting for me long?	phə̂ŋ maa khráp I just came.
3.	khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj dâj naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been studying Thai for long?	phə̂ŋ maa khráp I just started.
4.	khun rúucàk kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been knowing him for long?	phə̂ŋ rúucàk khráp I just met him.
5.	khun rian náŋsy̌y lêmníi maa naan lɛ́ɛw rə̌khráp Have you been reading this book long?	phə̂ŋ rian khráp I just began.

f) Expansion Drill

thammaj
thammaj lakhráp
thammaj thýŋ chát lakhráp
thammaj thýŋ chát jaŋŋán lakhráp
thammaj thýŋ phûut dâj chát jaŋŋán lakhráp
thammaj thýŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaŋŋán lakhráp
thammaj kháw thýŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaŋŋán lakhráp

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw phəŋ maa myaŋ thaj . thammaj kháw thýŋ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaŋŋán lakhráp

   He just came to Thailand. How is that he can speak Thai so clearly?

2. kháw mâj chɔ̂ɔp aakàat rɔ́ɔn . thammaj kháw thýŋ jàak paj jùu myaŋ thaj lakhráp

   He doesn't like hot weather. How is that he wants to go to Thailand?

3. kháw mâj khəəj maa rian thîi ameerikaa . thammaj kháw thýŋ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj dii lakhráp

   He has never studied in America. How is that he speaks English (so) well?

4. kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa kháw mâj mii ŋəən . thammaj kháw thýŋ sýy rót lakhráp

   He said he didn't have any money. How is it that he speaks buying a car?

h) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	thammaj (khun) (thýŋ) mâj paj thamŋaan Why is it that you aren't going to work?
1. phûut	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj phûut Why is it that you don't talk?
2. chɔ̂ɔp kháw	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw Why is that you don't like him?

3.	mâj jàak jùu wɔɔchiŋtân	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj jàak jùu wɔɔchiŋtân Why is it that you don't like to live in Washington?
4.	mâj maa rian náŋsýy	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj maa rian náŋsýy How is it that you aren't studying?
5.	mâj khâwcaj	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj khâwcaj How does it happen that you don't understand?
6.	mâj khàp rót maa rooŋrian	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj khàp rót maa rooŋrian Why is it that you don't drive to school?

i) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	rian maa kɔ̀ɔn	thammaj kháw thýŋ phûut thaj dâj chát How does it come about that he speaks Thai so well?	(phrɔ́) kháw khəəj rian maa kɔ̀ɔn Because he studied previously.
2.	mâj chɔ̂ɔp aakàat nǎaw	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj jàak paj nɔɔrawee How is that you don't want to go to Norway?	(phrɔ́) phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp aakàat nǎaw Because I don't like cold weather.
3.	mâj sabaaj	thammaj mŷawaanníi kháw thýŋ mâj maa thamŋaan Why was it that he didn't come to work yesterday?	(phrɔ́) kháw mâj sabaaj Because he was ill.

4.	khàp rót mâj pen	thammaj phanrajaa khun thýŋ mâj khàp rót Why isn't your wife driving?	(phró) kháw khàp rót mâj pen Because she doesn't know how.
5.	thaaŋ ráatchakaan jàak hâj phǒm rúu phaasǎa thaj	thammaj khun thýŋ tôŋ maa rian phaasǎa thaj Why did you have to come to study Thai?	(phró) thaaŋ râatchakaan jàak hâj phǒm rúu phaasǎa thaj Because the Government wanted me to know Thai.
6.	mâj wâaŋ	thammaj khun thýŋ mâj aw rót paj kɛ̂ɛ Why didn't you take your car to get it repaired?	(phró) phǒm mâj wâaŋ Because I wasn't free.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	kháw rian phaasǎa thaj jùu kìi pii How many years did he study Thai?	kháw rian jùu nỳŋ pii He studied one year.
2.	khun pen thahǎan jùu kìi pii How many years were you a soldier?	phǒm pen thahǎan jùu sɔ̌ɔŋ pii I was a soldier for two years.
3.	khun faŋ théep jùu kìi chûamooŋ How many hours did you listen to the tape?	phǒm faŋ théep jùu khrŷŋ chûamooŋ I listened to the tape for half an hour.

4.	khun phûut thoorasàp jùu naan thâwràj How long did he talk on the telephone?	kháw phûut thoorasàp jùu jîisìp hâa naathii He talked 25 minutes on the phone.
5.	kháw thamŋaan jùu thîi wiaŋcan kìi pii How many years did he work in Vientiane?	kháw thamŋaan jùu thîinân sɔ̌ɔŋ pii khrŷŋ He worked there two and a half years.

23.4 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES (Listen to the passages and answer the questions.)

a) mŷa pii 1941 - thŷŋ 1943 khun thɔɔm pen thahǎan jùu thîi ookinaawaa . kháw pen jùu sɔ̌ɔŋ pii, dǐawníi khun thɔɔm pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet

	Question	Response
1.	khun thɔɔm khəəj pen thahǎan máj	khəəj
2.	thîi nǎj	thîi ookinaawaa
3.	pen jùu kìi pii	sɔ̌ɔŋ pii
4.	tâŋtɛ̀ɛ pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj thŷŋ khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ araj	1941 - 1943
5.	dǐawníi kháw thamŋaan araj	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet

b) myâcháawníi khun prichaa paj talàat . kháw phóp phŷan thîi talàat . kháw khuj kàp phŷan jùu sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ

	Question	Response
1.	myâcháawníi khun prichaa phóp khraj	kháw phóp phŷan
2.	thîinǎj	thîi talàat
3.	kháw khuj kàp phŷan jùu naan thâwràj	kháw khuj kàp phŷan jùu sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ

c) místə samít thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋtàaŋ prathêet maa dâj lǎaj pii lɛ́ɛw . kháw khəəj paj jùu lǎaj prathêet . kháw khəəj paj pen koŋsǔn thîi chiaŋmàj jùu sǎam pii . weelaaníi , kháw jùu thîi wɔɔchiŋtân

	Question	Response
1.	místə samít thamŋaan thîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet maa dâj kìi pii lɛ́ɛw	lǎaj pii lɛ́ɛw
2.	kháw khəəj paj jùu tàaŋ prathêet máj	khəəj kháw khəəj paj jùu lǎaj prathêet
3.	kháw khəəj paj jùu myaŋthaj máj	khəəj , kháw khəəj paj pen koŋsún thîi chiaŋmàj
4.	kháw pen koŋsǔn jùu thîi chiaŋmàj kìi pii	kháw pen jùu sǎam pii

23.5 EXERCISES

a) Different students will find out how long other students have been doing different kinds of activities. The following are some examples: (1) living here, (2) learning Thai, (3) married, (4) playing some sport, (5) knowing how to do something, such as driving a car, etc.

b) One student will give a short biography of himself. Other students will question him about certain parts of it, in particular how long some parts of it lasted (egs. how long he was in the armed forces, etc.).

c) One student says he went some particular place. A second student asks him why he went there. When the first student gives a reason, the second one asks him why he didn't go some other place. The first student gives his reasons.

23.6 VOCABULARY

ookinaawaa	Okinawa
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj	at least
lít	liter
maa kɔ̀ɔn	previously
nɔɔrawee	Norway
phə̂ŋ	just
thýŋ	that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

24.0 BASIC EPISODE: Part I

khun thoomás kamlaŋ rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa khɔ̌ɔŋ krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet . kháw rian maa dâj sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan lɛ́ɛw . kháw ca rian ìik sìi dyan , lɛ́ɛw ca paj myaŋthaj . kháw ca paj jùu myaŋthaj jàaŋnɔ́ɔj raaw sɔ̌ɔŋ pii, jàaŋmâak sìi pii . kháw ca phaa phanrajaa lɛ́ lûuklûuk khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw paj dûaj . kháw kà wâa kháw ca ɔ̀ɔk càak wɔɔchiŋtân wanthîi sìp karákadaakhom, ca khàp rót paj bâan phɔ̂ɔmɛ̂ɛ kháw thîi rát pensilweenia . kháw ca phák jùu thîinân hâa wan, lɛ́ɛw kháw ca khàp rót paj njujɔ́ɔk . kháw ca loŋ rya thîi njujɔ́ɔk lɛ́ paj khŷn thîi faràŋsèet . càak faràŋsèet, kháw ca bin paj room, eethén, teeharaan, niw delhii lɛ́ kruŋthêep. kháw ca mâj wɛ́ thîaw teeharaan lɛ́ niw delhii tɛ̀ kháw ca wɛ́ thîaw room sìi wan lɛ́ eethén hâa wan . kháw kà wâa kháw ca thy̌ŋ kruŋthêep raawraaw wanthîi nỳŋ sǐŋhǎa.

24.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun thoomás kamlaŋ rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thîinǎj
2. kháw rian maa dâj naan thâwràj lɛ́ɛw
3. kháw ca rian paj ìik kìi dyan
4. lɛ́ɛw kháw ca paj nǎj
5. kháw ca paj jùu myaŋthaj kìi pii
6. kháw ca phaa khraj paj dûaj

7. kháw kà ca ɔ̀ɔk càak wɔɔchiŋtân mŷaràj
8. kháw ca paj nǎj kɔ̀ɔn . paj jaŋŋaj
9. thammaj kháw tɔ̂ɔŋ paj thîi niw jɔ́ɔk
10. kháw ca paj khŷn rya thîinǎj
11. càak faràŋsèet , kháw ca paj myaŋ thaj dooj araj
12. kháw ca wɛ́ thîaw thîinǎj bâaŋ
13. kháw kà ca thy̌ŋ myaŋ thaj mŷaràj

24.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan, myaŋ thaj	kháw ca rian ìik sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan, lɛ́ɛw ca paj myaŋ thaj He'll study for two more months, then go to Thailand.
2. sìp wan, myan juan	kháw ca rian ìik sìp wan, lɛ́ɛw ca paj myaŋ juan He'll study for ten more days, then go to Viet Nam.
3. hòk aathít chiaŋmàj	kháw ca rian ìik hòk aathít, lɛ́ɛw ca paj chiaŋmàj He'll study for six more weeks, then go to Chiangmai.
4. nỳŋ pii, phamâa	kháw ca rian ìik nỳŋ pii, lɛ́ɛw ca paj phamâa He'll study for one more year, then go to Burma.

5. sɔ̌ɔŋ sàpdaa kháw ca rian ìik sɔ̌ɔŋ sàpdaa, lɛ́ɛw ca paj laaw

He'll study for two more weeks, then go to Laos.

6. nỳŋ pii, sawít kháw ca rian ìik nỳŋ pii, lɛ́ɛw ca paj sawít

He'll study for one more year, then go to Switzerland.

b) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. 3 aathít	khun ca rian ìik kìi aathít How many more weeks will you study?	ìik sǎam aathít Three more weeks.
2. 4 pii	khun ca thamŋaan ìik kìi pii How many more years will you work?	ìik sìi pii Four more years.
3. 10 pii	khun ca pen khâarâatchakaan ìik kìi pii How many more years will you be a civil servant?	ìik sìp pii Ten more years.
4. 15 naathii	khun ca jyyn khɔɔj kháw ìik kìi naathii How many more minutes will you wait for him?	ìik sìphâa naathii Fifteen more minutes.
5. 3 wan	khun ca thîaw ìik kìi wan How many more days will you be on vacation?	ìik sǎam wan Three more days.

6.	2 pii	khun ca pracam thîi myaŋ thaj ìik kìi pii How many more years will you be stationed in Thailand?	ìik sɔ̌ɔŋ pii Two more years.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. nỳŋ pii, 2 pii	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj nỳŋ pii, jàaŋ mâak sɔ̌ɔŋ pii
2. 20 naathii, 30 naathii	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj jîisìp naathii, jàaŋ mâak sǎamsìp naathii
3. sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan, sìi dyan	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan, jàaŋ mâak sìi dyan
4. nỳŋ wan, cèt wan	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj nỳŋ wan, jàaŋ mâak cèt wan
5. sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít, sǎam aathít	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít, jàaŋ mâak sǎam aathít
6. 2 chûamooŋ, 3 chûamooŋ	jàaŋ nɔ́ɔj sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ, jàaŋ mâak sǎam chûamooŋ

d) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. wan thîi sìp karákadaa	kháw ca ɔ̀ɔk càak woochiŋtân wanthîi thâwràj On what date will he leave Washington?	kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca ɔ̀ɔk càak woochiŋtân wan thîi sìp karákadaa He estimates he will leave on July 10.

2.	raaw dyan nâa	phyân khun ca maa thy̌ŋ mŷaràj When will your friend come?	kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca maa thy̌ŋ raaw dyan nâa He estimates he will arrive next month.
3.	wancan nâa	khun ca paj aw rót mŷaràj When will you go get the car?	phǒm kàa (wâa phǒm) ca paj aw wancan nâa I plan to go get the car next Monday.
4.	raaw ìik sǎam sìi wan	khun ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw mŷaràj When will you tell him?	phǒm kà (wâa phǒm) ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw raaw ìik sǎam sìi wan I plan to tell him in three or four days.

e) Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2 into 3.)

	Sentences 1 and 2	Sentence 3
1.	kháw ca kháp rót kháw ca paj njujɔ́ɔk	kháw ca khàp rót paj njujɔ́ɔk He'll drive to New York.
2.	kháw ca dəən... kháw ca paj rooŋrian	kháw ca dəən paj rooŋrian He'll walk to school.
3.	kháw ca loŋ rya kháw ca paj lɔɔndɔɔn	kháw ca loŋ rya paj lɔɔndɔɔn He'll take a boat to London.
4.	kháw ca khŷn rótmee kháw ca paj ajúthajaa	kháw ca khŷn rótmee paj ajúthajaa He'll go to Ayuthaya by bus.

5.	kháw ca nâŋ ryabin kháw ca paj myaŋ thaj	kháw ca nâŋ ryabin paj myaŋ thaj He'll take a plane to Thailand.
6.	kháw ca khŷn rótfaj kháw ca paj chiaŋmàj	kháw ca khŷn rótfaj paj chiaŋmàj He'll take a train to Chiangmai.

f) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	rooŋrɛɛm eerawan, hâa wan	kháw ca phák jùu thîi rooŋrɛɛm eerawan hâa wan He'll stay at the Erawan Hotel for five days.
2.	bâan phŷan, sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít	kháw ca phák jùu thîi bâan phŷan sɔ̌ɔŋ aathít He'll stay at his friend's house for two weeks.
3.	chaaj thalee, nỳŋ dyan	kháw ca phák jùu thîi chaaj thalee nỳŋ dyan He'll stay at the beach for a month.
4.	parîit, 4 chûamooŋ	kháw ca phák jùu thîi parîit sìi chûamooŋ He'll stay in Paris for four hours.
5.	bâan phǒm, nỳŋ pii	kháw ca phák jùu thîi bâan phǒm nỳŋ pii He'll stay at my house for one year.

6. thîinîi, sǎam naathii   kháw ca phák jùu thîinîi sǎam naathii
He'll stay here three minutes.

g) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. mâj wɛ́	khun ca wɛ́ thîaw thîi room rýplàaw Are you going to stop in Rome?	plàaw khráp No.
2. wɛ́	khun ca mâj wɛ́ thîaw thîi teeharan rýkhráp Aren't you going to stop in Teheran?	wɛ́ khráp Yes, I am.
3. mâj wɛ́	khun ca wɛ́ thîi bâan phǒm rýplàaw Are you going to stop at my house?	plàaw khráp No.
4. wɛ́	khun ca mâj wɛ́ thîi hɔ̂ŋkoŋ rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hong Kong?	wɛ́ khráp Yes, I am.
5. mâj wɛ́	khun ca wɛ́ thîaw thîi jîipùn rýplàaw Are you stopping in Japan?	plàaw khráp No.
6. wɛ́	khun ca mâj wɛ́ thîi haawaaj rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hawaii?	wɛ́ khráp Yes, I am.

h) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	rya, njujɔ́ɔk, faràŋsèet	kháw ca loŋ rya thîi njujɔ́ɔk paj khŷn thîi faràŋsèet He'll get on a boat in New York and get off in France.
2.	khrŷaŋbin, wɔɔchiŋtân, kruŋthêep	kháw ca khŷn khrŷaŋbin thîi wɔɔchiŋtân lɛ́ loŋ thîi kruŋthêep He'll get on a plane in Washington and get off in Bangkok.
3.	rótfaj, ajúthajaa, chiaŋmàj	kháw ca khŷn rótfaj thîi ajúthajaa lɛ́ loŋ thîi chiaŋmàj He'll get on the train in Ayuthaya and get off in Chiangmai.
4.	ryabaj, pàaknám, baaŋpuu	kháw ca loŋ ryabaj thîi pàaknám lɛ́ khŷn thîi baaŋpuu He'll get on a sail boat at Paknam and get off at Bangpu.
5.	thɛ́ɛksîi, hǔalamphooŋ, prajsanii klaaŋ	kháw ca khŷn thɛ́ɛksîi thîi hǔalamphooŋ lɛ́ loŋ thîi prajsanii klaaŋ He'll get in a taxi at Hualampong (Station) and get off at the Main Post Office.
6.	ryacâaŋ, thâapracan, sirirâat	kháw ca loŋ ryacâaŋ thîi thâapracan lɛ́ khŷn thîi sirirâat He'll get on a rented boat at Pracan landing and get off at Siriraj.

i) Sentence Combination Drill

	Sentence 1 and 2	Sentence 3
1.	kháw cam dâj kháw mii phŷan khon thaj khon nyŋ	kháw cam dâj wâa (kháw) mii phŷan khon thaj khon nyŋ He remembered he had a Thai friend.
2.	kháw cam dâj khun phák jùu thîinǎj	kháw cam dâj wâa khun phák jùu thîinǎj He remembered where you were staying.
3.	kháw cam dâj khun phûut wâa araj	kháw cam dâj wâa khun phûut wâa araj He remembered what you said.
4.	kháw cam dâj khun khəəj paj myaŋthaj	kháw cam dâj wâa khun khəəj paj myaŋthaj He remembered that you had been in Thailand.
5.	kháw cam dâj kháw phóp khun thîi lɔɔndɔɔn	kháw cam dâj wâa kháw phôp khun thîi lɔɔndɔɔn He remembered he met you in London.
6.	kháw cam dâj khun pen khâarâatchakaan kràsuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet	kháw cam daj wâa khun pen khâarâatchakaan kràsuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet He remembered that you were a State Department civil servant.

24.3 BASIC EPISODE: Part II

khun thoomás maa thy̌ŋ kruŋthêep mŷa wan thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ sǐŋhǎakhom . kháw phák jùu thîi rooŋrɛɛm imphiirîan troŋ sɔɔj rûam rýdii . phanrajaa lɛ́ lûuklûuk khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw chɔ̂ɔp rooŋrɛɛm níi mâak phró jùu klâj sathǎanthûut , ráanaahǎan lɛ́ ráan khǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ . thîi rooŋrɛɛm mii sà wâajnáam. kháw wâaj náam kan thúkwan

khun thoomás maa jùu myaŋ thaj dâj sǎam wan . kháw cam dâj wâa kháw mii phyân khon thaj khon nyŋ . phyân khonníi khəəj rian jùu kàp kháw thîi mahǎawítthajalaj jeel mŷa sìp pii thîi lɛ́ɛw . kháw khəəj rian jùu chán diaw kàp phŷan khonníi lǎaj pii . kháw chɔ̂ɔp kan mâak tɛ̀ khun thoomás mâj sâap wâa phyân kháw jùu thîi nǎj . kháw cam dâj wâa phŷan khonníi chŷy khun sǔnthɔɔn naamsakun mahǎasàk . wannyŋ kháw pə̀ət sàmut thoorasàp . kháw phóp chŷy khun sǔnthɔɔn . kháw thoo paj hǎa khun sǔnthɔɔn thîi bâan . khun sǔnthɔɔn diicaj mâak . kháw chəən khun thoomás lɛ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua paj thaan khâaw thîi bâan . kháw maa ráp khun thoomás lɛ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua thîi hooten lɛ́ phaa paj bâan kháw . bâan khun sǔnthɔɔn sǔaj mâak . khun sǔnthɔɔn jàak hâj khun thoomás lɛ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua phák jùu kàp kháw . kháw chuan khun thoomas tɛ̀ khun thoomas mâj jàak rópkuan khun sǔnthɔɔn.

24.4 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE: Part II

1. khun thoomás maa thy̌ŋ kruŋthêep mŷaràj
2. kháw phák jùu thîinǎj
3. khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua khɔ̌ɔŋ khun thoomás chɔ̂ɔp rooŋrɛɛm thîi kháw phák jùu máj . phrɔ́ araj
4. khun thoomás khəəj mii phŷan thaj máj
5. kháw rúucàk kan dâj jaŋŋaj
6. khun thoomás sâap máj wâa phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw jùu thîinǎj
7. kháw cam chŷy lɛ́ naamsakun khɔ̌ɔŋ phyân kháw dâj máj
8. kháw phóp khun sǔnthɔɔn dâj jaŋŋaj
9. khun sǔnthɔɔn diicaj máj
10. kháw chəən khun thoomás lɛ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua paj bâan rýplàaw
11. khun thoomás paj bâan khun sǔnthɔɔn jaŋŋaj
12. khun sǔnthɔɔn jàak hâj khun thoomás lɛ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua phák jùu kàp kháw máj
13. kháw tham jaŋŋaj
14. thammaj khun thoomás thýŋ mâj phák bâan khun sǔnthɔɔn

24.5 EXERCISES

One student will describe a travel experience he has had using the basic episode as a model. Other students will ask questions about it.

24.6 VOCABULARY

eethén	Athens
baaŋpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
chaaj	edge, rim, border
chaajthalee	the beach
diicaj	to be glad
haawaaj	Hawaii
hɔ̂ŋkoŋ	Hong Kong
jeel	Yale (University)
kà	to guess, estimate
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
niw delhii	New Delhi
pàaknáam	Pakram (name of an Amphoe)
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pracam	to be stationed
rópkuan	to trouble, bother
ryabaj	sail boat
ryacâaŋ	rented boat
sàpdaa / sàp̀padaa	week (elegant usage)
sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sawít	Switzerland
siriráat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sǔnthɔɔn	Sunthorn (male first name)
teeharaan	Teheran
thalee	sea
thoomás	Thomas
wɛ́	to stop in, over

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

25.0 BASIC DIALOG: Making an Acquaintance

A:	pen araj paj khráp mâj sabaaj rə̌	What's the matter with you? Aren't you well?
B:	plàaw khráp, mâj dâj pen araj ŋuâŋ nɔɔn	Nothing's the matter. I'm sleepy.
	mŷakhyynníi paj ŋaanlíaŋ ləəj nɔɔn dỳk paj nɔ̀ɔj	Last night I went to a party so I got to bed a little late.
A:	sanùk máj khráp	Was it fun? (Did you have a good time?)
B:	sanùk mâak	Yes, it was. (I certainly did.)
A:	phóp khraj bâaŋ	Who did you meet there? (Who was there?)
B:	lǎaj khon khráp	A lot of people.
	phǒm dâj phŷan màj lǎaj khon	I made a lot of new friends.
	ɔ̂ɔ, phǒm phóp khonthaj khon nyŋ	Oh, I ran into a Thai.
	kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa pen phyân kàw khun	He said he was an old friend of yours.
A:	kháw chŷy araj	What was his name?
B:	phǒm cam mâj dâj	I can't remember.
	kháw hâj naambàt phǒm tɛ̀ phǒm lyym aw maa	He gave me his card, but I forgot to bring it.

25.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) pen araj (paj) 'What's the matter (with you)?' is the normal way to inquire about what pain or ailment someone has.

1. If one has some kind of disease, he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen wàt	'I have a cold.'
phǒm pen khâj	'I have a fever.'
phǒm pen khâjwàt	'I have the flu.'

Or he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen rôok bìt	'I have dysentery.'
phǒm pen rôok sâjtan	'I have appendicitis.'
phǒm pen rôok àhiwaa	'I have cholera.'

2. If one has an ache or pain, he will give its location:

phǒm pùat hǔa	(Lit. I ache in the head.) 'I have a headache.'
phǒm pùat thóɔŋ	(Lit. I ache in the area of the intestines.) 'I have a stomach ache.'

b) sanùk means 'to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time, etc.' It may have a place, thing, person, or activity as subject.

c) dâj has the meaning 'get, obtain, procure' when used as the main verb, as in the sentence phǒm dâj phŷan màj lǎaj khon 'I made a lot of new friends.'

d) There are several ways to indicate 'lateness' in Thai. The choice is determined by the time of day referred to. Observe the following chart:

Time of Day	Early	Late
Morning	cháaw	sǎaj
	tɛ̀ɛ cháaw	
Late in the day	wan	khâm
	tɛ̀ɛ wan	
Evening	hǔakhâm	dỳk
	tɛ̀ɛ hǔakhâm	
Anytime	rew	cháa

e) When tɛ̀ɛ (often ta) occurs before cháaw, wan, etc., it indicates that the speaker considers the earliness to be unexpected or unusual.

f) bỳa means 'to be bored'; nâabỳa means 'boring'. Observe the following examples:

phǒm bỳa (kháw, duu náŋsy̌y, etc.)	'I'm bored (with him, studying, etc.)'.
kháw tham hâj phǒm bỳa	(He causes me to be bored.) 'He bores me.'
nǎŋ rŷaŋníi nâabỳa	'This movie is boring.'

g) sanùk means 'to have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself' or 'to be fun, entertaining'. Observe the following examples:

kháw sanùk	'He's having a good time.'
thamŋaan thîinîi mâj sanùk	'Working here is not fun.'
kháw pen khon sanùk	'He's a fun person.'

h) ləəj 'so' is a word used to connect conditional sentences with result sentences, thus

khǎw pen khon nâabỳa raw ləəj mâj jàak khuj kakhǎw
'He's a dull person so we don't want to talk with him.'

i) hâj 'to give' is followed by the object and then by the recipient of the object.

khǎw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm 'He gave a book to me.'

25.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khǎw maa thamŋaan sǎaj thúkwan tɛ̀ɛ wanníi khǎw
maa {tɛ̀ɛ cháaw
{ta

He comes to work late everyday, but today he came early.

2. khǎw klàp bâan khâm thúkwan tɛ̀ɛ wanníi khǎw klàp
bâan {tɛ̀ɛ wan
{ta

He goes home late everyday, but today he went home early.

3. khǎw khâw nɔɔn dỳk thúk khyyn tɛ̀ɛ khyynníi khǎw
nɔɔn {tɛ̀ɛ hǔakhâm
{ta

She goes to bed late every night, but tonight she went to bed early.

4. kháw maa cháa samə̌ə tɛ̀ɛ wannií maa rew.

   He always comes late, but today he came early.

5. khruu khon nán ɔ̀ɔk càak hɔ̂ŋ cháa samə̌ə tɛ̀ɛ wannií kháw ɔ̀ɔk càak hɔ̂ŋ rew.

   That teacher always comes out of the room late, but today she came out early.

b) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw khâw nɔɔn thîaŋ khyyn He went to bed at midnight.	kháw khâw nɔɔn dỳk. He went to bed late.
2.	kháw thaan aahǎankhâm weelaa hâa thûm She ate dinner at 11 p.m.	kháw thaan dỳk. She ate late.
3.	kháw tỳyn nɔɔn tii hâa He got up at 5 a.m.	kháw tỳyn nɔɔn cháaw He got up early.
4.	kháw maa rooŋrian weelaa mooŋ cháaw khrŷŋ He come to school at 7:30 a.m.	kháw maa rooŋrian tɛ̀ɛ cháaw He came to school early.
5.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk wâa kháw ca klàp maa wan thîi sìp tɛ̀ɛ kháw klàp maa wan thîi hâa He said he'd return on the tenth, but he returned on the fifth.	kháw klàp maa rew. He came back early.

6.	kháw khâw nɔɔn dỳk thúk khyyn tɛ̀ɛ khyynníi kháw khâw nɔɔn weelaa sɔ̌ɔn thûm He goes to bed late every night, but tonight he went to bed at 8 p.m.	kháw khâw nɔɔn tɛ̀ɛ hǔakhâm He went to bed early.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	kháw pen araj paj What's the matter with him?	kháw mâj sabaaj He's ill.
2.	khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?	phǒm pùat { sǐisà hǔa I have a headache.
3.	khun cim pen araj What's the matter with Jim?	kháw pen wàt He has a cold.
4.	phanrajaa khun pen araj paj What's the matter with your wife?	kháw pen khâj She has a fever.
5.	khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?	phǒm mâj dâj pen araj. Nothing.
6.	khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with you?	phǒm pen khâjwàt I have the flu.
7.	kháw pen araj (paj) What's the matter with him?	kháw pen rôok bìt He has dysentery.

8.	lûukchaaj khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with your son?	kháw pùat thɔ́ɔŋ He has a belly ache.
9.	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with your father?	kháw mâj sabaaj mâak kháw pen rôok àhiwaa He's very ill. He has cholera.

d) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		ŋaanlíaŋ sanuk máj Was the party fun?
1.	náŋsyy̌	náŋsyy̌ sanùk máj Is the book amusing?
2.	nǎŋ	nǎŋ sanùk máj Was the movie fun?
3.	kruŋthêep	kruŋthêep sanùk máj Is Bangkok fun?
4.	rian phaasǎa thaj	rian phaasǎa thaj sanùk máj Is studying Thai fun?
5.	jùu thîinîi	jùu thîinîi sanùk máj Is it enjoyable living here?
6.	khuj kàp kháw	khuj kàp kháw sanùk máj Is talking to her fun?

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. very	ŋaan sanùk máj	sanùk mâak
	Is the work amusing?	Very amusing.
2. not at all	ŋaan sanùk máj	mâj sanùk ləəj
	Is the work amusing?	Not at all.
3. very	náŋsɣ̌y lêmnií sanùk máj	sanùk mâak
	Is this book amusing?	Very amusing.
4. not at all	jùu thîinîi sanùk máj	mâj sanùk ləəj
	Is living here fun?	Not at all.
5. very	rian phaasǎa thaj sanùk máj	sanùk mâak
	Is studying Thai fun?	It's a lot of fun.
6. not at all	khuj kàp kháw sanùk máj	mâj sanùk ləəj
	Is talking to her fun?	Not at all.
7. very	kháw phûut sanùk máj	sanùk mâak
	Is what he says amusing?	Very amusing.
8. not at all	nǎŋ sanùk máj	mâj sanùk ləəj
	Was the movie fun?	Not at all.

f) Lexical Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	ŋaan mâj sanùk The working isn't amusing.	ŋaan nâabỳa The work's dull.
2.	thamŋaan thîinîi mâj sanùk Working here isn't enjoyable.	thamŋaan thîinîi nâabỳa Working here is boring.
3.	nǎŋ ryâŋníí mâj sanùk This movie isn't amusing.	nǎŋ rŷaŋníi nâabỳa This movie is dull.
4.	náŋsyy̌ lêmníí mâj sanùk This book isn't amusing.	náŋsyy̌ lêmníí nâabỳa This book is boring.
5.	rian phaasǎa thaj mâj sanùk Studying Thai isn't fun.	rian phaasǎa thaj nâabỳa Studying Thai is boring.

g) Lexical Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	raw sanùk We're having fun.	raw mâj bỳa We are not (being) bored.
2.	myâkhyyn thúk khon sanúk Last night everybody had fun.	myâkhyynníi mâj mii khraj bỳa Last night nobody found it dull.
3.	phyân phǒm sanùk My friend is having a good time.	phŷan phǒm mâj bỳa My friend isn't bored.
4.	phǒm sanùk I'm having fun.	phǒm mâj bỳa I'm not being bored.

h) Lexical Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	raw mâj sanùk We're not enjoying ourselves.	raw bỳa We are bored.
2.	mâj mii khraj sanùk Nobody's having fun.	thúk khon bỳa Everybody is being bored.
3.	khun cɔɔn mâj sanùk John is not enjoying himself.	khun cɔɔn bỳa John is finding it dull.
4.	phǒm mâj sanùk I'm not having a good time.	phǒm bỳa I'm being bored.

i) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		kháw pen khon sanùk He's an amusing person.
1.	phyân khun khonnán	phyân khun khonnán pen khon sanùk That friend of yours is an amusing person.
2.	khun praphâat	khun praphâat pen khon sanùk Mr. Prapas is an amusing person.
3.	khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm	khun phɔ̂ɔ phǒm pen khon sanùk My father is an amusing person.
4.	khun	khun pen khon sanùk You are an amusing person.

5. nákrian màj khonnán	nákrian màj khonnán pen khon sanùk That new student is an amusing person.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mŷa khyynníi phǒm paj ŋaanlíaŋ ləəj nɔɔn dỳk paj nɔ̀ɔj
   Last night I went to a party, so I got to bed late.

2. kháw thîaw mâak (kháw) ləəj mâj sabaaj
   He goes out a lot, so he's not well.

3. kháw riîp paj myaŋthaj (kháw) ləəj mâj mii weelaa wɛ́ thîaw júròop
   He was in such a hurry to get to Thailand, that he didn't have time to stop cff in Europe.

4. phǒm khít wâa khun sâap lɛ́ɛw (phǒm) ləəj mâj dâj bɔ̀ɔk khun
   I thought you already knew, so I didn't tell you.

5. phǒm rîip ɔ̀ɔk càak bâan (phǒm) ləəj lyym aw ŋəən maa
   I left home in such a hurry, that I forgot to bring any money.

6. thɛ̌ɛwníi mâj mii thîicɔ̀ɔtrót phǒm ləəj tɔ̂ɔŋ maa rótmee
   There's no place to park around here, so I had to take the bus.

7. wanníi, phanrajaa phǒm tɔ̂ɔŋ cháj rót phǒm ləəj tɔ̂ɔŋ maa théksîi
   Today my wife had to use the car, so I had to come by taxi.

8. kháw pen khon nâabyà raw ləəj mâj jaàk khuj kàp kháw

   He's such a dull person that we don't want to talk with him.

9. wanníí phanrajaa ka lûukphǒm paj thîaw kan phǒm ləəj tɔ̂ɔŋ jùu bâan khon diaw

   Today my wife and children went out, so I had to stay home alone.

10. phûujǐŋ khonnán khít wâa khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw (kháw) ləəj mâj jàak paj thîaw kàp khun

    That woman thought you were married, so she didn't want to go out with you.

11. kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt mâj dâj phǒm ləəj tɔɔ̂ŋ phûut phaasaathaj kàp kháw

    She doesn't speak English, so I must talk Thai to her.

12. phǒm wɛ́ bâan phyân ləəj klàp bâan cháa paj nɔ̀ɔj

    I stopped at a friend's house, so I got home late.

k) Transformation Drill (Make a statement expressing what is in the conversational exchange using ləəj.)

		Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	sǒmsàk:	khun sawàt, thammaj khun thýŋ nɔɔn dỳk paj Why did you go to bed so late?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ phǒm paj ŋaanliáŋ Because I went to a party.	khun sawàt paj ŋaanlíaŋ kháw ləəj nɔɔn dỳk paj nɔ̀ɔj Somsak went to a party so he went to bed late.

2.	sǒmsàk:	thammaj khun cɔɔn thýŋ mâj sabaaj Why isn't John well?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ kháw thaan mâak paj nɔ̀ɔj Because he ate too much.	khun cɔɔn thaan mâak paj nɔ̀ɔj kháw ləəj mâj sabaaj John ate too much, so he isn't well.
3.	sǒmsàk:	khun sawàt, thammaj khun mâj wɛ́ thîaw júròop Why didn't you stop in Europe?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ phǒm mâj mii weelaa Because I didn't have time.	khun sawàt mâj mii weelaa kháw ləəj mâj dâj wɛ́ thîaw júròop. Sawat didn't have time, so he didn't stop off in Europe.
4.	sǒmsàk:	thammaj khun cɔɔn maa rótmee Why did John come by bus?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ kháw khàprót mâj pen Because he can't drive.	khun cɔɔn khàprót mâj pen ləəj tɔ̂ŋ maa rótmee. John can't drive, so he came by bus.

5.	sɔ̌msàk:	khun sawàt, thammaj khun thýŋ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kàp kháw Why do you speak English with them?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj pen Because they can't speak Thai.	kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj mâj pen khun sawàt ləəj tɔ̂ŋ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt ka kháw They can't speak Thai, so Sawat has to speak English with them.
6.	sɔ̌msàk:	thammaj khun cim mâj chɔ̂ɔp phûujǐŋ khonnán Why doesn't Jim like that woman?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ phûujǐŋ khonnán mâj sǔaj Because that woman isn't pretty.	phûujǐŋ khonnán mâj sǔaj khun cim ləəj mâj chɔ̂ɔp kháw That woman isn't pretty, so Jim doesn't like her.
7.	sɔ̌msàk:	khun prichaa khráp, thammaj khun thýŋ mâj khâwcaj la khráp Why didn't you understand?	
	sawàt:	phrɔ́ phǒm mâj dâj faŋ Because I didn't listen.	khun prichaa mâj dâj faŋ kháw ləəj mâj khâwcaj Pricha didn't listen, so he didn't understand.

8. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt khrap,
mŷakhyynnií, thammaj
khun thýŋ riîp klàp
la khráp

Why were you in such
a hurry to leave last
night, Sawat?

sawàt:	phró phǒm bỳa Because I was bored.	mŷakhyynnií khun sawàt bỳa kháw ləəj rîip klàp Last night Sawat was bored, so he left in a hurry.

1) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw hâj naambàt phǒm He gave me his card.
1. náŋsýy lêm nií	kháw hâj náŋsýy lêm nií phǒm He gave me this book.
2. ŋəən	kháw hâj ŋəən phǒm He gave me some money.
3. klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup	kháw hâj klɔ̂ŋthàajrûup phǒm He gave me a camera.
4. wítthajú	kháw hâj wítthajú phǒm He gave me a radio.
5. bəə thoorasàp	kháw hâj bəə thoorasàp phǒm She gave me her telephone number.

6.	rûup	kháw hâj rûup phǒm She gave me a picture.
7.	pàakaa	kháw hâj pàakaa phǒm They gave me a pen.
8.	samùt	kháw hâj samùt phǒm They gave me a notebook.

m) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		phǒm dâj phyân màj lǎaj khon. I made many new friends.
1.	náŋsyy̌	phǒm dâj náŋsy̌y lǎaj lêm I got many books.
2.	náŋsy̌y diidii	phǒm dâj náŋsy̌y diidii lǎaj lêm I procured many good books.
3.	ŋəən (rɔ́ɔj)	phǒm dâj ŋəən lǎaj rɔ́ɔj I earned many hundred (baht).
4.	naalikaa	phǒm dâj naalikaa láaj ryan I obtained several watches.
5.	rûup	phǒm dâj rûup lǎaj baj I got many pictures.
6.	raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	phǒm dâj raaŋwan lǎaj jàaŋ I earned many prizes.

7. lûuknɔ́ɔŋ kèŋ kèŋ   phǒm dâj lûuknɔ́ɔŋ kèŋkèŋ lǎaj khon.
I procured several skilled subordinates.

n) Response Drill (Give negative answers to the questions.)

	Question	Response
1.	pen araj (paj) What's the matter with you?	mâj dâj pen araj Nothing.
2.	kamlaŋ tham araj What are you doing?	mâj dâj tham araj Nothing.
3.	phûut araj What did you say?	mâj dâj phûut araj Nothing.
4.	paj nǎj Where are you going?	mâj dâj paj nǎj Nowhere.
5.	rúucàk khraj Who do you know?	mâj rúucàk khraj I don't know anybody.
6.	jàak phóp khraj Who do you want to meet?	mâj jàak phóp khraj Nobody.
7.	khít araj What are you thinking about?	mâj dâj khít araj Nothing.
8.	sýy araj What did you buy?	mâj dâj sýy araj Nothing.
9.	mii khraj hěn bâaŋ Did anybody see anything?	mâj mii khraj hěn Nobody saw anything.

25.3 EXERCISES

a) One student asks another what is the matter with him. The second responds with some type of ailment.

b) One student asks another whether he considers certain people, places, things, or activities to be amusing or fun. The second responds according to his opinion. The questions may be specific (the person you met at the party last night, etc.) of they may be general (learning Thai, etc.)

c) Student A will ask Student B why he did or didn't do something (ex: Why did you go to bed late last night?). Student B will give a reason (ex: Because I went to a party). Student C will pretend he didn't understand and will ask Student A what was said (ex: Excuse me, I didn't understand. What did he say?). Student A will tell him. Use the following examples as a model:

Student A: mŷakhyynníi, thammaj khun thýŋ nɔɔn dỳk paj

Student B: phrɔ́ phóm paj ŋaanlíaŋ

Student C: khɔ̌ɔthôot, phǒm mâj khâwcaj, kháw bɔ̀ɔk
wâa araj na khráp

Student A: mŷakhyynníi, kháw paj ŋaanlíaŋ ləəj nɔɔn
dỳk paj nɔ̀ɔj

25.4 VOCABULARY

bỳa	to be bored
dâj	to get, obtain, procure
hǔa (hǔa)	head
(pen) khâj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) khâjwàt	(to have) flu
lûuknɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	subordinate
lyym	to forget

nâabỳa	to be dull
naŋ (rŷaŋ)	movie (story)
ŋuâŋnɔɔn	to be sleepy
pùat	to ache, have a pain
raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	prize (kind)
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bìt	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
sanùk	to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sǐisà	head (elegant word)
tɛ̀ɛ ta } cháaw	very early
thɔ́ɔŋ	stomach, intestinal area
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold

LESSON TWENTY-SIX

26.0 BASIC DIALOG: Discussion of Wedding Gifts

A:	khun sawàt háʔ	Mr. Sawat, may I ask you
	thǎam araj nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj	something?
B:	jindii háʔ	Gladly.
A:	wan aathít níi, phǒm dâj	This Sunday I received an
	ráp chəən paj ŋaanlíaŋ	invitation to a party.
B:	ŋaan araj háʔ	What kind of a party?
A:	ŋaan tɛ̀ŋŋaan	A wedding.
	phǒm mâj sâap wâa	I don't know what I should
	ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii	buy to give them.
B:	hâj khɔ̌ɔŋcháj sihá	Give something to use.
A:	chên araj mâŋ	What for example?
B:	chên khrŷaŋkhrua	Kitchen utensils for the
	sámràp câwsǎaw,	bride, electrical devices
	khrŷaŋ cháj faj fáa	or pretty things to
	rý khɔ̌ɔŋ sǔajsǔaj	decorate the house with.
	sámràp tɛ̀ŋ bâan	
A:	tɔɔnthîi khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan,	When you got married,
	khun dâj khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn	what are some of the
	araj mâŋ háʔ	presents you got?
B:	phǒm dâj tháŋ ŋəən lɛ́ khɔ̌ɔŋ háʔ	I got money and things.
	phŷan baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ,	Some friends gave things;
	baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋəən	some gave money. Most of
	jâat jâat sùan mâak hâj ŋəən	the relatives gave money.

26.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

a) Note the following variant forms of the male and female polite particles:

Statement:		Formal	Informal
	Male	khráp	háʔ
	Female	khâ	hâ/há
Question:			
	Male	khráp	háʔ
	Female	khá	há

b) The relationship between chəən 'to invite' and dâj ráp chəən 'to be invited' is similar to the active: passive voice relationship in English.

kháw chəən phǒm paj ŋaanlíaŋ	'They invited me (to go) to a party.'
phǒm dâj ráp chəən paj ŋaanlíaŋ	'I was invited (to go) to a party.'

c) Compounds like thaaŋ + rooŋrian refer to institutions as agents rather than as places. Observe the following examples:

thaaŋ rooŋrian hâj náŋsɯ̌ɯ phǒm	'The school gave me some books.'
thaaŋ râatchakaan hâj ŋən rooŋrian pii la pɛ̀ɛt phan bàat	'The government gives 8,000 baht a year to the school.'

26.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The object complement of hâj 'to give' normally precedes the personal complement as in the following example:

kháw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm	'He gave me a book.'

1. Specifier phrases of the object complement follow immediately after it (i.e. before the personal complement).

kháw hâj náŋsy̌y thîi kháw plɛɛ phǒm	'He gave me some books he had translated.'
kháw hâj náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm nán phǒm	'He gave me those two books.'

2. Quantifier phrases of the object complement occur after the personal complement:

kháw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm	'He gave me two books.'
kháw hâj náŋsy̌y kháw khon la 2 lêm	'He gave them two books apiece.'

b) Constructions of the type khon la 2 lêm 'two books apiece' are called Distributive constructions. They are used to refer to the distribution of objects according to a certain ratio. The distribution may refer to space as in the example above, or it may refer to time. Examples of each type are given below:

1. Space distribution:

kháw hâj náŋsy̌y nákrian khon la sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm	'He gave the students two books apiece.'

2. Time distribution:

kháw hâj ŋən khonchéj dyan la 800 bàat	'He gave his servant 800 baht a month.'

c) kɔ̂ frequently occurs before the main verb phrase in each of the sentences in parallel sentence constructions. It is not translated.

nákrian baaŋ khon kɔ̂ kèŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ mâj kèŋ	'Some students are good; some aren't.'

d) When Noun Phrases with more than one noun head are replaced by Classifier Phrases, the classifier used in the replacement is determined by the types of nouns in the Noun Phrase:

Noun Phrase	Classifier Phrase Replacement
tháŋ khruu lɛ́ mɔ̌ɔ 'Both teachers and doctors.'	tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ khon 'both kinds of people'
tháŋ ŋən lɛ́ aahǎan 'Both money and food'	tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ 'both kinds of things'
tháŋ kruŋthêep lɛ́ chiaŋmàj 'Both Bangkok and, Chiangmai.'	tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ hɛ̀ɛŋ (or) tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ myaŋ 'both places' (or) 'both cities'

e) When dii occurs with questions, it may indicate that the person asking the question is requesting advice (whether a certain course of action is good, suitable, or advisable) or is asking for a suggestion. The response, if short and definite, usually ends with sikhráp.

Question + dii	Response
phǒm ca hâj araj dii 'What shall I give?'	hâj khɔ̌ɔŋcháj sihá 'Give something useful.'

26.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	kháw chəən phǒm paj ŋaanlíaŋ They invited me to a party.	phǒm dâj ráp chəən paj ŋaanlíaŋ I got an invitation to a party.
2.	kháw chəən phǒm paj ŋaan tɛ̀ŋŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw She invited me to her wedding.	phǒm dâj ráp chəən paj ŋaan tɛ̀ŋŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw I received an invitation to her wedding.
3.	kháw chəən phǒm paj prachum thîi myaŋ bɔ́ɔssatân He invited me to a meeting in Boston.	phǒm dâj ráp chəən paj prachum thîi myaŋ bɔ́ɔssatân I received an invitation to a meeting in Boston.
4.	kháw mâj dâj chəən phǒm paj ŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut He didn't invite me to the party at the Embassy.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chəən paj ŋaan thîi sathǎanthûut I didn't get an invitation to the party at the Embassy.
5.	kháw mâj dâj chəən phǒm paj ŋaan nákrian kàw He didn't invite me to the party for former students.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chəən paj ŋaan nákrian kàw I didn't get an invitation to the party for former students.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	kháw hâj araj khun khráp What did he give you?	kháw hâj ŋən phǒm khráp He gave me some money.
2.	thaaŋ rooŋrian hâj araj khun khráp What did the school give you?	thaaŋ rooŋrian hâj náŋsy̌y rian phǒm khráp The school gave me a textbook.
3.	tɔɔn thîi khun tɛ̀ŋŋaan, naaj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your boss give you when you got married?	tɔɔn thîi phǒm tɛ̀ŋŋaan naaj khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm hâj wítthajú phǒm khráp When I got married, my boss gave me a radio.
4.	wan khrítsamâat pii níi, khun ca hâj araj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to give your wife this Christmas?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca hâj khrŷaŋkhrua kháw khráp I think I'll give her kitchen implements.
5.	phîichaaj khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your older brother give you?	phîichaaj phǒm hâj pàakkaa phǒm khráp. My older brother gave me a pen.
6.	khun ca hâj araj lûukchaaj khun khráp What are you going to give your son?	phǒm ca hâj dinsɔ̌ɔ lɛ́ samùt lûukchaaj phǒm khráp I'm going to give my son a pencil and a notebook.

7.	phŷan phŷan khun hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ khwǎn araj khun khráp What kind of presents did your friends give you?	kháw hâj ŋən phǒm khráp They gave me money.
8.	nákphaasǎa khon nán hâj araj khun khráp What did that linguist give you?	kháw hâj náŋsʏ̌y thîi kháw plɛɛ phǒm khráp He gave me a book he translated.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

	Question	Response
1.	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ khɔ̌ɔŋ khun hâj ŋən khun thâwraj khráp How much money did your parents give you?	khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm hâj ŋən phǒm hâa phan bàat khráp My parents gave me five thousand baht.
2.	kháw hâj ŋən khoncháj kháw dyan la thâwraj khráp How much does he give his servants per month?	kháw hâj ŋən khoncháj kháw dyan.la sìiróɔj bàat khráp He gives his servants four hundred baht per month.
3.	thaaŋrâatchakaan hâj ŋən rooŋrian pii la thâwraj khráp How much does the government give the school a year?	thaaŋrâatchakaan hâj ŋən rooŋrian pii la pɛ̀ɛt phan bàat khráp The government gives the school 8,000 baht a year.

4.	thaaŋrooŋrian hâj náŋsy̌y nákrian khon la kìi lêm khráp How many books per student does the school give?	thaaŋrooŋrian hâj náŋsy̌y nákrian khon la sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm khráp The school gives two books to each student.
5.	thaaŋráan hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ khwǎn kháw kìi chín khráp How many presents did the shop give them?	thaaŋráan hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ khwǎn kháw sǎam chín khráp The shop gave them three presents.
6.	kháw hâj khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn khun kìi jàaŋ khráp How many kinds of presents did he give you?	kháw hâj khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn (kɛ̀ɛ) phǒm jàaŋ diaw khráp He gave me one kind of present.
7.	kháw hâj náŋsy̌y hɔ̂ŋsamùt kìi lêm khráp How many books did he give to the library?	kháw hâj náŋsy̌y (kɛ̀ɛ) hɔ̂ŋsamùt hâa sìp lêm khráp He gave fifty books to the library.
8.	thaaŋkrasuaŋtàaŋprathêet hâj ŋən khâa náŋsy̌y khun khon la thâwraj khráp How much did the State Department give each person for books? (lit. give you per person.)	thaaŋkrasuaŋtàaŋprathêet hâj ŋən khâa náŋsy̌y raw khon la sǎam sìp dɔɔ lâa The State Department gave us 30 dollars per person for books.
9.	khun hâj ŋən lûuk wan la thâwraj khráp How much money per day do you give your child?	phǒm hâj ŋən lûuk wan la sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat khráp I give him/her 2 baht per day.

NOTE: kɛ̀ɛ 'to' may be used in rather formal style or in cases where ambiguity might occur as in the examples above in which the receiver might be confused with possessor.

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khraj hâj náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi khun khráp Who gave you these two books?	nákphaasǎa hâj (náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi) phǒm khráp The linguist gave me these two books.
2,	khraj hâj samùt sìi lêmníi khun khráp Who gave you these four notebooks?	phŷan phǒm hâj samùt sìi lêmníi phǒm khráp My friend gave me these four notebooks.
3.	khraj hâj pàakkaa dâam níi khun khráp Who gave you this pen?	khun ànúrôot hâj pàakkaa dâam níi phǒm khráp Anuroj gave me this pen.
4.	khraj hâj rûup bajníi khun khráp Who gave you this picture?	phátthanaakɔɔn khon nán hâj rûup bajníi phǒm khráp That community development worker gave me this picture.
5.	khraj hâj phɛ̌ɛnthîi sɔ̌ɔŋ phɛ̀ɛn níi khun khráp Who gave you these two maps?	bɔɔrisàt námman hâj phɛ̌ɛnthîi sɔ̌ɔŋ phɛ̀ɛnníi phǒm khráp The gasoline company gave me these two maps.
6.	khraj hâj náŋsy̌y phaasǎa thaj sìp lêmníi kɛ̀ɛ hɔ̂ŋsamùt khráp Who gave these ten Thai language books to the library?	krasuaŋ kaantàaŋprathêet ameerikan hâj náŋsy̌y sìp lêmníi kɛ̀ɛ hɔ̂ŋsamùt khráp The American Department of State gave these ten books to the library.

e) Transformation Substitution Drill

Instructor: kháw hâj náŋsy̌y lêm níi phǒm
: náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm
Student: kháw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm

Continue by substituting the following items in the appropriate structure.

1. pàakkaa dâam níi
2. kâwîi sǎam tua
3. ŋən camnuan níi
4. ŋən hâa rɔ́ɔj bàat
5. ŋən khâa aahǎan
6. bâan lǎŋ níi
7. dinsɔ̌ɔ thêŋ nán
8. weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ

f) Sentence Construction Drill

Using the cue words given student 1 will form a question with haj as the main verb. Student 2 will give an appropriate answer. (Study the examples below carefully.)

Example 1.

I: phyân phŷan , araj, khun
S 1: phŷan phŷan hâj araj khun khráp
S 2: kháw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm khráp

Example 2:

I: phŷan phŷan , khun, náŋsy̌y kìi lêm

S 1: phŷan phŷan hâj náŋsy̌y khun kìi lêm khráp

S 2: kháw hâj náŋsy̌y phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm khráp

Example 3:

I: phŷan phŷan , khun, náŋsy̌y lêm níi, ry̌y

S 1: phŷan phŷan hâj náŋsy̌y lêm níi khun ry̌y khráp

S 2: khráp (or) plàaw khráp

Example 4:

I: khraj, khun, náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi

S 1: khraj hâj náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi khun khráp

S 2: khruu hâj náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi phǒm khráp

Continue by using the following cue words:

1. câwnâathîi juusít, khun , araj
2. khun praphâat, khun, phɛ̌ɛnthîi prathêetthaj, kìi phɛ̀ɛn
3. krasuaŋtàaŋprathêet, nákrian, ŋəən khâanáŋsy̌y, khon la thâwràj
4. khun, phanrajaa khun, khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn, thúk pii, rýplàaw
5. khraj, khun, samùt lêm níi
6. khraj, khun, samùt sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm
7. khraj, khun, tó tua níi
8. kháw, khun, ŋəən kìi bàat
9. kháw, khon cháj, ŋəən, dyan la, kìi bàat
10. khun cɔɔn, khun, pàakkaa dâam níi, ry̌y
11. kháw, phǒm, weelaa, nỳŋ chûamooŋ

g) Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What did you buy your wife?	phǒm sýy pàakkaa hâj kháw nỳŋ dâam khráp I bought her a pen.
2.	wan khrítsamâat pii nâa khun ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to buy your wife for Christmas next year?	phǒm ca sýy naalikaa hâj kháw khráp I'm going to buy a watch for her.
3.	wan tɛ̀ŋŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ phŷan khun khun sýy araj hâj kháw khráp What did you buy for your friend on his wedding day?	phǒm sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ sǎmràp tɛ̀ŋ bâan hâj kháw khráp I bought things for decorating the house for him.
4.	pii thîi lɛ́ɛw phanrajaa khun sýy araj hâj khun What did your wife buy for you last year?	kháw sýy sŷa hâj phǒm nỳŋ tua She bought a shirt for for me.
5.	khun ca sýy araj hâj phŷan khun What are you going to buy for your friend?	phǒm khít wâa ca sýy náŋsɯ̌y diidii hâj kháw I think I'll buy him some good books.

h) Familiarization Drill

1. A: khun sǒmsǐi hâj rûup phǒm
Miss Somsri gave me some pictures.

B: khun dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi kìi baj khráp
How many pictures did you get from Miss Somsri?

A: phǒm dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi hâa baj khráp
I got five pictures from Miss Somsri.

2. A: khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ hâj ŋən phǒm
My parents gave me some money.

B: khun dâj ŋən càak khun phɔ̂ɔkhun mɛ̂ɛ kìi bàat khráp
How many baht did you get from your parents?

A: phǒm dâj ŋən càak khunphɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ lǎaj rɔ́ɔj
bàat khráp
I got several hundred baht from my parents.

3. A: thaaŋ sathǎanthûut hâj náŋsy̌y tàaŋtàaŋ kɛ̀ɛ
rooŋrian raw.
The Embassy gave various books to our school.

B: raw dâj náŋsy̌y càak sathǎanthûut kìi lêm khráp
How many books did we get from the Embassy?

A: raw dâj náŋsy̌y tàaŋ tàaŋ càak sathǎanthûut raaw
raaw sǎamsìp lêm khráp
We got about 30 different books from the Embassy.

4. A: krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet hâj ŋən khâa náŋsɯ̌ɯ raw

The State Department gave us money for buying books.

B: raw dâj ŋən khâa náŋsɯ̌ɯ khon la thâwràj khráp

How much money did each person get for buying books?

A: raw dâj ŋən khâa náŋsɯ̌ɯ khon la sǎamsìp dɔɔlâa khráp

We got 30 dollars a person (for buying books).

i) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn	phǒm dâj khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn I got presents.
2.	phǒm dâj ŋən lǎaj rɔ́ɔj I got several hundred (baht).
3. ŋaan	phǒm dâj ŋən I got work.
4. bâan	phǒm dâj bâan I got a house.
5. khɔ̌ɔŋcháj	phǒm dâj khɔɔŋcháj I got things to use.
6. náŋsɯ̌ɯ 2 lêm	phǒm dâj náŋsɯ̌ɯ sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm I got two books.

7.	khrŷaŋ fajfáa	phóm dâj khrŷaŋ fajfáa I got electrical equipment.
8.	wítthajú	phǒm dâj wítthajú I got a radio.
9.	thii wii	phǒm dâj thii wii I got a TV.
10.	kâwii màj	phǒm dâj kâwîi màj I got a new chair.
11.	bəə thoorasàp khǒɔŋ kháw	phǒm dâj bəə thoorasàp khǒɔŋ kháw I got her telephone number.
12.	khanɛɛn dii	phǒm dâj khanɛɛn dii I got good grades.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw What shall I give him?	hâj náŋsýy sikhráp Give a book.
2.	phǒm khuan ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa dii What shall I give my wife?	sýy khrŷaŋkhrua hâj kháw sikhráp Buy some kitchen utensils for her.
3.	phǒm khuan ca thǎam khraj dii Who shall I ask?	thǎam nákphaasǎa sikhráp Ask the linguist.

4.	phǒm khuan ca thaan thîi ráannǎj dii Which restaurant shall I eat at?	thaan thîi ráanníi sikráp Eat at this restaurant.
5.	phǒm khuan ca paj jaŋŋaj dii How shall I go?	paj rótfaj sikhráp Go by train.

k) Expansion Drill

1. araj dii
   sýy araj dii
   khuan ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii
   phǒm ca sýy khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn araj hâj kháw dii

2. khraj dii
   chəən khraj dii
   ca chəən khraj dii
   raw khuan ca chəən khraj dii

3. khraj dii
   thǎam khraj dii
   khuan ca thǎam khraj dii
   phǒm khuan ca thǎam khraj dii

4. nǎj dii
   thîinǎj dii
   thaan thîinǎj dii
   thaan aahǎan thîinǎj dii
   thaan aahǎan khlaaŋwan thîinǎj dii
   khuan ca thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan thîinǎj dii
   raw khuan ca thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan thîinǎj dii

5. nǎj dii
   bòt nǎj dii
   rian bòt nǎj dii
   khuan ca rian bòt nǎj dii
   raw khuan ca rian bòt nǎj dii

6. nǎj dii
   wan nǎj dii
   lían wan nǎj dii
   mii ŋaanlían wan nǎj dii
   khuan ca mii ŋaanlían wan nǎj dii
   raw khuan ca mii ŋaanlían wan nǎj dii

7. jaŋŋaj dii
   tham jaŋŋaj dii
   khuan ca tham jaŋŋaj dii
   phǒm khuan ca tham jaŋŋaj dii

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

sámràp means 'for' in the sense of function (for doing such and such).

	Question	Response
1.	hɔ̂ŋnám hɔ̂ŋníi, sámràp khraj Who is this toilet for?	hɔ̂ŋnám hɔ̂ŋníi, sámràp phûujǐŋ This toilet is for women. (mâj châj sámràp phûuchaaj) It's not for men.
2.	kâwîi tuaníi, sámràp khraj Who is this chair for?	kâwîi tuaníi, sámràp khruu This chair is for the teacher. (mâj châj sámràp nákrian) It's not for students.

3.	khrŷaŋkhrua chútníi, sámràp khraj Who is this set of kitchen utensils for?	khrŷaŋkhrua chútníi sámràp câwsǎaw It's for the bride. (mâj châj sámràp câwbàaw.) It's not for the groom.
4.	ŋəən camnuan níi, pen ŋən sámràp tham araj What is this amount of money for (for doing what)?	ŋəən camnuan níi pen ŋən sámràp sýy aahǎan This sum of money is for food.
5.	náŋsŷy lêm níi, cháj sámràp tham araj khráp What is this book used for?	náŋsŷy lêm níi, cháj sámràp sɔ̌ɔn nákrian This book is used for teaching students.
6.	hɔ̂ŋníi cháj sámràp tham araj What is this room used for?	hɔ̂ŋníi cháj sámràp prachum nákrian This room is used for student meetings.
7.	bâan lǎaj lǎŋ thîi jùu troŋkan khâam kàp sathǎanthûut pen thîi sámràp tham araj khráp What are the (several) houses opposite the Embassy for?	pen thîi sámràp phanákŋaan sathǎanthûut jùu khráp They are for Embassy employees to live in.

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa kháw cháj náŋsy̌y araj What books do they use at the language school?	thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa, kháw cháj náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ rooŋrian At the language school they use the school's books.
2.	khun cháj rót araj What kind of car did you use?	phǒm cháj rót ameerikan I used an American car.
3.	kháw cháj ŋən wan la kìi dɔɔ lâa How many dollars does he spend per day?	kháw cháj ŋən wan la hâa sìp sen. He spends 50 cents a day.
4.	thîi myaŋ thaj, kháw cháj ŋəən araj What kind of money do they use in Thailand?	thîi myaŋ thaj, kháw cháj ŋəən bàat In Thailand they use 'bahts'.
5.	khun cháj araj (sámràp) khǐan náŋsy̌y What do you use for writing?	phǒm cháj tháŋ pàakkaa lɛ́ dinsɔ̌ɔ (sámràp) khǐan náŋsy̌y I use both pen and pencil for writing.

n) Expansion Drill

1. baaŋ khon pen thahǎan
   nákrian baaŋ khon pen thahǎan
   nákrian thîinîi baaŋ khon pen thahǎan

2. baaŋ lêm dii
   náŋsy̌y baaŋ lêm dii
   náŋsy̌y phaasǎa thaj baaŋ lêm dii

3. baaŋ khrŷaŋ cháj mâj dâj
   khrŷaŋ baaŋ khrŷaŋ cháj mâj dâj
   khrŷaŋ fajfáa baaŋ khrŷaŋ cháj mâj dâj

4. baaŋ tambon mâj mii náam
   tambon baaŋ tambon mâj mii náam
   tambon thîi jùu klaj klaj baaŋ tambon mâj mii náam

o) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. phŷan	phŷan baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋən Some friends gave things; some, money.
2. khruu	khruu baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋən Some teachers gave things; some, money.
3. mɔ̌ɔ	mɔ̌ɔ baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋən Some doctors gave things; some, money.
4. khâarâatchakaan	khâarâatchakaan baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋən Some employees gave things; some, money.

5.	câwnâathîi	câwnâathîi baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj khɔ̌ɔŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ hâj ŋən Some officials gave things; some, money.

p) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	kèŋ	nákrian baaŋ khon kɔ̂ kèŋ, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ mâj kèŋ Some students are good; some aren't.
2.	sǔaj	nákrian baaŋ khon kɔ̂ sǔaj, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ mâj sǔaj Some students are pretty; some aren't.
3.	phûujǐŋ	phûujǐŋ baaŋ khon kɔ̂ sǔaj, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ mâj sǔaj Some women are pretty; some aren't.
4.	dii	phûujǐŋ baaŋ khon kɔ̂ dii, baaŋ khon kɔ̂ mâj dii Some women are good; some aren't.
5.	náŋsy̌y	náŋsy̌y baaŋ lêm kɔ̂ dii, baaŋ lêm kɔ̂ mâj dii Some books are good; some aren't.
6.	sanùk	náŋsy̌y baaŋ lêm kɔ̂ sanùk, baaŋ lêm kɔ̂ mâj sanùk Some books are amusing; some aren't.

q) Substitution Drill (Using baaŋ with time expressions)

	Cue	Pattern
1.	wan	baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ maa, baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ mâj maa Some days he comes; some he doesn't.
2.	chûamooŋ	baaŋ chûamooŋ kháw kɔ̂ maa, baaŋ chûamooŋ kháw kɔ̂ mâj maa Some hours he comes; some he doesn't.
3.	khráŋ	baaŋ khráŋ kháw kɔ̂ maa, baaŋ khráŋ kháw kɔ̂ mâj maa Some times he comes; some times he doesn't.
4.	wan	baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ maa, baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ mâj maa Some days he comes; some he doesn't.
5.	paj thamŋaan	baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ paj thamŋaan, baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ mâj paj thamŋaan Some days he goes to work; some he doesn't.
6.	jùu bâan	baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ jùu bâan, baaŋ wan kháw kɔ̂ mâj jùu bâan Some days she's at home; some she isn't.
7.	aakàat dii	baaŋ wan aakàat kɔ̂ dii, baaŋ wan aakàat kɔ̂ mâj dii Some days the weather's fine; some it isn't.

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun rúucàk thǎŋ sǎamii lɛ́ phanrajaa rýkhráp Do you know both the husband and wife?	khráp, phǒm rúucàk kháw tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ khon Yes, I know both of them.
2.	khun chɔ̂ɔp tháŋ phaasǎathaj lɛ́ aahǎanthaj rýkhráp Do you like both the Thai language and Thai food?	khráp, phǒm chɔ̂ɔp tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ Yes. I like both (things).
3.	khun khəəj jùu tháŋ faràŋsèet lɛ́ sapeen rýkhráp Have you lived in both France and Spain?	khráp, phǒm khəəj jùu tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ prathêet Yes, I have lived in both countries.
4.	khun phûut dâj tháŋ phaasǎa ciin lɛ́ phaasǎa rátsia rýkhráp Can you speak both Chinese and Russian?	khráp, phǒm phûut dâj tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ phaasǎa Yes, I can speak both languages.
5.	khun khəəj jùu tháŋ chiaŋmàj lɛ́ kruŋthêep rýkhráp Have you lived in both Chiangmai and Bangkok?	khráp, phǒm khəəj jùu tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ hɛ̀ɛŋ Yes, I have lived in both places.
6.	khun hâj tháŋ ŋən lɛ́ aahǎan kháw rýy khráp Did you give him both money and food?	khráp, phǒm hâj kháw tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ Yes, I gave him both things.

7.	kháw dâj khanɛɛn dii tháŋ khraaw thîi lɛ́ɛw lɛ́ khraawníi rɯ̌y knráp Did he get good grades both the time before and this time?	khráp, kháw dâj khanɛɛn dii tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ khraaw (khráŋ) Yes, he got good grades both times.

s) Noun Compound Drill

Form Noun Compounds like khrŷaŋ + { Noun / Verb

	Verb or Noun		Noun Compound	
1.	cháj	'to use'	khryâŋcháj	'things to see'
2.	khrua	'kitchen'	khryâŋkhrua	'kitchen utensils'
3.	khǐan	'to write'	khryâŋkhǐan	'writing equipment'
4.	tɛ̀ŋ bâan	'to decorate a house'	khryâŋtɛ̀ŋbâan	'house decoration'

26.4 EXERCISES

a) Students will discuss invitations they have received specifying type of activity, time, and place.

b) Students will discuss various gifts they have given and received.

c) One student will ask another's opinion about something he is considering doing (giving a gift, etc.). The second will give his opinion.

26.5 VOCABULARY

anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
bəə	number
camnuan	amount
câwsǎaw (khon)	bride
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money)
chín	piece (classifier for things)
chút	set of (something)
há/hâ	the male and female polite particles informal for khráp or khâ, in responses
jàaŋ	classifier for things
jâat/jâatjâat	relative(s)
kàw	old (of non living things), former (of living and non living things)
kɛ̀ɛ	to, for
khâa	fee, cost, price, value
khanɛɛn (khanɛɛn)	grade, score point(s)
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khɔ̌ɔŋcháj (jàaŋ, an, chín)	something useful, utensils
khrŷaŋ cháj fájfáa (khrŷaŋ)	electrical
khrŷaŋ faj fáa (khrŷaŋ)	electrical equipment
khryâŋkhrua (khrŷaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khrŷaŋ ryan (khrŷaŋ)	furniture
krasuaŋ kaantàaŋ prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)

khráŋ	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khrítsamâat	Christmas
la or lá	per, a, the
mâŋ	some, any (pronominal, another form of bâaŋ)
naaj (khon)	boss
nákphaasǎa (khon)	linguistic scientist
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
phanákŋaan (khon)	employee
pháthanaakɔɔn (khon)	community development worker
plɛɛ	to translate
prachum	meeting
sámràp	for
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
sùanmâak	most of, in the main
tɛ̀ŋ	to decorate
thii wii (khrŷaŋ)	TV
wítthajú (khrŷaŋ, an)	radio

LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

27.0 BASIC DIALOG. Sending a Servant for a Taxi

naaj:	chûaj rîak théksîi hâj (phǒm) khan nyŋ bɔ̀ɔk kháw wâa paj sǎthɔɔn ləəj cátsamɛ̀k paj nɔ̀j	Please call a taxi for me. Tell him (I'm) going to Sathorn a little past JUSMAG.
khoncháj:	ca hâj kháw khɔɔj dûaj máj khá	Will you have him wait?
naaj:	mâj tɔ̂ŋ	That's not necessary.
	(khoncháj klàp maa)	(The servant returns)
naaj:	dâj rót máj	Did you get one?
khoncháj:	dâj khà	Yes, I did.
naaj:	kháw aw thâwràj	How much does he want?
khoncháj:	sìp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht.
naaj:	mâj phɛɛŋ paj lə̌ thammadaa, weelaa chán rîak eeŋ , kháw khít pɛ̀ɛt bàat thâwnán	That's not too much? Usually when I get one myself, they charge only 8 baht.
khoncháj:	tɔɔnníi, kamlaŋ lə̂ək ŋaan.théksîi hǎa jâak khâ.tɔɔ mâj khɔ̂j dâj	It's quitting time now. Taxis are hard to find. Bargaining is hardly possible.

27.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

a) chán 'I' is rarely used by men except when speaking to persons of inferior social status. Women use it more often. They used it (1) with persons of inferior social status, (2) to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.[1]

b) khít thâwràj 'figured or reckoned as how much?' is a reduced form of khít raakhaa thâwràj 'the price is reckoned as how much?' or khít khâadoojsaan thâwràj 'The fare is reckoned as how much?'.

c) After stative verbs like phɛɛŋ 'expensive', kəən paj may occur with the meaning 'excessively, too'. paj occurs in the same position as a reduced form of kəən paj.

d) tɔɔn thîi and weelaa both refer to time and may be translated 'when'; however, weelaa usually refers to a special occasion: weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj 'When (ever) I don't understand'; whereas, tɔɔn thîi refers to a particular period of time tɔɔn thîi khun pen dèk 'When you were a child'.

27.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) hâj occurs in constructions of the following kind:

1. As main verb in the sentence (see 26.2a),
2. As secondary verb with the meaning 'for the benefit or, in place of someone else', chuâj khàp rót hâj (phǒm) 'Please drive for me' kháw tham aahǎan hâj khun thaan 'He makes food for you (to eat).'
3. Or as the main verb with a sentence complement. In constructions of this type it has causative meaning. khun ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj 'What are you going to have your children study?'

---

[1] See Noss, pg. 100.

b) The verbs bɔ̀ɔk 'tell', khɔ̌ɔ 'request', anujâat 'permit' and sàŋ 'order' (like jàak, see 22.2b) are followed by hâj plus Sentence Complement when the utterance tends to be causative in effect.

kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj phǒm khɔɔj kháw

'He told me to wait for him.'

kháw anújâat hâj phǒm rian phaasǎathaj

'He permitted me to study Thai.'

Compare the following two sentences:

1. kháw hâj phǒm khɔɔj kháw 'He had me wait for him.

   The manner in which the request or command is delivered is not specified.

2. kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj phǒm khɔɔj kháw 'He told me to wait for him.'

   The manner in which the command or request is delivered is specified.

c) eeŋ occurs at the end of clauses and has the meaning 'by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help or influence'[1].

phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) eeŋ khráp

'I went to buy coffee myself'.

(Nobody bought it for me.)

---

[1] See Noss, pg. 93

27.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khraj tɔ̀ɔ raakhaa hâj khun khráp Who did your bargaining for you?	phŷan khon thaj khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm tɔ̀ɔ (raakhaa) hâj phǒm khráp A Thai friend of mine did the bargaining for me.
2.	khraj khàp rót hâj khun khráp Who drove the car for you?	phǒm khàp eeŋ khráp I drove (it) myself. (mâj mii khraj khàp hâj) No one drove for me.
3.	khraj tham aahǎan hâj khun thaan khráp Who cooks for you?	phanrajaa phǒm tham (aahǎan) hâj phǒm khráp My wife cooks for me.
4.	phŷan khun paj sýy kaafɛɛ hâj khun rŷy khráp Did your friend go buy coffee for you?	plàaw khráp, phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) eeŋ khráp No, I bought (it) myself.
5.	khraj khǐan còtmǎaj chabàp níi hâj khun khráp Who wrote this letter for you?	phǒm khǐan eeŋ khráp I wrote it myself.
6.	khraj hǎa bâan hâj khun khráp Who looked for a house for you?	phǒm hǎa eeŋ khráp I looked myself.
7.	khraj sýy aahǎan hâj khun khráp Who bought food for you?	phanrajaa phǒm sýy hâj phǒm khráp My wife bought it for me.

b) Substitution Transformation Drill

Cue	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1. phanrajaa phǒm	phǒm mâj dâj tham aahǎan eeŋ I don't cook for myself.	phanrajaa phǒm tham hâj (phǒm) My wife cooks for me.
2. phŷan phǒm	phǒm mâj dâj khǐan còtmǎaj chabàp níi eeŋ I didn't write this letter myself.	phŷan phǒm khǐan hâj A friend of mine wrote it for me.
3. khun thǎawɔɔn	phǒm mâj dâj sýy náŋsýy lêm níi eeŋ I didn't buy this book myself.	khun thǎawɔɔn sýy hâj Thaworn bought it for me.
4. khon khàprót	phǒm mâj dâj khàp rót eeŋ I didn't drive myself.	khon khàprót khàp hâj The chauffeur drove for me.
5. kháw	phǒm mâj dâj paj sòŋ còtmǎaj eeŋ I didn't send the letter myself.	kháw sòŋ hâj He sent it for me.
6. kháw	phǒm mâj dâj khít eeŋ I didn't originate the idea myself.	kháw khít hâj He thought of it for me.

c) Response Drill

Example 1:

T:	pàakkaa, phŷan	pen, friend
S 1:	sýy araj khráp	What did you buy?
S 2:	sýy *pàakkaa* khráp	I bought a pen.
S 1:	sýy hâj khraj khráp	
S 2:	sýy hâj *phŷan* khráp	I bought (it) for a friend.

Example 2:

T:	náŋsýy, tua eeŋ	book, oneself
S 1:	sýy araj khráp	What did you buy?
S 2:	sýy *náŋsýy* khráp	I bought a book.
S 1:	sýy hâj khraj khráp	Who did you buy it for?
S 2:	sýy àan *eeŋ* khráp	I bought (it) to read myself.

Continue the drill by having two students form questions and answers like those above using the following cue words:

1. náŋsýy, tua eeŋ
2. kaafɛɛ, khruu
3. samùt, tua eeŋ
4. aahǎan, phanrajaa
5. khɔ̌ɔŋ khwǎn, phŷan
6. rót, tua eeŋ

d) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	chûaj riak thɛ́ksîi hâj { chán / phǒm } khan nyŋ Please call a taxi for me.
1. sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêmnán	chûaj sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêmnán hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please send me that book.
2. khàp rót	chûaj khàp rót hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please drive the car for me.
3. tham aahǎan	chûaj tham aahǎan hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please cook for me.
4. sýy náŋsy̌yphim	chûaj sýy náŋsy̌yphim hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please buy newspapers for me.
5. chabàp nyŋ	chûaj sýy náŋsy̌yphim hâj chabàp nyŋ Please buy a newspaper for me.
6. nɔ̀ɔj	chûaj sýy náŋsy̌yphim hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please buy a newspaper for me.
7. tɔ̀ɔ thoorasàp	chûaj tɔ̀ɔ thoorasàp hâj nɔ̀ɔj Please make a phone call for me.

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw aw náŋsɯ̌ɯ maa hâj phǒm
   He brought a book to me.

2. kháw khǐan còtmǎaj paj hâj khunmɛ̂ɛ kháw
   He wrote a letter to his mother.

3. kháw sòŋ còtmǎaj hâj phǒm
   He sent a letter to me.

4. kháw khǎaj rót hâj phǒm
   He bought a car for me.

5. kháw sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa thaj hâj phǒm
   He taught Thai to me.

f) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	(khun) ca hâj kháw khɔɔj máj Will you have him wait?
1. paj kìi mooŋ	(khun) ca hâj kháw paj kìi mooŋ At what time will you have him go?
2. phǒm	(khun) ca hâj phǒm paj kìi mooŋ At what time will you have me go?
3. tham araj	(khun) ca hâj phǒm tham araj What will you cause me to do?

4. lûuk khun	(khun) ca hâj lûuk khun tham araj What will you have your children do?
5. rian araj	(khun) ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj What will you have your children study?
6. sýy araj	(khun) ca hâj lûuk khun sýy araj What will you have your children buy?
7. phǒm	(khun) ca hâj phǒm sýy araj. What will you have me buy?
8. tham jaŋŋaj	(khun) ca hâj phǒm tham jaŋŋaj How will you have me do (it)?
9. bɔ̀ɔk kháw máj	(khun) ca hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk kháw máj Will you have me tell him?
10. khɔɔj thîinǎj	(khun) ca hâj phǒm khɔɔj thîinǎj Where will you have me wait?

g) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	kháw hâj thɛ́ksîi khɔɔj He had the taxi wait.
1. phǒm	kháw hâj phǒm khɔɔj He had me wait.
2. paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	kháw hâj phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ He let me go shopping.

3. phák phɔ̀ɔn	kháw hâj phǒm phák phɔ̀n He let me take a rest.
4. mɔ̌ɔ hâj	mɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm phák phɔ̀n The doctor had me take a rest.
5. thaan jaa	mɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm thaan jaa The doctor had me take medicine.
6. jùt thamŋaan	mɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm jùt thamŋaan The doctor had me stop working.
7. naaj phǒm hâj	naaj phǒm hâj phǒm jùt thamŋaan My boss had me stop working.
8. thoo maa hǎa khun	naaj phǒm hâj phǒm thoo maa hǎa khun My boss had me call you.

h) Transformation-Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. kháw phûut kàp khoncháj 'chuâj riâk thɛ́ksîi hâj khan nyŋ'	kháw hâj khoncháj tham araj	kháw hâj khoncháj riâk thɛ́ksîi hâj kháw
He said to a servant 'call a taxi for me'.	What did he have the servant do?	He had the servant call a taxi.

2.	kháw phûut kàp khun 'paj hǎa khun cɔɔn nɔ̀ɔj' He said to you, 'Go see John'.	kháw hâj khun tham araj What did he have you do?	kháw hâj phǒm paj hǎa khun cɔɔn He had me go to see John.
3.	mɛ̂ɛ phûut kàp lûuk 'nâŋ loŋ' The mother said to her child, 'Sit down'.	mɛ̂ɛ hâj lûuk tham araj What did the mother have her child do?	mɛ̂ɛ hâj lûuk nâŋ loŋ The mother had her child sit down.
4.	khruu phûut kàp nákrian 'phûut taam khruu' The teacher said to the student 'Say after me'.	khruu hâj nákrian tham araj What did the teacher have the student do?	khruu hâj nákrian phûut taam khruu The teacher had the student repeat after her.
5.	khun sawàt phûut kàp khun sǒmsàk 'chuâj sòŋ náŋsy̌y lêmnán hâj phǒm nɔ̀ɔj'. Sawat said to Somsak 'Please send me that book'.	khun sawàt hâj khun sǒmsàk tham araj What did Sawat have Somsak do?	khun sawàt hâj khun sǒmsàk sòŋ náŋsy̌y Sawat had Somsak send him a book.

i) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khun

   He told me to tell you.

2. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khun

   He ordered me to tell you.

3. kháw khɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khun

   He requested me to tell you.

4. kháw anújaât hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khun

   He allowed me to tell you.

j) Transformation-Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
(Student 1 to Student 2)	(Teacher)	(Student 2)
1. 'chuâj bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun cɔɔn paj hǎa phǒm nɔ̀ɔj 'Please tell John to come to see me'.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun tham araj What did he tell you to do?	kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj phǒm chuâj bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun cɔɔn paj hǎa kháw He told me to tell John to go to see him.
2. 'paj dǐawnií' Go now.	kháw sàŋ hâj khun tham araj What did he order you to do?	kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm paj dǐawnií He ordered me to go now.

3.	'karunaa athíbaaj nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp' Please explain.	kháw khɔ̌ɔ hâj khun tham araj What did he ask you to do?	kháw khɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm athíbaaj He asked me to explain.
4.	'jyyn jùu thîinîi, jàa paj nǎj'. Stand here. Don't go	kháw sàŋ hâj khun tham araj What did he order you to do?	kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm jyyn jùu thîinîi, mâj hâj phǒm paj nǎj He ordered me to stand here, not to go anywhere.
5.	'khun khɔɔj phǒm duâj nakhráp' Wait for me.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun tham araj What did he tell you to do?	kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj phǒm khɔɔj kháw He told me to wait for him.
6.	'karunaa phûut cháachá nɔ̀ɔj dâj máj khráp Could you please speak slowly.	kháw khɔ̌ɔ hâj khun tham araj What did he request you to do?	kháw khɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm phûut cháachá nɔ̀ɔj He asked me to speak slowly.
7.	'pə̀ət náŋsy̌y dâj' You can open your book.	kháw anujâat hâj khun tham araj What did he permit you to do?	kháw anujâat hâj phǒm pə̀ət náŋsy̌y He permitted me to open the book.
8.	'paj dâj' You may go.	kháw anújâat hâj khun tham araj What did he let you do?	kháw anujâat hâj phǒm paj He let me go.

k) Transformation Drill (Change pattern 1 to 2 or vice versa.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	thaaŋrâatchakaan sàŋ hâj phǒm riaŋ phaasǎa thaj The government ordered me to study Thai.	thaaŋrâatchakaan hâj phǒm rian phaasǎathaj The government had me study Thai.
2.	kháw anújâat hâj phǒm ɔ̀ɔk kɔ̀ɔn weelaa He permitted me to leave before time.	kháw hâj phǒm ɔ̀ɔk kɔ̀ɔn weelaa He had me leave before time.
3.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk hâj khun chuâj riâk thɛ́ksîi hâj kháw He told you to call a taxi for him.	kháw hâj khun chuâj riâk thɛ́ksiî hâj kháw He had you call a taxi for him.
4.	kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm khɔɔj jùu thîinîi kɔ̀ɔn He ordered me to wait here first.	kháw hâj phǒm khɔɔj jùu thîinîi kɔ̀ɔn He had me wait here first.
5.	kháw anújâat hâj phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj (dâj) He permitted me to study Thai.	kháw hâj phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj (dâj) He had me study Thai.
6.	phanrajaa phǒm khɔ̌ɔ hâj phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj kháw My wife asked me to go shopping for her.	phanrajaa phǒm hâj phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj kháw My wife had me go shopping for her.

7.	kháw sàŋ hâj thɛ́ksîi khàp rót cháachá a He ordered the taxi to drive slowly.	kháw hâj thɛ́ksîi khàp rót cháachá a He had the taxi drive slowly.

1) Transformation Drill (Change from direct to indirect statement.)

	Pattern 1 (direct)	Pattern 2 (indirect)
1.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa jàa duu náŋsy̌y He said to me, 'Don't look at your book.'	kháw bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj phǒm duu náŋsy̌y He told me not to look at my book.
2.	kháw sàŋ phǒm wâa jàa bɔ̀ɔk khraj He ordered me, 'Don't tell anybody.'	kháw sàŋ mâj hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khraj He ordered me not to tell anybody.
3.	khruu bɔ̀ɔk nákrian wâa jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan The teacher said to the students, 'Don't speak English.'	khruu bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj nákrian phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan The teacher told the students not to speak English.
4.	kháw khɔ̌ɔ phǒm wâa jàa phûut ryâŋníí He requested me, 'Don't talk about this subject.'	kháw khɔ̌ɔ mâj hâj phǒm phûut ryâŋníí He asked me not to talk about this matter.
5.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk thɛ́ksîi wâa jàa khàprót rew He said to the taxi (driver), 'Don't drive fast.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj thɛ́ksiî khàp rót rew He told the taxi (driver) not to drive fast.

6.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa jàa sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ ráannán He said to me, 'Don't shop in that shop.'	kháw bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj phǒm sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ ráannán He told me not to shop in that shop.
7.	mɔ̌ɔ bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa jàa dỳym námkhlɔɔŋ The doctor said to me, 'Don't drink canal water.'	mɔ̌ɔ bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj phǒm dỳym námkhlɔɔŋ The doctor told me not to drink canal water.

m) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw sàŋ mâj hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khraj He ordered me not to tell anyone.	kháw mâj hâj phǒm bɔ̀ɔk khraj He didn't let me tell anyone.
2.	kháw mâj anúJâat hâj phǒm paj rya He didn't permit me to go by boat.	kháw mâj hâj phǒm paj rya He didn't let me go by boat.
3.	khruu bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj nákrian phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan The teacher told the students not to speak English.	khruu mâj hâj nákrian phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan The teacher didn't let the student speak English.

4.	kháw khɔ̌ɔ mâj hâj phǒm phûut ryâŋnií He asked me not to talk about this matter.	kháw mâj hâj phǒm phûut ryâŋnií He didn't let me talk about this matter.
5.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk mâj hâj phǒm maa He told me not to come.	kháw mâj hâj phǒm maa He didn't let me come.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	rót thɛ́ksîi hǎa jâak It's hard to find a taxi.
1. ráan nán	raan nán hǎa jâak It's hard to find that shop.
2. bâan kháw	bâan kháw hǎa jâak It's hard to find his house.
3. náŋsy̌y lêm nií	náŋsy̌y lêmnií hǎa jâak It's hard to find this book.
4. khoncháj diidii	khoncháj diidii hǎa jâak It's hard to find good servants.
5. bâan diidii	bâan diidii hǎa jâak It's hard to find good houses.
6. nákrian kèŋkèŋ jàaŋnii	nákrian kèŋkèŋ jaŋnií hǎa jâak Smart students like this are hard to find.

o) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the question.)

	Question	Response
1.	jâak máj	mâj jâak
2.	hǎa jâak máj	hǎa mâj jâak
3.	tham jâak máj	tham mâj jâak
4.	khǐan jâak máj	khǐan mâj jâak
5.	ɔ̀ɔk sǐaŋ jâak máj	ɔ̀ɔk sǐaŋ mâj jâak
6.	àan jâak máj	àan mâj jâak
7.	khâwcaj jâak máj	khâwcaj mâj jâak
8.	duu jâak máj	duu mâj jâak
9.	phóp jâak máj	phóp mâj jâak
10.	dâj jâak máj	dâj mâj jâak
11.	cháj jâak máj	cháj mâj jâak
12.	khàp jâak máj	khàp mâj jâak
13.	rian jâak máj	rian mâj jâak
14.	faŋ jâak máj	faŋ mâj jâak
15.	khǎaj jâak máj	khǎaj mâj jâak
16.	khít jâak máj	khít mâj jâak
17.	thǎam jâak máj	thǎam mâj jâak
18.	thaan jâak máj	thaan mâaj jâak
19.	cam jâak máj	cam mâj jâak

p) Substitution Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. khamthǎam khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw, tɔ̀ɔp	khamthǎam khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw tɔ̀ɔk jâak máj	tɔ̀ɔp mâj jâak { əhá rɔɔk khráp
	Is his question hard to answer?	No, it isn't.

2.	bâan khun, hǎa	bǎan khun hǎa jâak máj Is your house hard to find?	hǎa mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
3.	jaa níi, thaan	jaa níi thaan jâak máj Is this medicine hard to take?	thaan mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
4.	aahǎan thaj, tham	aahǎan thaj tham jâak máj Is it hard to make Thai food?	tham mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
5.	kham thaj, sakòt	kham thaj sakòt jâak máj Is it hard to drive this car?	sakòt mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
6.	rót khaanníi, khàp	rót khanníi khàp jâak máj Is it hard to drive this car?	khàp mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
7.	pratuu baan níi, pìt	pratuu baanníi pìt jâak máj Is this door hard to shut?	pìt mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
8.	kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít, faŋ	kháw phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt faŋ jâak máj Is his English hard to understand?	faŋ mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.

9.	tua nǎŋsy̌y thaj, khǐan	tua nǎŋsy̌y thaj khǐan jâak máj Is it hard to write Thai letters?	khǐan mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
10.	phûujǐŋ thaj, rúucàk	phûujǐŋ thaj rúucàk jâak máj Is it hard to get to know Thai women?	rúucàk mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
11.	nǎŋsy̌y lêm níi, àan	nǎŋsy̌y lêm níi àan jâak máj Is it hard to read this book?	àan mâj jâak əhá No, it isn't.
12.	naamsakun khonthaj, cam	naamsakun khonthaj cam jâak máj Are Thai names hard to remember?	cam mâj jâak əhá No, they aren't.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	weelaa nákrian phûut phìt, khruu khuan ca tham jaŋŋaj When a student speaks incorrectly, what should the teacher do?	weelaa nákrian phûut phìt, khruu khuan ca kɛ̂ɛ When a student speaks incorrectly, the teacher should correct (him).
2.	weelaa khun mâj khâwcaj, khun thǎam khraj When you don't understand, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj, phǒm thǎam khruu When I don't understand, I ask the teacher.

3.	weelaa khun phóp khonthaj, khun phûut phaasǎa araj kakháw When you meet a Thai, what language do you speak to him?	weelaa phǒm phóp khonthaj, phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj kakháw When I meet a Thai, I speak Thai to him.
4.	weelaa khun mâj sabaaj, khun paj hǎa khraj When you are not well, whom do you go to see?	weelaa phǒm mâj sabaaj, phǒm paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ When I'm not well, I go to the doctor's.
5.	weelaa khun jùt phák, khun tham araj bâaŋ When you take a break, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm jùt phák, phǒm khuj kàp phŷan When I take a break, I talk to friends.
6.	weelaa khun tɔ̀ɔp khruu, khun khít pen phaasǎa araj When you answer the teacher, what language do you think in?	weelaa phǒm tɔ̀ɔp khruu, phǒm mák ca khít pen phaasǎa aŋkrìt kɔ̀ɔn When I answer the teacher, I usually think first in English.

r) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. hǎa mɔ̌ɔ	weelaa khun mâj sabaaj, khun tham jaŋŋaj When you are not well, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm mâj sabaaj, phǒm mák ca paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ When I'm not well, I usually go to the doctor's.

2.	mâj	weelaa kháw phûut rew rew khun khâwcaj máj When he speaks fast, do you understand.	weelaa kháw phûut rew rew, phǒm mâj khâwcaj When he speaks fast, I don't understand.
3.	àan náŋsy̌y	weelaa khun wâaŋ, khun tham araj When you are free, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm wâaŋ, phǒm àan náŋsy̌y When I'm not busy, I read.
4.	duu náŋsy̌y	weelaa khun ca sɔ̀ɔp, khun khuan tham araj When you are going to have a test, what would you do?	weelaa phǒm ca sɔ̀ɔp phǒm khuan duu náŋsy̌y When I'm going to have a test, I should study.
5.	aŋkrìt	weelaa khun tɔ̀ɔp khruu, khun khít pen phaasǎa araj When you answer the teacher, what language do you think in?	weelaa phǒm tɔ̀ɔp khruu, phǒm khít pen phaasǎa aŋkrìt When I answer the teacher, I think in English.
6.	kɛ̂ɛ	weelaa khun phûut phìt, khruu khuan ca tham jaŋŋaj When you speak incorrectly, what should the teacher do?	weelaa phǒm phûut phìt, khruu khuan ca kɛ̂ɛ When I speak incorrectly, the teacher should correct me.

7.	thǎam khruu	weelaa khun mâj khâwcaj, khun tham jaŋŋaj When you don't understand, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj, phǒm thǎam khruu When I don't understand, I ask the teacher.
8.	paj thaan kaafɛɛ	weelaa khun jùt phák khun tham araj When you take a break, what do you do?	weelaa phǒm jùt phák, phǒm paj thaan kaafɛɛ When I take a break I go drink coffee.
9.	paj chaaj thalee	weelaa aakàat rɔ́ɔn, khon ameerikan sùan mâak chɔ̂ɔp paj thîaw thîinǎj When the weather's hot, where do most Americans like to go on vacations?	weelaa aakàat rɔ́ɔn, khon ameerikan sùan mâak chɔ̂ɔp paj chaajthalee When the weather's hot, most Americans like to go to the seashore.

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	tɔɔn thîi khun pen dèk, khun rian náŋsy̌y thîinǎj When you were a child, where did you go to school?	tɔɔn thîi phǒm pen dèk, phǒm rian náŋsy̌y thîi tàŋcaŋwàt When I was a child, I studied in the provinces (outside Bangkok).

2.	tɔɔn thîi kháw maa hǎa khun, khun paj nǎj When he came to see you, where were you gone?	tɔɔn thîi kháw maa hǎa phǒm, phǒm paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk When he came to see me, I had gone out shopping.
3.	tɔɔn thîi khun jùu thîi prathâet wîatnaam, khun mii tamnɛ̀ɛŋ araj When you were stationed in Vietnam, what was your position (rank)?	tɔɔn thîi phǒm jùu thîi prathêet wîatnaam, phǒm pen rɔɔŋ koŋsǔn When I was stationed in Vietnam, I was consul.
4.	tɔɔn thîi khun rə̂əm rian phaasǎa thaj màj màj, khun khít wâa phaasǎa thaj jâak máj When you had just begun to study Thai, did you think it was hard?	tɔɔn thîi phǒm rə̂əm rian phaasǎathaj màj, phǒm khít wâa phaasǎathaj jâak mâak When I first began to study Thai, I thought it was very hard.
5.	tɔɔn thîi khun jaŋ jùu thîi ameerikaa, khun rúucàk kháw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ Did you meet him while you were in America?	tɔɔn thîi phǒm jaŋ jùu thîi ameerikaa, phǒm jaŋ mâj rúucàk kháw I didn't know him when I was in America.
6.	tɔɔn thîi khun jaŋ jùu thîi ameerikaa, khun rian phaasǎa thaj thîinǎj When you were in America, where did you study Thai.	tɔɔn thîi phǒm jaŋ jùu thîi ameerikaa, phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj thîi rooŋrian sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa When I was in America, I studied Thai at a language school.

t) Response Drill

	Cue	Question	Response
1.	raw rian jùu thîi wɔɔchiŋtân	khun rúucàk kháw mŷaraj When were you acquainted with him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw tɔɔn thîi raw rian jùu thîi wɔɔchiŋtân I knew him when we were studying in Washington.
2.	khun ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋ nɔ̂ɔk	kháw maa mŷaraj When did he come?	kháw maa tɔɔn thîi ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋ nɔ̂ɔk He came as you were leaving.
3.	tɛ̀ɛŋŋaan	khun dâj khǒɔŋkhwǎn lǎaj jàaŋ mŷaraj When did you get a lot of gifts?	phǒm dâj khǒɔŋkhwǎn lǎaj jàaŋ tɔɔn thîi phǒm tɛ̀ɛŋŋaan I got a lot of presents when I married.
4.	raw mâj jùu	mii khon maa hǎa mŷaraj When did people come to see (us)?	mii khon maa hǎa tɔɔn thîi raw mâj jùu People came to see us while we were not in.
5.	phŷan phǒm	tɔɔn thîi khun mâj sabaaj, khraj tham aahǎan hâj khun Who cooked for you while you were sick?	phŷan phǒm tham aahǎan hâj tɔɔn thîi phǒm mâj sabaaj My friend cooked for me while I was sick.

6. thîi lópburii	tɔɔn sɔ̌ŋkhraam lôok khráŋ thîi 2, khun jùu thîinǎj Where were you living during World War II?	phǒm jùu thîi lópburii tɔɔn sɔ̌ŋkhraam lôok khráŋ thîi sɔ̌ɔŋ I was living in Lopburi during World War II.

u) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. tɔɔn thîi phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thìi éf-és-aj, weelaa phǒm phûut phìt, khon thaj mák ca kɛ̂ɛ hâj

   When I was studying Thai at the FSI, when (ever) I made a mistake, a Thai usually corrected it.

2. tɔɔn thîi raw jaŋ ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa paj sýy aahǎan, phǒm paj chûaj phanrajaa samə̌ə

   When we were still living in America, when (ever) my wife went to buy food, I always helped her.

3. tɔɔn thîi raw jùu naj ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa phǒm mâj wâaŋ, phǒm chûaj tham aahǎan cháaw hâj kháw

   When we were living in America, when (ever) my wife was busy, I made breakfast for her.

4. tɔɔn thîi phǒm thamŋaan krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet màj màj weelaa kháw chəən phǒm paj ŋaanlíaŋ, phǒm paj samə̌ə

   When I had just begun working at the Foreign Ministry, when (ever) they invited me to a party, I always went.

v) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw mâj dâj páj khondiaw khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua khɔ̌ɔŋkháw
paj duâj

    He didn't go alone. His family went too.

2. wanníí phǒm ca paj thúrá thîi thanaakhaan lɛ́ ca
paj hǎa phŷan thîinân duâj

    Today I'm going to the bank on business and
    I will see a friend there also.

3. kháw pen khon suǎj lɛ́ dii duâj

    She is a beautiful person and good too.

4. phǒm mâj dâj rian phûut thâwnán tɛ̀ rian àan lɛ́
khǐan duâj

    I didn't just learn to speak but to read
    and write also.

5. kháw hâj théksîi paj sòŋ lɛ́ hâj khɔɔj kháw duâj

    He had the taxi pick him up and had it
    wait for him too.

6. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan lɛ́ nákkaanmyaŋ duâj

    He's a government employee and a politician too.

27.3 EXERCISES

a) Student A asks Student B to call a taxi for him. They discuss destination, where he will stop on the way, how long the driver will have to wait, what the cost will be, and whether the cost is too high or not. When Student B points out that it will be hard to get a taxi at that particular time, Student A says he will call one himself.

NOTE: Use the Basic Dialog as a guide only.

b) Student A asks Student B whether he does any of the following things for himself or whether he has someone do them for him; and if so, who does them for him.

1. drive a car
2. go shopping
3. bargain
4. buy food or other things
5. call taxis
6. make telephone calls
7. other activities

c) Student A asks Student B what he told (ask, let, ordered, requested, wanted) someone to do and if he did it. Use the following exchange as a model:

A: khun bɔ̀ɔk (khɔ̌ɔ, anújâat, sàŋ) hâj kháw (phŷan khun, etc.) tham araj

B: phǒm bɔ̀ɔk (khɔ̌ɔ, etc.) hâj kháw khɔɔj jùu thîinîi (thaan jaa, thoo maa hǎa khun, etc.)

A: (kháw) khɔɔj (thaan, etc.) rýplàaw khráp

B: plàaw khráp or khráp

27.4 VOCABULARY

anujâat ... (hâj)	permit
athíbaaj	explain
eeŋ	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence.
ɔ̀ɔk siǎŋ	to pronounce, to voice
baan	classifier for door
chán	I, me. Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
duâj	too, also
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
jùt	to stop
jùt phák	to take a break
kɛ̂ɛ	to correct
kəən paj	excessively
khâadoojsaan	fare
khamthǎam (khɔ̂ɔ)	question
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khon khàprót	chauffeur, driver
khɔ̌ɔ	to request
lôok	world
mâj khɔ̂ɔj (ca)	hardly, rather
mák ca	usually, likely to
nákkaanmyaŋ (khon)	a politician
phák phɔ̀n	to rest

phɛɛŋ	to be expensive
phìt	to be incorrect, a mistake
raakhaa	price
sakòt	to spell (words)
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sɔ̌ŋkhraam	war
sɔ̀ɔp	to test, be tested
taam	to follow, after, along
tamnɛ̀ɛŋ	position (rank)
tɔ̀ɔ (raakhaa)	to bargain
tɔ̀ɔ (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call

LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

28.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation With a Taxi Driver

David:	thɛ́ksîi.	Taxi!
khon khàp thɛ́ksîi: (Taxi driver)	paj nǎj khráp	Where to?
David:	paj pratunám, aw thâwràj	How much to Pratnam?
khon khàp:	sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat khráp	Twelve baht.
David:	cèt bàat, dâj máj	How about seven?
	klâj khɛ̂ɛníi eeŋ	It's right near here.
khon khàp:	mâj wǎj rɔkhráp	Can't do it.
	thɛ̌ɛwnán rót tìt	The traffic's heavy over there.
David:	ŋán, pɛ̀ɛt bàat, paj máj	Then, can you do it for eight?
	khəəj paj dâj pɛ̀ɛt bàat	I've been for eight (before).
khon khàp:	kâaw bàat kɔ̂lɛ́ɛwkan,	Let's say nine baht.
	paj máj	Do you want to go?
David:	paj kɔ̂ paj	If we're going, let's go.
	chûaj khàp cháa cháa nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp	Please drive slowly.

(thɛ́ksîi khàp rew mâak. khun deewít ləəj phûut wâa '...')	(The taxi goes very fast, so David says, '....')

David:	khun khráp, jàa khàp rew nák sikhráp	Say, don't drive so fast.
	karunaa khàp cháa cháa nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp	Could you please slow down a little?

28.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) In affirmative requests stative verbs (dii, cháa, etc.) usually occur in reduplicated form when used as modifiers of other verbs.

phûut cháa cháa nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp 'Speak a little slower.'

nɔ̀ɔj 'a little' usually occurs after the stative verb and serves to soften the request.

In negative requests the stative verb is not usually reduplicated.

jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp 'Don't speak so fast.'

nák 'so, so much' may occur after the stative verb.

b) In the construction jùu klâj klâj khɛ̂ɛ nîi eeŋ, eeŋ is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance.

c) rɔɔk is also pronounced rɔ̀k, rɔ̀ɔk, rɔk, rɔ, when followed by khráp or khâ or ə when followed by há. It is used with statements of negation, or contradiction, or when correcting a misapprehension. It makes a statement milder or less abrupt.

mâj wǎj rɔ̀khráp 'I can't do it.'

d) ná or na with khráp at the end of a sentence indicates that a comment is being made and attention is being called to it. No response to it is necessary, but if one is made, it is khráp.

A:	khɔ̀ɔkkhun mâak ná	'Thanks very much.'
B:	khráp	(I heard you.)

Request = khàp diidii { ná / nakhráp } 'Drive well.'

e) Notice the difference in usage between sí, si, and sî, sí is used to request some one to do something. If it is to be done for the speaker, nɔ̀ɔj or thii may be used to soften the request.

khàp cháachá nɔ̀ɔj sí (or sikhráp)	'Slow down a bit.'

If the speaker is urging someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request, or urging someone to do something that obviously needs doing, he may use sî.

khàp cháachá (nɔ̀j) sî	'Slow down (as I asked you to)'

f) kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan is a phrase which is used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it. English equivalents vary from example to example:

kâaw bàat kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan	'Let's say nine baht.'
waanníi khun khàprót kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan	'How about you driving today'?

28.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	paj pratuunám, aw thâwràj How much to Pratunam?
1. sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ	paj sìijɛ̂ɛk râatprasɔ̌ŋ, aw thâwràj How much to Ratprasong Corner?
2. rooŋnáŋ khiŋ	paj rooŋnǎŋ khiŋ,aw thâwràj How much to King's Cinema?
3. phii éks	paj phiiéks, aw thâwràj How much to the P. X.?
4. thammasàat	paj thammasàat, aw thâwràj How much to Thammasart (University)?
5. juusít, thanɔ̌n sǎathɔɔntâj	paj juusít thanɔ̌n sǎathɔɔn tâj, aw thâwràj How much to USIS on South Sathorn?
6. rooŋphajaabaan mítchân	paj rooŋphajaabaan mítchân, aw thâwràj How much to the Mission Hospital?
7. rooŋrɛɛm khéppitɔ̂n saphaan khwaaj	paj rooŋrɛɛm khéppitɔ̂n saphaan khwaaj, aw thâwràj
8. pathumwan	paj pathumwan, aw thâwràj How much to Patoomwan Corner?

9.	thanǒn sukhǔmwít troŋ klâjklâj sɔɔj jîisìp hâa	paj thanǒn sukhǔmwít troŋ klâjklâj sɔɔj jîisìp hâa, aw thâwràj How much to Sukhumwit Street, right near Lane 25?
10.	thanǒn râatdamnəən troŋ anúsǎawarii prachaathíppataj	paj thanǒn râatdamnəən troŋ anúsǎawarii prachaathíppataj, aw thâwràj How much to Rachadamnoen Street right at the Freedom Monument?

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháp cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Drive a little slower.

2. maa cháawcháaw nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Come a bit earlier.

3. phûut daŋdaŋ nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Speak a bit louder.

4. paj rewrew nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Go a little faster.

5. klàp maa rewrew nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Come back a bit sooner.

6. duu náŋsy̌y mâakmâak nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Study a little bit more.

7. thaan mâak mâak nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp
   Eat a little more.

c) Sentence Construction Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. phûut , cháa	phûut cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Speak a little slower.
2. khàp , cháa	khàp cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Drive a little slower.
3. klàp maa , rew	klàp maa rewrew nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Come back a little sooner.
4. thaan , mâak	thaan mâakmâak nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Eat a little more.
5. jùu , naan	jùu naannaan nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Stay a while longer.
6. tham (aahǎan), mâak	tham mâakmâak nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Do a bit more.
7. phûut , daŋ	phûut daŋdaŋ nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Speak a little louder.
8. phûut kàp kháw , dii	phûut kàp kháw dii dii nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Speak a little better with him.

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp
   Don't drive so fast.

2. jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp
   Don't speak so fast.

3. jàa phûut khɔ̂j nák nakhráp
   Don't speak so softly.

4. jaà dəən cháa nák nakhráp
   Don't walk so slowly.

5. jàa maa cháa nák nakhráp
   Don't come so late.

6. jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp
   Don't come so late (in the morning).

7. jàa paj naan nák nakhráp
   Don't be gone for so long.

e) Transformation Drill

	Affirmative	Negative
1.	khàp cháachá nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Drive a little slower.	jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp Don't drive so fast.
2.	maa cháawcháaw nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Come a little earlier.	jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp Don't come so late.

3.	paj rewrew nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Go a little faster.	jàa paj cháa nák nakhráp Don't go so slow.
4.	phûut khɔ̂jkhɔ̂j nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Speak a little softer.	jàa phûut daŋ nák nakhráp Don't speak so loud.
5.	klàp rewrew nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Come back a little sooner.	jàa klàp cháa nák nakhráp Don't come back so late.
6.	maa cháawcháaw nɔ̀ɔj nakhráp Come a little earlier.	jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp Don't come so late.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	sǔaj caŋ	ná nahá	Very pretty, isn't it?
2.	sǔaj	ná nahá	Pretty, isn't it?
3.	kę̀ŋ caŋ	ná nahá	Very expert, isn't it?
4.	dii	ná nahá	Good, isn't it?
5.	chát caŋ	ná nahá	Very clear (distinct), isn't it?
6.	phɛɛŋ	ná nahá	Expensive, isn't it?

7.	naan caŋ	ná nahá	A very long time, isn't it?
8.	cháa caŋ	ná nahá	Very slow, isn't it?
9.	rew caŋ	ná nakhráp	Very fast (quick), isn't it?
10.	klaj caŋ	ná nahá	Very far, isn't it?
11.	mâak	ná nahá	(It's) a lot, isn't it?
12.	mâak caŋ	ná nahá	(It's) a very great deal, isn't it?

g) Transformation Drill

From the situation given in Column 1, one student makes a comment (as a reaction to the situation) to another student.

	Situation	Comment
1.	faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj chát mâak That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly.	faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj chát caŋ ná That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly, doesn't he?
2.	kháw pen khon nâabỳa He's a bore.	kháw pen khon nâabỳa ná He's a bore, isn't he?

3.	phûujǐŋ khonniı́ sǔaj mâak That woman is very pretty.	phûujǐŋ khonniı́ sǔaj caŋ ná That woman is very pretty, isn't she?
4.	phaasǎa thaj nîi jâak Thai is hard.	phaasǎa thaj nîi jâak ná Thai is hard, isn't it?
5.	phyân khun pen khon sanùk Your friend is an amusing person.	phyân khun pen khon sanùk ná Your friend is an amusing person, isn't he?
6.	phûuchaaj khonnán lên thenní t kèŋ mâak That fellow plays tennis very well.	phûuchaaj khonnán lên thenní t kèŋ caŋ ná That fellow plays tennis very well, doesn't he?
7.	mɔ̌ɔ khonnán dii mâak That doctor is very good.	mɔ̌ɔ khonnán dii caŋ ná That doctor is very good, isn't he?
8.	bâan khun praphâat jùu klaj mâak Mr. Prapas' house is very far.	bâan khun praphâat jùu klaj caŋ Mr. Prapas' house is very far, isn't it?
9.	wanniı́ aakàat dii Today the weather's fine.	wanniı́ aakàat dii ná Today the weather's fine, isn't it?
10.	thîinîi khɔ̌ɔŋ phɛɛŋ mâak Here things are very expensive.	thîinîi khɔ̌ɔŋ phɛɛŋ caŋ ná Here things are very expensive, aren't they?

11.	thɛ̌wníi rót tìt mâak The traffic is very heavy in this section.	thɛ̌wníi rót tìt caŋ ná The traffic is very heavy in this section, isn't it?

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khàp cháachá a nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp

   Slow down a bit.

2. maa cháacháaw nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp

   Come a little earlier.

3. phûut daŋdaŋ nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp

   Speak a little louder.

4. paj rewrew nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp

   Go a little faster.

5. duu náŋsy̌y mâakmâak nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp

   Study a little more.

i) Transformation Drill

Situation	Request
(khun khàp rót rew)	khàp cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Drive a little slower.
(khun maa sǎaj thúkwan)	maa cháawcháaw nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Come a bit earlier.
(khun phûut khɔ̂j mâak)	phûut daŋdaŋ nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Speak a little louder.

(khun paj cháa mâak)	paj rewrew nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Go a little earlier.
(khun thamŋaan cháa)	tham rewrew nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Work a little faster.
(khun thaan nɔ́ɔj)	thaan mâak mâak nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Eat a little more.
(khun phûut mâj dii)	phûut dii dii nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Speak a little better.

j) Transformation Drill

	Affirmative Request	Negative Request
1.	khàp cháacháa nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Drive slower.	jàa khàp rew nák sikhráp Don't drive so fast.
2.	maa cháawcháaw nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Come earlier.	jàa maa sǎaj nák sikhráp Don't come so late.
3.	paj rewrew nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Go sooner.	jàa paj cháa nák sikhráp Don't go so late.
4.	khuj kan khɔ̂j khɔ̂j nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Converse more quietly.	jàa khuj kan daŋ nák sikhráp Don't converse in such loud voices.
5.	thamŋaan rewrew nɔ̀ɔj sikhráp Work faster.	jàa tham cháa nák sikhráp Don't work so slowly.

k) Transformation Drill

Change Pattern 1 to 2 with na, which has the meaning: 'a reminder to...'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with si, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...'.

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2	Pattern 3
1.	paj	paj nakhráp	paj sikhráp
2.	maa	maa nakhráp	maa sikhráp
3.	phûut	phûut nakhráp	phûut sikhráp
4.	tɔ̀ɔp	tɔ̀ɔp nakhráp	tɔ̀ɔp sikhráp
5.	paj rewrew	paj rewrew nakhráp	paj rewrew sikhráp
6.	phûut phaasǎathaj	phûut phaasǎathaj nakhráp	phûut phaasǎathaj sikhráp
7.	jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt	jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt nakhráp	jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt sikhráp

28.3 EXERCISES (The instructor reads the sentences describing the situation and a student makes an appropriate response.)

1. khun kamlaŋ ca khŷn thɛ́ksîi . khun mâj jàak hâj thɛ́ksîi kàp rót rew . khun phûut wâa '.....'.

2. khun kamlaŋ nâŋ thɛ́ksîi . khonkhàp khàp rew mâak . khun mâj jàak hâj kháw khàp rew. khun phûut wâa '.....'.

3. nákrian phûut sǐaŋ khɔ̂j kəən paj. khun jàak hâj kháw phûut daŋdaŋ . khun phûut wâa '.....'.

4. phrûŋníi khun ca paj thîaw kàp phyân tɛ̀ɛ cháaw . kháw ca tɔ̂ɔŋ maa phóp khun thîi bâan . khun jàak hâj kháw maa cháaw cháaw . khun phûut wâa '.....'.

5. khun cim chuan phyân khuj samə̌ə. khun mâj jàak hâj khun cim chuan phyân khuj . khun phûut wâa '.....'.

6. khun coo hěn phûujǐŋ khon nỳŋ . kháw sǔaj mâak . khun coo phûut kàp phyân wâa '.....'.

7. khun cɔɔn khít wâa wanníi aakàat dii mâak . khun cɔɔn phûut kàp phyân wâa '.....'.

8. khruu jàak hâj nákrian phûut phaasǎa thaj . khruu phûut wâa '.....'.

9. nákrian kamlaŋ phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan . khruu jàak hâj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan . khruu phûut wâa '.....'.

28.4 VOCABULARY

anúsǎawarii (hɛ̀ŋ)	monument
eeŋ	is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance (in this lesson).
coo	Joe
daŋ	loud
khɛ̂ɛ níi khɛ̂ɛ nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khɛ́ppitɔ̂n	Capitol, name of a hotel in Bangkok
khɔ̂j	softly, low (of sound)

kɔ̂ lɛ́ɛw kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
mâj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)
mítchân	Mission, name of a hospital in Bangkok
nák	so, so much
pathumwan	a section in Bangkok
prachaathíppataj	freedom and also the name of a monument in Bangkok
rooŋnǎŋ khiŋ	King's Cinema
rót tìt	the traffic's heavy
tìt	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
saphaan khwaaj	Buffalo Bridge, name of the section in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road
si, sî, sí	to request someone to do something to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
thɛ̌ɛwnán	over there, that area
thii	may be used in the place of nɔ̀ɔj to soften the request if it is to be done for the speaker.

LESSON TWENTY-NINE

29.0 BASIC DIALOG: paj hǎa araj thaan khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk
'Going Out to Eat.'

A:	phǒm ca paj hǎa araj thaan khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk . paj dûajkan máj	I'm going to go out for something to eat. Want to go along?
B:	paj	Yes.
	khun chuan khraj paj dûaj rýplàaw	Did you ask anybody(else) to go along?
A:	mâj dâj chuan khraj phrɔ́ mâj mii khraj jùu	No, I didn't invite anybody because nobody was in.
B:	khun sǒmsǐi lâ	How about Somsri?
A:	mâj maa	She didn't come.
	pùaj	She's sick.
B:	ŋán, thaan sèt lɛ́ɛw	Then, after we have eaten,
	thâa raw mii weelaa phɔɔ	if we have time,
	paj jîam kháw sàk nɔ̀ɔj	let's go visit her for a while,
A:	dii máj	O.K.?
B:	awsi khráp	Good idea!
	ŋán, raw rîip paj kan thə̀ dǐaw ca klàp maa mâj than	Then let's hurry or we won't get back on time.

29.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND OTHER NOTES

a) aw máj means 'Will you accept?' or 'Is it acceptable?' It is often used after sentences in which a proposal is made. The response to it is mâj aw khráp 'I won't (accept it)' or 'It isn't (acceptable)', or awsi khráp 'O.K.' or 'I'll accept (it)'. aw máj is similar in usage and meaning to dii máj in this particular sense.

b) As indicated in 11.16, khraj and araj are not always used as question words. They may also be used as indefinite pronouns:

(1) in questions with máj, rýy, or rýplàaw, or

(2) as the object complement of certain verbs in affirmative and negative sentences, as below:

mii khraj maa bâaŋ máj	'Is anyone coming.'
mâj mii khraj maa	'Nobody's coming.'
khraj khraj kɔ̂ bɔ̀ɔk wâa kruŋthêep mâj sǔaj	'Everybody says Bangkok's not pretty.'

Although both khraj and khon occur with indefinite meaning as object complements of the verb mii, they can not be used interchangeably. The difference in usage is illustrated below:

	Situation	Utterance	Meaning
1.	Mr. A had a house for sale, so he put an ad in the paper with his telephone number.	A to his secretary: mii khon thoo maa bâaŋ rýplàaw	Did I get any calls (about that ad)?
2.	Mr. A is expecting a call from some friends about a trip to Pataya.	A to his wife: mii khraj thoo maa bâaŋ rýplàaw	Did anyone (of my friends) call?

The usage in negative sentence is illustrated below:

1. There are several newly built houses on a street.	mâj mii khon jùu	'Nobody's living in those houses.'
2. Some one knocks on a door but gets no response.	mâj mii khraj jùu	'Nobody's home.'

29.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sèt, and than are called completive verbs. They occur in the structure SENTENCE + COMPLETIVE VERB.

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamŋaan sèt lɛ́ɛw	'He has finished working.'
kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt	'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. than means 'to accomplish something in time, to have time to', or 'to catch up to.'

phǒm maa rooŋrian mâj than	'I didn't come to school on time'.

3. After action verbs (paj, thaan, etc.) the question word máj indicates that a voluntary choice is possible, hence it is used in invitations, suggestions, etc. (See 9.1)

raw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ.	'We are going shopping.'
paj dûajkan máj	'Want to go along?'

Responses to questions of this type may be:

Affirmative:	paj sihá	'I would like to' (ready acceptance)

Negative:	mâj əhá khɔ̀ɔpkhun	'Thanks, no.' (polite refusal)

b) rýplàaw is used with action verbs to indicate 'past time'.

paj rýplàaw	'Did you go?'
paj khráp	'I did.'

There are two possible negative responses to this type of question: mâj dâj (paj) and mâj (paj). Choice of the mâj dâj form of the negative indicates that circumstances prevented the speaker from doing something. Choice of the mâj form indicates that the speaker did not do something out of choice. Observe the examples below:

mŷawaanníi khun paj ŋaanlíaŋ rýplàaw

'Did you go to the party yesterday?'

phǒm mâj dâj paj khráp (phrɔ́ phǒm mâj wâaŋ)

'I didn't go (because I was busy.)'

phǒm mâj paj khráp (phrɔ́ phǒm mâj jàak paj).

'I didn't go (because I didn't want to go.)

c) thə̀ (thə, thə̀ət) 'why not, let's' is a sentence particle. It is used in making mild suggestions. When joint activity is called for, it occurs after kan.

raw paj kin khâaw kan thə̀khráp	'Let's go eat.'

d) dǐaw may occur as a sentence connective, with the meaning 'or else, otherwise'. In the examples below it used to indicate that one event follows as the logical consequence of another.

raw rîip paj kan thə̀khráp, dǐaw ca klàp maa mâj than

'Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't get back in time.'

jàa cháa nák nakhráp, dǐaw ŋaan ca mâj sèt

'Don't be so slow, or else the work won't be finished.'

29.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		(phǒm) ca paj hǎa araj thaan, paj duâjkan máj khráp I'm going to get something to eat. Want to come along?
1.	thaan khâaw	ca paj thaan khâaw. paj duâjkan máj khráp I'm going to eat. Want to come along?
2.	sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ. pâj duâjkan máj khráp I'm going to eat. Want to come along? shopping?
3.	sòŋ còtmǎaj	ca paj sòŋ còtmǎaj. paj dûajkan máj khráp I'm going to mail a letter. Want to come along?
4.	thaan kaafɛɛ	ca paj thaan kaafɛɛ paj duâjkan máj khráp I'm going to drink coffee. Want to come along.
5.	duu nǎŋ	ca paj duu nǎŋ paj duâjkan máj khráp I'm going to a movie. Want to come along?

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response		
		No	Yes	Yes
			(Reluctant acceptance)	(Willing acceptance)
1.	ca paj ħǎa araj thaan	mâj əhá	paj kɔ̂ paj	paj sihá
	paj duâjkan máj	khɔɔpkhun	paj kɔ̂ paj	paj sihá
2.	paj thaan kaafɛɛ kan máj	mâj əhá khɔ̀ɔpkhun	paj kɔ̂ paj	paj sihá
3.	paj duu nǎŋ kan máj	mâj əhá khɔ̀ɔpkhun	paj kɔ̂ paj	paj sihá
4.	paj máj	mâj əhá khɔɔpkhun	paj kɔ̂ paj	paj sihá

c) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	Yes	thaan máj	khɔ̀ɔpkhun { khráp há?
		Do you want to eat?	Yes, thank you.
2.	No	thaan máj	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun
		Do you want to eat?	No, thank you.
3.	Yes	dỳym máj	khɔ̀ɔpkhun há
		Do you want something to drink?	Yes, thank you.

4.	No.	kaafɛɛ máj Do you want some coffee?	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun No, thank you.
5.	No.	aw máj Would you like some? Would you accept any offer?	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun No, thank you.
6.	Yes (reluctant)	paj máj Would you like to go?	paj kɔ̂ paj Well, O.K.
7.	Yes.	duu máj Do you want to look?	khɔ̀ɔpkhun há Yes, thank you.
8.	No.	aàn máj Do you want to read (it)?	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun No, thank you.
9.	No.	thaan dûajkan máj Would you like to eat together?	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun No, thank you.
10.	No.	pâj dûajkan máj Do you want to go along?	mâj əhá, khɔ̀ɔpkhun No, thank you.

d) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. Yes.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	sýy Yes.
2. No.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	mâj sýy No.

3.	Yes	duu mánj Want to look?	duu Yes.
4.	No	aw máj Would you like some? Will you accept my offer?	mâj aw No.
5.	No	maa máj Would you like to come?	mâj maa No.
6.	Yes	paj máj Would you like to go?	paj Yes.
7.	Yes (reluctant)	khǎaj máj Would you like to sell (it)?	khǎaj kɔ̂ khǎaj Well, maybe.
8.	No	rót khanníi ca khǎaj máj Will you sell this car?	mâj khǎaj No.
9.	No	phrûŋníi ca paj ŋaan máj Are you going to the affair tomorrow?	mâj paj No.
10.	Yes	kháw ca hâj khun paj tàaŋcaŋwàt, aw máj They want you to go to the provinces, are you going?	aw Yes.

e) Response Drill

Cue		Question (Past action)	Response
1.	Yes	thaan rýplàaw Did you eat?	thaan Yes, I did.
2.	No	dỳym rýplàaw Did you have anything	mâj dâj dỳym No, I didn't.
3.	No	paj rýplàaw Did you go?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4.	Yes	sýy rýplàaw Did you buy (it)?	sýy Yes, I did.
5.	No	khǎaj rýplàaw Did you sell (it)?	mâj dâj khǎaj No, I didn't.
6.	No	duu rýplàaw Did you look (at it)?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
7.	Yes	àan rýplàaw Did you read (it)?	àan Yes, I did.
8.	No	aw rýplàaw Did you take it?	mâj dâj aw No, I didn't.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	mŷawaanníi, kháw paj ŋaanlíaŋ rýplàaw khráp Did he go to the party yesterday?	kháw mâj paj khráp (phrɔ́ kháw mâj jàak paj). He didn't go because he didn't want to.
2.	mŷawaanníi, khun paj ŋaanlíaŋ rýplàaw khráp Did you go to the party yesterday?	phǒm mâj dâj paj khráp phrɔ́ phǒm mâj wâaŋ I didn't go because I was busy.
3.	mŷakhyynníi, phŷan khun thaan aahǎan thaj rýplàaw. Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw mâj thaan khráp (phrɔ́ kháw mâj chɔ̂ɔp aahǎan thaj) He didn't because he doesn't like Thai food.
4.	mŷakhyynníi, phŷan khun thaan aahǎan thaj rýplàaw Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw mâj dâj thaan khráp phrɔ́ aahǎan mòt He didn't because it was all eaten up.
5.	khun sýy náŋsy̌y rýplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm mâj dâj sýy khráp phrɔ́ mâj mii ŋən I didn't because I didn't have any money.
6.	khun sýy náŋsy̌y rýplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca mâj sýy khráp phrɔ́ phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp náŋsy̌y lêm níi I thought I wouldn't buy it because I didn't like this book.

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thy̌ŋ weelaa phák lɛ́ɛw, phák thəkhráp
   It's break time. Take a break.

2. khâaŋnaj mii kâwîi, (raw) paj nâŋ thîinân kan thə̀khráp
   There are chairs inside. Let's go sit there.

3. thîaŋ lɛ́ɛw, paj thaan khâaw kan thəkhráp
   It's noon already. Let's go eat.

4. paj kan thə̀khráp
   Let's go.

5. wanníi raw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan thə̀khráp
   Today let's speak Thai.

6. kháw cháa kəən paj. raw thaan kan thə̀khráp
   He's too late. Let's go ahead and eat.

h) Transformation Drill (Reword the sentences using chuan.)

1. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wansǎwníi paj phátthajaa kan máj khráp'
   He said to me, 'Would you like to go to Pataya (with us) next Saturday?

   Student: kháw chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa.
   He invited me to go to Pataya.

2. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wanníi raw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan thə̀'
   He said to me, 'Let's speak Thai today.'

Student: kháw chuan phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj
He invited me to speak Thai (with him).

1. khun cɔɔn phûut kàp phǒm 'jenníi raw paj hǎa aahǎan thaj thaan kan máj khráp

2. phŷan khun phûut kàp phǒm 'phrŷŋníi , paj lên thennít kan máj khráp

3. mŷawaanníi phanrajaa phǒm phûut kàp phǒm 'paj duu nǎŋ kan thə̀ (raw paj duu nǎŋ kan)

4. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phrûŋníi kháw ca mii kaanbanjaaj rŷaŋ myaŋthaj . paj faŋ dûajkan máj khráp'

5. kháw phûut kàp phǒm wâa dỳym kaafɛɛ máj khráp

6. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wanníi , thaan khâaw kàp phǒm na khráp

7. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phǒm jàak hâj khun paj thamŋaan kàp phǒm

i) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
1. phǒm	phǒm thamŋaan sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished working.
2. raw	raw thamŋaan sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished working.

3.	rian náŋsy̌y	raw rian náŋsy̌y sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished studying.
4.	thaan aahǎan	raw thaan aahǎan sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished eating.
5.	tham kàp khâaw	raw tham kàp khâaw sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished cooking.
6.	sɔ̀ɔp	raw sɔ̀ɔp sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished the test.
7.	khǐan còtmǎaj	raw khǐan còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw We've finished writing letters.
8.	phǒm	phǒm khǐan còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished writing letters.
9.	phûut	phǒm phûut sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished talking.
10.	thoorasàp	phǒm thoorasàp sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished phoning.
11.	faŋ wítthajú	phǒm faŋ wítthajú sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished listening.
12.	phûut kàp kháw	phǒm phûut kàp kháw sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished talking to him.
13.	sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	phǒm sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished shopping.

14. sòŋ còtmǎaj — phǒm sòŋ còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw
I've finished mailing the letter.

15. tham thúrá — phǒm tham thúrá sèt lɛ́ɛw
I've finished my business.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (sèt as main verb.)

	Question	Response
1.	ŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sèt máj khráp Is your work finished?	ŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm sèt lɛ́ɛw khráp My work is finished.
2.	ŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ phŷan khun sèt máj khráp Is your friend's work finished?	ŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ phŷan phǒm jaŋ mâj sèt khráp My friend's work isn't finished.
3.	rûup khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sèt máj khráp Is your picture finished?	rûup khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm sèt lɛ́ɛw khráp My picture is finished.
4.	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sèt lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Is your house finished yet?	bâan khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm jaŋ mâj sèt khráp My house isn't finished yet.
5.	náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sèt lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Is your book finished yet?	náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm sèt lɛ́ɛw khráp My book is finished already.

k) Transformation Drill (Listen to the affirmative sentence and add a negative sentence with tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ mâj sèt.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	phǒm thamŋaan sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished working.	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
2.	phǒm thaan khâaw sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished eating	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
3.	phǒm rian náŋsy̌y sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished studying	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ rian mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
4.	phǒm phûut thoorasàp sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished telephoning	tɛ̀ kháw phûut mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
5.	phǒm lên thennís sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished playing tennis	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ lên mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
6.	phǒm sɔ̀ɔp sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished my exams	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ sɔ̀ɔp mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
7.	phǒm sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished shopping	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ sýy mâj sèt but he hasn't yet.
8.	phǒm tham thúrá sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished my business	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt but he isn't finished yet.
9.	phǒm khǐan còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw I've finished writing a letter	tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ khǐan mâj sèt but he isn't finished yet.

10. phǒm thaan kaafɛɛ sèt lɛ́ɛw   tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt
    I've finished drinking coffee   but he hasn't yet.

11. phǒm tham aahǎan sèt lɛ́ɛw   tɛ̀ kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt
    I've finishing cooking   but she hasn't yet.

1) Expansion Drill

Example 1:

phɔɔ máj	Is it enough?
weelaa phɔɔ máj	Is the time sufficient?
mii weelaa phɔɔ máj	Is there sufficient time?
raw mii weelaa phɔɔ máj	Do we have enough time?

Example 2:

phɔɔ máj	Is it enough?
aahǎan phɔɔ máj	Is the food sufficient?
mii aahǎan phɔɔ máj	Is there sufficient food?
raw mii aahǎan phɔɔ máj	Do we have enough food?

Continue the drill by having the teacher provide cue words which the student incorporates in the sentences given:

	Teacher	Students
1.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	khruu	khruu phɔɔ máj
	mii	mii khruu phɔɔ máj
	raw	raw mii khruu phɔɔ máj
2.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	náŋsyy̌	náŋsyy̌ phɔɔ máj
	mii	mii náŋsyy̌ phɔɔ máj
	khun	khun mii náŋsyy̌ phɔɔ máj

3.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	ŋən	ŋən phɔɔ máj
	mii	mii ŋən phɔɔ máj
	raw	raw mii ŋən phɔɔ máj
4.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	ŋən dyan	ŋən dyan phɔɔ máj
	dâj	dâj ŋən dyan phɔɔ máj
	khun	khun dâj ŋən dyan phɔɔ máj
5.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	aahǎan	aahǎan phɔɔ máj
	tham	tham aahǎan phɔɔ máj
	kháw	kháw tham aahǎan phɔɔ máj
6.	phɔɔ máj	phɔɔ máj
	weelaa	weelaa khun phɔɔ máj
	hâj khun	hâj weelaa khun phɔɔ máj
	kháw	kháw hâj weelaa khun phɔɔ máj

m) Expansion Drill

Example:	mâj phɔɔ khráp	It's not sufficient.
T:	weelaa	time
S:	weelaa mâj phɔɔ khráp	The time is not sufficient.
T:	mii	there is
S:	mii weelaa mâj phɔɔ khráp	There isn't sufficient time.

T:	phǒm	I
S:	phǒm mii weelaa mâj phɔɔ khráp	I do not have sufficient time.

Continue by supplying the following sets of words and having the students make expansions like the one in the example above:

1. mâj phɔɔ ... khruu ... mii ... raw
2. mâj phɔɔ ... câwnâathîi ... mii ... raw
3. mâj phɔɔ ... ŋən ... hâj phǒm ... kháw

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Notice the difference in usage between jîam and hǎa in the following drill.

1. khun sǒmsii mâj sabaaj . raw ca paj jîam kháw thîi rooŋphajaabaan

   Somsri is not well. We'll go visit her at the hospital.

2. khun sǒmsii mâj sabaaj . khun sǒmsii paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ thîi rooŋphajaabaan

   Somsri is not well. Somsri went to see the doctor at the hospital.

3. phǒm mii thúrá kakhun pradìt . phǒm ca paj hǎa khun pradìt.

   I have business with Mr. Pradit. I'll go see him.

4. phǒm mâj dâj mii thúrá kakhun pradìt. phǒm jàak phóp lɛ́ khuj kàp kháw thâwnán. phǒm ca paj jîam kháw jenníi.

   I don't have any business with Pradit. I just want to meet and talk to him. I'll go visit him this evening.

5. khrítsamâat pii níi, phǒm ca phaa phanrajaa phǒm paj jîam khun phɔ̂ɔ khun mɛ̂ɛ thîi chíkhaakôo

   This Christmas I'm going to take my wife to visit my parents in Chicago.

6. kháw tɔ̂ɔŋkaan phóp khun cɔɔn, khun chûaj phaa kháw paj hǎa khun cɔɔn nɔ̀ɔj, dâj máj khráp

   He wants to meet John. Please take him to see John.

7.

A:	mii khon maa hǎa khun khráp	There's someone to see you.
B:	kháw mii thúrá araj	What's his business?
A:	kháw mâj mii thúrá araj rɔkhráp	He's not here on business.
	kháw maa jîam khun	He came to visit you.

o) Expansion Drill (than 'to be on time, to catch up with')

Example:	Teacher	Student
	than máj	than máj
		maa than máj
		khun maa than máj

English: Were you in time?

Come in time?

Did you come in time?

Continue the drill by having the students form sentences like those above using the following sets of cue words:

1. than máj khráp ... maa thamŋaan ... khun ... mŷacháawníi
2. than máj khráp ... paj duu nǎŋ ... khun ... mŷakhyynníi
3. than máj khráp ... klàp maa ... rian ... khun ... mŷabàajníi

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. rooŋrian khâw weelaa sǎam mooŋ cháaw. phǒm maa thy̌ŋ rooŋrian weelaa sǎam mooŋ khrŷŋ

    phǒm maa rooŋrian mâj than.

    School starts at 9:00.
    I came to school at 9:30
    I didn't come to school on time.

2. kaanprachum rə̂əm weelaa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ troŋ. phǒm paj thy̌ŋ thîiprachum weelaa bàaj sǎam mooŋ

    phǒm paj prachum mâj than

    The meeting began at 2 p.m. sharp.
    I got to the meeting at 3:00.
    I didn't get to the meeting on time.

3. thîithamŋaan khâw weelaa {sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ khrŷŋ cháaw
    {pɛ̀ɛt

    phǒm paj thy̌ŋ thîi thamŋaan weelaa {sǎam mooŋ
    {kâaw

phǒm paj thamŋaan mâj than

The office opens at 8:30 a.m.
I got there at 9:00.
I didn't get to work on time.

4. raw thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan sèt weelaa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ kwàa.rooŋrian khâw weelaa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ troŋ.

raw klàp maa rian mâj than

We finished eating lunch after 2:00 a.m.
School starts at 2:00 p.m. sharp.
We didn't return to class on time.

5. weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii. phǒm tɔ̂ɔŋ khít khamtɔ̀ɔp sǎam naathii.

phǒm khít (khamtɔ̀ɔp) mâj than
phǒm tɔ̀ɔp mâj than

The time (provided) was 2 minutes.
It took me 3 minutes to think of an answer.

I didn't think of the answer in time. (or)
I didn't answer in time.

6. kháw phûut rew kəən paj. phǒm faŋ mâj than

He speaks too fast.
I can't catch it.

7. phǒm ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw tɛ́ kháw paj lɛ́ɛw. phǒm bɔ̀ɔk kháw mâj than

I was going to tell him, but he had already gone.
I wasn't in time to tell him.

q) Transformation Drill

T: rooŋrian khâw weelaa sǎam mooŋ cháaw
School starts at 9:00 a.m.

phǒm maa thy̌ŋ rooŋrian weelaa sǎam mooŋ khrŷŋ
I got to school at 9:30 a.m.

Cue words: maa rooŋrian get to school

S. khun maa rooŋrian mâj than
You didn't get to school on time.

1. thîi thamŋaan khɔ̌ɔŋ phǒm khâw weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ cháaw mŷacháawníi phǒm paj thy̌ŋ thîithamŋaan weelaa sǎam mooŋ cháaw

   Cue words: mŷacháawníi, paj thamŋaan

2. kháw rə̂əm phûut weelaa nỳŋ thûm. phǒm paj thy̌ŋ thîinân weelaa thûm sìisìp hâa

   Cue words: paj faŋ kháw phûut

3. kháw hâj weelaa phǒm tɔ̀ɔp sɔ̌ɔŋ naathii. phǒm cháj weelaa tham sǎam naathii

   Cue word: tɔ̀ɔp

4. phǒm ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw tɛ̀ kháw paj lɛ́ɛw

   Cue word: tɔ̀ɔp

5. rótmee ɔ̀ɔk càak pâaj weelaa thîaŋ sìp naathii. phǒm paj thy̌ŋ pâaj rótmee weelaa thîaŋ sìp hâa naathii

   Cue words: paj khŷn rótmee.

6. phǒm paj ráp kháw weelaa sǒoŋ thûm. kháw ɔ̀ɔk càak bâan weelaa nỳŋ thûm

Cue words: paj ráp kháw

7. ráankhǎajkhǒoŋ pìt weelaa hòk mooŋ jen. phǒm paj thy̌ŋ thîi ráan weelaa nỳŋ thûm.

Cue words: paj sýy khǒoŋ

r) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2 using dǐaw as the sentence connective.)

1.	raw rîip paj kan thə khráp raw ca klàp maa mâj than	raw rîip paj kan thə khráp, dǐaw ca klàp maa mâj than. Let's hurry, otherwise we won't get back in time.
2.	fǒn kamlaŋ tòk jàa ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk, khun ca mâj sabaaj	fǒn kamlaŋ tòk, jàa ɔ̀ɔk paj khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk, dǐaw ca mâj sabaaj It's raining. Don't go outside, or you'll get sick.
3.	rîip paj kan thəkhráp, raw ca mâj mii weelaa thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan	rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǐaw ca mâj mii weelaa thaan aahǎan klaaŋwan Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't have time to eat lunch.
4.	jàa cháa nák nakhráp khun ca paj mâj than	jàa cháa nák nakhráp, dǐaw ca paj mâj than Don't be so slow; otherwise, you won't get there in time.

5.	jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan sikhráp khun ca lyym phaasǎa thaj	jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt kan sikhráp, dǐaw ca lyym phaasǎa-thaj Don't speak English, or you will forget Thai.
6.	jàa duu náŋsy̌y sikhráp khun ca ɔ̀ɔk sǐaŋ mâj thùuk	jàa duu náŋsy̌y sikhráp, dǐaw ca ɔ̀ɔk sǐaŋ mâj thùuk Don't look at your book, or your pronunciation will be bad.
7.	tỳyn thəkhráp, sǎaj lɛ́ɛw, khun ca paj thamŋaan mâj than	tỳyn thəkhráp, sǎaj lɛ́ɛw, dǐaw ca paj thamŋaan mâj than Get up. It's late already. Otherwise you won't get to work on time.
8.	jàa cháj ŋəən mâak nák khun ca mâj mii ŋən thîaw juuròop	jàa cháj ŋəən mâak nák, dǐaw ca mâj mii ŋən thîaw juuròop Don't spend so much money, otherwise you won't have any money for your trip to Europe.
9.	jàa thamŋaan mâak kəən paj khun ca mâj sabaaj	jàa thamŋaan mâak kəən paj, dǐaw ca mâj sabaaj Don't work too much, or you get sick.
10.	jàa thîaw mâak khun ca sɔ̀ɔp tòk	jàa thîaw mâak, dǐaw ca sɔ̀ɔp tòk Don't go out a lot (in the evenings) or you'll fail your exams.

s) Completion Drill

Example: T: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǐaw (raw) ca...
S: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǐaw (raw) ca klàp maa mâj than

1. jàa nɔɔn dỳk nák dǐaw ca...
2. jàa phûut rew nák dǐaw nákrian ca...
3. rîip paj thəkhráp dǐaw ca...
4. phûut phaasǎa thaj kan sikhráp dǐaw ca...
5. jàa cháa nák sikhráp dǐaw ŋaan ca...
6. jàa phûut naan kəən paj dǐaw kháw ca...
7. jàa thamŋaan mâak kəən paj dǐaw ca...

t) Response Drill (Give a negative response.)

	Pattern 1 (Question)	Pattern 2 (Negative Response)
1.	khun chuan khraj paj dûaj rýplàaw	mâj dâj chuan khraj (ləəj)
	Did you ask anyone to go along?	I didn't ask anyone (at all).
2.	khun rúucàk khraj thîinân bâaŋ máj	mâj rúucàk khraj (ləəj)
	Do you recognize anybody there?	No, I don't recognize anybody (at all).
3.	phóp khraj bâaŋ rýplàaw	mâj phóp khraj (ləəj)
	Did you meet anybody?	I didn't meet anybody (at all).

4.	sýy araj maa bâaŋ rýplàaw Did you buy anything?	mâj dâj sýy araj maa (ləəj) I didn't buy anything.
5.	kamlaŋ khít araj jùu ry̌y Thinking about something?	mâj dâj khít araj (ləəj) I'm not thinking about anything.
6.	wanjùt, paj nǎj bâaŋ rýplàaw Did you go anywhere on the holiday?	mâj dâj paj nǎj (ləəj) I didn't go anywhere.

u) Response Drill (Give a negative response)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	mii khraj jùu bâaŋ Was anybody in?	mâj mii khraj jùu Nobody was in.
2.	mii khraj rúucàk kháw bâaŋ Did anybody recognize him?	mâj mii khraj rúucàk Nobody recognized him.
3.	mii khraj hěn bâaŋ Does anybody see?	mâj mii khraj hěn No one sees.
4.	mii khraj tham dâj bâaŋ Can anyone do it?	mâj mii khraj tham dâj Nobody can do it.
5.	mii khon maa máj Is anybody (at all)	mâj mii khraj maa Nobody came.

6.	mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw	mâj mii khraj maa
	Did anyone (at all) come visiting?	Nobody came.
7.	mii khon thoo maa bâaŋ rýplàaw	mâj mii khraj thoo maa
	Did anyone telephone?	Nobody called.

v) Transformation Drill

Change from the human indefinite general form khon to the human indefinite familiar form khraj.

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	mii khon thoo maa bâaŋ rýplàaw	mii khraj thoo maa bâaŋ rýplàaw
	Were there any calls?	Did anyone call?
2.	mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw	mii khraj maa hǎa (phǒm) rýplàaw
	Were there any visitors?	Did anyone come to see me?
3.	mii khon maa lên dontrii rýplàaw	mii khraj maa lên dontrii rýplàaw
	Did people come and play music?	Did anyone come and play music?
4.	mii khon paj duu kilaa mâak máj	mii khraj paj duu kilaa máj
	Do many people go watch sports?	Does anyone (of you) (go) watch sports?
5.	mii khon paj chûaj kháw rýplàaw	mii khraj paj chûaj kháw rýplàaw
	Did he get help from anyone?	Did anybody go help him?

w) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khrajkhraj bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa phûujǐŋ chiaŋmáj sǔaj
   Everybody tells me Chiangmai women are beautiful.

2. khrajkhraj chɔ̂ɔp phrɔ́ kháw pen khon sanùk
   Everybody likes him because he's a lot of fun.

3. mâj châj phǒm thâwnán, khrajkhraj kɔ̂ jàak ruaj
   Not just me, (but) everybody wants to be rich.

4. kháw bɔ̀ɔk khrajkhraj wâa kháw pen naaj tamrùat
   He told everybody he was a policeman.

x) Transformation Drill (Change to negative.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	khrajkhraj kɔ̂ bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa chiaŋmàj nâajùu Everybody told me Chiangmai is a nice place to live.	mâj mii khraj bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa chiaŋmàj nâajùu Nobody told me Chiangmai was a nice place to live.
2.	khrajkhraj kɔ̂ chɔ̂ɔp kháw Everybody likes him.	mâj mii khraj chɔ̂ɔp kháw Nobody likes him.
3.	khrajkhraj kɔ̂ thǎam phǒm wâa thammaj khun mâj paj Everybody asked me why you didn't go.	mâj mii khraj thǎam phǒm wâa thammaj khun mâj paj Nobody asked me why you didn't go.
4.	khrajkhraj kɔ̂ jàak hěn Everybody wants to see.	mâj mii khraj jàak hěn Nobody wants to see

29.4 EXERCISES

a) One student extends an invitation to another, The second student indicates that he is:

1. willing 2. unwilling or 3. reluctant to accept the invitation.

b) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he did something.
Student 2 says he didn't.
When student 1 asks him why he didn't, he says that he didn't want to do it.

c) Repeat the above exercise except for the final response. In the final response Student 2 says he didn't do it. because he was busy, sick, etc.

d) Student 1 says: 'A friend said to me, would you like to...'.

Student 2 says: 'Did he invites your wife to go too'.

Student 1 says: 'No, he didn't.'

e) Student 1: 'Would you like to...'

Student 2: 'Are you inviting my wife to go along too?'

Student 1: 'I am.'

f) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he has finished doing something (reading books, studying, etc.)

Student 2 says he has and tells when he finished (or) says that he hasn't and gives the reason.

g) Student 1 asks Student 2 when he arrived at a certain place. Student 2 gives him the time. Student 1 asks him if he got there on time. Student 2 says he did or he didn't.

h) Student 1 says to Student 2: 'Have you finished --- yet?

Student 2 says: 'Yes, I have, but (Student 3) hasn't yet.

Student 3 says: 'That's not so. I've already finished.'

(Substitute different activities in the first question.)

i) Student 1: 'Let's hurry.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: Otherwise we won't get to school on time.
(Substitute other place names for school.)

j) Student 1: 'Don't be so slow.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: 'Otherwise you won't get to ... on time.'

29.5 VOCABULARY

aâw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aw máj	will you accept? (question word: It is similar in usage to dii máj.)
indianâ	Indiana
ɔ̀ɔksǐaŋ	to pronounce
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
dǐaw	or else, otherwise
jîam	to go to see, to visit
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
khamtɔ̀ɔp (khɔ̂ɔ)	the answer
lə̂ək	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
pâaj	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign
pâaj rótmee	bus stop

prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting, meeting, assemble
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
(kan) thə̀, (thə, thə̀ət)	why not, let's
thîiprachum (hɛ̀ŋ)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)

LESSON THIRTY

(Part I.)

30.1 BASIC EPISODE:

A Visit to the Seventh Day Adventist Hospital

khun cɔɔn kamlaŋ ca paj jîam phŷan thîi rooŋphajaabaan mítchân. phŷan khɔ̌ɔŋ khấw mâj sabaaj maa lǎaj wan lɛ́ɛw

kháw hâj khonchánj paj rîak thɛ́ksiî hâj kháw nỳŋ khan . kháw mâj jâak paj rîak eeŋ phrɔ́ weelaa thɛ́ksîi hěn faràŋ kháw mák ca bɔ̀ɔk raakhaa khâadoojsǎan phɛɛŋ.

khonchánj rîak thɛ́ksîi maa hâj kháw khan nyŋ . pen rótmàj . kháw bɔ̀ɔk khun cɔɔn wâa càak bâan khun cɔɔn paj rooŋphajaabaan mítchân khonkhàp khít khâadoojsǎan sìphâa bàat. khun cɔɔn bɔ̀ɔk wâa phɛɛŋ paj. kháw hâj khonchánj tɔ̀ɔ sìp bàat. thɛ́ksîi bɔ̀ɔk wâa thâa mâj dâj sìpsɔ̌ɔŋ bàat kháw kɔ̂ mâj paj phrɔ́ thěwnán rót tìt.

thɛ́ksîi khonnán khàprót rew mâak . khun cɔɔn khɔ̌ɔ hâj kháw khàp cháa cháa tɛ̀ khonkhàp mâj faŋ kháw ləəj . khun cɔɔn mâj sâap ca tham jaŋŋaj dii.

khun cɔɔn mâj sâap wâa thaaŋ rooŋphajaabaan anúјâat hâj kháw jîam khonkhâj dâj kìi mooŋ . kháw paj thỹŋ thîinân cháa kəən paj, kháw ləəj paj jîam phyân mâj than . kháw rîak rót thɛ́ksîi khan nyŋ lɛ́ bɔ̀ɔk hâj paj sòŋ kháw thîi talàat nát, sanǎam luǎŋ

30.2 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun cɔɔn paj rooŋphajaabaan mítchân thammaj
2. thammaj kháw thýŋ mâj rîak théksîi eeŋ
3. càak bâan khun cɔɔn paj rooŋphajaabaan mítchân théksîi khít khâadoojsǎan thâwràj
4. khun cɔɔn hâj khoncháj tɔ̀ɔ thâwràj
5. théksîi bɔ̀ɔk wâa jaŋŋaj
6. théksîi khonnán khàprót pen jaŋŋaj bâaŋ
7. khun cɔɔn tham jaŋŋaj. kháw bɔ̀ɔk khonkhàp wâa jaŋŋaj
8. khun cɔɔn paj than jîam phŷan máj
9. thammaj kháw thýŋ paj mâj than
10. càak rooŋphajaabaan mítchân, kháw paj nǎj

(Part II.)

30.3 BASIC EPISODE: A Visit to the Sunday Market.

khun cɔɔn dəən thîaw talàatnát jùu lǎaj chûamooŋ. thîinîi mii khɔ̌ɔŋkhǎaj thúk jàaŋ, tháŋ khɔ̌ɔŋcháj, tônmáaj, lɛ́ sàtlíaŋ . khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi baaŋ jàaŋ kɔ̂ thùuk, baaŋ jàaŋ kɔ̂ phɛɛŋ . khun cɔɔn sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ lǎaj jàaŋ . kháw sýy khɔ̌ɔŋlên hâj lûuk lɛ́ khɔ̌ɔŋcháj hâj phanrajaa . kháw sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ plɛ̀ɛkplɛ̀ɛk thîi ameerikaa mâj mii hâj khunphɔ̂ɔ khunmɛ̂ɛ kháw . kháw khít wâa mŷa thýŋ wan khrítsamâat kháw ca sòŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ làwníi paj hâj khunphɔ̂ɔ khunmɛ̂ɛ khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw thîi ameerikaa. sǎmràp nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw khɔ̌ɔŋkháw, kháw jaŋ mâj sâap wâa ca hâj araj dii.

sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ sèt lɛ́ɛw khun cɔɔn kɔ̂ ca klàp bâan . khanáthîi kháw kamlaŋ jyyn hǎa thɛ́ksiî jùu kháw phóp phŷan khon nyŋ. phŷan khonnán chŷy khun samǎan khun samǎan khəəj rian thîi ameerikaa . mŷa rian còp lɛ́ɛw, kháw klàp maa myaŋ thaj lɛ́ thamŋaan pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ mahàatthaj . kháw dâj thun paj duu ŋaan thîi ameerikaa mŷa pii khɔɔsɔ̌ɔ nỳŋ phan kâw rɔ́ɔj hòksìp. khun cɔɔn phóp khun samǎan tɔɔn thîi khun cɔɔn kamlaŋ rian phaasǎathaj jùu thîi ameerikaa . tɔɔnnán kháw phóp khonthaj lǎaj khon phrɔ́ weelaa mii khonthaj paj thîi wɔɔchiŋtân câwnâathîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet ca nɛ́nam hâj nákrian phaasǎathaj rúucàk phrɔ́ kháw jàak hâj nákrian rúucàk khonthaj lɛ́ hàt phûut phaasǎathaj kàp khonthaj lǎaj lǎaj khon.

30.4 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE (Part II.)

1. khun cɔɔn dəən thîaw jùu naan máj
2. thîinân mii araj khǎaj bâaŋ
3. khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinân thùuk rɯ̌y phɛɛŋ
4. khun cɔɔn sy̌y araj dâj bâaŋ
5. wankhrítsamâat khun cɔɔn ca sòŋ araj paj hâj khunphɔ̂ɔ khunmɛ̂ɛ kháw
6. wan khrítsamâat khun cɔɔn ca hâj khɔ̌ɔŋkhwǎn araj nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw kháw
7. khanàthîi kháw ca klàp kháw phóp khraj
8. khun samǎan thamŋaan araj

9. kháw khəəj paj ameerikaa máj . mŷaraj

10. kháw paj eeŋ ry̌y dâj thun paj

11. kháw paj ameerikaa thammaj

12. thîi ameerikaa, khun cɔɔn phóp khun samǎan mŷaràj

13. thammaj câwnâathîi krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thy̌ŋ nɛ́nam hâj nákrian thîi rian phaasǎathaj rúcàk khonthaj thîi paj càak myaŋthaj

30.5 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) mŷa occurs in two different types of constructions:

1. $\text{mŷa} + \begin{cases} \text{Noun Phrase} \\ \text{Verb Phrase} \end{cases}$ or

2. mŷa + Sentence

In the first type mŷa means 'at the time of' and usually refers to events in the past.

Examples are:

mŷa khyynníi	'last night'
mŷa cháawníi	'this morning' (when the morning has passed)
mŷa dèk (dèk)	'in childhood'

In mŷa + Sentences constructions the reference may be to past time:

phǒm maa mŷa kháw paj lɛ́ɛw 'I came when he had already gone.'

Or to future time or to 'conditional' situations:

mŷa phǒm mii rót, phǒm (thy̌ŋ) ca paj dâj 'When I have a car, I'll be able to go.'

kháw ca chûaj khun (kɔ̂ tɛ̀ɛ) mŷa kháw hěn wâa khun mii prajòot kakháw	'He will help you only when he sees that you are useful to him.'

b) Although both sèt and còp are completive verbs they differ somewhat in meaning and usage:

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamŋaan sèt lɛ́ɛw	'He has finished working.'
kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt	'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. còp 'to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)'.

ìik 2 dyan phǒm ca rian phaasǎa thaj còp khráp	'I'll finish the Thai course in 2 months.'
raw duu nǎŋ mâj còp	'We didn't see the movie to the end.'

NOTE: Either sèt or còp may occur in sentences which are otherwise identical. The selection of one over the other indicates a difference in emphasis or focus. With sèt the focus is on the activity in general; with còp it is on the completion of a particular action.

kháw khǐan còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw	'He has finished letter writing.'
kháw khǐan còtmǎaj còp lɛ́ɛw	'He has finished writing a (the) letter.'

30.6 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

mŷa waanníi	yesterday
mŷa cháaw	this morning (past time)
mŷa bàaj sɔ̌ɔŋ mooŋ	2 p.m. (It's later than that now.)
mŷa khyyn	last night
mŷa dèk (dèk)	in childhood
mŷa phǒm maa thy̌ŋ thîinîi màjmàj	When I had just got here.
mŷa phǒm jaŋ thamŋaan jùu thîinân	When I was still working here.

b) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw ca maa thy̌ŋ weelaa bàaj mooŋ He'll get her at 1 p.m.	kháw maa thy̌ŋ (lɛ́ɛw) mŷa bàaj mooŋ He got here at 1 p.m.
2.	phǒm ca thaan weelaa hâa mooŋ jen I'll eat at 5 p.m.	phǒm thaan (lɛ́ɛw) mŷa hâa mooŋ jen I ate at 5 p.m.
3.	phǒm ca phóp kháw jenníi I'll meet her this evening.	phǒm phóp kháw (lɛ́ɛw) mŷa jenníi I met her this evening.
4.	kháw ca paj tɔɔncháaw They'll go in the morning.	kháw paj mŷa (tɔɔn) cháaw They went in the morning.

5.	kháw ca maa hǎa phǒm weelaa bàaj mooŋ He'll come to see me at 1 p.m.	kháw maa hǎa phǒm mŷa bàaj mooŋ He came to see me at 1 p.m.

c) Response Drill

The instructor reads a cue sentence then forms a question based on it. A student gives a response to it. The instructor forms a second sentence, and the student answers that. Sentences and responses are based on the cue sentence.

1. mŷa kháw rian còp, kháw kɔ̂ klàp maa myaŋ thaj

When he finished his studies, he returned to Thailand.

Question	Response
mŷa kháw rian còp, kháw tham jaŋŋaj	kháw klàp paj myaŋ thaj
When he finished his studies, what did he do?	He returned to Thailand.

2. mŷa kháw dèk dèk, kháw chɔ̂ɔp nĭi rian

When he was a child, he liked to avoid studying.

Question	Response
mŷa dèk dèk, kháw pen jaŋŋaj	kháw chɔ̂ɔp nĭi rian
What was he like, when he was a child?	He liked to avoid studying.

kháw chɔ̂ɔp nǐi rian mŷaraj	mŷa dèk dèk
When did he like to avoid studying?	When he was a child.

3. phǒm maa mŷa kháw paj lɛ́ɛw

I came when he had already gone.

Question	Response
phǒm maa mŷaraj	mŷa kháw paj lɛ́ɛw
When did I come?	When he had already gone.
tɔɔn thîi kháw jaŋ jùu phǒm maa rýjaŋ	jaŋ mâj maa . khun maa mŷa kháw paj lɛ́ɛw
Had I come while he was still there?	Not yet. You came after he had already gone.

4. mŷa phǒm rə̂əm rian phaasǎa thaj màj màj, phǒm khít wâa phaasǎa thaj jâak mâak

Right after I started studying Thai, I thought it was very hard.

Question	Response
mŷa phǒm rə̂əm rian phaasǎa thaj màj màj, phǒm rúusỳk jaŋŋaj	khun khít wâa phaasǎa thaj jâak mâak
Right after I began studying Thai, how did I feel?	You thought Thai was very hard.

tɔɔnníi phǒm khít wâa phaasǎa thaj mâj jâak, châj máj Now I think Thai isn't hard, right?	mâj châj, tɔɔnníi khun khít wâa mâj jâak myǎn mŷa tɔɔnthîi khun rian màj màj Not so. Now you don't think it's (as) hard(as) when you first started studying it.

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun àan náŋsy̌y lêmníi còp lɛ̀ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading this book yet?	phǒm àan náŋsy̌y lêmníi còp lɛ́ɛw khráp I have finished reading this book.
2.	khun àan náŋsy̌y lêmnán còp lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading that book yet?	phǒm àan náŋsy̌y lêm nán jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished reading that book yet.
3.	khun khǐan còtmǎaj còp lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp.phǒm ca paj sòŋ hâj Have you finished writing that letter yet? I'll mail it for you.	phǒm khǐan còtmǎaj jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished writing the letter yet.
4.	khun ca rian phaasǎa thaj còp mŷaràj khráp When will you finish studying Thai?	phǒm ca rian còp dyan nâa khráp I'll finish next month.

5.	khun rian bòt thîi sìp pɛ̀ɛt còp lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished studying lesson 18 yet?	(phǒm) rian (bót thîi sìp pɛ̀ɛt) jaŋ mâj còp khráp (I) haven't finished studying (lesson 18) yet.
6.	mŷakhyynníi, khun duu nǎŋ còp máj khráp Did you finish seeing the movie last night? (see to the end)	mŷakhyynníi, raw duu nǎŋ mâj còp phrɔ́ tɔ̂ɔŋ rîip klàp bâan kɔ̀ɔn nǎŋ lə̂ək No, because we had to hurry home before it was over.
7.	khun phûut còp (rŷaŋ) máj khráp Did you finish telling your story.	phǒm phûut mâj còp khráp phrɔ́ kháw hâj weelaa phǒm nɔ́ɔj kəən paj I didn't finish because they gave me too little time.
8.	khun rian (mahǎawítthajaalaj) còp pii nǎj khráp In which year did you graduate from the university?	phǒm { riancòp pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ { còp sɔ̌ɔŋ phan hâarɔ́ɔj khráp I graduated in B.E. 2500.
9.	khun cóp càak mahǎawítthajaalaj araj khráp What university did you graduate from?	phǒm còp càak mahǎawítthajaalaj indianâa khráp I graduated from the University of Indiana.

Translation of Basic Episode: Part I.

John is about to go visit a friend at the 7th Day Adventist Hospital. His friend has been ill for several days.

He had a servant to get a taxi (for him). He didn't want to go for one himself, because whenever taxis see a Westerner, they ask for higher fares.

The servant called a taxi for him. It was new. He told John the driver figured the fare from his house to the Adventist Hospital at 15 baht. John said it was too expensive. He had the servant bargain for 10. The taxi (driver) said that if he didn't get 12 baht, then he wasn't going because the traffic was heavy in that area.

The driver drove very fast. John asked him to drive slower, but the driver didn't listen to him at all. John didn't know what to do.

John didn't know at what time the hospital allowed one to visit patients. He got there too late, so he didn't get there in time to visit his friend. He called a taxi and told (the driver) to take him to the (Sunday) Market at the Pramane Grounds.

Translation of Basic Episode: Part II.

John spent hours walking around at the Sunday Market. There were all kinds of things for sale there: things to use, plants, and pets. Some things were cheap; some expensive. John bought a lot of things. He bought toys for children and things to use for his wife. He bought unusual things that are not available in the U.S. for his mother and father. He thought he'd send some of these things to his mother and father in America at Christmas. He didn't know what he ought to give to his younger sister.

The shopping done, John goes home. While he is standing looking for a taxi, he meets a friend. His friend is name Saman. Saman studied in America. After he graduated, he returned to Thailand and worked as an employee of the Ministry of the Interior. He got a grant to go observe work (1) in America in 1960. John met Saman while John was studying Thai in America. At that time he met many Thais because when there are Thais visiting Washington, State Department officials introduce them to the students of Thai, because they want student to meet Thais and to practice speaking Thai with many Thais.

30.7 VOCABULARY

duu ŋaan	to observe work, an observation
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train
khanáthîi	while
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khɔ̌ɔŋlên (jàaŋ)	play things, toy
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
nɛ́nam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnɛ́nam	advice, suggestion, instruction
plɛ̀ɛk (plɛ̀ɛk)	to be unusual, to be strange
samǎan	Saman, male or female first name
sàt (tua)	animal
...líaŋ (tua)	pet
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
tôn máaj (tôn)	plants, tree

---

(1) An observation tour

LESSON THIRTY-ONE

31.0 BASIC DIALOG: Looking for a Place to Live

A:	mŷawaanníi phǒm paj hǎa khun tɛ̀ɛ mâj phóp	Yesterday I went to see you but didn't see you.
B:	phǒm paj hǎa bâanchâaw	I went to look for a house to rent.
A:	khun ca jùu eeŋ lə̌	Will you live (there) yourself?
B:	plàaw. hǎa hâj phŷan	No. I'm looking for a friend.
	khun wâa, jùu bâan ka jùu apháatmên nǎj ca dii kwâa kan	You think it's better to live in a house or an apartment?
A:	phŷan khun pen sòot rý tɛ̀ŋŋaan lɛ́ɛw	Is your friend single or married?
B:	pen sòot khráp	He's single.
A:	khwaamciŋ, tua phǒm eeŋ chɔ̂ɔp jùu bâan mâak kwàa	Actually, as for me I prefer living in a house.
	tɛ̀ɛ sámràp khon sòot, phǒm wâa jùu flɛ̀t dii kwàa	But for single persons, I think living in a flat is better
B:	thammaj lakhráp	Why?
A:	sadùak kwàa jùu bâan	It's more convenient than living in a house.
	lɛ́ plyaŋ nɔ́ɔj kwàa phrɔ́ mâj tɔ̂ŋ câaŋ khoncháj lǎaj khon	And less expensive, because you don't have to hire a lot of servants.

B:	ciŋná	Right.
	plɔ̀ɔt phaj kwàa dûaj	It's safer too.
	mâj tɔ̂ŋ klua khamooj	You don't have to be afraid of thieves.

31.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) phóp and dâj occur after hǎa 'to look for', try to find' and indicate the result of the action of 'looking'.

Observe the following examples:

Question	Responses	
	Affirmative	Negative
hǎa phóp máj	(hǎa) phóp	(hǎa) mâj phóp
'Did you get to see him?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'
hǎa dâj máj	(hǎa) dâj	(hǎa) mâj dâj
'Did you get (what you were looking for)?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'

Observe also these two examples:

(phǒm) hǎa mâj dâj phró mâj mii khǎaj

'I didn't get any because it wasn't for sale.'

(phǒm) hǎa mâj phóp phró mâj jùu

'I didn't get to see him because he wasn't in.'

cəə 'to meet, run into unexpectedly' may replace phóp in constructions with hǎa involving human beings, thus hǎa phóp máj or hǎa cəə máj 'Did you get to see him?' In constructions referring to objects cəə rather than phóp is used, thus

A:	náŋsy̌y hǎaj	'I lost my book.'
B:	hǎa cəə máj	'Did you find it?'
A:	mâj cəə	'No, I didn't.'

When cəə is used as the main verb in the sentence, it has the meaning 'to meet unexpectedly':

mŷawaanníi phǒm cəə phŷan kàw

'Yesterday I ran into an old friend.'

b) /kwàa/ means 'more than, to a greater extent'.

1. After stative verbs, use /kwàa/ alone.

Examples:

phaasǎa aŋkrìt jâak kwàa phaasǎa thaj

'English is more difficult than Thai.'

2. After other verbs, use mâak kwàa for 'more than' and nɔ́ɔj kwàa for 'less than'.

Examples:

piiníi raw mii nákrian nɔ́ɔj kwàa pii kɔ̀ɔn.

'This year we have more students than last year.

phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa kháw

'I like you less than him.'

3. Where degree of difference is stated, observe in the following examples, the position of forms indicating degree of difference.

		NP^1	Stative Verb + kwaa	NP^2	Degree of Difference
(1.)	thîinîi mii	nákrian	mâak kwàa	khruu	400 khon
	Here there are	students	more than	teachers	400
		'There are 400 more students than teachers here.'			
(2.)		khun	sǔaj kwàa	kháw	mâak
		you	pretty more than	she	much a lot
		'You are a lot prettier than she (is).'			

c) khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj versus khít araj

Use jaŋŋaj when asking for a person's opinion or comment on something.

khun khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj	'What do you think?'
khun wâa jaŋŋaj	(What's your opinion?)
kháw wâa jaŋŋaj	'What did he say?' (What was his reaction?)

Use araj to find out what is in a person's mind.

khun kamlaŋ khít araj	'What are you thinking { about?' { of?'

31.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2 (contracted form)
1.	hǎa tɛ̀ɛ mâj phóp looked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj phóp didn't find
2.	hǎa tɛ̀ɛ mâj cəə looked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj cəə didn't find
3.	hǎa tɛ̀ɛ mâj dâj looked for but didn't get	hǎa mâj dâj didn't succeed in getting

b) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns a and b to form Pattern c.)

	Patterns a and b	Pattern c
1.	kháw jàak phóp phŷan a. kháw paj hǎa phŷan thîi bâan b. kháw mâj phóp phŷan He wanted to see his friend. He went to see his friend at home. He did not meet his friend.	kháw paj hǎa phŷan (tɛ̀ɛ) mâj phóp He went to see his friend but didn't see him.
2.	lûuksǎaw kháw hǎaj a. kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw b. kháw mâj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{cəə lûuksǎaw}\\ \text{phóp}\end{array}\right.$ His daughter disappeared. He looked for his daughter. He didn't find his daughter.	kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw (tɛ̀ɛ) mâj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{cəə}\\ \text{phóp}\end{array}\right.$ He looked for his daughter without success.

3. náŋsy̌y phǒm hǎaj a. phǒm hǎa náŋsy̌y b. phǒm mâj cəə náŋsy̌y My book was lost. I looked for my book. I didn't discover my book.	phǒm hǎa náŋsy̌y (tὲɛ) mâj cəə I looked for my book without success.
4. phǒm jàak dâj náŋsy̌y lêmnán a. phǒm hǎa (sýy) náŋsy̌y lêmnán b. phǒm mâj dâj náŋsy̌y lêmnán I'd like to get that book. I sought (to buy) that book. I didn't get that book.	phǒm hǎa (sýy) náŋsy̌y lêmnán (tὲɛ) mâj dâj I tried unsuccessfully to get (buy) that book.

c) Expansion Drill

1. dâj máj khráp	dâj máj khráp
hǎa	hǎa dâj máj khráp
sýy	hǎa sýy dâj máj khráp
pàakkaa	hǎa sýy pàakkaa dâj máj khráp
2. phóp máj khráp	phóp máj khráp
hǎa	hǎa phóp máj khráp
phŷan	hǎa phŷan phóp máj khráp
3. cəə máj khráp	cəə máj khráp
hǎa	hǎa cəə máj khráp
khɔ̌ɔŋ	hǎa khɔ̌ɔŋ cəə máj khráp

d) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the questions, if the cue word indicates that the search was successful (jùu), respond negatively, if the cue word indicates that the search was unsuccessful (mâj jùu).

	Question	Cue	Response
1.	mŷawaanníi khun paj hǎa kháw phóp máj khráp	kháw jùu	phóp khráp
	Did you find him when you went to see him yesterday?	He was in.	(Yes) I did.
2.	mŷakîiníi khun paj hǎa nákphaasǎa phóp máj khráp	mâj jùu	mâj phóp khráp
	When you went to see the linguist a while ago, did you find him?	He wasn't in.	(No), I didn't.
3.	mŷakhyynníi, kháw maa hǎa khun phóp máj	jùu	phóp khráp
	When he came to see you last night, did he see you?	I was in.	He did.
4.	(khun) paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ phóp máj	jùu	phóp khráp
	When you went to see the doctor, did you see him?	He was in.	I did.

5. mŷakíiníi, phŷan khun maa hǎa khun thîi rooŋrian phóp máj khráp	mâj jùu	mâj phóp
A short time ago when your friend came to see you at school, did you meet?	I wasn't in.	He didn't.
6. khun hǎa bəə thoorasàp khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw naj samùt thoorasàp phóp máj khráp	mâj jùu naj samùt	mâj phóp
Did you find his number in the phone book?	It wasn't there.	I didn't.

e) Substitution Response Drill

The teacher gives 2 cue words. One student forms a statement using the first cue word. Another student asks the question hǎa cəə máj khráp. The first then responds either negatively or affirmatively according to the second cue word.

Cue word		Statement/question/response		
náŋsy̌y....	No	S1:	náŋsy̌y phǒm hǎaj	My book was lost.
		S2:	hǎa cəə máj khráp	Did you find it?
		S1:	mâj cəə khráp	No, I didn't.

Continue the drill using the following cue words:

1. ŋən phǒm.... No
2. pàakkaa phǒm.... Yes
3. dinsɔ̌ɔ phǒm.... No
4. lûuksǎaw.... No
5. khoncháj.... Yes
6. rót phǒm.... Yes
7. naalikaa kháw.... No
8. krapǎaw phǒm.... No

f) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. mii	khun hǎa náŋsy̌y lêmnán dâj máj khráp	dâj khráp
	Did you find that book?	I did.
2. mii	khun hǎa sýy náŋsy̌y phaasǎa thaj dâj máj khráp	dâj khráp
	Were you able to buy the Thai book you were looking for?	I was.
3. mâj mii	khun hǎa khoncháj dâj máj khráp	mâj dâj khráp
	Were you able to find the servants you were looking for?	No, I wasn't.
4. mâj mii	kháw hǎa khruu sɔ̌ɔn phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj máj khráp	mâj dâj khráp
	Did you find the English teacher you were looking for?	No, I didn't.
5. mâj mii	khun hǎa bâan dâj máj khráp	mâj dâj khráp
	Did you find the house you were looking for?	No, I didn't.

g) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1. mŷawaanníi rɔ́ɔn	
Yesterday it was hot.	
wanníi rɔ́ɔn mâak	wanníi rɔ́ɔn kwàa mŷawaanníi
Today it's very hot.	It's hotter today than yesterday.

2. phûujǐŋ khonnán suǎj

That girl's pretty.

phûujǐŋ khonnií sǔaj mâak

This girl's very pretty.

phûujǐŋ khonníi suǎj kwàa phûujǐŋ khonnán

This girl is prettier than that one.

3. bâan phǒm klaj

My house is far.

bâan kháw klaj mâak

His house is very far.

bâan kháw klaj kwàa bâan phǒm

His house is farther than mine.

4. klaaŋwan rɔ́ɔn

In the daytime it's hot.

klaŋkhyyn mâj rɔ́ɔn

At night it's not hot.

klaaŋwan rɔ́ɔn kwàa klaaŋkhyyn

It's hotter in the daytime than at night.

5. thîinôon aakàat dii

There the weather is good.

thîinîi aakàat dii mâak

Here the weather is very good.

thîinîi aakàat dii kwàa thîinôon

Here the weather is better than there.

6. nákrian khonníi kèŋ

This student is smart.

nákrian khonnán kèŋ mâak

That student is very smart.

nákrian khonnán kèŋ kwàa nákrian khonnií

That student is smarter than this one.

7. aahǎan thîi ráannán dii

The food in that shop
is good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii mâak.

The food in this shop
is very good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii kwàa raannán

The food in this shop
is better than in that
shop.

8. kháw duu náŋsy̌y dỳk

He studies late at night.

phǒm duu náŋsy̌y dỳk mâak

I study very late at night.

phǒm duu náŋsy̌y dỳk kwàa kháw

I study later at night
than he.

9. kháw maa rooŋrian cháaw

He came to school early.

phǒm maa rooŋrian sǎaj

I came to school late.

phǒm maa rooŋrian sǎaj kwàa khaw

I came to school later
than he.

(kháw maa rooŋrian cháaw kwàa phǒm)

He came to school earlier
than I.

10. phaasǎa thaj mâj jâak

Thai is not hard.

phaasǎa aŋkrìt jâak

English is hard.

phaasǎa aŋkrìt jâak kwàa phaasǎa thaj

English is harder than Thai.

11. ŋaan wannán mâj sànuk

That day's party wasn't fun.

ŋaan wanníi sanùk

Today's party is fun.

ŋaan wanníi sanùk kwàa ŋaan wannán

The party today is more fun than that other party.

12. rót kháw kàw

His car is old.

rót phŏm màj

My car is new.

rót phŏm màj kwàa rót kháw

My car is newer than his.

13. júu bâan sadùak

It's convenient to live in a house.

jùu apháatmên sadùak mâak

It's very convenient to live in an apartment.

jùu apháatmên sadùak kwàa jùu bâan

Living in an apartment is more convenient than living in a house.

14. jùu apháatmênt mâj plyaŋ

Living in an apartment is not expensive.

jùu bâan plyaŋ mâak

Living in a house is very expensive.

jùu bâan plyaŋ kwàa jùu aphâatmên

Living in a house is more expensive than living in an apartment.

h) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. jùu naj myaŋ	jùu naj myaŋ ka jùu nɔ̂ɔk myaŋ, nǎj ca sadùak kwàa kan Which is more convenient, living in town or in the country?	jùu naj myaŋ sadùak kwàa Living in the city.
2. jùu kruŋthêep	jùu kruŋthêep ka jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt, nǎj ca plyaŋ kwàa kan Which is more expensive, living in Bangkok or the provinces?	jùu kruŋthêep plyaŋ kwàa Living in Bangkok.
3. ubon	ubon ka khoorâat, nǎj ca jùu klaj (càak kruŋthêep) kwàa kan Which is farther from Bangkok, Ubon or Korat?	ubon klaj kwàa Ubon.
4. sùkhǒothaj	caŋwàt ajúthajaa ka sùkhǒothaj, nǎj ca kàw kwàa kan Which is older, Ayuthaya or Sukhotai province?	sùkhǒothaj kàw kwàa Sukhotai.
5. rót khannán	rót khannán ka rót khannií, nǎj ca phɛɛŋ kwàa kan Which is more expensive, that car or this one?	rót khannán phɛɛŋ kwàa That one.

6. nákrian chánnán	nákrian chánnán ka channií, nǎj ca mâak kwàa kan In which class are there more students, that one or this one?	nákrian chánnán mâak kwàa That one.
7. kruŋthêep	kruŋthêep ka chiaŋmàj, nǎj ca mii khon jùu mâak kwàa kan Which has a larger population, Bangkok or Chiangmai?	kruŋthêep mii khonjùu mâak kwàa Bangkok.

i) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. nakrian kàw	nákrian kàw ka nákrian màj, khraj ca phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii kwàa kan Which can speak Thai better, the old students or the new ones?	nákrian kàw phûut dâj dii kwàa The old.
2. khun sawàt	khun sawàt kakhun prasǒŋ khraj (ca) kèŋ kwàa kan Who is more skillful, Sawat or Prasong?	khun sawàt kèŋ kwàa Sawat.
3. phŷan khonnán	phŷan khun khonnán ka khonnií, khraj (ca) khâwcaj khun dii kwàa kan Who understands you better, that friend of yours or this one?	phŷan phǒm khonnán khâwcaj phǒm dii kwàa That one understands me better.

4.	khun cɔɔn	khun cɔɔn ka khun cim, khraj khàp rót rew kwàa kan Who drives faster, John or Jim?	khun cɔɔn khàp rew kwàa John.

j) Expansion Drill

1. mâak kwàa
mii mâak kwàa
mii ŋən mâak kwàa
kháw mii ŋən mâak kwàa
kháw mii ŋən mâak kwàa phǒm

2. mâak kwàa
mii mâak kwàa
mii nákrian mâak kwàa
chánnán mii nákrian mâak kwàa
chánnán mii nákrian mâak kwàa chánníi

3. mâak kwàa
mii mâak kwàa
mii weelaa mâak kwàa
mii weelaa wâaŋ mâak kwàa
kháw mii weelaa wâaŋ mâak kwàa
kháw mii weelaa wâaŋ kwàa phǒm

4. mâak kwàa
chɔ̂ɔp mâak kwàa
chɔ̂ɔp jùu bâan mâak kwàa
phǒm chɔ̂ɔp jùu bâan mâak kwàa
phǒm chɔ̂ɔp jùu bâan mâak kwàa jùu apháatmênt

5. mâak kwàa
   chɔ̂ɔp mâak kwàa
   chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa
   phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa
   phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa kháw

6. mâak kwàa
   tham mâak kwàa
   kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa
   kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa phǒm
   kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa phǒm lǎaj chûamooŋ

k) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	kháw rian náŋsy̌y wan la hòk chûamooŋ He has classes 6 hours a day.	
	raw rian náŋsy̌y wan la sìi chûamooŋ We have classes 4 hours a day.	kháw rian náŋsy̌y mâak kwàa raw wan la sɔ̌ɔŋ chûamooŋ He has classes 2 hours more per day than we do.
2.	thîi rooŋrian mii khruu rɔ́ɔj khon There are 100 teachers at school.	
	thîi rooŋrian mii nákrian hâa rɔ́ɔj khon There are 500 students at school.	thîi rooŋrian mii nákrian mâak kwàa khruu sìi rɔ́ɔj khon There are 400 more students than teachers at school.

3. khun wichaj mii bùt sìi khon

    Wichai has 4 children.

khun prasə̀ət mii bùt sɔ̌ɔŋ khon Prasert has 2 children.	khun wichaj mii bùt mâak kwàa khun prasə̀ət sɔ̌ɔŋ khon Wichai has 2 more children than Prasert.

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

nɔ́ɔj kwàa	less
plyaŋ nɔ́ɔj kwàa	less beautiful
mii nɔ́ɔj kwàa	have less
chɔ̂ɔp nɔ́ɔj kwàa	like less
phûut nɔ́ɔj kwàa	speak less
tham nɔ́ɔj kwàa	do less
thaan nɔ́ɔj kwàa	eat less
sýy nɔ́ɔj kwàa	buy less
rian nɔ́ɔj kwàa	study less

m) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráan níi mii mâak kwàa khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráan nóon There are more things in this shop than that one.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráan nóon mii nɔ́ɔj kwàa ráan níi There are less things in that shop than this one.
2.	kháw mii ŋən mâak kwàa phɔ̌m He has more money than I.	phɔ̌m mii ŋən nɔ́ɔj kwàa kháw I have less money than he.

3.	kháw cháj ŋəən mâak kwàa phǒm. He spends more money than I.	phǒm cháj ŋən nɔ́ɔj kwàa kháw I spend less money than he.
4.	jùu bâan plyaŋ kwàa jùu apháatmên. Living in a house is more expensive than living in an apartment.	jùu apháatmênt plyaŋ nɔ́ɔj kwàa jùu bâan Living in an apartment is less expensive than living in a house.
5.	nɔ́ɔŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sǒmsàk rian mâak kwàa khun sǒmsàk Somsak's younger brothers and sisters study more than he.	khun sǒmsàk rian nɔ́ɔj kwàa nɔ́ɔŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw Somsak studies less than his younger siblings.
6.	phûujǐŋ khonnán phûut mâak kwàa phûujǐŋ khonnóon That woman talks more than the one over there.	phûujǐŋ khonnóon phûut nɔ́ɔj kwàa phûujǐŋ khonnán The woman over there talks less than that one.
7.	phǒm chɔ̂ɔp phŷan kháw mâak kwàa kháw I like his friends better than him.	phǒm chɔ̂ɔp kháw nɔ́ɔj kwàa phŷan kháw I like him less than (I like) his friends.
8.	khun sǒmsǐi sǔaj kwàa nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw kháw Somsri is prettier than her younger sister.	nɔ́ɔŋsǎaw khun sǒmsǐi sǔaj nɔ́ɔj kwàa khun sǒmsǐi Somsri's younger sister is less pretty than Somsri.
9.	kháw thamŋaan mâak kwàa phǒm aathít la hòk chûamooŋ He works 6 hours a week more than I do.	phǒm thamŋaan nɔ́ɔj kwàa kháw aathít la hòk chûamooŋ I work 6 hours a week less than he does.

10. phîichaaj phǒm mii bùt mâak kwàa phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ khon	phǒm mii bùt nɔ́ɔj kwàa phîichaaj phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ khon
My older brother has 2 more children than I.	I have two less children than my older brother.

n) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	phǒm khít wâa, jùu apháatmên dii kwàa	phǒm wâa, jùu apháatmên dii kwàa
	I think living in an apartment is better.	
2.	phǒm khít wâa, pen sòot dii kwàa	phǒm wâa, pen sòot dii kwàa
	I think being single is better.	
3.	phǒm khít wâa, phɛɛŋ paj	phǒm wâa, phɛɛŋ paj
	I think it's too expensive.	
4.	phǒm khít wâa, raw khuan ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw	phǒm wâa, raw khuan ca bɔ̀ɔk kháw
	I think we should tell her.	
5.	phǒm khít wâa, raw khuan ca ɔ̀ɔk (paj) kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ	phǒm wâa, raw khuan ca ɔ̀ɔk (paj) kɔ̀ɔn thîaŋ
	I think we should leave before noon.	
6.	phǒm khít wâa, raw mâj khuan sýy rót khannán	phǒm wâa, raw mâj khuan sýy rót khannán
	I don't think we should buy the car.	
7.	phǒm khít wâa, kháw khoŋ maa	phǒm wâa, kháw khoŋ maa.
	I think he will surely come.	

o) Expansion Drill

jaŋŋaj	How.
wâa (jaŋ) ŋaj	What do (you) think[1]?
khun wâa jaŋŋaj	What do you think?
khun khít wâa jaŋŋaj	What do you think?
khun mii khwaam khít hěn wâa jaŋŋaj	What's your opinion?
khun mii khwaam khít hěn kìaw kàp ryâŋnií wâa jaŋŋaj {bâaŋ mâŋ	What's your opinion about this matter?

p) Expansion Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	phǒm wâa dii	phǒm wâa dii, khun la khráp, wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think it's good.	I think it's good. And you, what do you think?
2.	phǒm wâa mâj khuan	phǒm wâa mâj khuan, khun la khráp, wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think you shouldn't.	I think you shouldn't. And you, what do you think?
3.	phǒm wâa khuan	phǒm wâa khuan, khun la khráp wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think you should.	I think you should. And you, what do you think?
4.	phǒm wâa mâj thùuk	phǒm wâa mâj thùuk, khun la khráp, wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think it's not so.	I think it's not so. And you? what do you think?

---

[1] (Idiom = 'What are you up to?' [To Intimates or Inferiors])

5.	phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj	phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj, khun la khráp, wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think it's too expensive.	I think it's too expensive. And what do you think?
6.	phǒm wâa nâabỳa	phǒm wâa nâabỳa, khun lakhráp, wâa jaŋŋaj
	I think it's boring.	I think it's boring. And you, what do you think?

31.3 EXERCISES

a) Have students compare various persons and objects in terms of certain qualities (*good*, *pretty*, etc.).

b) Compare various activities in terms of convenience, pleasure, etc.

c) One student expresses an opinion and asks another student's opinion of the same thing.

d) One student reports on the loss of some object (*watch*, etc.) A second asks if he has found it. He indicates he has or hasn't.

e) One student says that he went to look for something or someone. Another asks if he was successful in his search. The first indicates he was (or wasn't).

f) Two students compare the weather 1) on different days, 2) in different months, 3) at different times of the day, and 4) in different places.

g) One student asks another about the weather at some other place or some other time of the year.

h) Find out which of 2 things various students prefer.

i) Find out the extent of superiority of one thing over another.

j) Compare the number of hours per day or week various people participate in various activities.

k) One student asks another his opinion on something. The second gives it.

l) One student asks another what he is thinking about at the moment.

m) One student asks another if he thinks he should do one thing or the other. The second gives his opinion.

31.4 VOCABULARY

aphǎatmên (lǎŋ)	apartments
bâanchâw (lǎŋ)	a house to rent
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
châw	to rent
(hǎa) dâj	to get. (It indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
hǎa { phóp cəə	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
hǎaj (paj)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
jâak	to be difficult
khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khamooj	thief, robber
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamkhíthěn	opinion
kìaw kàp	about
klua	to be afraid of
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent
lǎŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

mâŋ / bâaŋ	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent
nɔ́ɔj	to be little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
plɔ̀ɔtphaj	to be safe, out of danger
plyaŋ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
sadùak	to be convenient
samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sathǎanthîi (hɛ̀ŋ)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sǐa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sòot	to be single, unmarried state
(khon) sòot	single person, bachelor, spinster
tua phǒm eeŋ	I (myself)
... kháw eeŋ	he (himself)
... raw eeŋ	we (ourself), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion

LESSON THIRTY-TWO

32.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (2)

A:	khun dâj bâanchâw lɛ́ɛw rýjaŋ	Have you got a house to rent yet?
B:	jaŋ khráp	Not yet.
A:	naj sɔɔj bâan phǒm mii bâan wâaŋ hâj châw jùu lǎŋnyŋ	On my lane there's a house for rent.
B:	kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj khráp	How much is the rent?
A:	phǒm mâj dâj thǎam raaj la-íat	I didn't ask the details.
	pen bâanmàj	It's a new house.
	nâajùu dii	It's cozy.
	sámràp khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua léklék jàaŋ khun, khanàat kamlaŋ phɔɔdii, mâj lék mâj jàj kəən paj	For a small family like yours the size is just right, not too small, not too big.
B:	jùu klaj càak thanǒn jàj máj khráp	Is it far from the main street?
A:	jùu hàaŋ càak pàak sɔɔj raaw raaw sɔ̌ɔŋ kiloo kwàa khráp	It's around 2 kilometers or so from the end of the lane.
B:	phǒm ca tìttɔ̀ɔ ka câwkhɔ̌ɔŋbâan dâj jaŋŋaj	How do I get in touch with the owner?
A:	thoò paj thǎam kháw doojtroŋ	Call him directly.
	khráp.mâj tɔ̂ɔŋ phàan naajnâa	You don't have to go through the agent.
B:	bâan kháw thoorasàp bəə araj	What's his home phone number?
A:	bəə kâaw hòk thoo sǎam sìi hòk	962-346

32.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) The stative verb dii occurs in several different types of constructions with different meanings:

X + dii	Examples	Meaning of dii
I. Nouns		
A. Animate (Human)		
1. People in general	khon dii	good moral character
2. People in special roles	khruu thîi dii[1]	good at doing something
B. Inanimate		
1. Objects	tó dii	good quality
2. Places	kruŋthêep dii[2]	good for some special purpose
II. Verbs		
A. Action verbs	kháw rian dii	well, efficiently
B. Stative verbs	jàjdii	nice and (big)
III. Sentences		
A. Questions	tham araj dii	to be acceptable, all right

---

[1] When used with nouns indicating family roles (son, etc.), professional roles (teacher, etc.), thîidii is used to indicate that the person is performing well in that particular role without regard to his moral character.

[2] This type of construction can only be used when it is clear from the context in what respect a place can be called 'good'.

b) mii ... jùu calls attention to the fact that a certain thing is in existence at a particular time or place. Its existence may be temporary or accidental.

tɔɔn nán phǒm mii ŋəən jùu raaw hâasìp bàat thâwnán

At that time I had only about fifty baht (on me).

troŋ pàak sɔɔj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu ráan nyŋ

Right at the end of the lane there is (located) a coffee shop.

c) khít jaŋŋaj means 'how is it figured?(what is included in the calculations)'

kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj khráp

'How is the rent figured? (What's included in the rent?)'

khít thâwraj means 'How much does it amount to?';

kháw khít khâachâw thâwraj, 'How much is the rent?'.

d) nâa is a verb meaning 'worthy of, leading to, or able' which combines with other verbs to form verb compounds:

nâarák 'loveable, cute: nâa 'worthy of' + rák 'love'

nâacháj 'nice to use': nâa 'nice' + cháj 'to use'

nâaduu 'interesting to look at' : nâa 'interesting' + duu 'look at'

e) tìt tɔ̀ɔ kàp means 'to contact or get in touch with' someone.

phǒm ca tìttɔ̀ɔ ka câwkhɔ̌ɔŋ bâan dâj jaŋŋaj

'How do I get in touch with the owner of the house?'

f) hàaŋ means 'to be separated by a certain distance'. It is limited to use in sentences referring to the extent of the distance between two points.

bâan lǎŋnán jùu hàaŋ càak thanǒn jàj 2 kiloo

'That house is 2 kilometers from the main street'.

klaj 'to be far' can replace hàaŋ in constructions like the one above and can be used in other construction in which hàaŋ can not be used, as follows:

Q: kruŋthêep jùu klaj càak thîinîi máj

'Is Bangkok far from here?'

A: mâj klaj mâak khráp 'Not very far.'

Or in sentences where klaj is used with verbs of action:

kháw tii lûuk klaj mâak 'He hit the ball very far.'

32.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Besides the verbs maa (towards the speaker) and paj (away from the speaker) thoorasàp may be followed by other words.

Observe the following examples:

(a) Calling a place

phǒm thoo(rasàp) $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{array}\right.$ + thîi + PLACE

'I telephoned the... (Place).'

(b) Calling a person

phǒm thoo(rasàp) $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{paj}\\ \text{maa}\end{array}\right.$ + $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hǎa}\\ \text{thy̌ŋ}\end{array}\right.$ + PERSON

'I called (PERSON) up.'

Both when calling persons and places other action verbs with thoo may occur. Observe the following:

phǒm thoo	paj maa	thǎam kháw wâa	'I called to ask him...'
		bɔ̀ɔk kháw wâa	'I called to tell him...'
		chuan kháw paj	'I called to invite him to go'
		thǎam thîi+ Place..	'I called to ask at the ...'

32.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

bâan wâaŋ hâj châw	A house for rent.
náŋsy̌y hâj àan	A book to read.
náam hâj dỳym	Water to drink.
aahǎan hâj thaan	Food to eat.
nǎŋ hâj duu	A movie to see.
thîi hâj phák	A place to stay rest

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	naj sɔɔj bâan phǒm mii bâan wâaŋ hâj châw jùu lǎŋnyŋ On my lane there is a house for rent.
1. ráankaafɛɛ	naj sɔɔj bâan phǒm mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu ráan nyŋ In my lane there is a coffee shop.

2.	lǎaj ráan	naj sɔɔj bâan phǒm mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan In the lane I live in there are many coffee shops.
3.	thîi pàaksɔɔj	thîi pàak sɔɔj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan At the entrance to the lane there are many coffee shops.
4.	ráanaahǎan	thîi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu lǎaj ráan At the entrance to the lane there are many restaurants.
5.	ráan nyŋ	thîi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nyŋ At the entrance to the lane there is a restaurant.
6.	thîinân	thîinân mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nyŋ At that place there is a restaurant.
7.	ráantàtphǒm dii	thîinân mii ráantàtphǒm dii jùu ráan nyŋ There is a good barber shop there.
8.	lǎaj ráan	thîinân mii ráantàtphǒm diidii jùu lǎaj ráan There are many good barber shops there.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue		Pattern
		kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj How do they figure the rent?
1.	thâwràj	kháw khít khâachâw thâwràj How much do they charge for the rent?

2.	dyan la thâwràj	kháw khít khâachâw dyan la thâwraj How much do they charge per month for the rent?
3.	dyan la kìi phan bàat	kháw khít khâachâw dyan la kii phan bàat How many thousands a month do they charge for rent?
4.	pii la thâwràj	kháw khít khâachâw pii la thâwràj How much a year do they charge for the rent?
5.	aathít la kìi bàat	kháw khít khâachâw aathít la kìi bàat How many baht a week do they charge for rent?

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	bâan nán pen bâan mầj	That house is a new house.
2.	kruŋthêep pen myaŋ jàj	Bangkok is a big city.
3.	.thîi myaŋthaj, ɛ́ɛppə̂n pen khɔ̌ɔŋ phɛɛŋ	Apples are expensive in Thailand
4.	myaŋthaj pen myaŋ rɔ́ɔn	Thailand is a hot country.
5.	sawidden pen myaŋ nǎaw	Sweden is a cold country.
6.	sukhɔ̌othaj pen myaŋlǔaŋ kàw	Sukhothai is the old capitol.

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw pen khon dii	He's a nice person.
2.	kháw pen khon sanùk	He's an enjoyable person.
3.	kháw pen khon kèŋ	He's a competent person.
4.	kháw pen khon màj	He's a newcomer.

5.	kháw pen khon sǔaj	She's a pretty girl.
6.	kháw pen khon nâabỳa	He's a boring person.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	kháw pen sǎamii thîi dii	He's a good husband.
2.	kháw pen phanrajaa thîi dii	She's a good wife.
3.	kháw pen lûuchaaj thîi dii	He's a good son.
4.	kháw pen khruu thîi dii	He's a good teacher.
5.	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan thîi dii	He's a good government official.
6.	kháw pen naaj thîi dii	He's a good boss.
7.	kháw pen lûuknɔ́ɔŋ thîi dii	He's a good subordinate (employee).
8.	kháw pen nákrian thîi dii	She's a good student.

NOTE: Compare kháw {pen khon rian kèŋ / rian kèŋ} He's a good student. (has good ability to learn)

kháw pen nákrian thîidii He's a good student. (is dutiful)

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	nâajùu dii	nice and cozy
2.	sǔaj dii	nice and pretty
3.	thùuk dii	nice and cheap
4.	klâj dii	nice and near
5.	jen dii	nice and cool
6.	rɔ́ɔn dii	nice and hot

7.	rew dii	nice and fast
8.	lék dii	nice and small
9.	jàj dii	nice and large
10.	sanùk dii	nice and amusing

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	rɔ́ɔn (kəən) paj	too hot
2.	nǎaw (kəən) paj	too cold
3.	klaj (kəən) paj	too far
4.	rew (kəən) paj	too fast
5.	cháa (kəən) paj	too slow
6.	lék (kəən) paj	too small
7.	jàj (kəən) paj	too big
8.	klâj (kəən) paj	too close

i) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm chɔ̂ɔp He drives fast. I like that.	kháw khàp rót rew dii He drives nice and fast.
2.	kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp He drives fast. I don't like that.	kháw khàp rót rew paj He drives too fast.
3.	kháw phûut cháa.phǒm chɔ̂ɔp He speaks slowly. I like that.	kháw phûut cháa dii He speaks nice and slow.
4.	bâan khun jùu klâj talàat phǒm chɔ̂ɔp Your house is near the market. I like that.	bâankhun jùu klâj talàat dii Your house is nice and close to the market.

5.	bâan khun jùu klâj talàat phǒm mâj chɔ̂ɔp Your house is near the market. I don't like that.	bâan khun jùu klâj talàat kəən paj Your house is too close to the market.
6.	bâan lǎŋnán jàj.phǒm chɔ̂ɔp That house is big. I like that.	bâan lǎŋnán jàj dii That house is nice and big.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khanàat kamlaŋ phɔɔ dii, mâj lék mâj jàj kəən paj
   It's the right size, not too small and not too large.

2. aakàat kamlaŋ phɔɔ dii, mâj rɔ́ɔn mâj nǎaw kəən paj
   The weather is just right, not too warm and not too cold.

3. kháw phûut kamlaŋ phɔɔ dii, mâj rew mâj cháa kəən paj
   He speaks at just the right speed, not too fast and not too slow.

4. raakhaa kamlaŋ phɔɔ dii, mâj phɛɛŋ mâj thùuk kəən paj
   The price is just right, not too expensive and not too cheap.

5. raw maa thy̌ŋ kamlaŋ phɔɔdii, mâj rew mâj cháa
   We arrived at just the right time, not too early and not too late.

k) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern	
		bâan nâajùu	The house is nice to live in.
1.	hooten	hooten nâajùu	The hotel is nice to live in.
2.	kruŋthêep	kruŋthêep nâajùu	Bangkok is nice to live in.
3.	myaŋthaj	myaŋthaj nâajùu	Thailand is nice to live in.
4.	aphúatmênt	aphúatmênt nâajùu	The apartment is nice to live in.
5.	tàaŋcaŋwàt	tàaŋcaŋwàt nâajùu	Up country (Thailand) is nice to live in.

l) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (nâa+Verb as Modifier)

1.	bâan nâajùu	The house is nice (to live in)
2.	aahǎan nâathaan	The food looks delicious.
3.	rót khannán nâakhàp	That car is nice to drive.
4.	náŋsyy lêmnán nâaàan	That book is interesting to read.
5.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi nâasýy	Things here are nice to buy.
6.	nǎŋ rŷaŋníi nâaduu	This movie is nice to see.
7.	bâan lǎŋnán khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ, nâachâw	That house is not too expensive. It's nice to rent.
8.	pàakkaą dâamníi nâacháj	This pen is nice to use.
9.	nákrian khonnán nâasɔ̌ɔn	That student is nice to teach.
10.	náŋsyy lêmníi nâasǒncaj	That book is interesting.

11. lékchə̂ə (khambanjaaj) nâafaŋ The lecture is interesting.

12. dèk khonnán nâarák The child is lovable (cute, etc.)

m) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2	
1.	bâanlǎŋnán sǔaj		
	phǒm jàak jùu	bâan lǎŋnán nâajùu	That house is cozy.
2.	rót khanníi dii		
	phǒm jàak khàp	rót khanníi nâakhàp	That car is nice to drive.
3.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi thùukdii		
	phǒm jàak sýy	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi nâasýy	Things here are good buys.
4.	bâan lǎŋnán dii		
	phǒm jàak châw	bâan lǎŋnán nâachâw	That is a good house to rent.
5.	nákrian khonnán kèŋ		
	phǒm jàak sɔ̌ɔn	nákrian khonnán nâasɔ̌ɔn	That student is nice to teach.
6.	náŋsy̌y lênníi dii		
	phǒm jàak àan	náŋsy̌y lêm níi nâaàan	That is a readable book.
7.	náŋsy̌y lêmníi dii		
	phǒm sǒncaj	náŋsy̌y lêmníi nâasǒncaj	That book is interesting.

8. dèk khonnán dii thúkkhon rák kháw	dèk khonnán nâarák	That child is loveable. (cute, etc.)

n) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. sɔ̌ɔŋ kwàa	bâan lǎŋnán jùu hàaŋ càak thanǒn jàj kìi kiloo	sɔ̌ɔŋ kiloo kwàa
	How many kilometers is that house from the main street?	More than two.
2. raaw 2 ry̌y 3	sathǎanii rótfaj jùu hàaŋ càak (thîi) nîi kìi kiloo	raaw sɔ̌ɔŋ rý sǎam kiloo
	How many kilometers is the railroad station from here?	About 2 or 3.
3. raaw 150	hǔahǐn jùu hàaŋ càak kruŋthêep kìi kiloo	raaw rɔ́ɔj hâasìp kiloo
	How far is Huahin from Bangkok?	About 150 kilometers.
4. 692	ubon jùu hàaŋ càak kruŋthêep kìi kiloo	hòk rɔ́ɔj kâawsìp sɔ̌ɔŋ kiloo
	How far is Ubon from Bangkok?	About 692 kilometers.
5. 1129	sǒŋkhlǎa jùu hàaŋ càak kruŋthêep kìi kiloo	nỳŋ phan nỳŋ rɔ́ɔj jîisìp kâaw kiloo
	How far is Songkla from Bangkok?	1129 kilometers.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Use of tìttɔ̀ɔ)

	Question	Response
1.	kháw maa thurá araj Why did he come?	kháw maa tìttɔ̀ɔ rŷaŋ bâanchâw He came to inquire about the house for rent.
2.	kháw khuan ca tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp khraj Who should he contact?	kháw khuan ca tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp câwnâathîi khonnán He should contact that official.
3.	phǒm ca tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp kháw dâj jaŋŋaj How can I get in touch with him?	tìttɔ̀ɔ phàan naajnâa sikhráp Contact (him) through the agent.
4.	phǒm ca tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp kháw dâj jaŋŋaj How can I get in touch with him?	tìttɔ̀ɔ phàan câwnâathîi sikhráp Through the man in charge.
5.	phǒm ca tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp khun dâj jaŋŋaj How do I get in touch with you?	nîikhráp, bəəthoorasàp phǒm Here is my phone number.
6.	khun phǒp kháw bâaŋ rýplàaw Have you seen him lately?	plàawkhráp, phǒm mâj dâj tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw No, I've been out of touch with him for a long time.
7.	khun dâj còtmǎaj càak kháw bâaŋ rýplàaw Have you got any letters from him?	plàaw khráp, phǒm mâj dâj tìttɔ̀ɔ kàp kháw maa naan lɛ́ɛw No, I haven't been in touch with him for a long time.

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	thoo paj thǎam	call and ask
2.	thoo paj bɔ̀ɔk	call and tell
3.	thoo paj chuan	call and invite
4.	thoo paj rîak	call and summon
5.	thoo paj hǎa	call
6.	thoo paj thy̌ŋ	call

q) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns 1 and 2 to form pattern 3.)

		Patterns 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	a.	phǒm thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm thoo paj thǎam kháw wâa kháw ca paj máj
	b.	phǒm thǎam kháw wâa kháw ca paj máj	
		I called him. I asked him whether he was going.	I called and asked if he was going.
2.	a.	phǒm thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm thoo paj bɔ̀ɔk kháw wâa phǒm paj mâj dâj
	b.	phǒm bɔ̀ɔk kháw wâa phǒm paj mâj dâj	
		I called him. I told him I couldn't go.	I called and told him that I couldn't go.
3.	a.	phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm ca thoo paj chuan kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ
	b.	phǒm ca chuan kháw paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	
		I will call him. I will ask him to go shopping with me.	I will call and ask him to go shopping with me.

4.	a.	phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm ca thoo paj chuan kháw paj thîaw
	b.	phǒm ca chuan kháw paj thîaw	
		I will call him. I will invite him to go out (for fun).	I will call and invite him to go out (for fun).
5.	a.	phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm ca thoo paj bɔ̀ɔk hâj kháw maa thîinîi
	b.	phǒm ca bɔ̀ɔk hâj kháw maa thîinîi	
		I will call him. I will tell him to come over.	I will call and tell him to come over.
6.	a.	phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw	phǒm ca thoo paj thǎam (kháw) rŷaŋ bâanchâw
	b.	phǒm ca thǎam kháw rŷaŋ bâanchâw	
		I will call him. I will ask him about the house for rent.	I will call and ask him about the house for rent.
7.	a.	phǒm thoo paj thîi bɔɔrisàt thɛ́ksîi	phǒm thoo paj rîak thɛ́ɛksîi
	b.	phǒm rîak thɛ́ksîi	
		I called the taxi company. I asked for a cab.	I called for a cab.
8.	a.	kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm	kháw thoo maa thǎam wâa phǒm ca paj mŷaràj
	b.	kháw thǎam phǒm wâa phǒm ca paj mŷaràj	
		He called me. He asked me when I was leaving.	He called and asked when I was leaving.

9.	a.	kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm	kháw thoo maa bɔ̀ɔk (phǒm) wâa kháw mâj sabaaj
	b.	kháw bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa kháw mâj sabaaj	
		He called me. He told me he was sick.	He called and told me that he was sick.
10.	a.	kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm	kháw thoo maa chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa
	b.	kháw chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa	
		He called me. He invited me to go to Pataya.	He called and invited me to go to Pataya.

32.4 EXERCISES

1. Ask someone if he has rented a house yet. He indicates he hasn't.

2. Ask if there are any houses for rent in his street. He says there are some.

3. Find out the name of someone's landlord.

4. Find out how much the rent is.

5. Comment on the looks of various buildings in the neighborhood. Indicate that they look nice.

6. Discuss how far apart various buildings in the neighborhood are.

7. Ask someone how you get in touch with someone else. He says call him directly.

8. Ask someone if the house he is living in is big enough for a small family like his.

9. Find out how much the rent is for different houses and apartments, how many hundreds, thousands, etc. per week, month, year.

10. Discuss the weather in various seasons at various places.

11. Discuss the manner in which various activities are done and whether you like the way it's done.

12. Indicate that something is just right, not too... or too...

13. Ask questions and answer them about places that are nice to live in, things that are nice to eat, etc.

14. Discuss various telephone calls; who made them to whom for what purpose and at what time.

32.5 VOCABULARY

ɛ́ɛpə̂n (lûuk, phǒn, baj)	apple
câwkhɔ̌ɔŋ	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	the man in charge, official
doojtroŋ	directly
hàaŋ	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
kamlaŋ phɔɔdii	just right
kəən paj	too..., in excess
khâachâw	the rent
khambanjaaj (khɔ̂ɔ)	lecture
khanàat	size
khít jaŋŋaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
kiloo	kilometer
lékchə̂ə (khɔ̂ɔ)	lecture
lûuknɔ́ɔŋ (khon)	subordinate (employee)
maa thy̌ŋ	to arrive (towards speaker)
paj thy̌ŋ	to arrive (away from speaker)

mii.... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able, It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds
nâa-àan	interesting to read
nâabỳa	boring
nâacháj	nice to use
nâachâw	nice to rent
nâaduu	interesting to look at
nâafaŋ	interesting to listen to
nâajùu	to be cozy, livable
nâakhàp	nice to drive
nâarák	lovable, cute
nâasýy	nice to buy
nâasǒncaj	interesting
nâasɔ̌ɔn	nice to teach
nâathaan	to look delicious
naajnâa (khon)	agent
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips , opening
pàaksɔɔj	the entrance into a lane
raaj la-ìat	details
rák	to love
sɔɔj	lane, narrow street
tìttɔ̀ɔ / kàp / kan / ka-	to contact or get in touch with someone
thoo (rasàp)	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) paj	
.... (rasàp) maa	

LESSON THIRTY-THREE

33.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (3)

A:	phǒm dâjjin wâa khun mii bâan hâj châw, châj máj khráp	I heard you had a house to rent, is that true?
B:	khâ, mii jùu lǎaj lǎŋ . khun tɔ̂ŋkaan bɛ̀ɛp nǎj. chán diaw, sɔ̌ɔŋ chán rý chán khrŷŋ	Yes, I have several. What kind do you want? One story, two story, or one and a half story.
A:	phǒm jàak dâj bâan thîi mii hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn sǎam hɔ̂ŋ lɛ́ɛw kɔ̂ mii múŋlûat tháŋ lǎŋ ca pen sɔ̌ɔŋ chán rý chán khrŷŋ kɔ̂ dâj	I want a house with 3 bedrooms and completely screened in. Either two story or one and a half story is O.K.
B:	khun chɔ̂ɔp bâan tỳk rý máaj khá	You want a masonry house or a wooden house?
A:	araj kɔ̂dâj khráp	Either is O.K.
B:	dichán mii bâan sɔ̌ɔŋ chán khrŷŋ tỳk khrŷŋ máaj jùu lǎŋ nyŋ	I have a two story house half masonry and half wood.
	pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj màj	It's a modern style house.
	khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk thaa sǐi khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn, khâaŋnaj sǐi khǎaw	Outside it's light green; inside it's white.
	chán bon mii hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn sǎam hɔ̂ŋ, hɔ̂ŋnám nỳŋ hɔ̂ŋ	Upstairs there are 3 bedrooms and one bath.
	chán lâaŋ mii hɔ̂ŋrápkhɛ̀ɛk, hɔ̂ŋkhrua, hɔ̂ŋaahǎan ka hɔ̂ŋnám ìik hɔ̂ŋ nyŋ	Downstairs there is a living room, kitchen, dining room, and another bathroom.

	lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂, lǎŋ bâan mii ryan khoncháj ka hɔ̂ŋkèpkhɔ̌ɔŋ jùu tàaŋ hàak	And in the back of the house there are separate servant quarters and storage space.
A:	mii rooŋrót máj khráp	Is there a carport?
B:	mii khâ	Yes, there is.

33.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) When kɔ̂ dâj follows Noun+nǎj, it indicates that either of two or more of the options is acceptable.

A:	phǒm khuan ca paj bâan khun weelaa nǎj		What time of day should I go to your house?
B.	weelaa nǎj kɔ̂ dâj =	weelaa cháaw dâj	'Morning is O.K.'
		weelaa thîaŋ dâj	'Noon is O.K.'
		weelaa klaaŋkhyyn dâj	'Nighttime is O.K.'
		weelaa .... dâj	....

'Any time is all right.'

A:	raw ca kin khâaw thîi ráan nǎj kan		'Which restaurant shall we eat at?'
B:	ráan nǎj kɔ̂ dâj =	ráan níi dâj	'This restaurant is O.K.'
		ráan nán dâj	'That restaurant is O.K.'
		ráan nóon dâj	'The restaurant over there is O.K.'

'Any one is all right?'

b) jàak and jàak dâj both mean 'want' or 'would like', but they are used differently.

jàak is usually followed by a Verb Phrase and only rarely by a Noun Phrase, whereas, jàak dâj is normally followed by a Noun Phrase. Observe the following examples:

	Subject +	Verb +	Complement (Verb Phrase)
(1)	phŏm	jàak	paj
	I	want to	go
(2)	phom	jàak	paj jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt
	I	want to	go and live in the provinces.

	Subject +	Verb +	Complement (Noun Phrase)
(1)	phŏm	jàak dâj	bâan
	I	want	a house.
(2)	phŏm	jàak dâj	bâan thîi mii sɔ̆ɔŋ hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn
	I	want	a house with two bedrooms.

c) Following are two of the ways that Noun Compounds may be formed in Thai:

(1) Noun Compound: Noun + Verb Phrase

hɔ̂ŋrápkhɛ̀ɛk 'living room': hɔ̂ŋ 'room' + ráp 'receive' + khɛ̀ɛk 'guest'

hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn 'bedroom': hɔ̂ŋ + nɔɔn 'sleep'

hɔ̂ŋkèpkhɔ̆ɔŋ 'storeroom': hɔ̂ŋ + kèp 'store' + khɔ̆ɔŋ 'things'

hɔ̂ŋthaankhâaw 'dining room': hɔ̂ŋ + thaan 'eat' + khâaw 'rice'

(2) Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

hɔ̂ŋaahǎan 'dining room': hɔ̂ŋ + aahǎan 'food'

(hɔ̂ŋ) khrua 'kitchen': hɔ̂ŋ + khrua 'kitchen' rooŋrót 'carport': rooŋ 'building'+rót 'vehicle'

sǔan dɔ̀ɔkmáaj 'flower garden': sǔan 'garden' dɔ̀ɔkmáaj 'flower'

sanǎam (jâa) 'lawn, yard': sanǎam 'yard, field' + jâa 'grass'

Observe the following compounds with bɛ̀ɛp 'model, type, style':

bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj	a Thai style house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp faràŋ	a Western style house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj màj	a new style house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp than samǎj	a modern style house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp chán diaw	a one story house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp sɔ̌ɔŋ chán	a two story house
bâan bɛ̀ɛp chánkhrŷŋ	a storey and a half house

33.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

1. The following words and phrases are used with houses:

	múŋ	'mosquito net'
	múŋlûat	'screen' (for window, etc.)
mii tìt	múŋlûat	'to be screened'
mii	múŋlûat tháŋ lǎŋ	'to be completely screened'

2. The following are some of the color words in Thai:

	Basic color	Light color	Dark color
green	sĭi khĭaw	sĭi khĭaw ɔ̀ɔn	sĭi khĭaw kɛ̀ɛ
yellow	sĭi ly̌aŋ	sĭi ly̌aŋ ɔ̀ɔn	sĭi ly̌aŋ kɛ̀ɛ
red	sĭi dɛɛŋ	sĭi dɛɛŋ ɔ̀ɔn	sĭi dɛɛŋ kɛ̀ɛ
brown	sĭi námtaan	sĭi nǎmtaan ɔ̀ɔn	sĭi námtaan kɛ̀ɛ

blue	sǐi námŋəən	sǐi fáa	sǐi námŋəən khêm
navy blue	sǐi kromathâa		krommathâa
white	sǐi khǎaw	... ...	... ...
black	sǐi dam	... ...	... ...

33.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response
1.	khun chɔ̂ɔp bâan tỳk rý bâan máaj Do you like stucco houses or wood houses?	araj kɔ̂dâj Either.
2.	khun chɔ̂ɔp bâan bɛ̀ɛp nǎj What kind of house do you prefer?	bɛ̀ɛp nǎj kɔ̂dâj Any kind.
3.	khun jàak jùu thîinǎj Where would you like to live?	thîinǎj kɔ̂dâj Anywhere.
4.	khun jàak pen araj (mɔ̌ɔ, thahǎan, etc) What would you like to be? (doctor, etc.)	pen araj kɔ̂dâj (Any occupation) is fine.
5.	raw ca paj kan weelaa nǎj What time are we going?	weelaa nǎj kɔ̂dâj Any time is all right.
6.	chalə̌əm pen chŷy phûuchaaj rý phûujǐŋ Is 'Chalerm' a man's name or a woman's name?	chŷy phûuchaaj kɔ̂dâj chŷy phûujǐŋ kɔ̂dâj It could be either a man's name or a woman's name.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	ca pen sɔ̌ɔŋ chán rý chán diaw kɔ̂dâj Either a two story or one story one is O.K.
1. paj, mâj paj	ca paj rý mâj paj kɔ̂dâj It doesn't matter whether we go or not.
2. tham dǐawníi, ìik sák pradǐaw	ca tham dǐawníi ry̌ ìik sàk pradǐaw kɔ̂dâj It doesn't make any difference whether you do it now or a little later.
3. hâj phǒm khɔɔj jùu thîinîi, thîinóon	ca hâj phǒm khɔɔj jùu thîinîi rý thîinóon kɔ̂dâj It's all right with me whether you have me wait here or there.
4. ca pen bâan tỳk, bâan máaj	ca pen bâan tỳk rý bâanmáaj kɔ̂dâj Either a stucco or wooden house is O.K.
5. khon thaj, khon tàaŋchâat	ca pen khon thaj rý khon tàaŋchâat kɔ̂dâj It could be either a Thai or a foreigner.

c) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		phǒm jàak dâj bâan thîi mii hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn sǎam hɔ̂ŋ I want a house with three bedrooms.
1.	bâan thîi mii múŋlûat	phǒm jàak dâj bâan thîi mii múŋlûat I want a house that is screened.
2.	bâan sɔ̌ɔŋ chán	phǒm jàak dâj bâan sɔ̌ɔŋ chán I want a two story house.
3.	bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj	phǒm jàak dâj bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj I want a Thai style house.
4.	rót màj	phǒm jàak dâj rót màj I want a new car.
5.	náŋsy̌y lêm nán	phǒm jàak dâj náŋsy̌y lên nán I want that book.
6.	phɛ̌ɛnthîi prathêet thaj 1 phɛ̀ɛn	phǒm jàak dâj phɛ̌ɛnthîi prathêet thaj nỳŋ phɛ̀ɛn I want a map of Thailand.
7.	ŋən mâak mâak	phǒm jàak dâj ŋən mâak mâak I want (to get) a lot of money.

d) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. fáa	bâan khun (thaa) sǐi araj What color is your house?	sǐi fáa khráp Light blue.
2. dam	rót khan màj khɔ̌ɔŋ khun sǐi araj What color is your new car?	sǐi dam khráp Black.
3. khǎaw	khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk bâan khun thaa sǐi araj What color is your house on the outside?	sǐi khǎaw khráp White.
4. ly̌aŋ ɔ̀ɔn	sŷa khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw sǐi araj What color is his coat?	sǐi ly̌aŋ ɔ̀ɔn khráp Light yellow.
5. námtaan kɛ̀ɛ	rɔɔŋtháw khûu nán sǐi araj What color is that pair of shoes?	sǐi námtaan kɛ̀ɛ khráp Dark brown.
6.		

e) Transformation Drill (Form pattern 3 from Patterns 1 and 2.)

Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1. bâan kháw sǐi khǐaw bâan phǒm sǐi khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn His house is green. My house is light green.	bâan kháw sǐi kɛ̀ɛ kwàa bâan phǒm His house is a darker color than mine.

2.	kâwîi hɔ̂ŋ khun praphâat sǐi ly̌aŋkèɛ The chairs in Prapas' room are dark yellow. kâwîi hɔ̂ŋ khun prasə̀ət sǐi ly̌aŋɔ̀ɔn The chairs in Prasert's room are light yellow.	kâwîi hɔ̂ŋ khun praphâat sǐi kèɛ kwàa kâwîi hɔ̂ŋ khun prasə̀ət The chairs in Prapas' room are of darker color than those in Prasert's room.
3.	rót khan nán sǐi dɛɛŋ rót khanníi sǐi dɛɛŋ ɔ̀ɔn That car is red; this car is light red.	rót khan nán sǐi kèɛ kwàa rót khan níi That car is darker colored than this one.
4.	sŷa chút nán sǐi námŋəən sŷa chút níi sǐi faá That suit is blue. This suit is light blue.	sŷa chút nán kèɛ kwàa sŷa chút níi That suit is darker than this one.
5.	rɔɔŋtháw khûu nán sǐi námtaan kèɛ rɔɔŋtháw khûu níi sǐi námtaan ɔ̀ɔn That pair of shoes is dark brown. This pair of shoes is light brown.	rɔɔŋtháw khûu nán sǐi kèɛ kwàa rɔɔŋtháw khûu níi That pair of shoes is darker in color than this pair.
6.	phǒm chɔ̂ɔp sǐi kromathâa kháw chɔ̂ɔp sǐi fáa I like navy blue. He likes light blue.	phǒm chɔ̂ɔp sǐi kèɛ kwàa kháw I like darker colors than he.

Repeat this drill reversing subject and complement and using ɔ̀ɔn kwàa in place of kèɛ kwàa.

f) Expansion Drill

1. mii bâan
mii bâan wâaŋ
mii bâan wâaŋ hâj châw
mii bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj wâaŋ hâj châw
mii bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj wâaŋ hâj châw jùu
mii bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj than samǎj wâaŋ hâj châw jùu
mii bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wâaŋ hâj châw jùu
mii bâan bɛ̀ɛp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wâaŋ hâj châw jùu lǎŋ nyŋ

2. phǒm jàak dâj bâan
phǒm jàak dâj bâan tỳk
phǒm jàak dâj bâan tỳk thaa sǐi khǐaw
phǒm jàak dâj bâan tỳk thaa sǐi khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn
phǒm jàak dâj bâan tỳk thaa sǐi khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn thîi mii múŋlûat
phǒm jàak dâj bâan tỳk thaa sǐi khǐaw ɔ̀ɔn thîi mii múŋlûat tháŋlǎŋ

3. kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan
kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan máaj
kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan máaj bɛ̀ɛp faràŋ
kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan máaj bɛ̀ɛp faràŋ chán diaw
kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan máaj bɛ̀ɛp faràŋ chán diaw thîi mii hɔ̂ŋnám
kháw chɔ̂ɔp bâan máaj bɛ̀ɛp faràŋ chán diaw thîi mii hɔ̂ŋnám bɛ̀ɛp than samǎj

4. pen bâan
pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj kàw
pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj kàw sɔ̌ɔŋ chán
pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj kàw sɔ̌ɔŋ chán khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk thaa sǐi dɛɛŋ
pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj kàw sɔ̌ɔŋ chán khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk thaa sǐi dɛɛŋ, khâaŋnaj sǐi khǎaw
pen bâan bɛ̀ɛp samǎj kàw 2 chán khâaŋnɔ̂ɔk thaa sǐi dɛɛŋ, khâaŋnaj sǐi khǎaw lǎŋ nyŋ

g) Response Drill (Use kɔ̂ dâj in the response.)

	Question	Response
1.	khun jàak jùu kruŋthêep rý tàaŋcaŋwàt	thîinǎj kɔ̂ dâj
2.	wanníi raw ca paj thaan khâaw thîinǎj dii	thîinǎj kɔ̂ dâj
3.	khun jàak hâj lûuk khun rian araj	araj kɔ̂ dâj
4.	khun ca hâj phǒm paj tɔɔn nǎj	tɔɔn nǎj kɔ̂ dâj
5.	phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw dii	araj kɔ̂ dâj
6.	ŋaan níi ca tɔ̂ɔŋ sèt mŷaraj	mŷaraj kɔ̂ dâj
7.	khun ca phûut ka khraj	khraj kɔ̂ dâj
8.	khun jàak hâj khraj paj dûaj	khraj kɔ̂ dâj

33.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out if someone has a house to rent. He indicates that he has several, and asks you if you want a single story house. You say you want a two story house.

b) Tell someone that you have a masonry house that is completely screened in. Ask him if he wants to rent it. He says he doesn't.

c) Ask someone if he has a half masonry and half wood house to rent. He says he has two. You ask him where they are. He says they are on Sukhumwit Lane.

d) Ask the teacher whether most Thais live in modern style houses or old style, Thai or foreign.

e) Tell someone you have a house to rent. He asks you what color it is. You say it's white on the outside and light green on the inside.

f) Describe the house you are now living in terms of: 1) number of storeys 2) material it is made out of, 3) the color it is painted inside and out, 4) what rooms it has and whether they are upstairs or down, 5) whether it has servants' quarters, storage space, a carport, flower garden, and a yard.

g) Various students ask about the colors of various objects in the classroom; other students respond with the correct answers.

h) One student asks another questions of the following kind: 'Do you like .... or ....?' to which the response 'Any (kind, thing, where, etc.)' is given.

i) One student asks another what kind of... he wants. The second responds with a description of the kind he wants.

33.5 VOCABULARY

ɔ̀ɔn	light (color)
bâan máaj (lǎŋ)	a wooden house
bâan tỳk (lǎŋ)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
bɛ̀ɛp	model, type, style
chàan	patio, porch without a roof
chalǐaŋ (chalǐaŋ)	terrace, balcony, porch
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story

chánkhrŷŋ	one and a half storey
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
(sǐi) dam	black
(sǐi) dɛɛŋ	red
dâjjin	to hear
dɔ̀ɔkmáaj (dɔ̀ɔk)	flowers
fáa (sǐi fáa)	sky, sky blue
hɔ̂ŋaahǎan (hɔ̂ŋ)	dining room
hɔ̂ŋkèpkhɔ̌ɔŋ (hɔ̂ŋ)	storage, space, storage room
hɔ̂ŋkhrua (hɔ̂ŋ)	kitchen
hɔ̂ŋnám (hɔ̂ŋ)	bathroom, restroom
hɔ̂ŋrápkhɛ̀ɛk (hɔ̂ŋ)	a living room
jâa	grass
kɛ̀ɛ	dark (color)
khǎaw	white
khǐaw	green
khǐawɔ̀ɔn	light green
khûu	pair
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
ly̌aŋ	yellow
máaj (an, phɛ̀ɛn)	wood, stick
múŋ (lǎŋ)	mosquito net
múŋlûat	screen (for window etc.)
(sǐi) námŋəən	blue
(sǐi) námtaan	sugar, brown (as color)
rabiaŋ	corridor
rooŋrót (rooŋ)	garage
rɔɔŋtháw (khûu, khâaŋ)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)

ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
samǎj	time, period, era, age, reign
samǎj màj	modern
sanǎam (jâa)	lawn, yard
sanǎam (sanǎam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sǐi (sǐi)	color
sɔ̌ɔŋchán	two story
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔan dɔ̀ɔkmáaj	flower garden
(jùu) tàaŋhàak	to be separate
thaa (sǐi)	to paint, smear, spread (on)
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
tìt (múŋlûat)	to be screened
tɔ̂ŋkaan	to want, need

LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

34.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (4)

A:	pen jaŋŋaj mâŋ khábâan lǎŋ níi	How is this house?
	khun chɔ̂ɔp máj	Do you like it?
B:	sabaaj mâak khráp, bɔɔriween kɔ̂ kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ dii	Very nice. The compound is also nice and large.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj khráp	Excuse me, how much is the rent?
A:	dyan la hâaphan bàat. mâj ruam khâanám, khâafaj, khâakéɛs, lɛ́ khâathoorasàp	5000 baht a month. Not including water, electricity, gas, and telephone.
	phûuchâw tɔ̂ɔŋ sǐa eeŋ	The tenant has to pay those himself.
B:	dyan la hâaphan chiaw rə̌ khráp	Five thousand baht!?
	lót bâaŋ dâj máj khráp	Could you come down some?
A:	hâa phan mâj phɛɛŋ rɔkhâ phrɔ́ mii khrŷaŋryan phrɔ́ɔm	5,000 is not too expensive since it's furnished.
B:	mii araj bâaŋ khráp	What (furnishings) are there?
A:	mii khróp thúk jàaŋ: chút rápkhɛ̀ɛk, chút thaankhâaw, tiaŋ, tûu, tawkéɛs, tûujen lɛ́ phátlom . khàat tɛ̀ɛ khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat	Everything: living room furniture, a dining set, beds, chests of drawers, a gas stove, a refrigerator, and electric fans. The only thing it doesn't have is air conditioning.

A:	khun tɔ̂ŋ aw maa eeŋ tɛ̀ɛ raw tìttâŋ hâj frii	You have to bring your own. But we'll have it installed for you free.
B:	tɔ̂ŋ tham sǎnjaachâw kìi pii khráp	How long a lease is required?
A:	nỳŋ pii khà	One year.
	càaj ŋən lûaŋnâa jaaŋnɔ́ɔj sǎam dyan	(Pay) 3 months rent in advance.
	khɔ̌ɔthôot, khun ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj khá	Excuse me, when would you like to move in?
B:	phǒm khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa phanrajaa phǒm kɔ̀ɔn	I'd like to talk it over with my wife first.
	thâa tòkloŋ, ca jáaj maa dyan nâa	If we take it, we'll move in next month.

34.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sǐa, ɔ̀ɔk, and càaj

sǐa (khâa) means 'to pay for something (a bill, etc.)' as an obligation for services rendered.

ɔ̀ɔk (ŋən) means 'to pay for something, put up the money for something, or to stand good for something.'

càaj (ŋən) means 'to pay out, spend, disburse money'. It refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion.

The example below illustrates the usage of sǐa, ɔ̀ɔk, and càaj:

khun cɔɔn kàp khun cim châw bàan jùu dûajkan. kháw sǐa khâachâw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cɔɔn ɔ̀ɔk 2000 bàat . khun cim ɔ̀ɔk 2000 bàat. kháw càaj khâachâwbâan dyan la khráŋ

John and Jim rent a house. The cost of the rent is 4000 baht a month. John pays out 2000 and Jim pays out 2000. They make the rent payment once a month.

b) khróp means 'to be complete' or 'to include all the members of a limited set of items'. Its opposite is khàat 'to be lacking, missing'. khróp like sèt usually occurs as a completive verb, as in

kháw dâj náŋsʉ̌ʉ khróp thúk lêm	He got all the books.
(náŋsʉ̌ʉ mii jùu 20 lêm. kháw dâj náŋsʉ̌ʉ 20 lêm.)	(There were 20 books. He got 20.)

However, it can occur independently, as in

A: náŋsʉ̌ʉ khróp máj	Are all the books here?
B: mâj khróp, khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm	No, two are missing.

c) When chiaw occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.

hâaphan bàat chiaw rʉ̌ʉ	Five thousand baht!? (That's quite a lot of money.)

34.2 VOCABULARY NOTES (The following are some of the compounds with khâa 'cost, price, fee, value' as the head noun:)

Noun: Noun+Noun

khâafaj (fáa) 'electric bill': khâa+faj (fáa) 'electricity'

khâanáam 'water bill': khâa+náam 'water'

khâakɛ́ɛs 'gas bill': khâa+kɛ́ɛs 'gas'

khâarót 'carfare': khâa+rót 'car, vehicle'

khâa aahǎan 'food (on a bill)': khâa+aahǎan 'food'

khâamɔ̌ɔ 'doctor bill': khâa+mɔ̌ɔ 'doctor'

Noun: Noun+Verb Phrase

khâacâaŋ 'wage': khâa+câaŋ 'hire'
khâachâw 'rent', khâa+châw 'rent'
khâakin 'food': khâa+kin 'eat'
khâajùu 'lodging': khâa+jùu 'reside'
khâathoorasàp 'phone bill': khâa+thoorasàp 'telephone'
khâadəənthaaŋ 'travel expenses: khâa+dəənthaaŋ 'travel'

34.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. khâanám, mâj	ruam khâanám máj Does it include the water bill?	mâj ruam khráp No, it doesn't.
2. khâakɛ́ɛs	ruam khâakɛ́ɛs máj Does it include the gas bill?	ruam khráp Yes, it does.
3. khâafaj, mâj	ruam khâafaj máj Does it include the electric bill?	mâj ruam khráp No, it doesn't.
4. khâathoorasàp	ruam khâathoorasàp máj Does it include the phone bill?	ruam khráp Yes, it does.

b) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâanám eeŋ You have to pay the water bill yourself.
1.	khâacâaŋ	tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâacâaŋ eeŋ You have to pay the wages yourself.
2.	khâamɔ̌ɔ	tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâamɔ̌ɔ eeŋ You have to pay the doctor bill yourself.
3.	khâadəənthaaŋ	tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâadəənthaaŋ eeŋ You have to pay travel expenses yourself.
4.	khâajùu	ttɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâajùu eeŋ You have to pay for lodging yourself.

c) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw châw bâan dyan la sǎam phan bàat He rents the house for 3000 baht a month.	kháw sǐa khâa châwbâan dyan la 3000 bàat He pays 3000 baht a month for rent.
2.	kháw câaŋ khoncháj dyan la hâa rɔ́ɔj bàat He hires a servant for 500 baht a month.	kháw sǐa khâacâaŋ khoncháj dyan la 500 bàat He pays 500 baht a month for a servant.

3.	kháw cháj fajfáa dyan la sìi rɔ́ɔj bàat He uses 400 baht worth of electricity per month.	kháw sǐa khâafajfáa dyan la sìi rɔ́ɔj bàat He pays a 400 baht electric bill every month.
4.	kháw cháj kɛ́ɛs dyan la rɔ́ɔj bàat He uses 100 baht worth of gas per month.	kháw sǐa khâakɛ́ɛs dyan la rɔ́ɔj bàat He pays a 100 baht monthly gas bill.
5.	kháw sýy aahǎan dyan la phan bàat He buys 1000 baht worth of food per month.	kháw sǐa khâa aahǎan dyan la phan bàat He pays 1000 baht a month for food.
6.	kháw hâj ŋən khonkhàp théksîi sìp bàat He gave the taxi driver ten baht.	kháw sǐa khâa théksîi sìp bàat He paid ten baht for a taxi.

d) Sentence Expansion Drill

1.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâachâwbâan eeŋ.thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj We don't have to pay the rent.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâachâwbâan eeŋ. thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj We don't have to pay the rent. The government pays for us.
2.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâadəənthaaŋ eeŋ We don't have to pay for travel expenses.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâadəənthaaŋ eeŋ. thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj We don't have to pay for travel expenses. The government pays for us.

3.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâamɔ̌ɔ eeŋ We don't have to pay doctor bills.	raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâamɔ̌ɔ eeŋ. thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj We don't have to pay doctor bills. The government pays for us.
4.	kháw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâalâwrian khɔ̌ɔŋ lûuk eeŋ He doesn't have to pay for his children's schooling.	kháw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâalâwrian khɔ̌ɔŋ lûuk eeŋ. thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj He doesn't have to pay for his children's schooling. The government pays for him.
5.	kháw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâarót eeŋ He doesn't have to pay for transportation.	kháw mâj tɔ̂ŋ sǐa khâarót eeŋ thaaŋrâatchakaan ɔ̀ɔk hâj He doesn't have to pay for carfare. The government pays for him.

e) Response Drill

Cue	Question	Response
1. 2	khun càaj khâachâwbâan wanthîi thâwraj On what day of the month do you pay the rent?	wanthîi sɔ̌ɔŋ khráp The second.
2. 15	khun càaj khâakɛ́ɛs wanthîi thâwraj On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?	wanthîi 15 khráp The fifteenth.

3.	22	khun càaj khâanám wan thâwraj What day do you pay the water bill on?	wanthîi 22 khráp The twenty second.
4.	sùtháaj	khun càaj khâathoorasàp wanthîi thâwraj What day do you pay the telephone bill on?	wan sùtháaj khráp The last day.
5.	dyan la 2 khráŋ	khun càaj khâacâaŋ khoncháj dyan la kìi khráŋ How many times a month do you pay your servants?	dyan la 2 khráŋ khráp Twice a month.
6.	dyan la khráŋ	khun càaj khâafaj dyan la kìi khráŋ How many times a month do you pay the light bill?	dyan la khráŋ Once a month.

f) Transformation Drill (Change from affirmative to negative.)

	Pattern 1 (affirmative)	Pattern 2 (Negative)
1.	bâanníi mii khrŷaŋryan khróp thúk jàaŋ This house has all kinds of furniture.	bâanníi mii khrŷaŋryan mâj khróp (thúk jàaŋ) This house doesn't have all kinds of furniture.
2.	phǒm dâj náŋsŷy khróp thúk lêm lɛ́ɛw I've got all the books (in a series, etc.)	phǒm dâj náŋsŷy jaŋ mâj khróp (thúk lêm) I haven't got all the books yet.

3.	phǒm tɔ̀ɔp khamthǎam khróp thúk khɔ̂ɔ I answered every single question.	phǒm tɔ̀ɔp khamthǎam mâj khróp thúk khɔ̂ɔ I didn't answer all the questions.
4.	phǒm dâj ŋən khróp lɛ́ɛw I've already got all the money.	phǒm dâj ŋən jaŋ mâj khróp I haven't got all the money yet.
5.	phǒm thamŋaan (dâj) khróp nỳŋ pii lɛ́ɛw I've already worked for one year.	phǒm thamŋaan jaŋ mâj khróp (nỳŋ) pii I haven't been working quite a year yet.

g) Sentence Expansion Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	kháw tìttâŋ khrŷaŋpràpaakàat hâj frii They installed the air conditioner free.	kháw tìttâŋ khrŷaŋpràpaakàat hâj frii. kháw mâj khít khâatìttâŋ They installed the air conditioner free. They didn't charge for installation.
2.	kháw hâj raw thaan frii They let us eat free.	kháw hâj raw thaan frii kháw mâj khít $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{khâa aahǎan}\\\text{thaan}\end{array}\right.$ They let us eat free. They didn't charge for the food.

3.	kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii	kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii kháw mâj khít khâa {châw jùu}
	They let me stay free.	They let me stay free. They didn't charge me for rent (or lodging).
4.	kháw thamŋaan hâj phǒm frii	kháw thamŋaan hâj phǒm frii kháw mâj khít khâacâaŋ
	He worked for me free.	He worked, for me free. He didn't charge for labor.
5.	kháw sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y hâj phǒm frii	kháw sɔ̌ɔn náŋsy̌y hâj phǒm frii
	He taught me free.	He taught me free. He didn't charge any tuition fee.
6.	thaaŋrooŋrian hâj lûuk khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw rian frii	thaaŋrooŋrian hâj lûuk khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw rian frii. kháw mâj khít khâa lâwrian
	The school let his child study there free.	The school let his child study free. They didn't charge him any tuition fee.

h) Response Drill

Cue		Question	Response
1.	dyan nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj	dyan nâa
		When will he move in?	Next month.
2.	dyan mókharaa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj	dyan mokharaa
		When will he move in?	In January.
3.	aathít nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj	aathít nâa
		When will he move in?	Next week.

4.	wancan thîi ca thy̌ŋ níi	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj When will be move in?	wancan thîi ca thy̌ŋníi Monday of next week.
5.	ìik 4 wan	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj When will he move in?	ìik 4 wan khráp In 4 days.
6.	wansùk nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj When will he move in?	wansùk nâa Next Friday.
7.	pii nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mŷaraj When will be move in?	pii nâa Next year.

i) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa phanrajaa phǒm kɔ̀ɔn I'd like to talk it over with my wife first.
1.	naaj	khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa naaj phǒm kɔ̀ɔn I'd like to talk it over with my boss first.
2.	khruu	khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa khruu phǒm kɔ̀ɔn I'd like to talk it over with my teacher first.
3.	phŷan	khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa phŷan phǒm kɔ̀ɔn I'd like to talk it over with my friend first.
4.	lûuksǎaw	khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa lûuksǎaw phǒm kɔ̀ɔn I'd like to talk it over with my daughter first.

5. nɔ́ɔŋchaaj   khɔ̌ɔ prỳksǎa nɔ́ɔŋchaaj phǒm kɔ̀ɔn

I'd like to talk it over with my younger brother first.

j) Response Drill   (Listen to the description of the situation and answer the questions.)

	Situation	Response
1.	khun cɔɔn kàp khun cim châw bâan jùu dûajkan. kháw sǐa khâachâw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cɔɔn ɔ̀ɔk 2000 bàat. khun cim ɔ̀ɔk kìi bàat	sɔ̌ɔŋ phan bàat
2.	phŷan 2 khon khâwhûn[1] kan sýy rótjon rakhaa 80,000 bàat. khon nyŋ ɔ̀ɔk 10,000 bàat. ìik khon nyŋ ca ɔ̀ɔk kìi bàat	cèt mỳyn bàat
3.	khun A kàp khun B paj kin aahǎan klaaŋwan dûajkan. tháŋ 2 khon kin aahǎan 50 bàat. khun B mii ŋən hâj khun A 20 bàat thâwnán khun A ca tɔ̂ŋ ɔ̀ɔk ìik kìi bàat	sǎamsìp bàat
4.	phanrajaa chuan sǎamii paj sy̌y sŷa hâj lûuk. raakhaa tua la sǎam sìp bàat tèɛ phanrajaa mii ŋən hâa bàat thâwnán phanrajaa ca hâj sǎamii ɔ̀ɔk thâwraj	jîisìp hâa bàat
5.	khun prasìt kàp khun prasàat paj lên boolîŋ, keem la sìp bàat, 6 keem tháŋmòt 60 bàat. tháŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ khon ca ɔ̀ɔk ŋən khon la kìi bàat	sǎamsìp bàat

---

[1] khâw hûn means 'to team up' or 'to go into partnership'

6. phŷan sìi khon nâŋ rót paj thîaw tàaŋcaŋwàt
sǐa khâa námman rót 76 bàat
tháŋ sìi khon tɔ̂ŋ ɔ̀ɔk ŋən khon la kìi bàat . sìpkâaw bàat

34.4 EXERCISES

a) One student asks another what he pays in rent. When the second responds, he asks him what is included in the price. If some things are not included, he is asked how much they cost. If someone is sharing an apartment or house with another, he is asked how much each pays.

b) One student asks another if he is renting a furnished house or apartment. If he is, the first asks him what is furnished. The second gives him a list.

c) One student asks another (1) how many times a month and (2) on what day he must pay the bill for gas, electricity, water, rent, and gas.

d) One student asks another when he moved into his present apartment or house and when he will move out.

34.5 VOCABULARY

ɔ̀ɔk (ŋən)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
boolîŋ	bowling
bɔɔriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
càaj (ŋən)	pay (refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
chút rápkhɛ̀ɛk (chút)	living room furniture
chút thaankhâaw (chút)	a dining set

chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)
dəənthaaŋ	to travel
frii	to be free (no cost)
jáaj { maa paj } (+ jùu)	to move (in)
kwâaŋ	to be broad, wide
kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ	to be wide, to be large, to be roomy
keem (keem)	game (sports)
khâajùu	lodging
khâakɛ́ɛs	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatìttâŋ	installation fee
khàat (tɛ̀ɛ)	to be lacking, missing
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khróp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat (khrŷaŋ)	air conditioning
khrýyaŋryan (chút)	furniture
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lûaŋnâa	in advance
phátlom	electric fan
phrɔ́ɔm	to be ready, set, completed
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
prasàat	Prasat, male first name

prỳksǎa	to talk it over, consult
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
sǎnjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sùtháaj	last, final
sǐa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)
tawkɛ́ɛs	a gas stove
tìttâŋ	to install
tòkloŋ	to agree (to something)
tûu	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book) cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	a refrigerator

LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

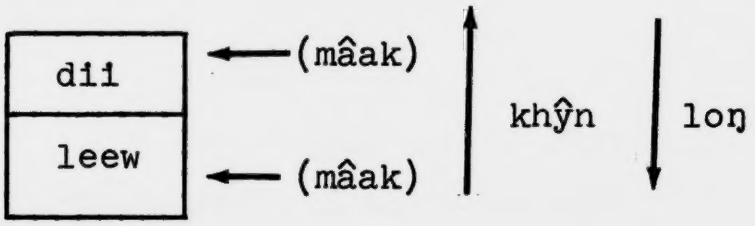
35.0 REVIEW DIALOG:

A:	khun dâj bâanchâw rýjaŋ khráp	Have you found a house to rent yet?
B:	kamlaŋ hǎa jùu khráp	I'm still looking.
	khun rúucàk khraj thîi mii bâan hâj châw bâaŋ máj khráp	Do you know anyone who has a house to rent?
A:	phǒm mii jâat khon nyŋ	I have a relative.
	kháw bɔ̀ɔk phǒm wâa kháw mii bâan hâj châw	He told me he had a house house to rent.
B:	jùu thîinǎj khráp	Where?
A:	jùu thîi thanǒn phahǒnjoothin sɔɔj thîi 12	On Phaholyothin Lane 12.
	pen bâan klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj.	It's not old but it's not new.
	mii khrua bɛ̀ɛp samǎj màj, rooŋrót lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂ ryan khoncháj	With a modern kitchen, a carport, and servants' quarters.
B:	mii kìi hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn khráp	How many bedrooms are there?
A:	sǎam hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn, mii hɔ̂ŋnám 2 hɔ̂ŋ	Three (and) there are 2 bathrooms.
B:	sɔɔjnán thanǒn pen jaŋŋaj bâaŋ khráp	What's the road like in that 'soi'?
A:	dii khráp.náam, faj kɔ̂ sadùak, thoorasàp kɔ̂ mii	Good. The water and electricity are good. There are also telephones (in that area).

B:	kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj khráp	What does he charge for rent?
A:	dyan la sìi phan hâa, mâj ruam khâa náam, khâa faj, khâa thoorasàp lɛ́ khâa kɛ́ɛs	4,500 per month not including water, electricity, telephone, and gas.
	phûu châw tɔ̂ŋ sǐa eeŋ	The tenant has to pay those himself.
B:	sìi phan hâa, mâj lót ləəj rə̌khráp	4500! Any discount at all?
A:	kháw bɔ̀ɔk phɔ̌m wâa lót dâj bâaŋ nítnɔ̀ɔj	He told me he could come down a little.
	thâa khun sɔ̌ncaj, phɔ̌m ca thǎam hâj	If you're interested, I'll ask him for you.
B:	khɔ̀ɔpkhun mâak khráp	Thank you very much.
	khun chûaj tìttɔ̀ɔ hâj dûaj nakhráp	Please inquire about it for me.
	dǐawníi bâan dii dii hǎa jàak ly̌akəən	Nowadays it's extremely difficult to find good houses.
A:	khráp, phrɔ́ bâan mii nɔ̀ɔj lɛ́ mii khon tɔ̂ŋkaan châw mâak khŷn	Yes, there are few houses and more and more people needing them.
	khâachâw ləəj phɛɛŋ khŷn thúk wan	As a result, rents are getting higher everyday.

35.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) A large number of stative verbs may be grouped together as binary sets with opposite meanings, such as dii: leew 'good:bad', etc. If a model like the following is drawn with ascending and descending degrees of 'goodness' and 'badness', it will be observed that the change from one to the other is a gradual thing: (i.e. passing through an infinite number of gradations):



Going from leew towards dii would be going up (khŷn) and going the opposite direction would be going down (loŋ).

In this situation dii khŷn 'getting better' indicates that a change is taking place and the direction of the change is towards 'goodness' (upwards). It does not tell us what the situation was (how good or how bad) when the change began or how far it has progressed. A similar situation in reverse is pictured in leew loŋ 'getting worse'.

It would be incorrect to read some deep philosophic meaning into the fact that one stative verb occurs with khŷn and its opposite with loŋ. It is no more significant than the fact that some adjectives occur with 'more' and some with '-er' in the comparative in English. In the following list of binary sets the first member occurs with khŷn; the second with loŋ:

kèŋ: jɛ̂ɛ 'competent: very bad', rew: cháa 'fast: slow', phɛɛŋ: thùuk 'expensive: cheap', sa-àat: sòkkapròk 'clean: dirty', rɔ́ɔn: nǎaw 'hot: cold', mâak: nɔ́ɔj 'much, many: little, few', sabaaj:lambàak 'having an easy time: having a hard time', ruaj: con 'rich: poor', nàk: baw 'heavy: light', too, jàj: lék 'tall, big: small', jaaw: sân 'long: short', ûan: phɔ̌ɔm 'fat: thin', jâak: ŋâaj 'hard: easy', sǔuŋ: tîa 'tall: short (of persons)' khɛ̌ɛŋ: ɔ̀ɔn 'hard: soft'.

b) Stative verbs like thùuk, con, etc. that usually occur with loŋ may occur with khŷn to indicate an intensification of a situation already in existence. Observe the difference in meaning between con loŋ and con khŷn in the following examples:

	Situation	Pattern
1.	kháw khəəj ruaj dǐawníi kháw mii ŋəən nɔ́ɔj loŋ	kháw con loŋ
	He used to be rich. Now he has less money.	He's getting poorer.
2.	kháw con jùu lɛ́ɛw dǐawníi kháw con mâak kwàa tɛ̀ɛ kɔ̀ɔn	kháw con khŷn
	He was poor already. Now he's poorer than before.	He's getting even poorer.

35.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern	
	khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ khŷn	Rents are going up.
1. aahǎan	aahǎan phɛɛŋ khŷn	Food is getting more expensive.
2. dii	aahǎan dii khŷn	The food is getting better.

3.	aakàat	aakàat dii khŷn	The weather is getting better.
4.	rɔ́ɔn	aakàat rɔ́ɔn khŷn	The weather is getting hotter.
5.	sabaaj	aakàat sabaaj khŷn	The weather is getting more comfortable.
6.	phǒm	phǒm sabaaj khŷn	I feel better.
7.	kháw	kháw sabaaj khŷn	He feels better.
8.	kèŋ	kháw kèŋ khŷn	He is getting more skillful.
9.	dii	kháw dii khŷn	He is improving.
10.	phaasǎa thaj phǒm	phaasǎa thaj phǒm dii khŷn	My Thai is improving.
11.	rooŋrian khɔ̌ɔŋ raw	rooŋrian khɔ̌ɔŋ raw dii khŷn	Our school is improving.
12.	jàj	rooŋrian khɔ̌ɔŋ raw jàj khŷn	Our school is getting bigger.
13.	suǎj	rooŋrian khɔ̌ɔŋ raw suǎj khŷn	Our school is getting more beautiful.
14.	phûujǐŋ khonnán	phûujǐŋ khonnán sǔaj khŷn	That lady is getting more beautiful.
15.	dii	phûujǐŋ khonnán dii khŷn	That lady is getting better.

16.	phǒm rúucàk kháw	phǒm rúucàk kháw dii khŷn	I'm getting to know him better and better.
17.	phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	phǒm phûut phaasǎathaj dâj dii khŷn	My ability to speak Thai is improving.
18.	rew	phǒm phûut phaasǎathaj dâj rew khŷn	The rate at which I speak Thai is going up.
19.	phǒm khàp rót	phǒm khàp rót rew khŷn	I drive faster (than previously).
20.	phǒm thamŋaan	phǒm thamŋaan rew khŷn	I work faster (than previously).

b) Substitution Drill

Cue		Pattern	
		khâachâwbâan thùuk loŋ	The rent is going down.
1.	khɔ̌ɔŋ	khɔ̌ɔŋ thùuk loŋ	Things are getting cheaper.
2.	rót	rót thùuk loŋ	Cars are getting cheaper.
3.	cháa	rót cháa loŋ	The car is slowing down.
4.	kháw khàp rót	kháw khàp rót cháa loŋ	He reduced the car's speed.

5.	jɛ̂ɛ	kháw khàp rót jɛ̂ɛ loŋ.	His driving is getting worse.
6.	rooŋrian nán	rooŋrian nán jɛ̂ɛ loŋ	That school is getting worse.
7.	lék	rooŋrian nán lék loŋ	That school is getting smaller.

c) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		dǐawníi, mii khon tɔ̂ŋkaan châw bâan mâak khŷn At present, there is an increasing demand for houses.
1.	raw mii khruu	dǐawníi, raw mii khruu mâak khŷn At present, we have more and more teachers.
2.	phǒm cháj ŋən	dǐawníi, phǒm cháj ŋən mâak khŷn At present, I spend more and more money.
3.	phǒm mii ŋən	dǐanníi phǒm mii ŋən mâak khŷn At present I have more and more money.
4.	phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj	dǐawníi, phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj mâak khŷn At present I can speak more and more.
5.	phǒm tɔ̂ŋ sýy aahǎan	dǐawníi, phǒm tɔ̂ŋ sýy aahǎan mâak khŷn At present I have to buy more and more food.

6. phǒm thamŋaan	dǐawníi, phǒm thamŋaan mâak khŷn At present I work more and more.

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	diǎwníi, raw mii nákrian nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we have fewer students.
1. khruu	dǐawníi raw mii khruu nɔ́ɔj loŋ. At present we have fewer teachers.
2. câwnâathîi kèŋkèŋ	dǐawníi, raw mii câwnâathîi kèŋkèŋ nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present, we have a smaller number of competent staff.
3. mɔ̌ɔ diidii	dǐawníi, raw mii mɔ̌ɔ dii dii nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we have a lower number of good doctors.
4. ŋaan tham	dǐawníi, raw mii ŋaan tham nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we have less work to do.
5. ŋən	dǐawnǐi, raw mii ŋən nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we have less money.
6. dâj	dǐawníi, raw dâj ŋən nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we earn less money.
7. cháj	dǐawníi, raw cháj ŋən nɔ́ɔj loŋ At present we spend less money.

8. sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ dǐawníi, raw sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ nɔ́ɔj loŋ

At present we shop less

9. thaan dǐawníi, raw thaan nɔ́ɔj loŋ

At present we eat less.

e) Transformation Drill /khŷn/ and /loŋ/

Cue		Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
1.	wanníi	mŷawaanníi kháw mâj sabaaj wanníi kháw sabaaj Yesterday he was not well. Today he is all right.	wanníi (kháw) sabaaj khŷn Today he feels better.
2.	dǐawníi	myakɔ̀ɔnníi kháw mâj khâwcaj khon thaj diǎwníi kháw khâwcaj khon thaj dii Before this, he didn't understand the Thais. Now, he understands the Thais well.	dǐawníi, kháw khâwcaj khon thaj dii khŷn Now, he understands the Thais better.
3.	dǐawnii	mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi mii khon phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj nɔ́ɔj dǐawníi, mii khon phûut phaasǎa aŋkrìt dâj mâak Formerly, there were a few people who could speak English. Now, there are many people who can speak English.	dǐawnii, mii khon phûut phaasaa aŋkrìt dâj mâak khŷn Now, there are more and more people who can speak English.

4. dyanníi	mŷadyankɔ̀ɔn khâafaj sɔ̌ɔŋ rɔ́ɔj bàat dyanníi khâa faj rɔ́ɔj hâasìp bàat Last month, the light bill was two hundred baht. This month, the light bill was 150 baht.	dyanníi, khâafaj thùuk loŋ This month the light bill has gone down.
5. dǐawníi	mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi, kruŋthêep mii khlɔɔŋ mâak dǐawníi, kruŋthêep mii khlɔɔŋ nɔ́ɔj In the old days, there were many canals in Bangkok. Nowadays, there are few canals in Bangkok.	dǐawníi, kruŋthêep mii khlɔɔŋ nɔ́ɔj loŋ Nowadays there are fewer canals in Bangkok.
6. dǐawníi	mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi mii khon paj thîaw thîinân mâak dǐaw níi mii khon paj thîaw thîinân nɔ́ɔj Formerly, there were many people visiting that place. Nowadays, there are few people visiting that place.	dǐawníi, mii khon paj thîaw thîinân nɔ́ɔj loŋ Nowadays there are fewer people visiting that place.
7. dǐawníi	mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi, bâannán màj dǐawníi bâan nán kàw That house was new. Now that house is old.	(dǐawníi) bâannán kàw loŋ That house has gotten older.

8.	dǐawníi	mŷakɔ̀ɔn níi, bâanchâw hǎa mâj jâak dǐawníi, bâanchâw hǎa jâak Formerly it was not difficult to find a house. At present it is difficult to find a house.	dǐawníi, bâanchâw hǎa jâak khŷn At present it is increasingly difficult to find a house.
9.	dǐaw	mŷakɔ̀ɔn níi, thɛ̌wníi mâj sadùak dǐawníi, thɛ̌wníi sadùak Formerly this area wa was inconvenient. At present this area is convenient.	dǐaw nii, thɛ̌wníi sadùak khŷn At present this area is more convenient.
10.	dǐawníi	mŷakɔ̀ɔn níi, khon thîi cɔ̀p mahǎawítthajaalaj mii nɔ́ɔj dǐawníi, khon thîi cɔ̀p mahǎawítthajaalaj mii mâak Formerly there were few university graduates. At present there are a lot of university graduates.	dǐawníi, khon thîi cɔ̀p mahǎawitthajaalaj mii mâak khŷn At present the number of university graduates is increasing.

f) Transformation Drill (Form sentences with the cue words and khŷn or kwàa as indicated by the situation.)

Cue	Pattern 1 and 2	Cue	Resultant Pattern
1. a. rɔ́ɔn hot	1. mŷa waanníi aakàat rɔ́ɔn	wanníi	wanníi aakàat rɔ́ɔn khŷn Today it's hotter.
	2. wanníi aakàat rɔ́ɔn mâak Yesterday, it was hot. Today, it is very hot.		
b. wanníi mŷawaanníi Today Yesterday		wanníi	wanníi aakàat rɔ́ɔn kwàa mýawaanníi Today, the weather is hotter than yesterday.
2. a. phɛɛŋ expensive	1. mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi khâachâw bâan dyan la 2000 bàat	dǐawníi	dǐawníi khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ khŷn Today the rent is more expensive.
	2. dǐawníi khâachâwbâan dyan la 4000 bàat Formerly, the rent was 2,000 baht a month. Today, the rent is 2,000 baht a month.		

b. thùuk cheap	1. khâachâwbâan mŷa kɔ̀ɔnníi 2. khâachâwbâan dǐawníi the rent in those days the rent today	dǐawníi	dǐawníi khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ kwàa mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi Today the rent is cheaper than in those days.
3. a. nâajùu nice (to live)	1. mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi thɛ̌wníi mâj nâajùu 2. dǐawníi, thɛ̌wníi nâajùu Formerly, this area was not nice to live in. Today, this area is nice to live in.	dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thɛ̌wníi nâajùu khŷn Today, this area is nicer to live in.
b. mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi dǐawníi formerly today		dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thɛ̌wníi nâajùu (khŷn) kwàa mŷakɔ̀ɔn Today, this area is nicer than in those days.
4. a. dii good	1. mŷakɔ̀ɔnníi, thanɔ̌n mâj dii Formerly the road was bad.	dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thanɔ̌n dii khŷn

	2. dǐawníi, thanǒn dii At present the road is good.		
b. mŷakɔɔnníi dǐawníi formerly, now		dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thanǒn dii (khŷn) kwàa mŷakɔɔnníi Now the road is better than formerly
5. a. mii mâak there are a lot	1. mŷakɔɔnníi, thîinîi mii faràŋ nɔ́ɔj 2. dǐawníi, thîinîi mii faràŋ mâak Formerly there were few Westerners here. Now there are a lot of Westerners here.	dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thîinîi mii faràŋ mâak khŷn Now, there are more Westerners here.
b. mŷakɔɔnníi, dǐawníi		dǐawníi	dǐawníi, thîinîi mii faràŋ mâak (khŷn) kwàa mŷakɔɔnníi There are more Westerners now than those days.

g) Sentence Formation Drill

Using the information given in the cue sentences form sentences with loŋ or khŷn so as to illustrate the type of change underway.

Cue sentences	Pattern
1. a. kháw khəəj ruaj dǐawníi kháw mii ŋən nɔ́ɔj loŋ	kháw con loŋ
He used to be rich. Now he has less money.	He's getting poorer.
b. kháw con jùu lɛ́ɛw dǐawníi kháw con mâak kwàa tɛ̀ɛ kɔ̀ɔn	kháw con khŷn
He was poor. Now he is poorer than he was before.	He's getting even poorer.
2. a. khɔ̌ɔŋ khəəj phɛɛŋ dǐawníi khɔ̌ɔŋ mii raakhaa nɔ́ɔj loŋ	khɔ̌ɔŋ thùuk loŋ
Things used to be expensive. Now the price of things is going down.	Things are getting cheaper.
b. khɔ̌ɔŋ thùuk jùu lɛ́ɛw dǐawníi thùuk kwàa tɛ̀ɛ kɔ̀ɔn	
Things were already cheap.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thùuk khŷn
Now things are cheaper than before.	Things are getting even cheaper.

3.	a.	kháw khəəj pen khon dii dǐawníi kháw mâj dii	kháw leew loŋ
		He used to be a good person. Now he isn't good.	He's turning bad.
	b.	kháw pen khon mâj dii dǐawníi kháw mâj dii mâak kwàa kàw	kháw leew khŷn
		He wasn't a good person. Now he's worse than formerly.	He's getting even worse.
4.	a.	aakàat khəəj rɔ́ɔn dǐawníi aakàat plìan pen nǎaw	aakàat nǎaw loŋ
		The weather was hot. Now it has turned cold.	It's getting colder.
	b.	mŷawaanníi aakàat nǎaw wanníi aakàat nǎaw kwàa mŷawaanníi	aakàat nǎaw khŷn
		Yesterday it was cold. Today it's colder than it was yesterday.	The weather's becoming even colder.
5.	a.	phûujǐŋ khonnán khəəj uân mâak dǐawníi kháw lót námnàk dâj mâak	kháw phɔ̌ɔm loŋ
		That woman used to be fat. Now she has lost a lot of weight.	She's getting thinner.

	b.	kháw pen khon phɔ̌ɔm mŷawaanníi phǒm phóp kháw kháw phɔ̌ɔm mâak kwàa dəəm	kháw phɔ̌ɔm khŷn
		She was a thin person. Yesterday I met her. She was much thinner than before.	She's getting even thinner.
6.	a.	khun sǒmsàk khəəj sabaaj dǐawníi kháw tɔ̂ɔŋ tham ŋaan mâak	kháw lambàak loŋ
		Somsak used to have it easy. Now he has a lot of work to do.	It's getting harder for him.
	b.	khun sǒmsàk lambàak jùu lɛ́ɛw dǐawníi kháw tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋaan nák mâak kwàa kɔ̀ɔn	kháw lambàak khŷn
		Somsak was already having a hard time. Now he has to work harder than before.	It's getting even harder for him.

35.3 BASIC EPISODE

khun cɔɔn wájt pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet thîi sathǎanthûut ameerikan. weelaaníi kháw phák jùu thîi rooŋrɛɛm raamâa. kháw hǎa bâanchâw maa lǎaj wan lɛ́ɛw.

kháw mâj jàak jùu apháatmênt phrɔ́ kháw chɔ̂ɔp jùu bâan mâak kwàa. kháw jàak dâj bâan jàjjàj phrɔ́ khrɔ̂ɔpkhrua khɔ̌ɔŋkháw mii dûajkan hâa khon, khyy khun cɔɔn, phanrajaa lɛ́ lûuk 3 khon.

bâan diidii naj kruŋthêep hǎa jâak lɛ́ khâachâw kɔ̂ phɛɛŋ lýakəən. khun cɔɔn dâj khâachâwbâan dyan la 5000 bàat, tɛɛ bâan thîi kháw paj duu wáj khâachâw jàaŋ tàm dyan la hâa phan hâa. dǐawníi , kruŋthêep khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ mâak phrɔ́ mii khon tɔ̂ŋkaan châw mâak khŷn.

wanníi pen wansǎw, khun cɔɔn paj hǎa naajnâa. naajnâa phaa kháw paj duu bâan lǎŋnỳŋ thîi thanǒn sùkhǔmwít sɔɔj thîi jîi sìp cèt. bâanníi pen bâan klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj. pen tỳk sɔ̌ɔŋ chán. mii hɔ̂ŋ sǎam hɔ̂ŋ, hɔ̂ŋnám 2 hɔ̂ŋ. mii hɔ̂ŋ rápkhɛ̀ɛk jàj, hɔ̂ŋaahǎan lɛ́ hɔ̂ŋkhrua bɛɛp than samǎj. mii rooŋrót jùu tìt kàp bâan. lǎŋ bâan mii hɔ̂ŋ kèp khɔ̌ɔŋ lɛ́ ryan khoncháj. nâabâan mii sanǎam kwâaŋ.

câwkhɔ̌ɔŋbâan khít khâachâw dyan la hâa phan hâa rɔ́ɔj bàat tɛ̀ kháw lót hâj khun cɔɔn hâarɔ́ɔj bàat. pen hâaphan bàat thûan. kháw hâj khun cɔɔn tham sǎnjaachâw nỳŋ pii kàp càaj ŋəən lûaŋnâa hâj kháw sǎam dyan. khâachâw hâaphan bàat níi ruam tháŋ khrŷaŋryan. kháw mii khrŷaŋryan phrɔ́m thúkjàaŋ khàat tɛ̀ khrŷaŋpràpaakàat. sùan khâanám, khâafaj, khâathoorasàp, lɛ́ khâakɛ́ɛs khun cɔɔn tɔ̂ɔŋ sǐa əəŋ. khun cɔɔn bɔ̀ɔk câwkhɔ̌ɔŋbâan wâa kháw ca jáaj paj jùu bâan màj wanthîi nỳŋ dyan thanwaakhom.

Translation of the Episode.

Mr. John White is a State Department official. He has just arrived in Thailand. He came to work at the American Embassy. At present, he is staying at the Rama Hotel. He has been looking for a house for many days. He doesn't want to live in an apartment because he prefers a house. He wants a big house because there are five persons in his family: John, his wife and three children.

Good houses are hard to find and the rent is too expensive. John gets 5000 Baht a month for his housing allowance, but the houses he has looked at are at least 5,500 Baht a month. Today rent in Bangkok is very high because there are more demands.

Today is Saturday. John goes to see a house agent. The house agent takes him to look at a house on Sukumwít Lane 27. This house is not too old, nor brand new. It is a two-story brick house with three bedrooms, and two bathrooms. There is a big living room, dining room and a modern kitchen. There is a carport adjoining the house. At the back of the house, there is a storage room and servants' quarter. There is a big lawn in front of the house.

The landlord charged 5, 500 Baht a month for the rent but for John he came down to 5,000 Baht, which is 500 Baht exactly. He had John sign a lease for one year and pay him three months rent in advance. This 5000 Baht includes furniture. The house is completely furnished except for air conditioners. As for water, electricity, telephone and gas, John has to pay them himself. John told the landlord that he was going to move into the new house on December 1.

35.4 QUESTIONS ON THE EPISODE

Answer the following questions according to the story given:

1. khun cɔɔn thamŋaan araj

   What does John do (for a living)?

2. kháw maa jùu myaŋthaj dâj naan rýjàŋ

   Has he been in Thailand long?

3. weelaaníi kháw phák jùu thîinǎj

   Where is he staying now?

4. thammaj khun cɔɔn tɔ̂ɔŋ hǎa bâanchâw

   Why does he have to look for a house?

5. thammaj khun cɔɔn thýŋ mâj jàak jùu apháatmênt

   Why doesn't he want to live in an apartment?

6. thammaj khun cɔɔn thýŋ tɔ̂ŋkaan bâan jàjjàj

   Why does John need a rather large house?

7. thammaj khun cɔɔn thýŋ tɔ̂ŋ hǎa bâanchâw jùu lǎaj wan.

   Why did he have to spend many days looking for a home?

8. khun cɔɔn dâj khâachâwbâan mâak phɔɔ thîi ca châw bâan dyan la hâa phan hâa rɔ́ɔj bàat máj

   Does he get enough housing allowance to pay for the rent at 5,500 per month?

9. bâan thîi khun cɔɔn tòkloŋ châw jùu thîinǎj

   Where is the house John agrees to rent?

10. bâannán pen bâan bɛ̀ɛpnǎj

    What kind of house is it?

    (a) sɔ̌ɔŋchán rý chándiaw — Two or one-story?

    (b) tỳk rý máaj — Masonry or wooden?

(c)	mii hɔ̂ŋ araj bâaŋ	What rooms are there?
d (d)	mii kìi hɔ̂ŋnɔɔn	How many bedrooms?
(e)	pen bâanlék rý bâanjàj	A small or big house?
(f)	mii rooŋrót máj.jùu thîinǎj	Any carport? Where?

11. câwkhɔ̌ɔŋbâan khít khâachâw dyan la thâwràj

How much does the landlord charge for the rent?

12. bâannán mii khrŷaŋryan máj . mii araj bâaŋ.

Is it furnished? What do they have for furniture?

13.. khâachâw hâaphán bàat níi ruam tháŋ khâanám khâafaj dûaj rýplàaw

Does this 5,000 Baht rent include water and electricity?

14. khun cɔɔn tham sǎnjaa châw kìi pii

How long a lease did John sign?

15. kháw tɔ̂ŋ hâj ŋən lûaŋnâa kìi dyan.

How much deposit does he have to pay?

16. kháw ca jàaj paj jùu bâanmàj mŷaraj

When is the going to move into the new house?

35.5 EXERCISES

a) Suppose one student is Mr. John White, another a house agent. Have the two students carry on a conversation based on the story given.

b) Suppose one student is Mr. Smith, a bachelor, looking for a one bedroom apartment, another student is a landlord. Have them carry on a conversation using the sentences they have learned.

c) Discuss situations that are in a state of flux whether getting better, worse, harder, etc. For example:

1. Someone is richer or poorer than he used to be.
2. Some things are cheaper or more expensive than formerly.
3. The weather is colder or hotter than it was 2 months ago or will be 3 months hence.
4. Someone's relatives are much fatter or thinner than they were at some time in the past or will be at some time in the future.

d) Compare various people or things in terms of physical size. For example:

phɔ̂ɔ phǒm sǔuŋ kwàa mɛ̂ɛ 1 fút	'My father's a foot taller than my mother.'

35.6 VOCABULARY

ɔ̀ɔn	to be soft, tender
ûan	to be fat, stout
baw	to be light (in weight)
jàj	to be large, big, major, main
khɛ̌ŋ	to be hard, firm, strong, stiff
klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj	not old but not new
lambàak	to be hard, difficult, troublesome
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
ly̌akəən	too..., so...
mâak	to be much, many; a lot; very
nǎaw	to be colder (weather, person)
nàk	to be heavy; hard (of work); severely, very

ŋâaj	to be simple, easy
phɔ̌ɔm	to be thin (not fat)
sa-àat	to be clean
sân	to be short (in length)
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sǔuŋ	to be high, tall
tîa	to be short, low (in height)
wájt	White (English name)

LESSON THIRTY-SIX

36.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing

khonkhǎaj:	sýy araj khá	What would you like to buy?
khon sýykhɔ̌ɔŋ:	khɔ̌ɔ chom phâa mǎj thaj nɔ̀ɔj khráp	I'd like to look at some Thai silk.
khonkhǎaj:	tɔ̂ŋkaan phâa tàt sŷa phûuchaaj rý phûujǐŋ khá	Do you want fabric for men or women's clothing?
khonsýykhɔ̌ɔŋ:	phâa tàt sŷa kaaŋkeeŋ phûuchaaj	Fabric for men's pants.
khonkhǎaj:	nîi khà	Here it is.
	jàaŋníi raakhaa lǎa la 60 bàat	This kind is 60 bàht a yard.
	jàaŋnán 80	That kind is 80.
	lɛ́ jàaŋnóon rɔ́ɔj jîisìp	And the kind over there, 120.
khonsýykhɔ̌ɔŋ:	sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ rɛ̂ɛk nán tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp	What's the difference between the first two kinds?
khonkhǎaj:	nýaphâa mýankan khà tɛ̀ɛ raakhaa mâj thâwkan phrɔ́ jàaŋ pɛ̀ɛt sìp bàat nâa kwâaŋ kwàa	The texture is the same, but they are not equal in price. because the 80 baht one is wider.
khonkhǎaj:	pen phâa jàaŋ dii thíisùt	It's the best kind.

	nýanǎa, thon mâak, lɛ́ mâj khɔ̂ɔj jáp	It's heavy, very durable, and is wrinkle-resistant
khonsýykhɔ̌ɔŋ:	sák nám dâj máj khráp	Is it washable?
khonkhǎaj:	dâj khà tɛ̀ sák hɛ̂ɛŋ dii kwàa	Yes, but it's better to have it dry cleaned.
khonsýykhɔ̌ɔŋ:	sák lɛ́ɛw, hòt máj khráp	Once it's washed, does it shrink?
khonkhǎaj:	nítnɔ̀ɔj khà	A little.

36.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) jàaŋ means 'kind, type (with emphasis on quality).

Observe the following example:

phâamǎj mii lǎaj jàaŋ. mii jàaŋ dii, jàaŋ mâj dii
jàaŋ thùuk , jàaŋ phɛɛŋ , jàaŋ nâakwâaŋ jàaŋ nâakhɛ̂ɛp

There are many kinds of Thai silk. There is the good kind and the bad kind, the cheap kind and the expensive kind, the wide kind, the narrow kind.

b) chanít means 'kind' or 'type' with emphasis on special characteristics, such as 'being colorfast' (chanít sǐi mâj tòk), or 'being made of wood' (chanít tham dûaj maaj), or 'having long grains (as of rice) (chanít mét jaaw), etc.

phâa mii lǎaj chanít: mii phâamǎj, phâafâaj, phâanajlɔ̂n lɛ́ ỳynỳyn

There are many kinds of cloth: silk, cotton, nylon, etc.

36.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Types of Comparison

1. Equality.

thâw + kàp / kan 'equal, same in size or quantity' may occur (1) in construction with stative verbs, or (2) independently.

a) khɔ̌ɔŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋníi phɛɛŋ thâwkan

These two things are equally expensive. (with stative verb phɛɛŋ)

kháw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj dii thâw kàp khun

He speaks Thai as well as you do. (with stative verb dii)

b) Independently (as main verb in the sentence)

phâa sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋníi raakhaa thâw kan

These two fabrics are of the same price.

bâan lǎŋnán khâachâw thâw kàp bâan lǎŋníi

The rent for that house is the same as for this one.

2. Inequality.

kwàa 'more (than), to a greater extent' occurs in construction with stative Verbs.

kháw khàp rót rew kwàa phǒm.	He drives faster than I do.
ráanníi dii kwàa ráannóon	This shop is better than that one.

3. Equality and Inequality compared

a) phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun thâw (thâw) kàp kháw
I like you as much as (I like) him.

phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun thâw (thâw) kàp (thîi) kháw chɔ̂ɔp (khun)
I like you as much as he (likes you).

b) phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa kháw
I like you more than (I like) him.

phǒm chɔ̂ɔp khun mâak kwàa thîi kháw chɔ̂ɔp khun
I like you more than he (likes you).

4. Superlative.

thîisùt 'most, -est' occurs in construction with stative verbs.

náŋsy̌y lêmníi dii thîisùt	This book is the best.
kháw pen nákrian thîi kèŋ thîisùt náj chán	He is the best student in the class.

b) Equational sentences.

phâa (jàaŋ pɛ̀ɛtsìp bàat) nâakwâaŋ
Cloth (of the 80 baht kind.) (is) wide.

This type of sentence is called an equational sentence. It is very common in Thai. Other examples are:

phâaníi nâakhɛ̂ɛp	This cloth is narrow.
bâan lǎŋnán khâachâw phɛɛŋ	The rent for that house is high.

Formation of Noun Phrases derived from this type of sentence is also common.

phâa nâakwâaŋ	The wide material.
rót raakhaa phɛɛŋ	Expensive cars.

c) NOUN PHRASE / VERB PHRASE } + dii kwàa 'It's better to...'.

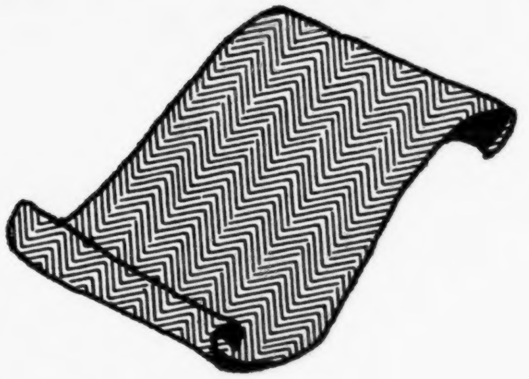
dii kwàa may have either Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase as subject. Below are some examples with Verb Phrase as subject:

sákhɛ̂ɛŋ dii kwàa	It's better to dry clean (it).
(phǒm wâa, khun) jùu bâan dii kwàa	(I think) it's better for (you) to stay home.

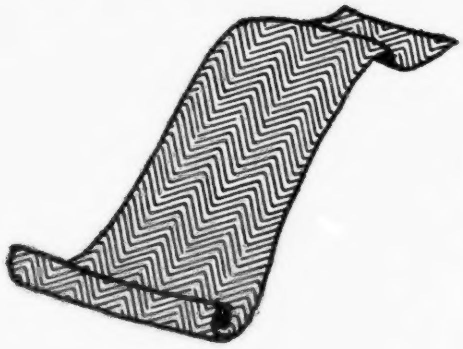
36.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill (Use jàaŋ with the stative verb and the noun to form a Noun Phrase.)

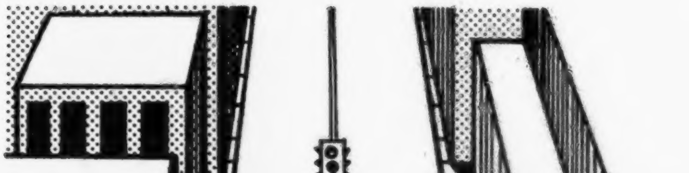
Cues	Noun Phrase
1. dii, phâamǎj good, silk cloth	phâamǎj jàaŋ dii good quality silk cloth
2. phɛɛŋ, phátlom expensive, fan	phátlom jàaŋ phɛɛŋ Expensive fans.
3. dii, tûujen good, refrigerator	tûujen jàaŋ dii Good refrigerators.
4. thùuk, fəənitə̂ə cheap, furniture	fəənitə̂ə jàaŋ thùuk Cheap furniture.



phâa níi nâakwâaŋ



phâa níi nâakhêɛp



thanǒn sǎaj níi kwâaŋ

thanǒn sǎaj níi khêɛp

5.	phɛɛŋ, tó expensive, table	tó jàaŋ phɛɛŋ Expensive tables.
6.	dii, kâwîi good, chair	kâwîi jàaŋ dii Good quality chairs.

b) Substitututtion Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		phâamǎj jàaŋníi pen phâamǎj jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of silk is the best kind (of silk).
1.	phátlom	phátlom jàaŋníi pen phátlom jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of fan is the best kind of fan.
2.	khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat	khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat jàaŋníi pen khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of air conditioner is the best kind.
3.	tûujen	tûujen jàaŋníi pen tûujen jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of refrigerator is the best kind.
4.	khrŷaŋ khrua	khrŷaŋ khrua jàaŋníi pen khrŷaŋ khrua jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of kitchen utensil is the best kind.
5.	fəənitêə	fəənitêə jàaŋníi pen fəənitêə jàaŋ dii thîisùt This kind of furniture is the best kind.

c) Transformation Drill

Combine the sentences in patterns 1, 2, 3 with the cue to form the resultant pattern, then repeat the operation using a stative verb with opposite meaning (the second cue).

Patterns 1, 2, 3	Cue	Resultant Pattern
1. a. phâamǎj jàaŋníi mâj dii		
b. phâamǎj jàaŋnán dii		
c. phâamǎj jàaŋnóon dii mâak	dii	phâamǎj jàaŋnóon dii thîisùt
	leew	phâamǎj jàaŋníi leew thîisùt
This kind of silk is not good.		The other kind of silk is the best.
That kind of silk is good.		
That other kind of silk is the best.		This kind of silk is the worst in quality.
2. a. samùt jàaŋníi mâj dii		
b. samùt jàaŋnán dii		
c. samùt jàaŋnóon dii mâak	dii	samùt jàaŋnóon dii thîisùt
	leew	samùt jàaŋníi leew thîisùt
This notebook is not good.		The notebook over there is the best.
That notebook is good.		
The notebook over there is very good.		This notebook is the worst.

3. a. aahǎan thîinîi phɛɛŋ		
b. aahǎan thîinân phɛɛŋ mâak		
c. aahǎa thîinôon phɛɛŋ ly̌a	phɛɛŋ	aahǎan thîinôon phɛɛŋ thîisùt
	thùuk	aahǎan thîiníi thùuk thîisùt
The food here is expensive.		The food over there is the most expensive.
The food there is more expensive.		
The food over there is very, very expensive.		The food here is the cheapest.
4. a. tỳk lǎŋníi mâj jàj		
b. tỳk lǎŋnán jàj		
c. tỳk lǎŋnóon jàj mâak	jàj	tỳk lǎŋnóon jàj thîisùt
	lék	tỳk lǎŋníi lék thîisùt
This building is not large.		The building over there is the largest.
That building is large.		
The building over there is very large.		This building is the smallest.
5. a. náŋsy̌yphim thaj mâj nǎa		
b. náŋsy̌yphim wanaathít nǎa		
c. náŋsy̌yphim niw jɔ́ɔk nǎa mâak	nǎa	náŋsy̌yphim niwjɔ́ɔk nǎa thîisùt
	baaŋ	náŋsy̌yphim thaj baaŋ thìisùt
Thai newspapers are not thick.		The N.Y. paper is the thickest.

The Sunday paper is thick.

The N.Y. paper is very thick.

The Thai paper is the thinnest.

6. a. thanǒn carəənkruŋ mâj kwâaŋ
   b. thanǒn phétburii kwâaŋ
   c. thanǒn mítraphâap kwâaŋ mâak

kwâaŋ — thanǒn mítraphâap kwâaŋ thîisùt

khɛ̂ɛp — thanǒn carəənkruŋ khɛ̂ɛp thîisùt

Charoen Krung is not wide.

Phetburi Street is wide.

Friendship Highway is very wide.

Friendship Highway is the widest.

Charoenkrung Street is the narrowest.

7. a. khun prasìt rian mâj kèŋ
   b. khun prasàat rian kèŋ
   c. khun prasǒŋ rian kèŋ mâak

kèŋ — khun prasǒŋ rian kèŋ thîisùt

jɛ̂ɛ — khun prasìt rian jɛ̂ɛ thîisùt

Prasit is not a good student.

Prasat is a good student.

Prasong is a very good student.

Prasong is the best student.

Prasit is the worst student.

8. a. khâa ró̵traaŋ mâj phɛɛŋ

b. khâa rótmme phɛɛŋ

c. khâa rót thɛ́ɛksîi phɛɛŋ mâak

phɛɛŋ — khâa rót thɛ́ɛksîi phɛɛŋ thîisùt

thùuk — khâa rótraaŋ thùuk thîisùt

Street car fare is cheap.

Bus fare is expensive.

Taxi fare is very expensive.

Taxi fare is the most expensive.

Street car fare is the cheapest.

9. a. sukhɔ̌othaj khəəj pen mŷaŋlǔaŋ mŷa pii phɔɔ sɔ̌ɔ 1800

b. ajuthajaa khəəj pen mŷaŋlǔaŋ mŷa pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ 1893.

c. kruŋthêep pen mŷaŋlǔaŋ mŷa pii phɔɔsɔ̌ɔ 2325

kàw — sukhɔ̌othaj pen mŷaŋlǔaŋ kàw thîisùt

màj — kruŋthêep pen mŷaŋlǔaŋ màj thîisùt

Sukhothaj was the capitol up to B.E. 1800.

Ayuthaya was the capitol in B.E. 1893.

Bangkok is the capitol since B.E. 2325.

Suthoothai is the oldest capitol.

Bangkok is the newest capitol.

d) Sentence Construction Drill

(Compose Questions using the cue words and thîisùt)

	Cue	Pattern
1.	mahǎawítthajaalaj, kàw, naj prathêet thaj	mahǎawítthajaalaj araj pen mahǎawítthajaalaj thîi kàw thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
	university, to be old, in Thailand	What university is the oldest in Thailand?
2.	caŋwàt, mii khonjùu mâak naj prathêet thaj	caŋwàt araj pen caŋwàt thîi mii khonjùu mâak thîisùt
	Province. To have many people living in (it), in Thailand.	What province has the largest population in Thailand?
3.	caŋwàt, jùu klaj càak kruŋthêep mâak	caŋwàt araj pen caŋwàt thîi jùu klaj càak kruŋthêep mâak thîisùt
	Province. (Very) far from Bangkok	What province is the farthest province from Bangkok?
4.	nánsy̌yphim, mii khon àan mâak, naj prathêet thaj	náŋsy̌yphim araj pen náŋsy̌y phim thîi mii khon àan mâak thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
	Newspaper, to have many readers. In Thailand	What newspaper has the largest number of readers in Thailand?
5.	krasuaŋ, jàj, naj prathêet thaj	krasuan araj pen krasuaŋ thîi jàj thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
	Ministry. Big. In Thailand	What ministry is the biggest ministry in Thailand?

6.	prathêet, nâajùu naj lôok	prathêet araj nǎj pen prathêet thîi nâajùu thîisùt naj lôok
	Country. Nice to live in. In the world	What country is the nicest country to live in this world?

e) Transformation Drill (Change patterns 1 and 2 into a sentence of comparison using the cue and thâw.)

	Pattern 1 and 2	Cue	Pattern 3
1.	phâa jàaŋnán thùuk jàaŋnóon phɛɛŋ	raakhaa Price	phâa sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan
	That kind of fabric is cheap. That kind of fabric over there is expensive.		The prices of those two fabrics are not equal.
2.	bâan lǎŋnán khâachâw phɛɛŋ lǎŋnóon thùuk	khâachâw	bâan sɔ̌ɔŋ lǎŋ nán khâachâw mâj thâwkan
	The rent for that house is high. The rent for that house (over there) is cheap.		The rents for those two houses are not equal.
3.	pàakkaa dâamnán thùuk dâamníi phɛɛŋ	raakhaa	pàakkaa sɔ̌ɔŋ dâam nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan
	That pen is cheap. This pen is expensive.		The prices of those two pens are not equal.

4.	phâa jàaŋnóon nâakwâaŋ phâa jàaŋnán nâakhɛ̂ɛp	nâakwâaŋ Width (of the fabric)	phâa sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ nán nâa kwâaŋ mâj thâwkan.
	That kind of fabric (over there) is wide. That fabric is narrow.		Those two fabrics are not equal in width.
5.	kháw dâj khâachâw bâan nɔ́ɔj phǒm dâj khâa châwbâan mâak	khâa châwbâan	raw dâj khâachâwbâan mâj thâwkan
	He gets a small housing allowance. I get a big housing allowance.	Housing allowance	We get different sized housing allowances.

f) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Cue	Pattern 1
1.	náŋsýy sɔ̌ɔŋlêm níi dii thâwkan	náŋsýy lêmnán náŋsýy lêmníi	náŋsŷy lêmnán dii thâwkàp náŋsýy lêmníi
	These two books are equally good.		That book is as good as this one.
2.	phâa sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋnán raakhaa thâwkan	phâa jàaŋnán phâa jàaŋníi	phâa jàaŋnán raakhaa thâw ka jàaŋníi
	Those two kinds of fabrics are equal in price.		The price of that fabric is the same as equal to this one.
3.	khɔ̌ɔn thîinân ka thîinîi phɛɛŋ thâwkan	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinân khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinân phɛɛŋ thâw ka khɔ̌ɔŋ thîinîi
	Things here and there are equally expensive.		Things there are as expensive as things here.

4.	phûujǐŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ khon nán suǎj thâwkan	phûujǐŋ khonníi phûujǐŋ khonnán	phûujǐŋ khonníi suǎj thâwkap phûujǐŋ khonnán
	Those two girls are equally pretty.		This girl is as pretty as that one.
5.	phun cɔɔn ka khun frét rian kèŋ thâwkan	khun cɔɔn khun fréd	khun cɔɔn rian kèŋ thâw ka khun frét
	John and Fred are equally good (students).		John is as good as Fred. (as a student)
6.	bâan sɔ̌ɔŋ lǎŋ nán jàj thâw kan	bâan lǎŋnán bâan lǎŋnóon	bâan lǎŋnán jàj thâw ka bâan lǎŋnóon
	Those two houses are equally big.		That house is as big as the one over there.
7.	kháw dâj ŋən dyan la 2,000 bàat phanrajaa kháw dâj ŋən dyan la 2000 bàat	phan ra jaa kháw kháw	phan ra jaa kháw dâj ŋən dyan thâw ka kháw
	He makes 2,000 Baht a month. His wife makes 2,000 Baht a month.		His wife and he get the same salary.

g) Sentence Construction and Response Drill

(Form a question with one set of cues and answer it according to the second set.)

CUE	QUESTION	CUE	RESPONSE
Example			
rian phaasǎa thaj sanùk rian phaasǎa juan	rian phaasǎa thaj sanùk thâw ka rian phaasǎa juan máj khráp	No	mâj thâw khráp No, it isn't.

	Studying Thai is Fun. Studying Vietnamese	Is studying Thai as fun as studying Vietnamese?	Yes	sanúk thâwkan khráp Yes, it is.
1.	khɔ̌ɔŋthîi wɔɔchiŋtân phɛɛŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi njujɔ́ɔk	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi wɔɔchiŋtân phɛɛŋ thâw ka khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi njujɔ́ɔk máj khráp	No	mâj thâw khráp No, they aren't.
	Things in Washington Expensive Things in New York	Are things in Washington as expensive as in New York?		
2.	rooŋrian phaasǎa thîi mɔntəəree jàj éf és aj	rooŋrian phaasǎa thîi mɔntəəree thâw ka éf és aj máj khráp	Yes	thâwkan khráp
	The language school in Monterey. Big FSI	Is the language school in Monterey as big as FSI?		Yes, it is.
3.	nákrian khonnán kèŋ nákrian khonnóon	nákrian khonnán kèŋ thâw ka nákrian khonnóon máj khráp	Yes	thâw kan khráp
	That student good That student (there)	Is that student as good as that student over there?		Yes, he is.
4.	jùu ameerikaa sabaaj jùu tàaŋprathêet	jùu ameerikaa sabaaj thâw ka jùu tàaŋ prathêet máj khráp	No	mâj tháw khráp
	Living in America Easy Living abroad	Is living in America as easy as living abroad?		No, it isn't.

5.	aakàat thîi wɔɔchiŋtân rɔ́ɔn (aakàat) thîi kruŋthêep	aakàat thîi wɔɔchiŋtân rɔ́ɔn thâw kap thîi kruŋthêep májkhráp	No	mâj thâw
	The weather in Washington Hot. The weather in Bangkok	Is Washington as hot as Bangkok?		No, it isn't.

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.	thon máj	Is it durable?
	jáp máj	Does it wrinkle?
	nǎa máj	Is it thick?
	my̌an máj	Is it the same?
	tàaŋ kan máj	Is it different?
	hòt máj	Does it shrink?
2.	sáknám dâj máj	Is it washable (in water)?
	sákhɛ̂ɛŋ dâj máj	Is it dry cleanable?
	sák dâj máj	Is it washable?
	rîit dâj máj	Can you iron it?

i) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Response (negative)	
1.	thon máj Is it durable?	mâj thon ləəj	Not at all.
		mâj thon	No.
		mâj khɔ̂j thon	Not too durable.
		{ mâj (khɔ̂j) thon thâwràj { mâj (khɔ̂j) thon nák	Not very durable.
2.	nǎa máj Is it thick?	mâj nǎa ləəj	Not at all.
		mâj nǎa	No.
		mâj khɔ̂j nǎa	Not too thick.
		{ mâj (khɔ̂j) nǎa thâwràj { mâj nǎa nák	Not very thick.
3.	dii máj Is it good?	mâj dii ləəj	Not at all.
		mâj dii	No.
		mâj khɔ̂j dii	Not too good.

4. jáp máj Does it wrinkle?	mâj jáp ləəj	Not at all.
	mâj jáp	No.
	mâj khɔ̂j jáp	Hardly at all.
	mâj (khɔ̂j) jáp thâwràj	Not very much.
	mâj jáp nák	Not so much.
5. my̌an máj Is it the same?	mâj my̌an ləəj	Not at all.
	mâj my̌an	No.
	mâj khɔ̂j my̌an	Not really.
	{ mâj (khɔ̂j) my̌an thâwràj { mâj my̌an nák	Not very much.

j) Substitution Drill

Cue	Pattern
	phâa jâaŋ níi kajàaŋnán tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between this fabric and that one?
1. kham wâa 'sǐa' ka kham wâa 'ɔ̀ɔk'	kham wâa sǐa ka kham wâa ɔ̀ɔk tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between the word 'sǐa' and 'ɔ̀ɔk'?
2. phaasǎa isǎan ka phaasǎa ny̌a	phaasǎa isǎan ka phaasǎa ny̌a tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between Northeastern and Northern dialects?
3. khwaamhěn khɔ̌ɔŋkhǎw ka khɔ̌ɔŋ khun	khwaamhěn khɔ̌ɔŋkháw ka khɔ̌ɔŋkhun tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between your opinion and his?
4. náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋlêm níi	náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔn lêmníi tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between these two books?

5.	khɔ̌ɔŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋníi	khɔ̌ɔŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ jàaŋ níi tàaŋ kan jaŋŋaj khráp What's the difference between these two things?

k) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		sák hɛ̂ɛŋ dii kwàa It's better to dry clean
1.	sýy phâamǎj jàaŋníi	sýy phâamǎj jàaŋníi dii kwàa It's better to buy this kind of silk.
2.	duu nǎŋ ryâŋ nán	duu nǎŋ ryâŋnán dii kwàa It's better to go to see that movie.
3.	phák thîinân	phák thîinân dii kwàa It's better to stay there.
4.	tham râatchakaan dii kwàa	tham râatchakaan dii kwàa It's better to work for the government.
5.	jùu thɛ̌wníi	jùu thɛ̌wníi dii kwàa It's better to live around here.
6.	paj thaan aahǎan thaj	paj thaan aahǎan thaj dii kwàa It's better to go and have a Thai meal.
7.	paj prajsaniiklaaŋ	paj prajsaniiklaaŋ dii kwàa It's better to go to the central post office.

1) Expansion Drill

1.	kwâaŋ	Wide
	nâa kwâaŋ	The fabric is wide.
	phâa nâa kwâaŋ	The wide fabric.
	phâa níi nâa kwâaŋ	This fabric is wide.
	phâa jàaŋ níi nâa kwâaŋ	This kind of fabric is wide.
	phâa mǎj jàaŋ níi nâa kwâaŋ	This kind of silk is wide.
2.	kwâaŋ	Wide
	kwâaŋ thâwràj	How wide?
	nâa kwâaŋ thawràj	How wide is the straight grain (of fabric).
	phâa nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj	How wide is the fabric?
	phâa jàaŋnán nâa kwâaŋ thâw ràj	How wide is that kind of fabric?
	phaamǎj jàaŋnán nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj	How wide is that kind of silk?
3.	kwâaŋ	Wide
	kwâaŋ sìisìp níw	Forty inches wide
	nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp níw	The straight grain of fabric is 40'' wide.
	phâa nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp	Forty inches wide fabric(s)
	phâa mǎj jaaŋnán nâa kwàaŋ sìisìp níw	That kind of silk is forty inches wide.
4.	mâj kwâaŋ	Not wide
	nâa mâj kwâaŋ	The straight grain of fabric is not wide.
	phâa nâa nâj kwâaŋ	The not very wide fabric(s)
	phâamǎj jàaŋnán nâa mâj kwâaŋ	That kind of silk is not wide.

36.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out from the tutor

1. what kinds of cloth you can buy in Thailand,

    2. where you can buy them (names of shops and locations),

    3. where and how silk is 'grown' in Thailand[1],

    4. where and how it is woven and what kind of dye is used, and

    5. what the difference is between various kinds of fabrics sold in Thailand (in terms of whether they shrink, are washable, durable, etc.)

b) Discuss the difference in quality and price between different objects.

c) Discuss differences in climate in different countries.

d) Find out from the tutor or another student what some of the ''superlatives'' in the world are; for example,

    1. the most beautiful city,

    2. the hottest climate,

    3. the oldest city, etc.

e) One student suggests various 'action options'. Other students disagree with his suggestions and suggest others that they consider better. Finally one student comes up with what he considers to be the best suggestion of all. Other students disagree or agree with the suggestion.

---

[1] nɔ̌ɔn 'worm'; thɔɔ (phâa) 'weave cloth'; jɔ́ɔm (phâa) 'to dye cloth'

36.5 VOCABULARY

baaŋ	thin
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
frét	Fred (name)
hòt	to shrink
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality)
jàaŋdii	good quality
jáp	to wrinkle
jɔ́ɔm (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
khɛ̂ɛp	narrow
khwaamhěn	opinion
kwâaŋ	wide, to be broad
lǎa	yard (36'')
mâjkhɔ̂ɔj	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mét	seed, grain, pill
mítraphâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
nâa khɛ̂ɛp	narrow
nǎa	heavy (of material), heavy texture
nɔ̌ɔn (tua)	worm
nýaphâa	texture of cloth
phâa fâaj	cotton
phâa mǎj	silk
phâa najlɔ̂n	nylon
phátlom (khrŷaŋ)	electric fan
rîit	to iron (cloth)
sák hɛ̂ɛŋ	to dry clean

sák nám	washable
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thîisut	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thɔɔ (phâa)	to weave cloth
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator

LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

37.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing and Jewelry

khonsýy:	phâa jàaŋníi tàt sŷanɔ̂ɔk ka kaaŋkeeŋ phûuchaaj chájj phâa kìi lǎa	For this kind of material how many yards does it take for a jacket and pair of pants?
khonkhǎaj:	raaw pɛ̀ɛt lǎa	About 8 yards.
khonsýy:	khun mii sǐi araj bâaŋ khráp	What colors do you have?
khonkhǎaj:	mii sǐi thaw, dam, kromathâa lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂ sǐi námtaan	I have grey, black, blue, and brown.
khonsýy:	sǐi tòk bâaŋ máj	Does the color fade any?
khon khǎaj:	mâj tòk ləəj	Not at all.
	rápprɔɔŋ dâj	I can guarantee it.
khonsýy:	ŋán, phom aw sǐi pɛ̀ɛt lǎa	Then I'll take 8 yards of grey.
	(khonkhǎaj tàt phâa, aw phâa sàj thǔŋ, lɛ̀ sòŋ hâj khonsýy.)	(The saleslady cuts the material, puts it in a bag, and hands it to the buyer.)
khonsýy:	tháŋmòt thâwràj khráp	How much is it altogether?
khonkhǎaj:	kâaw rɔ́ɔj hòksìp bàat thûan khà	960 baht exactly.
	khun mâj chom sǐnkháa jàaŋ ỳyn bâaŋ rə̌khá	Wouldn't you like to look at something else?

khonsýy:	khun mii araj bâaŋ khráp	What do you have?
khonkhǎaj:	thaaŋnóon mii khrŷaŋŋən, khrŷaŋthɔ̌m, khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ lɛ́ɛw kɔ̂ phétphlɔɔj	Over there's silverware, niello ware, gold, and jewelry.
	thaaŋkhwǎa mii khrŷaŋ khə̌ən, khrŷaŋ thɔɔŋ sǎmrít ka máajkɛ̀salàk	On the right there is lacquerware, bronzeware, and wood carvings.
khonkhǎaj:	ráan (khɔ̌ɔŋ) raw mii khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn	Our shop has a better selection than other places.

37.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) Measurement. In Thailand the metric system, the 'English' system, and the (old) Thai system are used in measurement. Some things are measured in one system and some in another, and some things can be measured in more than one system.

System used	Things being measured
Either metric or 'English'	length, width, height of small objects (tables, etc.)
Metric	distance, weight, content
Metric	length of fabrics, except silk in Bangkok
(Old) Thai	land area

Measuring units

Metric system		'English' system	
méet	'meter'	níw	'inch'
sen(timéet)	'centimeter'	fút	'foot'

kiloo(méet)	'kilometer'	lǎa	'yard'
kram	'gram'	lǎa khrŷŋ	'one and one half yards'
sen(tikram)	'centigram'	khrŷŋ lǎa	'half yard'
kiloo(kram)	'kilogram'	sakruu	'one fourth yard'
lít	'liter'	mai	'mile'

The Thai system will be taken up later.

b) ráprɔɔŋ means 'to guarantee, certify, or vouch for something'.

ráprɔɔŋ dâj could be translated 'You can take my word for it'.

c) cháj means 'to use up, require, take' (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)

1. of time: ŋaanníi tɔ̂ŋ cháj weelaa sɔ̌ɔŋ pii
   This work takes 2 years.

2. of people: ŋaanníi tɔ̂ŋ cháj câwnâathîi lǎaj khon
   This work requires a lot of personnel.

d) lŷak means 'to choose or select'.

khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak 'selections' (of merchandise, things, etc.)

thaaŋ lŷak 'choice' (as a means)

kaan lŷak 'Choice, selection' (as an action)

lŷak + PERSON + pen + POSITION, TITLE 'to choose someone to be in a certain position'

khǎw lŷak kháw pen prathaan khɔ̌ɔŋ samoosɔ̌ɔn
'They chose him as President of the club.'

lŷaktâŋ 'to elect' (as in a political election)

kháw dâj ráp lŷaktâŋ pen prathaanaathípɔɔdii khɔ̌ɔŋ saharát
'He was elected President of the United States.'

37.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Stative verbs like kwâaŋ 'to be wide', sǔuŋ 'to be tall', nàk 'to be heavy', etc. are followed by Number + Classifier (metric) in sentences of measurement, like the following:

Noun Phrase	Verb of Measurement	No. + Classifier
1. tó tuaníi	kwâaŋ	24 níw
2. phŷan phǒm	sǔuŋ	1 mét 50 sentimét
3. krapǎw baj nán	nàk	8 kiloo kwàa

1. That table is 24 inches wide.
2. My friend is 1.50 meters tall.
3. That bag weighs more than 8 kilograms.

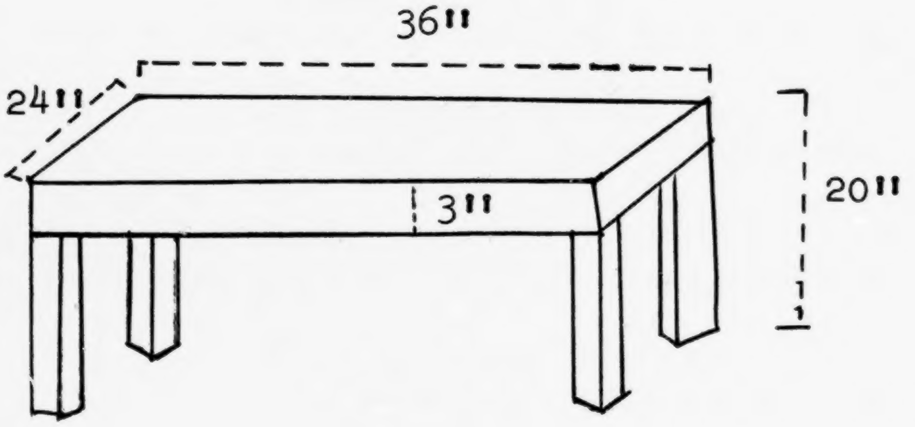
b) Compare the two English sentences 'The color in this cloth is fast.' with 'This cloth is colorfast.' It is clear that these two sentences are identical in meaning, but are not identical in form. A similar situation occurs in Thai. Observe the contrast in form in these pairs of sentences with identical meaning.

sǐi khɔ̌ɔŋ phâaníi mâj tòk →	phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk
1 2 3	2 1 3
'The color in this cloth doesn't run.'	'This cloth is colorfast.'
raakhaa khɔ̌ɔŋ rót khanníi thùuk →	rót khanníi raakhaa thùuk
1 2 3	2 1 3
'The price of this car is low.'	'This car is cheap.'
khâacâw bâan lǎŋníi mâj phɛɛŋ →	bâan lǎŋníi khâacâw mâj phɛɛŋ
1 2 3	2 1 3

'The rent for this house is not high.'	'This house doesn't rent for a high price.'

Although both members of the pairs of sentences above are correct, the second type is normally used.

Chart 1: DIMENSIONS



tó tuaníi	kwâaŋ	24 níw
	jaaw	36 níw
	nǎa	3 níw
	sǔuŋ	20 níw

This table is	24"	wide.
	36"	long.
	3"	thick.
	20"	high.

37.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâajàaŋníi tàt sŷakaaŋkeeŋ phûuchaaj cháj phâa kìi lǎa
For this kind of material, how many yards does it take
to make a jacket and a pair of trousers?

2. ŋaanníi, tôoŋ cháj khontham kìi khon.
How many people does this work require?

3. ŋaanníi, tôŋ cháj weelaa kìi pii.
How many years does this work take?

4. ŋaan phátthanaa thîinîi tôŋ cháj câwnâathîi lǎaj khon.
How many personnel are needed for this community development?

5. khrooŋkaanníi tôoŋ cháj ŋən mâak.
This project costs a lot of money.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləəj. ráprooŋ dâj.
This fabric is colorfast. (I) can guarantee (it).

2. phûuchaaj khonníi pen khondii. ráprooŋ dâj.
This man is a good person. (I) can attest to (it).

3. khǒoŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒoŋ dii thîisut. ráprooŋ dâj.
The merchandise here is the best. (I) can vouch for (it).

4. aahǎan thîinîi aròj thîisùt. ráprooŋ dâj.
The food here is the best. (I) can guarantee (it).

5. rót khanníi khryâŋ dii mâak. ráprooŋ dâj.
This car has very good engine. (I) can vouch for that.

6. bâan lǎŋ níi khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ kəənpaj. ráprooŋ dâj.
The rent of this house is not too high. (I) can
guarantee it. (You can take my word for it).

7. ráanníi mii khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn. ráprɔɔŋ dâj.
This store has better selections than others. (I) can guarantee it.

8. khrŷaŋthɔ̌m ráanníi dii kwàa thîiỳyn. ráprɔɔŋ dâj.
The nielloware in this shop is better than other places. (I) can guarantee it.

c) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləəj ráprɔɔŋ dâj. The color of this fabric doesn't fade. (I) can guarantee.	phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləəj. I can guarantee that this fabric is colorfast.
2.	khon khonníi pen khondii ráprɔɔŋ dâj This man is a good person. (I) can guarantee.	phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa khon khonníi pen khondii. I can guarantee that this person is a good man.
3.	khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráanníi pen khɔ̌ɔŋ dii thîisùt ráprɔɔŋ dâj Things in this shop are of the best quality. (I) can guarantee.	phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa khɔ̌ɔŋ thîi ráanníi pen khɔ̌ɔŋ dii thîisùt. I can guarantee that things in this shop are of the best quality.
4.	aahǎan thîi nîi arɔ̀j thîisùt. ráprɔɔŋ dâj. The food here is the best (I) can guarantee.	phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wáa aahǎan thîinîi arɔ̀j thîisùt. I can guarantee that the food here is the best.
5.	rót khanníi khryâŋ dii mâak. ráprɔɔŋ dâj. This car has a very good engine. (I) can guarantee.	phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa rót khanníi khrŷaŋ dii mâak I can guarantee that this car has a very good engine.

6.	bâan lăŋníi khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ kəənpaj ráprɔɔŋ dâj The rent for this house is not too expensive. (I) can guarantee.	phŏm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa bâan lăŋníi khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ kəənpaj. I can guarantee that the rent for this house is not too high.
7.	khrŷaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi nîi dii kwàa thîiỳyn ráprɔɔŋ dâj The jewelry here is better than at other places. (I) can guarantee.	phŏm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa khrŷaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi nîi dii kwàa thîiỳyn I can guarantee that the jewelry here is better than other places.

d) Response Drill

	Cue	Question	Response
1.	náŋsy̆y books	khun ca aw araj What do you want?	aw náŋsy̆y Books.
2.	thaw grey	khun ca aw sĭi araj. What color would you like?	aw sĭi thaw I want grey.
3.	săam lăa three yards	khun ca aw thâwraj How much do you want?	aw săam lăa I want three yards.
4.	an jàj The big one.	khun ca aw an năj Which one do you want?	aw an jàj I want the big one.
5.	lăŋ sĭi phan bàat The 4,000 Baht one	khun ca aw bâan lăŋ năj Which house do you want?	aw lăŋ sìi phan bàat. I want the 4,000 Baht one.
6.	jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind	khun ca aw phâa jàaŋ năj Which kind of fabric would you like?	aw jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind.

e) Sentence Construction Drill

The instructor will ask questions so as to elicit the answers given in the cues, as in the following example:

T:	aw araj khráp	What do you want (to get)?
S:	phâa mǎjthaj khráp	Thai silk.
T:	phâa jàaŋ nǎj	What quality of cloth?
S:	jàaŋ dii thîisùt	The best quality.
T:	aw kìi lǎa khráp	How many yards?
S:	sǎam lǎa khráp	3 yards.
T:	aw phâa mǎjthaj jàaŋ dii 4 lǎa, châj máj khráp	You want 4 yards of good quality Thai silk, right?
S:	mâj châj, aw phâa mǎjthaj jàaŋ dii thîisùt sǎam lǎa	No, I want three yards of the best quality Thai silk.

Use the following sets of cue words in the same manner as above:

1. sŷa, dii, sɔ̌ɔŋ tua, sǐi khǎaw
2. sŷanɔ̂ɔk ka kaaŋkeeŋ, dii thîisùt, nỳŋ chút, sǐi námtaan
3. náŋsy̌y phaasǎa thaj, sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm, diidii
4. phátlom, jàaŋdii, jîipùn, nỳŋ an

f) Question and Construction Drill

Pretend you don't know what the other person said, and ask a question so as to get a repetition of the original statement.

	First Answer	Second Question
1.	sɔ̌ɔŋ lǎa two yards	aw {thâwràj kìi lǎa} nakhráp How many yards did you say you want?
2.	sǐi thaw	aw sǐi araj nakhráp What color?
3.	phâamǎj silk	aw {araj phâa araj} nakhráp What did you say you want?
4.	jàaŋnóon That kind	aw jàaŋ nǎj nakhráp What kind did you say you want?
5.	nỳŋ chút one set	aw {thâwràj kìi chút} nakhráp How much did you say you want?
6.	khrŷaŋ thɔ̌m Nielloware	aw araj nakhráp What did you say you want?
7.	jàaŋ raakhaa pɛ̀ɛt sìp bàat The 80 Baht one.	aw jàaŋnǎj nakhráp? What kind did you say you want?
8.	sǎam lêm Three	aw {thâwràj kìi lêm} nakhráp How many did you say you want?
9.	tua sǐikhǎaw The white one	aw tuanǎj nakhráp Which one did you say you want?

10.	an thîi jùu thaaŋ kwǎa The one on the right	aw an nǎj nakhráp Which one did you say you want?

g) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		ráanníi mii khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn This store has a better selection of merchandise than other places.
1.	phâamǎj silk	ráan níi mii phâamǎj hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn This store has a better selection of silk than other places.
2.	náŋsɯ̌y	ráanníi mii náŋsɯ̌y hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn
	books	This store has a better selection of books than other places.
3.	kháw They	kháw mii náŋsɯ̌y hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn They have a better selection of books than other places.
4.	bâanchâw houses for rent	kháw mii bâanchâw hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn They have a better selection of houses for rent than other places.
5.	khɔ̌ɔŋ things	kháw mii khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn They have a better selection of merchandise than other places.
6.	araj things	kháw mii araj hâj lŷak mâak kwàa thîiỳyn They have a better selection of things than other places.

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Question	Answer
1.	náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm níi, khun ca lŷak lêmnǎj Of these two books which one would you choose?	phǒm aw lêmnóon I'd take that one.
2.	chiaŋmàj ka kruŋthêep. khun ca lŷak jùu caŋwàt nǎj. Between Chiangmai and Bangkok which province would you choose to live in?	phǒm(ca) lŷak jùu kruŋthêep I'd choose to live in Bangkok.
3.	thâa khun lŷak dâj, khun ca lyâk pen mɔ̌ɔ rý khruu If you can have a choice, would you rather be a doctor, or a teacher?	phǒm lŷak pen mɔ̌ɔ I'd rather be a doctor.
4.	khun ca lŷak jùu thîinǎj Where will you (choose to) live?	phǒm mâj mii thaaŋ lŷak I have no choice.
5.	khon sɔ̌ɔŋ khonníi khun ca lŷak khraj pen prathaanaa thípbɔɔdii Of these two persons, which one would you choose for President?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca lŷak khon rêɛk pen prathaanaa thípbɔɔdii I think I'd choose the first one for President.
6.	thâa khun lŷak dâj, khun ca lŷak pen phûujǐŋ rý phûuchaaj If you had a choice, would you rather be a woman or a man?	pen phûuchaaj dii kwàa khráp It's better to be a man.
7.	thammaj kháw tɔ̂ŋ cháj weelaa hǎa rooŋrian hâj lûuk jùu lǎaj dyan Why did it take him many months to find a school for his children?	phró kháw jàak ca lŷak rooŋrian diidii hâj lûuk kháw rian Because he wanted to choose good schools for them.

8.	thammaj kháw ca tôŋ paj wîatnaam Why does he have to go to Vietnam?	phró thaaŋ râatchakaan lŷak kháw paj Because the government has chosen him to go.
9.	khun ca lŷak khâarâatchakaan paj duu ŋaan thîi tàaŋ prathêet kìi khon How many government officials are going to go go abroad on an observation tour?	raw ca lŷak (khâarâatchakaan) paj (duu ŋaan thîi tàaŋ prathêet) 3 khon We'll choose three government officials.
10.	khun ca lŷak khâarâatchakaan paj duu ŋaan tàaŋ prathêet càak thîinǎj bâaŋ Where are you going to choose the government officials to go abroad from?	raw ca lŷak càak mahǎawítthajaalaj lɛ́ krasuaŋ tàaŋ tàaŋ We'll choose them from universities and different ministries.

1) Expansion Drill

1.	níw	Inch(es)
	kìi níw	How many inches?
	kwâaŋ kìi níw	How many inches wide?
	nâa kwâaŋ kìi níw	How many inches wide (for fabric)?
	phâa níi nâa kwâaŋ kìi níw	How wide is this fabric?
2.	lǎa	Yard(s)
	kìi lǎa	How many yards?
	jaaw kìi lǎa	How many yards long?
	chŷak sênníi jaaw kìi lǎa	How many yards long is this rope?
3.	kilco (méet)	kilo(s)
	kìi kiloo	How many kilos?
	jaaw kìi kiloo	How many kilos long?
	thanǒn sǎajníi jaaw kìi kiloo	How many kilos is this road? How long is this road?
4.	méet	Meter(s)
	kwâaŋ kìi méet	How many meter(s) wide?
	thanǒn sǎajníi kwâaŋ kíi méet	How wide is this road?

5.	kiloo (kram)	kilo(s)
	kìi kiloo	How many kilos?
	nàk kìi kiloo	How many kilos by weight?
	khɔ̌ɔŋ chín níi nàk kìi kilo or kilos	How many kilos does this thing weigh?
6.	thâwràj	How much?
	nǎa thâwràj	How thick?
	náŋsy̌y lêmníi nǎa thâwràj	How thick is this book?
7.	thâwràj	How much?
	sǔuŋ thâwràj	How tall?
	khun sǔuŋ thâwràj	How tall are you?

j) Sentence Construction Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	phâaníi kwâaŋ thâwràj this fabric wide how much	phâanîi nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj How wide is this fabric?
2.	thanǒn míttraphâap jaaw kiloo Friendship Highway long kilo	thanǒn míttraphâap jaaw kìi kiloo. How many kilometers long is the Friendship Highway?
3.	tỳk lǎŋnán sǔuŋ thâwràj this building tall how much	tỳk lǎŋnán sǔuŋ thâwràj How tall is this building?
4.	náŋsy̌y lêmnán nǎa nâa that book thick, pages	náŋsy̌y lêmnán nǎa kìi nâa How $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{many pages}\\ \text{thick}\end{Bmatrix}$ is this book?

5.	khɔ̌ɔŋ chínníi nàk kiloo this thing heavy kilo	khɔ̌ɔŋ chínníi nàk kìi kiloo How many kilos does this thing weigh?
6.	kradaan phɛ̀nníi nǎa níw this board thick inches	kradaan phɛ̀nníi nǎa kìi níw How {many inches} is {thick} this board?
7.	khun nàk thâwràj you heavy, how much	khun nàk thâwràj How much do you weigh?

37.4 EXERCISES

a) Pretend you are buying material for making some article of clothing. You take the part of the buyer; another student, the seller.

b) Discuss the dimensions of various objects in the room.

c) One student describes a certain object by giving its dimensions and other characteristics (such as color, price, use, etc.) of it. Another student tries to guess what is being described.

d) Find out the weight and height of everyone in the room, then make comparison such as 'John is 10 pounds heavier than Mary', etc. (pɔɔn 'pound' may be used.)

37.5 VOCABULARY

an	classifier for inanimate objects, careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers
aw	to want (to have) cf. tɔ̂ŋkaan
cháj	to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread, meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glassware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chŷak	rope, cord, classifier for elephants
duu ŋaan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (something) in operation
fút	foot, English system
kaan lŷak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaaŋkeeŋ	trousers, pants
kɛ̀salàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
khə̌ən	to lacquer
khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj lŷak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khɔ̌ɔŋ kɛ̀salàk	carvings

khrooŋkaan	project
khrŷaŋ	engine; -ware (see below)
khrŷaŋkhə̆ən	lacquerware
khrŷaŋŋən	silverware
khrŷaŋphét khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ	'jewelry'
khrŷaŋthɔ̆m	nielloware
khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ	things of gold
khrŷaŋthɔɔŋsǎmrít	bronzeware
khrŷŋ lǎa	half yard
kiloo(kram)	kilogram metric system
kiloo(méet)	kilometer metric system
kradaan	board
kram	gram metric system
lǎakhrŷŋ	one and one half yards
lít	liter metric system
lŷak	to choose or select
lŷaktâŋ	to elect (as in a political election)
máaj kɛ̀salak	woodcarvings
mai	mile
méet	meter metric system
nâa	width (for fabric)
nàk	to be heavy (in weight), to be hard (as of work)

níw	inch (English system)
nɔ̂ɔk	external
ŋaan phátthanaa	community development
ŋən	silver
phét	diamond
phétphlɔɔj	jewelry
phlɔɔj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
pɔɔn	pound (weight)
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
prathaan	president, chairman
rápprɔɔŋ dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
sǎaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line - like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sakruu	one fourth yard
samoosɔ̌ɔn	club, association
sen (tikram)	centigram metric system
sen (timéet)	centimeter metric system
sŷa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sŷa kaaŋkeeŋ	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)

sŷanɔ̂ɔk	jacket
tàt	to cut, sever
thaaŋ lŷak	choice (as a means)
thɔ̌m	niello process
thɔɔŋly̌aŋ	the market term for bronze
thɔɔŋsǎmrít	bronze
thǔŋ	a bag
thaw	grey
thûan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto) to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

38.0 BASIC DIALOG: Shopping for Toilet Articles

khonkhǎaj:	sýy araj khráp	What do you want to buy?
khonsýy:	prɛɛŋsǐifan mii máj	Do you have toothbrushes?
khonkhǎaj:	mii khráp	We do.
khonsýy:	khɔ̌ɔ duu nɔ̀j, dâj máj	May I see them?
khonhǎaj:	nîi khráp	Here they are.
	jàaŋníi an la 8 bàat,	This kind is 8 baht each.
	jàaŋnán 12 bàat	That kind, 12.
khonsýy:	thîi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj	You have anything cheaper?
khonkhǎaj:	mâj mii khráp	No.
khonsýy:	ŋán, aw jàaŋ pɛ̀ɛt bàat nỳŋ an	In that case I'll take the 8 baht one.
khonkhǎaj:	ráp araj ìik máj khráp	Want anything else?
khonsýy:	aw sabùu láks kɔ̂nnyŋ	I'd like a bar of Lux soap.
khonkhǎaj:	nɔ̂ɔk rý naj khráp	Imported or domestic.
khonsýy:	aw sabùu nɔ̂ɔk, lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂ jaasǐifan lɔ̀ɔt lék lɔ̀ɔt nyŋ, burìi klètthɔɔŋ nỳŋ sɔɔŋ ka májkhìit nỳŋ klàk	Imported, and one small tube of toothpaste, a package of 'Gold Flake' cigarettes, and a small box of matches.

khonkhǎaj:	jaasǐifan jîihɔ̂ɔ araj khráp	What brand of tooth paste?
khonsýy:	araj kɔ̂ dâj	Any kind (brand).
khonkhǎaj:	nîi khráp, tháŋmòt 27 bàat 50 satàaŋ	Here you are. That'll be ฿.27.50.
	(khonsýy sòŋ hâj khonkhǎaj sǎamsìp bàat)	The customer gives the salesman 30 baht.
khonkhǎaj:	nîi khráp, ŋənthɔɔn, sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat hâasìp satàaŋ. khɔ̀ɔpkhun mâak nakhráp, wanlǎŋ chəən maa ùtnǔn ìik nakhráp	Here is your change, 2.50 baht. Thank you very much. Please come and patronize me again next time.

38.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) Noun Compounds

prɛɛŋsǐifan 'toothbrush': prɛɛŋ 'brush' + sǐi 'polish' + fan 'tooth'

jaasǐifan 'toothpaste': jaa 'medicine, chemical compound' + sǐi + fan

sabùuhɔ̌ɔm 'toilet soap': sabùu 'soap' + hɔ̌ɔm 'smell sweet'

sabùusákphâa 'laundry soap, detergent': sabùu + sák 'wash' + phâa 'clothing'

májkhìit(faj) 'matches': máj 'wood' + khìit 'strike, scratch' + faj 'fire'

b) jîihɔ̂ɔ means 'brand' or 'trade name'.

Observe the use in the following sentences:

	Question	Answer
(1)	rót jîihɔ̂ɔ araj	fɔ̀ɔt
	What make of car is it?	a Ford.
(2)	sabùu jîihɔ̂ɔ araj	láks
	What brand of soap is it?	Lux.
(3)	wítthajú jîihɔ̂ɔ araj	aa sii ee
	What brand of radio is it?	R.C.A.

c) If araj 'what kind' is used after the noun in a question, several answers are possible, as is shown in the examples below:

Question	Answer	
(1) rót araj	rót fɔ̀ɔt	Ford
	rót ameerikan	An American car
	rót sapɔ̀ɔt	A sport car
(2) sabùu araj	sabùu hɔ̌ɔm	toilet soap
	sabùu láks	Lux soap

d) Brand names are sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising, as in the following examples:

(1)	sabùu traa nók kɛ̂ɛw	Parrot brand soap
(2)	kratìknám traa nókjuuŋ	Peacock brand thermos
(3)	phâa traa lûukthɔ́ɔ	Peach brand cloth
(4)	phɛ̀nsǐaŋ traa kratàaj	Rabbit brand records

e) In the case of some very well-known products the trade name may be the main identifying feature of the name:

(1)	jaa traa sy̌a	Tiger (brand) balm
(2)	jaa hɔ̌ɔm traa máa	Horse brand nice-smelling inhalants

f) nɔ̂ɔk and naj.

(khɔ̌ɔŋ) nɔ̂ɔk is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand.

(khɔ̌ɔŋ) naj is used to refer to products made in Thailand.

Observe the following examples:

(1) sabùu nɔ̂ɔk 'Imported soap'

sabùu naj 'local soap'

sabùu thaj 'Thai soap'

(2) nákrian nɔ̂ɔk 'Thais who were educated abroad'

nákrian naj 'Thais educated in Thailand'

But notice the difference in usage in the following examples:

khonnɔ̂ɔk 'outsider' or 'layman'

khonnaj 'insider'

38.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Noun Classifiers[1]

In 4.1 you were given a list of classifiers and a general description of classifiers. In succeeding lessons you have been introduced to more of them. You are now aware that in many types of Noun Phrases the classifier must occur with the noun; therefore, it is imperative that you know which classifier is associated with which noun.

In general it is probably just as simple to learn the classifier of a noun at the same time that you learn the noun (just as you might learn the gender class of a noun in German or French) without reference to the meaning of the noun. However, since there are some cases in which the classifier of a noun is predictable from the meaning of the noun, a more nearly complete list of classifiers is given below. This may help you remember the ones you have already had better, since it's easier to see the 'logic' of the system if you already know the nouns and their classifiers, and it should help you guess which classifier to use with nouns you will learn.

	Classifier		Reference
(1)	khon		Ordinary people, names of professions, members of the family
		khruu 2 khon	'two teachers'
		lûuk 3 khon	'three children'
(2)	oŋ		Buddha images
(3)	tua		Non-human things with human parts (legs, arms, etc.)
		mǎa 2 tua	'two dogs'
		kaaŋkeeŋ 1 tua	'a pair of pants'

An exception is burìi nỳŋ tua 'a cigarette'

---

[1] The information given here is taken from Noss, 106. Examples have been added to make the points clearer.

(4)	chabàp	Copies of printed material
	náŋsy̌yphim nỳŋ chabàp	'one newspaper'
(5)	mét	Small round objects
	phét nỳŋ mét	'one diamond'
	ɛ́ɛsphajrin nỳŋ mét	'one aspirin tablet'
(6)	kɔ̂ɔn	lump, cube, bar
	sabùu nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	'a bar of soap'
	námkhɛɛŋ nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	'a lump, cube, or block of ice'
	khâaw nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	'a lump of rice'
(7)	baj	container
	tûujen nỳŋ baj	'one refrigerator'
	thǎŋ nỳŋ baj	'one pail'
(8)	baj	flat, thin sheet
	rûup nỳŋ baj	'one photo' or 'one picture'
	thonabàt nỳŋ baj	'one bank note'
	thonabàt baj la hâa	'a 5-baht bill (money)'

(9) khrŷaŋ is usually used with complex equipment, such an engine, or a modern invention with many parts.

khrŷaŋjon nỳŋ khrŷaŋ	'one engine'
thoorasàp nỳŋ khrŷaŋ	'one telephone'

(10) thîi is sometimes used with simple equipment. Notice the difference in usage between thîi and khrŷaŋ in the following examples:

1.	khrŷaŋ pə̀ət krapɔ̌ŋ	'An electric can opener'
	thîi pə̀ət krapɔ̌ŋ	'an ordinary can opener'
2.	khrŷaŋ tii khàj	'An electric (egg) beater'
	thîi tii khàj	'an ordinary (egg) beater'

(11) hɔ̀ɔ refers to packages or things wrapped in paper.

burìi nỳŋ hɔ̀ɔ 'a carton of cigarettes'

(12) klɔ̀ŋ refers to a small carton or plastic box.

sabùu nỳŋ klɔ̀ŋ 'a box of soap'

(13) an is a very common classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers. The examples given in the drills are the nouns that are usually used with an.

(14) With many noun compounds the classifier and its noun referent are identical. Some examples are:

tûujen nỳŋ tûu[1]	one refrigerator
chútrápkhɛ̀ɛk nỳŋ chút	one set of living room furniture
tawkɛ́ɛs nỳŋ taw	one gas stove
rûupmyaŋthaj nỳŋ rûup[1]	one picture of Thailand
khrŷaŋsákphâa nỳŋ khrŷaŋ	one washing machine
bajmáaj nỳŋ baj	one leaf
tiaŋ nỳŋ tiaŋ	one bed

b) Nominalizations

thîi 'that which, the one(s) which, such ones as, etc.' serves as a nominalizer (i.e. an agent for creating nouns) of Verb Phrases (and Sentences) as in the following example:

---

[1] baj may also be used.

NOMINAL		
Nominalizer	Verb Phrase	Determiner
thîi	thùuk kwàa	níi
(that which)	(is cheaper)	(this)
'that which is cheaper'		

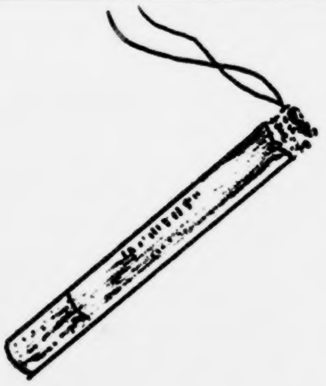
38.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Classifiers)

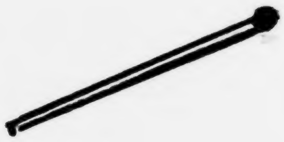
1.	an	prɛɛŋsǐifan nỳŋ an	One toothbrush
		thîi pèətkrapɔ̌ŋ nỳŋ an	one can opener
		thîi tii khàj 1 an	One (egg) beater
		tawrîit 1 an	one iron
		phátlom 1 an	one electric fan
2.	dâam	pàakaa 1 dâam	one pen
3.	thɛ̂ŋ	dinsɔ̌ɔ 1 thɛ̂ŋ	one pencil
4.	lɔ̀ɔt	jaasǐifan 1 lɔ̀ɔt	one tube of toothpaste
5.	sɔɔŋ	burìi 1 sɔɔŋ	one package of cigarettes
		sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj 1 sɔɔŋ	one envelope
6.	hɔ̀ɔ	burìi 1 hɔ̀ɔ	One carton of cigarettes
		májkhìit 1 hɔ̀ɔ	one big package of matches

7.	phɛ̀n	kradàat 1 phɛ̀n	one piece of paper
		rûup 1 phɛ̀n	one (copy of a) photo
		kradaan 1 phɛ̀n	one piece of board
		phɛ̌ɛnthîi 1 phɛ̀n	one copy of a map
8.	kɔ̂ɔn	sabùu 1 kɔ̂ɔn	one bar of soap
		námtaan 1 kɔ̂ɔn	one lump/cube of sugar
		námkhɛ̌ɛŋ 1 kɔ̂ɔn	a piece of ice, an ice cube
9.	chabàp	náŋsy̌yphim 1 chabàp	one newspaper
		còtmǎaj 1 chabàp	one letter
10.	lêm	náŋsy̌y 1 lêm	one book
		samùt 1 lêm	one textbook
11.	baj	krapǎw 1 baj	one pocketbook, handbag, briefcase, suitcase
		(thonabàt) baj la rɔ́ɔj	one 100 baht banknote
		rûup 1 baj	One (example of a) picture
		tûu 1 baj	one cabinet (as a container)
12.	tua	tó 1 tua	one table/desk
		tó rîitphâa 1 tua	one ironing board
		kâwîi nỳŋ tua	one chair
		sŷa 1 tua	one blouse
		kaaŋkeeŋ 1 tua	one pair of pants
		kaprooŋ 1 tua	one (woman's) skirt

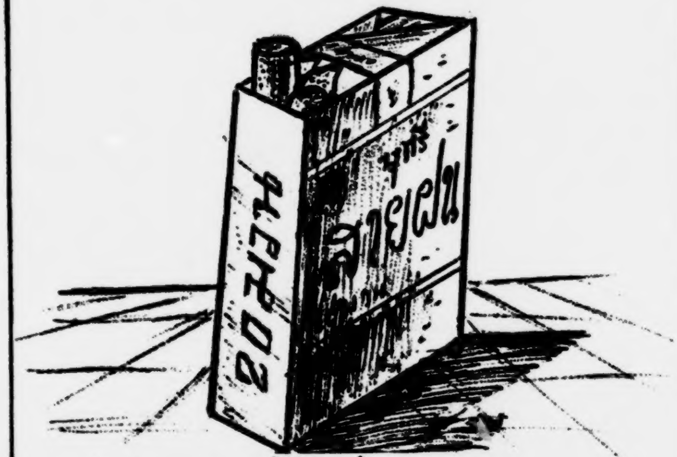
13.	khrŷaŋ	wítthajú 1 khrŷaŋ	one radio
		thiiwii thoorathát 1 khrŷaŋ	one TV set
		khrŷaŋsákphâa 1 khrŷaŋ	one washing machine
		khrŷaŋpə̀ət krapɔ̌ɔŋ 1 khrŷaŋ	one electric can opener
		khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat 1 khrŷaŋ	one air conditioner
14.	chút	khrŷaŋkhrua 1 chút	one set of kitchen equipment
		sŷaphâa 1 chút	one suit of clothes
		chútrápkhɛ̀ɛk 1 chút	one set of living-room furniture



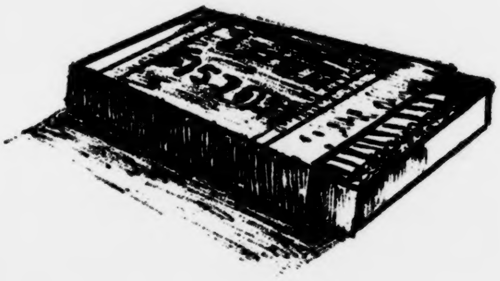
burìi mỳŋ { tua
muan



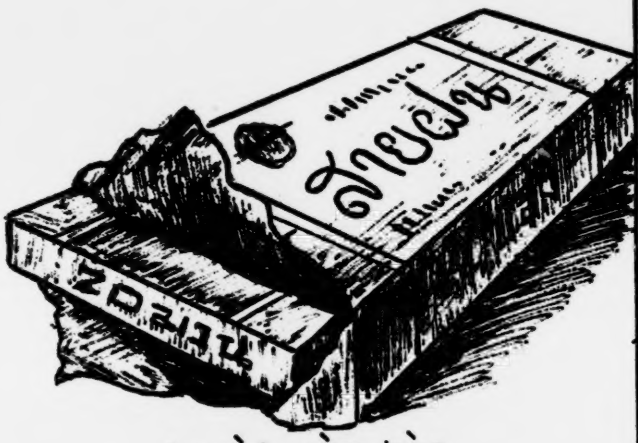
májkhìit (faj) nỳŋ kâan



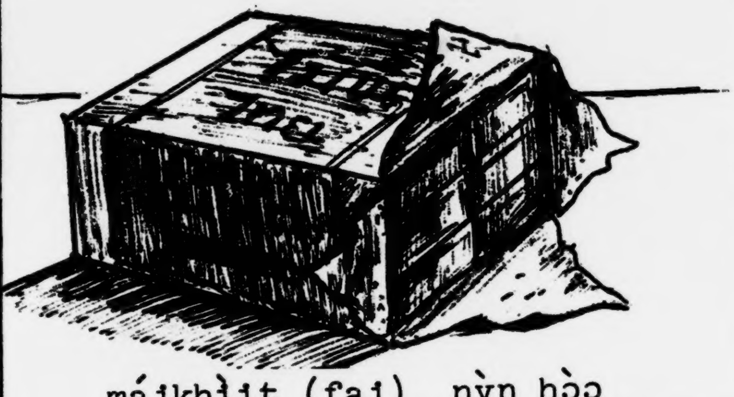
burìi nỳŋ sɔɔŋ



májkhìit (faj) nỳŋ klàk



burìi nỳŋ hɔ̀ɔ



májkhìit (faj) nỳŋ hɔ̀ɔ

b) Response Drill

	Cue	Question	Response
1.	prɛɛŋsǐifan nỳŋ Toothbrush	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) prɛɛŋsǐifan nỳŋ an (I want) one toothbrush.
2.	jaasǐifan sɔ̌ɔŋ Toothpaste	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) jaasǐifan sɔ̌ɔŋ lɔ̀ɔt (I want) two tubes of toothpaste.
3.	burìi sɔ̌ɔŋ Cigarettes	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) burìi sɔ̌ɔŋ sɔɔŋ (I want) two packages of cigarettes.
4.	sabúu hɔ̌ɔm sǎam Toilet soap	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) sabùu hɔ̌ɔm sǎam kɔ̂ɔn (I want) three bars of toilet soap.
5.	májkhìit nỳŋ Matches	ráp araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) májkhìit nỳŋ klàk (I want) one box of matches.
6.	sabùu láks jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk sɔ̌ɔŋ Imported Lux toilet soap Two	aw araj khráp What do you want?	aw sabùu láks jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk sɔ̌ɔŋ kɔ̂ɔn I want two bars of imported Lux toilet soap.

7.	prɛɛŋsǐifan khanàat lék	aw araj khráp	sýy prɛɛŋsǐifan
	nỳŋ	What would you like?	khanàat lék nỳŋ an
	Small toothbrush		One small toothbrush.
	One		
8.	jaasǐifan lɔ̀ɔt lék jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk, nỳŋ	ráp araj khráp	aw jaasǐifan
		What would you like?	jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk
			lɔ̀ɔtlék
	Imported toothpaste, small tube		nỳŋ lɔ̀ɔt
	One		One small tube imported toothpaste.

c) Expansion Drill

1.	sabùu nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	One bar of soap.
	sabùu hɔ̌ɔm nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	One bar of toilet soap.
	sabùu (hɔ̌ɔm) láks nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	One bar of Lux toilet soap.
	sabùu (hɔ̌ɔm) láks jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk nỳŋ kɔ̂ɔn	One bar of imported Lux toilet soap.
2.	pàakkaa nỳŋ dâam	One pen
	pàakkaa páakkə̂ə nỳŋ dâam	One Parker pen
	pàakkaa páakkə̂ə jàaŋdii nỳŋ dâam.	One good Parker pen
	pàakkaa páakkə̂ə jàaŋdii, khanàat lék nỳŋ dâam.	One good Parker pen, small size.

3.	jaasǐifan nỳŋ lɔ̀ɔt	One toothpaste
	jaasǐifan ajpaanaa nỳŋ lɔ̀ɔt	One Ipana toothpaste
	jaasǐifan ajpaanaa jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk nỳŋ lɔ̀ɔt	One imported Ipana toothpaste
	jaasǐifan ajpaanaa jàaŋnɔ̂ɔk, { khanàat / lɔ̀ɔt } jàj nỳŋ lɔ̀ɔt	One imported Ipana toothpaste, big size/large tube
4.	prɛɛŋsǐifan nỳŋ an	One toothbrush
	prɛɛŋsǐifan dɔ́ktə̂ə wés nỳŋ an	One Dr. West toothbrush
	prɛɛŋsǐifan dɔ́ktə̂ə wés jaaŋ ɔɔn nỳŋ an	One soft Dr. West toothbrush
5.	burìi nỳŋ sɔɔŋ	One package of cigarettes
	burìi thaj nỳŋ sɔɔŋ	One package of Thai cigarettes
	burìi thaj jàaŋdii nỳŋ sɔɔŋ	One package of good Thai cigarettes
	burìi thaj jàaŋdii jîihɔ̂ɔ arajkɔ̂dâj nỳŋ sɔɔŋ	One package of Thai cigarettes of any brand
6.	rót nỳŋ khan	One car
	rót ameerikan nỳŋ khan	One American car
	rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj nỳŋ khan	One beautiful American car
	rót ameerikan suǎjsǔaj jàaŋdii nỳŋ khan	One good, beautiful American car
	rót ameerikan suǎjsǔaj jàaŋdii khanàatjàj nỳŋ khan	One big good and beautiful American car
	rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj jàaŋdii khanàatjàj, jîihɔ̂ɔ arajkɔ̂dâj nỳŋ khan	One big good and beautiful American car of any make.

d) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		thîi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj
		Do you have anything cheaper?
1.	dii	thîi dii kwàa níi mii máj
	Good	Do you have anything better?
2.	sǔaj	thîi sǔaj kwàa níi mii máj
	Beautiful, pretty	Do you have anything prettier?
3.	phɛɛŋ	thîi phɛɛŋ kwàa níi mii máj
	Expensive	Do you have anything more expensive?
4.	jàj	thîi jàj kwàa níi mii máj
	Big	Do you have anything bigger?
5.	lék	thîi lék kwàa níi mii máj
	Small	Do you have anything smaller?
6.	nâakwâaŋ	thîi nâakwâaŋ kwàa níi mii máj
	Wide (Fabric)	Do you have anything wider?
7.	màj	thîi màj kwàa níi mii máj
	New	Do you have anything newer?

e) Sentence Expansion Drill

	Cue	Continued Pattern
1.	prɛɛŋsǐifan jàaŋníi	prɛɛŋsǐifan jàaŋníi phɛɛŋ paj, thîi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj
	phɛɛŋ paj	
	This kind of toothbrush is too expensive.	This kind of toothbrush is too expensive. Do you have anything cheaper?
2.	rót khanníi mâj suǎj	rót khanníi mâj suǎj, thîi suǎj kwàa níi mii máj
	This car is not beautiful.	This car is not beautiful. Do you have anything better looking?
3.	bâan lǎŋníi lék	bâan lǎŋníi lék kəən pâj, thîi jàj
	kəən paj	kwàa níi mii máj
	This house is too small.	This house is too small. Do you have anything bigger?
4.	phâaníi nâakhɛ̂ɛp	phâaníi nâakhɛ̂ɛp kəən paj, thîi kwâaŋ kwàa níi mii máj
	kəən paj	
	This fabric is too narrow.	This fabric is too narrow. Do you have anything wider?
5.	kaaŋkeeŋ tuaníi kàw	kaaŋkeeŋ tuaníi kàw paj, thîi màj
	paj	kwàa níi mii máj
	These pants are too old.	These pants are too old. Do you have anything newer?
6.	sŷa tuaníi jàj paj	sŷa tuaníi jàj paj, thîi lék kwàa níi mii máj
	This shirt is too big.	This shirt is too big. Do you have anything smaller?
7.	náŋsy̌y lêmníi jâak kəən paj	náŋsy̌y lêmníi jâak paj, thîi ŋâaj kwàa níi mii máj.
	This book is too difficult.	This book is too difficult. Do you have anything easier?

38.4 EXERCISES

a) Have one student take the part of a store clerk and another that of a customer. Have them go through the routine of purchasing various items, such as:

(a) a pack of cigarettes, (b) two bars of toilet soap,

(c) a tube of toothpaste, (d) some matches, etc.

The clerk asks the brand, kind, and size the customer wants. When he is told, he indicates what the price is. Then the customer inquires if there is anything cheaper (better, etc.). Then he gives the clerk a bill and asks for change.

38.5 VOCABULARY

aa sii ee	R.C.A.
ajpaanaa	Ipana
an	classifier for inanimate objects
ɛ́ɛsphajrin	aspirin
oŋ	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen
ɔ̀ɔn	soft, tender
ùtnǔn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
bajmáaj	leaf
dɔ́ktə̂ə wés	Dr. West
fan	tooth
fɔ̀ɔt	a Ford (brand name)
hɔ̀ɔ	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper

hɔ̌ɔm	to smell sweet
jaa	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hɔ̌ɔm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jîihɔ̂ɔ	brand or trade name
kâan	classifier for matches
kaprooŋ	woman's skirt
khìit	to strike, scratch
khonnaj	insider
khonnɔ̂ɔk	outsider or layman
khrŷaŋjon	engine
khrŷaŋ pə̀ət krapɔ̌ɔŋ	an electric can opener
khrŷaŋsákphâa	washing machine
khrŷaŋ tii khàj	an electric (egg) beater
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klètthɔɔŋ	Gold Flake(name of cigarettes)
klɔ̀ŋ	a small carton or plastic box
kɔ̂ɔn	bump, cube, bar classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks or coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money
kratàaj	rabbit

kratìknàm	thermos bottle
làks	Lux (brand name)
lɔ̀ɔt	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lûukthɔ́ɔ	peach (a Chinese loan word)
máa	horse
máj	wood
májkhìit (faj)	matches
mét	classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
(khɔ̌ɔŋ)naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
nákrian naj	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nɔ̂ɔk	Thais who were educated abroad
nók	bird
nókjuuŋ	Peacock
nókkɛ̂ɛw	Parrot
(khɔ̌ɔŋ)nɔ̂ɔk	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
ŋənthɔɔn	change (money returned)
páak kə̂ə	Parker
phátlom	electric fan
phɛ̀nsǐaŋ	records (phonograph)
prɛɛŋ	brush

prɛɛŋsǐifan	toothbrush
sabùuhɔ̌ɔm	toilet soap
sabùu(láks)	(Lux) soap
sabùu naj	local soap
sabùu nɔ̂ɔk	imported soap
sabùu sákphâa	laundry soap
sabùu thaj	Thai soap
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
satàaŋ	satang
sǐi	polish
sɔɔŋ	classifier for cigarettes or envelope
sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sy̌a	tiger
taw	stove
tawkɛ́ɛs	gas stove
tawrîit	iron (for clothing)
thǎŋ	pail
thiiwii	T.V.
thîi	classifier for simple equipment
thîi pə̀ət krapɔ̌ŋ	an ordinary can opener
thîi tii khàj	an ordinary (egg) beater
thonabàt	bank note

thɔɔn	to give change (money)
thoorathát	T.V.
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
wanlǎŋ	next time

LESSON THIRTY-NINE

39.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Fruit

khonsýy:	sômníi khǎaj jaŋŋaj	How much are these oranges?
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	lǒo la sìp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht a kilo.
khonsýy:	kiloo nyŋ mii kìi lûuk	How many oranges in a kilo?
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	raaw hòk cèt lûuk	Around 6 or 7.
khonsýy:	lǒo la sìp bàat dâj máj	How about 10 baht a kilo?
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	mâj dâj khà	Impossible.
	nîi sôm jàaŋdii nakhá	This is a very good kind of orange.
	rótdii wǎansanìt	They have good, unusually sweet flavor.
khonsýy:	ŋán sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat kɔ̂lɛ́ɛwkan na	Then make it 12 baht.
	aw kiloo nyŋ	I'll take one kilo.
	(mɛ̂ɛkháa sòŋ sôm hâj)	(The saleslady hands over the oranges.)
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	ca ráp araj ìik májkhá	Anything else?
khonsýy:	sàpparót níi lûuk thâwraj	How much are these pineapples each?
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	sìi bàat khà	four baht.
khonsýy:	sǎam bàat dâj máj	Is three O.K.?

mɛ̂ɛkháa:	mâj dâj khà	Can't do it.
	sìi bàat khàat tua	Four baht, no bargaining
khonsýy:	aw lûuk nyŋ	I'll take one.
	chûaj lŷak lûuk diidii hâj dûaj	Pick out a good one for me.
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	nîi khà, tháŋmòt sìp hòk bàat thûan	Here it is. That makes 16 baht exactly altogether.
	(khonsýy sòŋ baj la rɔ́ɔj hâj mɛ̂ɛkháa)	(The buyer hands the saleslady a 100 baht bill.)
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	khun mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j máj khá	You have any smaller bills?
	dichán mâj mii thɔɔn	I don't have any change.
khonsýy:	mâj mii ləəj khráp	No, I don't have any at all.
mɛ̂ɛkháa:	ŋán rɔɔ sák pradǐaw nákhá	Then please wait a minute.
	dichán ca paj lɛ̂ɛk maa hâj	I'll go get some change for you.

39.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

Types of Noun Phrases

a) Noun + Stative Verb(s)

With this type of construction the reference is non-specific; i.e. it refers to any one or more units of the whole class.

1. Noun + Stative Verb

   rót màj 'new cars'

   Here the reference is to a particular type of object as a class.

2. Noun + Stative Verb Reduplicated

   Depending on the context, reduplication of the stative verb may result in

   (a) 'Softening' the meaning of the stative verb,

   phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phàan paj khan nyŋ

   'I saw a whitish car pass by.'

   (b) strengthening the meaning of the stative verb, or

   rót khanníi mâj jàj phɔɔ. phǒm jàak dâj rót jàj jàj

   'This car is not big enough. I would like a really big car.'

   (c) it may indicate that the noun it occurs with is plural.

   kháw mii bâan sǔaj sǔaj 'He has beautiful houses.'

   In all of these constructions the reference is to general rather than specific objects.

b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb(s)

Reference is usually to one object.

1. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb

   Reference is one specific object.

   náŋsyy lêm jàj 'the big book'

2. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb Reduplicated

   Reference is any one of a number of objects.

   sapparòt lûuk dii dii 'any good pineapple'

In certain situations reduplication can result in

(a) 'softening' the meaning of the stative verb

chûaj lŷak lûuk jàj jàj hâj lûuk nyŋ

'Please choose a rather large one for me.'

39.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

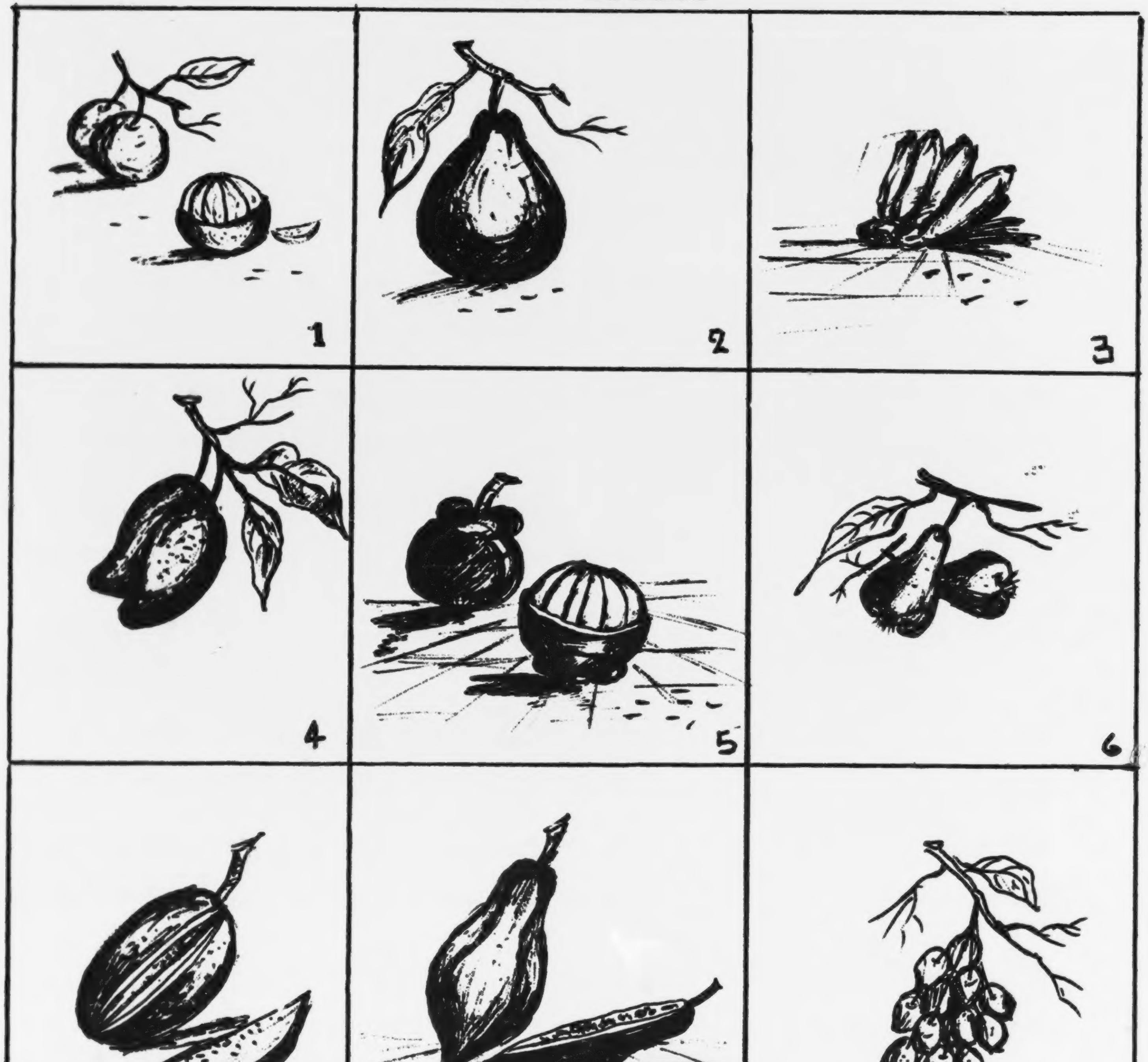
a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

1.	sôm sǎam	lûuk baj phǒn	3 oranges
2.	sôm oo nỳŋ	lûuk baj phǒn	1 pomelo
3.	klûaj nỳŋ wǐi		1 bunch of bananas
	or sìi	baj lûuk phǒn	or 4 bananas
4.	mamûaŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	2 mangoes
5.	maŋkhút nỳŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	1 mangosteen
6.	chomphûu sɔ̌ɔŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	2 rose apples

7.	tɛɛŋmoo nỳŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	1 watermelon
8.	malakɔɔ nỳŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	1 papaya
9.	laaŋsàat nỳŋ	chɔ̂ɔ	1 bunch of langsa
	or		or
	sìpsìi	lûuk phǒn baj	14 langsa
10.	thúrian nỳŋ	lûuk phǒn baj	1 durian
11.	sàparót nỳŋ	phǒn lûuk baj	1 pineapple
12.	ŋɔ́ nỳŋ	chɔ̂ɔ phuaŋ	1 bunch of rambuttans
	or		
	hâa	phǒn baj lûuk	5 rambuttans

b) Sentence Construction Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

	Cue	Pattern
1.	sôm, jaŋŋaj	sôm nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these oranges? (by weight or quantity)
2.	sôm oo, lûuk	sôm oo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are these grapefruit apiece?
3.	klûaj, jaŋŋaj	klûaj nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these bananas?
4.	mamûaŋ, lûuk	mamûaŋ nîi lûuk la thawràj How much are these mangoes apiece?
5.	maŋkhút, jaŋŋaj	maŋkhút nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these mangosteens?
6.	chomphûu, jaŋŋaj	chomphûu nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these rose apples?
7.	tɛɛŋmoo, lûuk	tɛɛŋmoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are watermelons each?
8.	malakɔɔ, lûuk	malakɔɔ nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are papayas apiece?
9.	laaŋsàat, jaŋŋaj	laaŋsaat nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell langsa?
10.	thúrian, jaŋŋaj	thúrian nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell durians?
11.	sàparót, lûuk	sàparót nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are pineapples apiece?
12.	ŋɔ́, jaŋŋaj	ŋɔ́ nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell rambuttans?


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

THAI FRUIT

c) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		chûaj lŷak lûuk dii dii hâj dûaj Please choose a good one for me.
1.	ŋaam ŋaam pretty	chûaj lŷak lûuk ŋaam ŋaam hâj dûaj Please choose a pretty one for me.
2.	wǎan wǎan sweet	chûaj lŷak lûuk wǎan wǎan hâj dûaj Please choose a very sweet one for me.
3.	jàj jàj big	chûaj lŷak lûuk jàj jàj hâj dûaj Please choose a rather big one for me.
4.	sùk sùk ripe	chûaj lŷak lûuk sùk sùk hâj dûaj Please choose a really ripe one for me.
5.	sòt sòt fresh	chûaj lŷak lûuk sòt sòt hâj dûaj Please choose a really fresh one for me.

d) Expansion Drill

1.	sàparót lûuk dii dii	A good pineapple
	sàparót lûuk dii dii wǎan wǎan	A good and sweet pineapple
2.	sàparót lûuk too too	A big pineapple
	sàparót lûuk too too wǎan wǎan	A big and sweet pineapple
3.	thúrian lûuk too too	A big durian
	thúrian lûuk too too rót dii dii	A big, good-tasting durian

4.	máŋkhút lûuk ŋaamŋaam	A pretty mangosteen
	máŋkhút lûuk ŋaamŋaam rót dii dii	A pretty, good-tasting mangosteen
5.	mamuâŋ lûuk too too	A big mango
	mamûaŋ lûuk too too sùk sùk	A big, ripe mango
6.	mamuâŋ lûuk too too	A big mango
	mamuâŋ lûuk too too sòt sòt	A big, fresh mango

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		chûaj lŷak sàparòt lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ Please choose a good pineapple for me.
1.	sôm oo	chûaj lŷak sôm oo lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ Please choose a good pomelo for me.
2.	mamuâŋ, jàj, sǎam	chûaj lŷak mamûaŋ lûuk baj jàj jàj hâj sǎam baj Please choose three (rather) big mangoes for me.
3.	thúrian, rót dii, nỳŋ	chûaj lŷak thúrian rót dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ Please choose a good durian for me.
4.	jàj, sɔ̌ɔŋ	chûaj lŷak thúrian baj jàj jàj rót dii dii hâj sɔ̌ɔŋ lûuk Please choose two big and good durians for me.

5.	tɛɛŋmoo,	chûaj lŷak tɛɛŋmoo lûuk jàj
	wǎan, nỳŋ	jàj wǎan wǎan hâj lûuk nyŋ
		Please choose a big sweet watermelon for me.
6.	maŋkhút, ŋaam, nỳŋ kiloo	chûaj maŋkhút lûuk ŋaam ŋaam hâj kiloo nyŋ
		Please choose a kilo of pretty mangoes for me.

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		chûaj lŷak sàparót lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ
		Please choose a good pineapple for me.
1.	sôm oo	chûaj lŷak sôm oo lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ
	pomelo	Please choose a good pomelo for me.
2.	thúrian	chûaj lŷak thúrian lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nyŋ
	durian	Please choose a good durian for me.
3.	sǎam	chûaj lŷak thúrian lûuk dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk
	three	Please choose three good durians for me.
4.	jàj	chûaj lŷak thúrian lûuk jàj jàj hâj sǎam lûuk
	big	Please choose three rather big durians for me.

5.	jàj, rót dii	chûaj lŷak thúrian lûuk jàj jàj rót dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk
	big, of good flavor	Please choose three rather big delicious durians for me.
6.	sýy	chûaj sýy thúrian lûuk jàj jàj rót dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk
	buy	Please buy three rather big delicious durians for me.
7.	maŋkhút, ŋaam mangosteens	chûaj sýy maŋkhút lûuk ŋaam ŋaam rót dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk
	pretty	Please buy three pretty, good tasting mangosteens for me.
8.	nyŋ kiloo	chûaj sýy maŋkhút lûuk ŋaam ŋaam rót dii dii hâj kiloo nyŋ
	one kilo	Please buy a kilo of pretty, delicious mangosteens for me.
9.	sìp bàat	chûaj sýy maŋkhút lûuk ŋaam ŋaam rót dii dii hâj sìp bàat
	ten baht	Please buy ten baht worth of pretty, delicious mangosteens for me.
10.	mamuâŋ, too	chûaj sýy mamûaŋ lûuk too too
	wǎan	wǎan wǎan hâj sìp bàat
	mango, large, sweet	Please buy ten baht of sweet, big mangoes for me.
11.	malakɔɔ, sùk, too	chûaj sýy malakɔɔ lûuk too too sùk sùk hâj sìp bàat
	papaya, ripe, big	Please buy ten baht of big, ripe papayas for me.

g) Sentence Construction Drill

	Pattern 1	Cue	Pattern 2
1.	khun mâj mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j rɔ̆khráp	lɛ̂ɛk	khun mâj mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j rɔ̆khráp phɔ̆m capaj lɛ̂ɛk maa hâj
	You don't have any change?	to change	You don't have any change? I'll go get some change for you.
2.	khun ca thaan kaafɛɛ rɔ̆khráp	sýy	khun ca thaan kaafɛɛ rɔ̆khráp phɔ̆m ca paj sýy maa hâj
	You'd like a cup of coffee?	to buy	You'd like a cup of coffee? I'll go and buy some for you.
3.	khun mâj mii náŋsɯ̆y rɔ̆khráp	aw	khun mâj mii náŋsɯ̆y rɔ̆khráp phɔ̆m ca paj aw maa hâj
	You don't have a book?	to get	You don't have a book? I'll go get one for you.
4.	khun tɔ̂ŋkaan thɛ́ksîi rɔ̆khráp	rîak	khun tɔ̂ŋkaan thɛ̂ksîi rɔ̆khráp phɔ̆m ca paj rîak maa hâj
	Do you want a taxi?	call	Do you want a taxi? I'll go and call one for you.

5.	khun tɔ̂ŋkaan mɔ̌ɔ rə̌khráp Do you want a doctor?	taam to send for, to get (a person)	khun tɔ̂ŋkaan mɔ̌ɔ rə̌khráp phǒm ca paj taam maa hâj Do you want a doctor? I'll go get one for you.
6.	khun ca nâŋ máj Would you like to sit down?	aw kâwîi get a chair	khun ca nâŋ máj phǒm ca paj aw kâwîi maa hâj Would you like to sit down? I'll bring a chair for you.
7.	khun ca thaan máj Would you like to eat?	aw get	khun ca thaan máj phǒm ca paj aw maa hâj Would you like to eat? I'll bring something for you.
8.	khun ca lɛ̂ɛk ŋən máj Would you like to change money?	lɛ̂ɛk change	khun ca lɛ̂ɛk ŋən máj phǒm ca paj lɛ̂ɛk maa hâj Would you like to change money? I'll go and change some for you.

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm mâj mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j. phǒm ca tɔ̂ŋ paj lɛ̂ɛk ŋən

I don't have small bank notes. I'll have to go change some money.

2. khun mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j máj. khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk sák rɔ́ɔj bàat.

   Do you have any change? Please change a hundred Baht.

3. khun mii sèet satàaŋ máj. khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk sák hâa bàat

   Do you have any change? Could I have change for five Baht?

4. chûaj paj lɛ̂ɛk ŋən maa hâj sák jîisìp bàat

   Please go and get twenty Baht change for me.

5. phǒm mii ŋən doolâa jùu jîisìp rǐan. ca lɛ̂ɛk pen ŋənthaj dâj thâwràj

   I have twenty dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?

6. khun sâap máj khráp wâa thɛ̌wníi mii thîilɛ̂ɛkŋən máj.

   Do you know if there are any money changers around here?

7. chaawnaa aw khâaw paj lɛ̂ɛk maa pen khɔ̌ŋcháj

   The farmers took the rice and traded it for things.

8. jàa aw phimsɛ̌ɛn paj lɛ̂ɛk kàp klya.

   Don't trade (exchange) smelling salts for salt.

   (Do not trade valuable things for worthless things.
   A Thai proverb)

i) Expansion Drill

1.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	lɛ̂ɛk kàp	exchange with
	lɛ̂ɛk ka khɔ̌ɔŋ	exchange with things
	lɛ̂ɛk ŋən ka khɔ̌ɔŋ	exchange money for things

2.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	lɛ̂ɛk ŋən	exchange money
	lɛ̂ɛk ŋən sìp rǐan	(I) want to exchange ten dollars.
3.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk	Please exchange.
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j	Please change for small bank notes.
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j sák rɔ́ɔj bàat	Please give me 100 Baht change.
4.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk	Please exchange.
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk sèetsatàaŋ	Please exchange for coins.
	khɔ̌ɔ lɛ̂ɛk sèetsatàaŋ sák hâa bàat	Please exchange five Baht into coins?
5.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	lɛ̂ɛk kan	trade
	lɛ̂ɛk rót kan	trade cars
	lɛ̂ɛk rót kan, aw máj	How would you like to trade cars?
6.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	aw khâaw paj lɛ̂ɛk	Take rice and exchange it.
	aw khâaw paj lɛ̂ɛk ka khɔ̌ɔŋcháj	Take rice and exchange it for things.
	chaawnaa aw khâaw paj lɛ̂ɛk ka khɔ̂ɔŋcháj	The farmers trade rice for things.

7.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	aw paj lɛ̂ɛk	Take it and exchange it.
	aw paj lɛ̂ɛk maa	been to exchange something
	aw khâaw paj lɛ̂ɛk maa pen khɔ̌ɔŋcháj	has been to exchange rice for useful things
8.	lɛ̂ɛk	exchange
	aw paj lɛ̂ɛk	Take it and exchange it.
	aw rót kàw paj lɛ̂ɛk	Take the old car to exchange it.
	aw rót kàw paj lɛ̂ɛk maa pen rót màj	have been to trade the old car in for a new one

Exercise (on lɛ̂ɛk)

1. chaawnaa mii tɛ̀ɛ khâaw. thâa kháw tɔ̂ŋkaan khɔ̌ɔŋcháj tɛ̀ɛ kháw mâj mii ŋən sýy. kháw ca tham jaŋŋaj

   A farmer has only rice. If he wants other things but he doesn't have money to buy them, what can he do?

2. khun ca tɔ̂ŋ hâj ŋən khâa thɛ́ksîi sìphâa bàat. khun mii tɛ̀ɛ baj la rɔ́ɔj. thɛ́ksîi mâj mii thɔɔn. khun ca tham jaŋŋaj

   You have to pay fifteen Baht for taxi fare. You have only a 100 Baht bank note. The driver doesn't have any change. What do you do?

3. khun mii tɛ̀ɛ ŋən dɔɔn lâa. khun tɔ̂ŋkaan ŋən bàat, khun ca tham jaŋŋaj

   You have only dollars. You want some baht. What do you do?

4. thâa ŋən dɔɔn lâa thâwkàp jîisìp bàat. thâa khun mii ŋən hâasìp dɔɔn lâa, khun ca lɛ̂ɛk ŋən bàat dâj thâwràj

   If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht; if you have fifty dollars, how many baht do you get?

5. khun phíchaj ca paj ameerikaa. kháw aw ŋən paj lɛ̂ɛk thîi thanakhaan hâa phan bàat. thâa nỳŋ dɔɔn lâa thâw kàp jîisìp bàat. khun phíchaj dâj ŋən dɔɔn lâa thâwràj

   Mr. Pichai is going to America. He went to the bank to exchange money for 5,000 baht. If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht, how many dollars does Mr. Pichai get?

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ raakhaa sìp pɛ̀ɛt bàat. phǒm hâj ŋən kháw paj jîisìp bàat. kháw thɔɔn ŋən hâj phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat.

   I made a purchase for 18 baht. I gave him twenty baht. He gave me two baht change.

2. khâa thɛ́ksîi sìp sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat. phǒm hâj ŋən thɛ́ksîi paj sìp hâa bàat kháw thɔɔn maa hâj phǒm sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat. kháw thɔɔn ŋən hâj phǒm khàat paj nỳŋ bàat.

   The taxi fare is 12 baht. I gave the driver 15 baht. He gave me two baht change. He shortchanged me one baht.

3. phǒm mii tɛ̀ɛ baj la rɔ́ɔj, mâj mîi bɛ̂ŋjɔ̂j. mɛ̂ɛkháa mâj mii ŋən thɔɔn, phǒm ləəj tɔ̂ŋ paj lɛ̂ɛk bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j maa hâj kháw

   I had only one hundred baht bank notes. I didn't have any smaller bank notes. The vendor didn't have any change. So, I had to go get some change for her.

4. khun khuan ca dâj ŋənthɔɔn sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat tɛ̀ɛ kháw thɔɔn hâj khun sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat hâasìp. kháw thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun kəən maa hâasìp satàaŋ

   You should have got two baht change but he gave you the change for two baht and fifty satang. He gave you fifty satang too much in change.

5. khɔ̌ɔŋ raakhaa tháŋmòt pɛ̀ɛtsìp sìi bàat. phǒm hâj ŋən kháw paj rɔ́ɔj nyŋ. phǒm khuan ca dâj ŋənthɔɔn thâwràj

   The goods cost altogether 84 baht. I gave him 100 baht. How much change should I get?

k) Expansion Drill

1.	thɔɔn	To give change
	thɔɔnŋən	To give change
	thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun	To give you change
	thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun sǎam bàat	To give you 3 baht change
	kháw thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun sǎam bàat	He gave you 3 baht change.
2.	thɔɔn	To give change
	thɔɔn maa	To give change (to me)
	thɔɔn maa hâj phǒm	To give me change
	thɔɔn maa hâj phǒm sǎam bàat	To give me 3 baht change
	tɔ̂ŋ thɔɔn maa hâj phǒm sǎam bàat	Should give me 3
	khun tɔ̂ŋ thɔɔn maa hâj phǒm sǎam bàat, thùuk máj khráp	You should have given me 3 baht change, right?
3.	khàat	To be lacking
	khàat paj	To be lacking
	khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat	Two baht too little
	ŋən khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat	Two baht too little change
	thɔɔn ŋən maa khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat	Gave 2 baht too little in change
	thɔɔn ŋən maa hâj phǒm khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat	Gave me 2 baht too little in change.
	khun thɔɔn ŋən maa hâj phǒm khàat paj sɔ̌ɔŋ bàat	You shortchanged me 2 baht.

4.	kəən	Too much
	kəən maa hâa sìp sataaŋ	Fifty satang too much
	ŋən kəən maa hâa sataaŋ	The money is 50 satangs too much.
	thɔɔn ŋən kəən maa hâasìp sataaŋ	Gave 50 satang too much in change
	khun thɔɔn ŋən kəən maa hâasìp sataaŋ	You gave 50 satang too much in the change.
5.	thɔɔn	to give change
	ŋən thɔɔn	change
	dâj ŋənthɔɔn	get change
	jaŋ mâj dâj ŋənthɔɔn	haven't got change yet
	phŏm jaŋ mâj dâj ŋənthɔɔn	I haven't got change yet.

Excercise

1. khun sýy khɔ̆ɔŋ raakhaa sìp săam bàat. khun hâj ŋən khonkhăaj paj jîisìp bàat. kháw tɔ̂ŋ thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun kìi bàat

You bought 13 baht worth of goods. You gave the seller 20 baht. How much must he give you back in change?

2. khun sýy phŏnlamáaj ruam tháŋmòt jîi sìp èt bàat. khun hâj baj la jîisìp kàp baj la hâa kháw paj. kháw tɔ̂ŋ thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun thâwràj

You bought fruit for 21 baht. You gave her one 20 baht bank note and one 5 baht bank note. How much is she supposed to give you back in change?

3. khun sýy khɔ̆ɔŋ raakhaa kâawsìp cèt bàat cèt sìp sataaŋ. khun hâj baj la rɔ́ɔj kháw paj. khun khuan dâj ŋən thɔɔn thâwràj

You bought the goods for 97.70 baht. You gave the seller a 100 baht bank note. How much change should you get back?

4. khun sýy phâamǎj tháŋmòt sǎamrɔ́ɔj sìp bàat.
khun hâj baj la rɔ́ɔj khonkhǎaj sìi baj.
khonkhǎaj thɔɔn ŋən maa hâj khun pɛ̀ɛt sìp bàat. kháw thɔɔn ŋən hâj khun khàat paj thâwràj.

You bought 310 baht worth of Thai silk. You gave the salesman four 100 baht bank notes. The salesman gave you 80 baht change. How much did he shortchange you?

5. khun sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ raakhaa sǎam bàat khun hâj baj la hâa khonkhǎaj paj. kháw thɔɔn maa hâj khun sǎam bàat. kháw thɔɔn ŋən kəən maa thâwràj.

You bought some things for 3 baht. You gave the salesman one 5 baht bank note. He gave you 3 baht change. How much extra change did you get?

1) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		ca ráp araj ìik máj Would you like anything else?
1.	sýy araj	ca sýy araj ìik máj Would you like to buy anything else?
2.	tham araj	ca tham araj ìik máj Would you like to do anything else?
3.	paj nǎj	ca paj nǎj ìik máj Would you like to go anywhere else?
4.	paj hǎa khraj	ca paj hǎa khraj ìik máj Would you like to see anyone else?

5.	duu araj	ca duu araj ìik máj. Would you like to look at anything else?
6.	paj thúra thîinǎj	ca paj thúra thîinǎj ìik máj Would you like to go (on business) anywhere else?

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (ìik: 'else')

1. khun paj hǎa kháw lɛ́ɛw. khun ca paj hǎa khraj ìik

   You have seen him. Is there anybody else you'll see?

2. nɔ̂ɔkcàak khun cɔɔn lɛ́ɛw, khun rúucák khraj ìik bâaŋ

   Besides John, who else do you know?

3. sýy phâa sèt lɛ́ɛw, khun jàak ca sýy araj ìik máj

   After we finish shopping for material, is there anything else you'd like to buy?

4. khǐan còtmǎaj sèt lɛ́ɛw, khun ca tham araj ìik

   After you have finished writing letters, what else are you going to do?

5. paj thúrá thîinân sèt lɛ́ɛw, khun ca tɔ̂ŋ paj thîinǎj ìik máj

   After you have finished your business there, do you have to go anywhere else?

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw mii phanrajaa sǔaj lɛ́ kèŋ

   He has a beautiful and clever wife.

2. kháw mii bâansǔaj

   He has a beautiful house.

3. kháw dâj khoncháj dii

He has (got) good servants.

4. kháw mii lûuksǎaw sǔaj jùu khonnyŋ

He has a beautiful daughter.

5. thîinân mii ráanaahǎan dii jùu ráan nyŋ

There is a good restaurant there.

6. thîinân mii ráankhǎajkhɔ̌ɔŋ jàj jùu ráan nyŋ

There is a big store there.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'plurality')

1. kháw mii bâan sǔaj suǎj lǎaj lǎŋ

He has many beautiful houses.

2. kháw mii rót ameerikan jàj jàj lǎaj khan

He has many big American cars.

3. kháw mii lûuknɔ́ɔŋ kèŋ kèŋ dii dii lǎaj khon

He has many good and competent employees.

4. kháw mii khɔ̌ɔŋcháj dii dii lǎaj jàaŋ.

He has many nice things to use.

5. kháw rúucàk ráanaahǎan dii dii thùuk thùuk lǎaj hɛ̀ŋ

He knows many inexpensive good restaurants.

6. thîinân mii rooŋrian màj màj dii dii juu lǎaj rooŋ

There are many good new schools there.

7. thîinân mii khɔ̌ɔŋ dii dii thùuk thùuk hâj lŷak lǎaj jàaŋ

There are many kinds of good, inexpensive things to choose from there.

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'generality')

1. phǒm jàak dâj náŋsy̌y dii dii sák lêm

I want to get a good book.

2. kháw tɔ̂ŋkaan phŷan dii dii sák khon

He needs a good friend.

3. phǒm ca sýy rót ameerikan khan jàj jàj sák khan

I'll buy a big American car.

4. chûaj sýy phâamǎj sǔaj sǔaj dii dii sǐi dam hâj sák sɔ̌ɔŋ lǎa

Please buy two yards of good beautiful Thai silk, in black for me.

5. phǒm jàak dâj lûuknɔ́ɔŋ dii dii kèŋkèŋ sák khonnyŋ

I would like to get a competent good person to work for me.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication strengthening of the base meanings)

1. rótkhanníi mâj jàj phɔɔ. phǒm jàak dâj rót jàj jàj

This car is not big enough. I would like a big car.

2. bâan lǎŋníi jàj kəən paj. phǒm jàak dâj bâan lék lék.

   This house is too big. I would like a small house.

3. náŋsy̌y lêmníi jâak paj nɔ̀ɔj. phǒm jàak dâj náŋsy̌y ŋâaj ŋâaj

   This book is a little bit too difficult. I would like an easy one.

4. phâa jàaŋníi phɛɛŋ paj. phǒm jǎak dâj jàaŋ thùuk thùuk

   This kind of material is too expensive. I would like a cheap kind.

5. kaafɛɛ thûaj níi mâj rɔ́ɔn lə́əj. phǒm jàak dâj kaafɛɛ rɔ́ɔnrɔ́ɔn

   This cup of coffee is not hot. I'd like hot coffee.

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication softening the base meaning)

1. phǒm jàak dâj rót dii dii sák khan nyŋ

   I would like to get a fairly good car.

2. chûaj sýy mamûaŋ lûuk tootoo hâj sìp bàat

   Please buy me 50 Baht of rather big mangoes.

3. phûujǐŋ khonnán pen khon dam dam tɛ̀ɛ mâj dam mâak

   That lady is a rather dark person but not very dark.

4. phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phàan paj khannyŋ

   I saw a whitish car pass by.

5. phǒm cam dâj wâa náŋsy̌y lêmnán
   pen náŋsy̌y lêm lék lék baaŋ baaŋ.

   I remember that that book is a rather small thin book.

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (classifier specifies the object)

1. khun chɔ̂ɔp rót khan nǎj. khan lék rý khan jàj

   Which car do you like? The small one or the big one?

2. kháw ca châw lǎŋ nǎj. lǎŋ sǐikhǐaw rý sǐikhǎaw

   Which house is he going to rent? The green one or the white one?

3. náŋsy̌y khɔ̌ɔŋ khun lêm nǎj, lêm kàw ry̌ lêm màj

   Which book is yours? The old one or the new one?

4. khun ca aw pàakkaa an thùuk rý an phɛɛŋ

   Does he want the cheap pen or the expensive one?

5. fɛɛn khɔ̌ɔŋ kháw khon nǎj (phûujǐŋ) khon sǔaj rý khon mâj sǔaj

   Which one is his girl friend? The pretty one or the not (so) pretty one?

t) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	Single Adjective (Indicating kind or type)	Reduplicated Adjective (Indicating quality)
1.	mamûaŋ sùk	mamûaŋ sùksùk
	Ripe mangoes	Mangoes which are (rather) ripe
2.	kaafɛɛ rɔ́ɔn	kaafɛɛ rɔ́ɔnrɔ́ɔn
	Hot coffee	The coffee which is quite hot
3.	nám jen	nám jenjen
	Cold water	Water which is really cold

4. khɔ̌ɔŋkàw	khɔ̌ɔŋ kàwkàw
Antiques	Old things
5. khɔ̌ɔŋwǎan	khɔ̌ɔŋ wǎanwǎan
Dessert	Sweet things

39.3 EXERCISES

1) Pretend you are shopping for fruit and ask for
    (a) 2 oranges and a bunch of bananas,
    (b) six mangosteens and one small watermelon,
    (c) 3 ripe mangoes,
    (d) 1 large papaya,
    (e) one small durian,
    (f) a sweet pineapple,
    (g) a bunch of rambuttans.

2) Pretend you are shopping and say to the salesperson
    " Please choose for me _______"
    (a) a good orange,
    (b) 3 sweet pineapples,
    (c) one large durian,
    (d) a big, sweet watermelon,
    (e) 2 kilos of beautiful mangosteens,
    (f) 3 baht worth of big ripe papayas,
    (g) 1 bunch of ripe bananas,
    (h) 3 rose apples,
    (i) 2 bunches of good rambuttans,
    (j) 1 bunch of langsa.

3) Student A says to Student B, "Where are you going?"

Student B replies, "I'm going to buy ______ for you."
Use different kinds of objects in your reply.

4) Student A: "I have _____ dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?"

Student B: "You'll get _________ baht."

39.4 VOCABULARY

baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j	small bill (change)
chomphûu	rose apple
chɔ̂ɔ	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
dɔɔlâa	dollar
fɛɛn	girl or boy friend
hók cèt	6 or 7
kəən	too much
khàat	shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khɔ̌ŋcháj	things for use
klûaj	banana
laaŋsàat	bangsa (small fruit)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lŷak	to choose, pick out, select, elect

malakɔɔ	papaya (fruit)
mamûaŋ	mango (fruit)
maŋkhút	mangosteen (fruit)
mɛ̂ɛkháa	salesperson (female)
ŋənthɔɔn	change
ŋɔ́	rambuttan (fruit)
phíchaj	Phichai (male first name)
phimsěen	smelling salts
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaj	fruit
phuaŋ	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
ráp	to take on, to eat (something)
rǐan	coin, dollars
rót	flavor
sák	a little, a bit
sák pradǐaw	a minute
sanìt	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
sàpparót	pineapple
sèet satàaŋ	change (in coin)
sôm	orange
sôm oo	pomelo
sòt	fresh (of fruit, etc.)

sùk	ripe
tɛɛŋmoo	watermelon
tháŋmòt	altogether
thîilɛ̂ɛkŋen	place to exchange money
thûan	even, in round numbers
thúrian	durian (fruit)
wǎan	sweet (in flavor)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

LESSON FORTY

40.0 BASIC DIALOG: Banking and Shopping Trip

A:	khun mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j bâaŋ máj	Do you have any change?
B:	mii, tɛ̀ɛ mâj thỹŋ rɔ́ɔj bàat	Yes, but not as much as 100 Baht.
A:	ŋán, khɔ̌ɔ jyym kɔ̀ɔn sák jîisìp bàat, dâj máj	Well, could I borrow 20 Baht, then?
	khɔ̀pkhun mâak	Thank you.
B:	wanníi ca paj nǎj rə̌khráp	You are going somewhere today?
A:	ca paj thanakhaan	To the bank.
B:	paj fàak ŋən rə̌khráp	To deposit money?
A:	plàaw,ca paj bə̀ək ŋən	No, to get some money out.
	kàp ca phaa phyân faràŋ paj lɛ̂ɛk ŋənthaj dûaj	And I am also taking a 'farang' friend to change some money,
	phrɔ́ ca paj sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ kan	Because we are going shopping.
	phyân kháw jàak sýy phâamǎj thaj, khǎnŋən	She wants some Thai silk, a silver bowl,
	lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂ chamsalàt thîi tham dûaj máaj	And a wooden salad bowl.

40.1 BASIC DIALOG: (Part 2)

A:	khun rúucàk ráandiidii thîi mâj phɛɛŋ nák bâaŋ máj	You know any good and inexpensive shops?
B:	ráan sǐnkháathaj ŋaj khráp	Yes, the "Thai merchandise" shop.
	kháw mii khɔ̌ɔŋthaj diidii sǔajsǔaj hâj lyâk jɛ́	They have a large selection of beautiful and good things.

	fǐimyy kháw dii mâak phrɔ́ kháw mii châaŋ diidii	Their work is very good because they have good artisans.
A:	ciŋná, phɔ̂ŋ nýk ɔ̀ɔk	That's true, it just occurred to me.
B:	əə, khun ca phàan ráan nanaaphân máj	By the way, are you going to go by "Nana Phan" shop?
A:	phàan, ca fàak sýy araj bâaŋ	Yes, could I get you something?
B:	chûaj sýy thàanfajchǎaj hâj dûaj	Could you buy some flashlight batteries for me?
A:	aw kìi kɔ̂ɔn	How many do you want?
B:	sɔ̌ɔŋ kɔ̂ɔn, lɛ́ɛwkɔ̂ lɔ̀ɔtfajfáa hòksìp rɛɛŋthian sǎam lɔ̀ɔt	Two, and three sixty-watt light bulbs.
	nîikhráp ŋənkhâakhɔ̌ɔŋ	Here's the money.
A:	jâŋ mâj tɔ̂ɔŋ hâj rɔkhráp	Don't bother about it yet,
	phrɔ́ jaŋ mâj sâap wâa thâwràj	because I don't know how much it's going to be.

40.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) bə̀ək ŋən means 'to get money (from the bank)' either by (a) taking money out of an account: thɔɔn ŋən or (b) by cashing a check: aw chék paj khŷn ŋən

b) thy̌ŋ is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached.
When used as a main verb, it means 'to reach, get to' or 'to be as much as (with amounts)'.

mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j tɛ̀ɛ mâj thy̌ŋ rɔ́ɔj bàat

I have change but not as much as 100 baht.

3

c) jɛ́, jə́, jə́jɛ́ means 'to be a great deal, a lot, plenty.' It frequently replaces mâak in colloquial speech in the sense of 'large number or quantity', but not in the sense of 'very'.

khǎw mii khɔ̌ɔŋ diidii jɛ́ 'He has lots of good things.'

d) fǐi myy means (a) 'craftmanship' as in tó tua nii fǐimyy dii

'This table is well made (good craftmanship)' and (b) 'manual skill' chânŋ fǐi myy dii 'a skilled craftman'. Note that khǎw fǐimyy dii and fǐimyy khǎw dii mean the same thing. (See 37.2b)

e) kɔ̀ɔn in the sentence khɔ̌ɔ jyym kɔ̀ɔn is used to emphasize the fact that the loan is to be of very short duration. (The speaker is emphasizing that he really doesn't need a loan, but there seems to be no other solution, since the other person doesn't have change for his bank note.)

f) sák (sàk) means 'merely, just, as little as'. It normally precedes a number or a quantitative expression and implies that the speaker considers the number or amount referred to as not very large.

Borrower: khɔ̌ɔ jyym ŋən sák rɔ́ɔj bàat

'Could I borrow 100 baht?' (I'm sure you will let me have it, since it's such a small amount.)

tâŋ means 'as much as, as many as'. It is used in the same types of constructions as sák but it implies that the speaker considers the amount referred to as quite large, hence the prospective lender might respond to the above request with

tâŋ rɔ́ɔj bàat chiaw rə̌ 'a hundred baht!'

(That's a lot of money!)

(g) In sentences like chûaj sýy thàan fajchaaj hâj dûaj, dûaj has the meaning 'since you are going to be doing something anyway, it won't be too much trouble for you to do me a favor too, would it?'

h) *ŋaj* is used when pointing to something that has been sought.

A: khun cɔɔn khon năj 'Which one's John?'

B: khon nán ŋaj (lá) 'That one. (pointing at him).'

40.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) *châaŋ* means a person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds like the following:

châaŋ tàt phŏm 'barber': *châaŋ* + *tàt phŏm* 'to cut hair'

châaŋ tàt sŷa 'tailor': *châaŋ* + *tàt sŷa* 'to cut (out) clothing'

châaŋ thɔɔŋ 'jeweler': *châaŋ* + *thɔɔŋ* 'gold'

châaŋ thàaj rûup 'photographer': *châaŋ* + *thàaj rûup* 'take pictures'

châaŋ máaj 'carpenter': *châaŋ* + *máaj* 'wood'

châaŋ thŏm 'nielloware maker': *châaŋ* + *thŏm* 'make nielloware'

châaŋ kèsalàk 'carver': *châaŋ* + *kèsalàk* 'to carve'

b) Completive verbs[1] in Thai are somewhat similar to certain types of adverbs in English that occur with verbs and form constructions having a completely different meaning, such as *figure out*, *bring up*, etc., except that in Thai the completive verb usually indicates that the action referred to in the main verb was brought to conclusion, thus *khít* 'to think' and *khít ɔ̀ɔk* 'to figure out'. If the result of the action is unsuccessful, the negative is placed before the completive, not the main verb:

khít mâj ɔ̀ɔk 'didn't succeed in figuring it out'

jâak mâak. phŏm khít mâj ɔ̀ɔk 'It's very difficult. I can't figure it out.

phŏm nýk mâj ɔ̀ɔk wâa kháw jùu thîinăj

'I can't recall where he lives.'

---

[1] Noss, page 125 ff.

c) In English use of the personal pronoun immediately after its noun antecedent, such as Mary she, or my friend he, etc. is considered substandard English. This is not the case in Thai. Examples of this type (in the third person) are very common. The choice of pronoun is dependent on the degree of intimacy and the relative status levels of the speaker and the person referred to.

(a) phŷan kháw '(my) friend he'

not intimate, about equal status

(b) lûuk phǒm kɛɛ[1] 'my children they'

intimate, equal status

(c) khun prapâat thân 'Mr. Prapas he'

Least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker

d) Borrow and lend are related in Thai in much the same way as in English. Observe the examples below:

Subject	khɔ̌ɔ	jyym	Object	Lender	(Amount)
khun A	khɔ̌ɔ	jyym	ŋən	khun B	10 bàat
Mr. A	asks to	borrow	money	from Mr. B	10 baht
'Mr. A asks Mr. B for the loan of 10 baht.'					

Compare the above with this:

Subject	hâj	Object	Recipient	jyym	(Amount)
khun A	hâj	ŋən	khun B	jyym	5 bàat
Mr. A	gave	money	(to) Mr. B	to borrow	5 baht
'Mr. A lent Mr. B five baht.'					

---

[1] Noss, page 100 ff.

e) fàak is used to indicate that you are entrusting some task to another person or something to an institution.

(NP)	fàak	(NP)	Verb Phrase
(phǒm)	fàak	(khun)	sýy jaa dûaj
(I)	entrust	(you)	to buy medicine (for me) too
'Could you buy some medicine (for me) too.'			

In sentences like the following:

phǒm ca sýy sŷa sǔaj sǔaj paj fàak phanrajaa phǒm

'I'll buy pretty dresses to give to my wife',

fàak means only 'to give to'.

f) The following construction is used to indicate what material an object is made of:

NP	tham	dûaj	Material
tó tuaníi	tham	dûaj	máaj
'This table	is made of		wood.'

Other materials such as ŋən 'silver', máaj sàk 'teak', lèk 'iron', kradàat 'paper', or kracòk 'glass'.

The construction above is also used in a limited number of cases to indicate the instrument that was used in making something, as in this example:

krapǎw bajnán tham dûaj myy 'That bag is hand-made.'

In place of myy, khrŷaŋ(càk) 'machine' could be used.

40.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Sentence Construction Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	kháw, ŋən, rɔ́ɔj bàat He, money, 100 Baht	kháw mii ŋən thy̌ŋ rɔ́ɔj bàat máj Does he have as much as 100 Baht?
2.	khun, bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j sìp bàat you, change, ten Baht	khun mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j thy̌ŋ sìp bàat máj Do you have as much as 10 Baht change?
3.	kháw, ŋən fàak, thanakhaan, láan bàat he, money in the bank, one million baht	kháw mii ŋən fàak thanakhaan thy̌ŋ láan bàat máj Does he have as much as one million Baht in the bank?
4.	rooŋrian nìi, nákrian, rɔɔ́j khon. This school, students, 100.	rooŋrian nií mii nákrian thy̌ŋ rɔɔ́j khon máj Are there as many as 100 students in this school?
5.	hɔ̂ŋsamùt nií, náŋsy̌y, hâa rɔɔ́j. This library, books, 500.	hɔ̂ŋsamùt nií mii náŋsŷy thy̌ŋ hâa rɔɔ́j lêm máj Are there as many as 500 books in this library?
6.	khun, weelaa, khrŷŋ chûamooŋ. You, time, half an hour.	khun mii weelaa thy̌ŋ khrŷŋ chûamooŋ máj Do you have as much as half an hour?

b) Substitution Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		phǒm mii bɛ́ŋjɔ̂j mâj thy̌ŋ rɔɔ́j bàat. I don't have as much as 100 Baht in change.
1.	ŋən, rɔɔ́j bàat Money, one hundred Baht.	phǒm mii ŋən mâj thy̌ŋ rɔɔ́j bàat. I don't have as much as 100 Baht.
2.	ŋən fàak thanaakhaan, nỳŋ phan bàat. Money in the bank, 1000 baht.	phǒm mii ŋən fàak thanakhaan mâj thy̌ŋ nỳŋ phan bàat. I don't have as much as one thousand Baht in the bank.
3.	nákrian, rɔɔ́j khon. Students, 100.	phǒm mii nákrian mâj thy̌ŋ rɔɔ́j khon. I don't have as many as 100 students.
4.	khon chûaj, sìp khon. helpers, ten.	phǒm mii khon chûaj mâj thy̌ŋ sìp khon. I don't have as many as 10 helpers.
5.	weelaa ly̌a, nỳŋ dyan. time left, one month	phǒm mii weelaa ly̌a mâj thy̌ŋ nỳŋ dyan. I have less than a month left.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw sǐa khâa châw bâan dyan la mâj thy̌ŋ sǎam phan bàat.
He pays for the rent less than three thousand Baht a month.

2. kháw mii ŋən fàak thanakhaan mâj thy̌ŋ láan bàat.
He doesn't have as much as one million Baht in the bank.

3. kháw mii weelaa ly̌a ìik mâj thy̌ŋ dyan.
   He has only less than a month left.

4. phǒm thamŋaan thîinîi (maa) dâj mâj thy̌ŋ pii.
   I have worked here less than a year.

5. kháw phə̂ŋ sýy rót khan níi dâj mâj thy̌ŋ pii.
   He's just bought this car less than a year ago.

d) Substitutuion Drill

	Cue	Pattern
		khɔ̌ɔ jyym ŋən sák jîisìp bàat dâj máj May I borrow twenty baht?
1.	náŋsy̌yphim, pradǐaw.	khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsy̌yphim sák pradǐaw May I borrow your newspaper for a few minutes?
2.	rót, khrŷŋ chûamooŋ.	khɔ̌ɔ jyym rót sák khrŷŋ chûamooŋ, dâj máj May I borrow your car for only half an hour?
3.	pàakaa, nỳŋ, dâam.	khɔ̌ɔ jyym pàakaa sák dâam, dâj máj May I borrow a pen?
4.	náŋsy̌y lêm níi, sɔ̌ɔŋ wan.	khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsy̌y lêm níi sák sɔ̌ɔŋ wan, ɑâj máj May I borrow this book for two days?
5.	náŋsy̌y dii dii, sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm.	khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsy̌y dii dii sák sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm, dâj máj May I borrow two good books?

e) Transformation Drill (Form a statement based on the exchange.)

		Pattern 1 and 2	Pattern 3
		Example I:	
	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym ŋən sák sìp bàat, dâj máj	khun B hâj ŋən khun A jyym sìp bàat
		May I borrow 10 baht?	Mr. B lent Mr. A ten baht.
	B:	dâj	
		O.K.	
		Example II:	
	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym ŋən sák sìp bàat, dâj máj	khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym ŋən khun B sìp bàat tɛ̀ɛ khun B mâj hâj jyym
		Could I borrow ten baht from you?	Mr. A asks Mr. B for a ten baht loan, but Mr. B won't lend it to him.
	B:	mâj dâj	
		No	
1.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym pàakaa sák dâam, dâj máj	khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym pàakaa khun B tɛ̀ɛ khun B mâj hâj
		Could I borrow a pen?	Mr. A asks Mr. B for loan of a pen, but Mr. B won't lend it to him.
	B:	mâj dâj	
		No	
2.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsɯ̌yphim chabàp níi nɔ̀ɔj, dâjmáj	khun B hâj khun A jyym náŋsɯ̌yphim
		May I borrow this newspaper?	Mr. B lent Mr. A a newspaper.
	B:	dâj	
		O.K.	

3.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsy̌y sák sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm, dâj máj may I borrow two	khun B hâj khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym náŋsy̌y sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm. Mr. B lent Mr. A two books.
	B:	dâj Yes.	
4.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym pàakaa sák dâam, dâj máj. May I borrow a pen?	khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym pàakaa khun B tɛ̀ɛ khun B mâj hâj. Mr. A asks Mr. B for a loan of a pen, but Mr. B won't lend one to him.
	B:	mâj dâj No.	
5.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym khrŷaŋ phimdìit sák dǐaw, dâj máj May I borrow your typewriter for a few minutes?	khun B hâj khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym khrŷaŋ phimdìit Mr. B lent Mr. A a typewriter.
	B:	aw si khráp You may take it.	
6.	A:	khɔ̌ɔ jyym khrŷaŋ àt théep sák chûamooŋ, dâj máj May I borrow the tape recorder for an hour?	khun A khɔ̌ɔ jyym khrŷaŋ àt théep khun B tɛ̀ɛ khun B mâj hâj. Mr. A asks Mr. B for a tape recorder, but Mr. B won't lend it to him.
	B:	khɔ̌ɔthôot dûaj, phǒm tɔ̂ɔŋ cháj khráp Sorry, I have to use it.	

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun cɔɔn kháw mâj jàak paj
John doesn't want to go.

2. lûuk phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̂ɔp khɔ̌ɔŋ wǎanwǎan
My children like sweet things.

3. naaj phǒm kháw mâj chɔ̂ɔp hâj phǒm paj sǎaj
My boss doesn't like me to be late.

4. phanrajaa phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̂ɔp bâan lǎŋ níi
My wife likes this house.

5. naajók thâan mâj wâaŋ
The prime minister is busy.

6. dèk khon nán kɛɛ maa jùu thîinîi naan
That child has been here a long time.

g) Sentence Construction Drill

	Cue	Pattern
1.	chaamsalàt bajníi, máaj	chaamsalàt bajníi tham dûaj máaj.
	This salad bowl, wood	This salad bowl is made of wood.
2.	khǎn bajníi, ŋən	khǎn bajníi tham dûaj ŋən.
	This bowl, silver	This bowl is made of silver.
3.	tó tuaníi, máajsàk	tó tuaníi tham dûaj májsàk.
	This table, teak	This table is made of teak.
4.	thûaj bajníi, pláatsatìk	thûaj bajníi tham dûaj pláatsatìk
	This cup, plastic	This cup is made of plastic.

5.	klɔ̀ŋ burìi bajnán, thɔɔŋ This cigarette box, gold	klɔ̀ŋ burìi bajnán tham dûaj thɔɔŋ. This cigarette box is made of gold.
6.	thǔŋ baj nán, kradàat náŋsy̌yphim This bag, newspaper	thǔŋ bajnán tham dûaj kradàat náŋsy̌yphim. This bag is made of newspaper.

h) Transformation Drill

	Pattern 1	Pattern 2
1.	fǐimyy kháw dii	kháw fǐimyy dii His work is good.
2.	fǐimyy châaŋ tàtsŷa khonníi dii	châaŋ tàtsŷa khonníi fǐimyy dii. This tailor (dressmaker) is good.
3.	fǐimyy châaŋ tàtphǒm khonníi mâj dii.	châaŋ tàtphǒm khonníi fǐimyy mâj dii. This barber is not good.
4.	fǐimyy châaŋ thɔɔŋ khonníi dii.	châaŋ thɔɔŋ khonníi fǐimyy dii. This jeweler is good.
5.	fǐimyy châaŋ thàajrûup khonníi mâj dii.	châaŋ thàajrûup khonníi fǐimyy mâj dii. This photographer is not good.
6.	fǐimyy châaŋ máaj khonníi dii.	châaŋ máaj khonníi fǐimyy dii. This carpenter is good.
7.	fǐimyy châaŋ thǒm khonníi dii.	châaŋ thǒm khonníi fǐimyy dii. This nielloware maker is good.

8. fǐimyy chân kɛ̀salàk khonníi dii.	châaŋ kɛ̀salàk khonníi fǐimyy dii. This carver is good.

i) Completion Drill (Complete the sentences with a compound beginning as châaŋ.)

1. khon thîi mii aachîip tham khrŷaŋryan rîak wâa............ ....(Answer: châaŋmáaj).

   A person who earns his living by making furniture is called ....(Answer: a cabinet maker.)

2. khon thîi mii aachîip tàtphǒm rîak wâa.................... ....(Answer: châaŋthàtphǒm).

   A person who earns his living by cutting one's hair is called ....(Answer: a barber).

3. khon thîi mii aachîip tàtsŷa rîak wâa..................... ....(Answer: châaŋtàtsŷa).

   A person who earns his living by making clothes is called ....(Answer: a tailor).

4. khon thîi mii aachîip tham khrŷaŋthɔɔŋ rîak wâa........... ....(Answer: châaŋthɔɔŋ).

   A person who earns a living by making jewelry or gold ornaments is called..............(Answer: a goldsmith).

5. khon thîi mii aachîip thaaŋ kɛ̀salàk rîak wâa.............. ....(Answer: châaŋ kɛ̀salàk).

   A person who earns his living by carving things is called ....(Answer: a carver).

6. khon thîi mii aachîip thaaŋ wítthajú rîak wâa............. ....(Answer: châaŋwítthajú).

   A person who earns his living by working in the field of radio is called......(Answer: a radio repairman).

7. khon thîi mii aachîip thaaŋ fajfáa rîak wâa..(Answer: châaŋ fajfáa).

A person who earns his living in the field of electricity is called..........(Answer: an electrician).

j) Sentence Construction Drill

	Pattern 1	Cue	Continued Pattern
	khun ca phàan ráan khǎaj jaa máj	sýy jaa	fàak sýy jaa dûaj.
	Are you going by the drug store?	Buy some medicine.	May I ask you to buy some medicine for me?
1.	khun ca phàan talàat máj	sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ	fàak sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ dûaj.
	Are you going to go by the market?	Buy some-thing.	I'd like you to buy something for me.
2.	khun ca wɛ́ hɔ̂ŋkoŋ máj	sýy klɔ̂ŋ thàaj rûup	fàak sýy klɔ̂ŋ thàaj rûup sak klɔ̂ŋ dûaj.
	Are you going to stop over in Hongkong?	Buy a camera.	I'd like you to buy a camera for me.
3.	khun ca paj talàat rə̌khráp	sýy kàpkhâaw	fàak sýy kàpkhâaw dûaj.
	You're going to the market?	Buy me some food.	May I ask you to buy some food for me?
4.	khun ca phàan prajsanii máj	sòŋ còtmǎaj	fàak sòŋ còt mǎaj dûaj
	Are you going to go by the post office?	Mail a letter.	Could you mail a letter for me?
5.	khun ca paj ráan kaafɛɛ ry̌y	sýy kaafɛɛ	fàak sýy kaafɛɛ dûaj.
	You're going to the coffee shop?	Buy some coffee.	Could you get some coffee for me?

6.	khun ca paj thanakhaan rŷy	lɛ̂ɛk ŋən	fàak lɛ̂ɛk ŋən dûaj.
	You're going to the bank?	Change money.	Could you change some money for me?

k) Response Drill

	Question	Cue	Response
1.	khun ca sýy araj paj fàak kháw	náŋsýy dii dii sák sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm.	phǒm ca sýy náŋsýy dii dii paj fàak kháw sák sɔ̌ɔŋ lêm.
	What are you going to buy (as a present) for him?	Two good books.	I'll buy two good books for him.
2.	khun ca sýy araj paj fàak phanrajaa khun	sŷa sǔaj sǔaj	phǒm ca sýy sŷa sǔaj sǔaj paj fàak phanrajaa
	What are you going to buy (as a souvenir) for your wife?	Beautiful blouses (dresses)	I'll buy beautiful dresses for my wife.
3.	weelaa khun klàp paj bâan, khun ca sýy araj paj fàak lûuk sǎaw khun	khɔ̌ɔŋ lên	phǒm ca sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ lên paj fàak lûuksǎaw phǒm.
	When you go home, what are you going to buy (as a souvenir) for your daughter?	Toys.	I'm going to buy some toys for my daughter.
4.	weelaa khun klàp paj myaŋthaj, khun ca sýy araj paj fàak phanrajaa khun	khrŷaŋcháj fajfáa	phǒm ca sýy khrŷaŋcháj fajfáa paj fàak phanrajaa phǒm.
	When you go back to Thailand, what are you going to buy (as a present) for your wife?	Electrical appliances	I'll buy some electrical appliances for my wife.

5.	weelaa khun paj tookiaw, khun ca sýy araj maa fàak phǒm bâaŋ.	wíthajú jîipùn an léklék, nỳŋ khrŷaŋ	phǒm ca sýy wíthajú jîipùn an léklék maa fàak khun nỳŋ khrŷaŋ
	When you go to Tokyo, what things are you going to buy (as souvenirs from Tokyo) for me?	A rather small Japanese radio	I'll buy you a rather small Japanese radio.

l) Recognition and Familiarization

	Question	Response
1.	khun rúucàk ráan diidii bâaŋmáj	ráan thaj ŋajlakhráp
	Do you know any good stores?	Yes, "Thai" store's the one.
2.	rót khǒoŋkhun jùu thîinǎj	nîi ŋajkhráp
	Where is your car?	Right here.
3.	khun sǒmsàk khonnǎj	khonnán ŋajkhráp
	Which one is Mr. Somsak?	That one there.
4.	khun hěn náŋsyy phǒm máj	jùu nân ŋajkhráp
	Did you see my book?	Right there (Don't you see it?)
5.	kháw maa rýplàaw	maa, jyyn jùu nân ŋajkhráp.
	Did he come?	Yes, he's standing right there. (Don't you see him?)

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun ca phàan talàat máj. fàak sýy khǒoŋ dûaj.

Are you going to go buy the market? Could you get me something?

2. khun ca wɛ́ tookiaw máj. fàak sýy khɔ̌ɔŋ dûaj.

   Are you going to stop over Tokyo? Could I have you buy something for me?

3. khun ca paj sýy kaafɛɛ rə̌há. fàak sýy dûaj nỳŋ thûaj.

   You are going to buy coffee? Could you get a cup for me too?

4. khun ca paj prajsanii rə̌há. fàak sòŋ còtmǎaj dûaj.

   You are going to the post office? Could you mail this letter for me?

5. khun ca paj hǎa khun cim rə̌. fàak náŋsɯ̌y lêmníi paj hâj khaw dûaj.

   You are going to see Jim? Could you take this book to him also?

6. khun ca paj ráan khǎajphâa rə̌. chûaj sýy phâa hâj dûaj.

   You are going to the fabric shop? Could you buy some material for me too?

7. khun ca paj bâan kháw, châj máj. chûaj bɔ̀ɔk kháw dûaj wâa phǒm paj mâj dâj.

   You are going to his house, aren't you? Please tell him that I can't go.

8. khun ca paj hǎa naajnâa rə̌. chûaj thǎam kháw dûaj wâa bâan lǎŋnán khâachâw thâwràj.

   You are going to see the agent? Please ask him (also) how much the rent for that house is.

9. khun ca hǎa khun prasìt rə̌. chûaj aw náŋsɯ̌y lêmníi paj hâj kháw dûaj.

   You are going to see Mr. Prasit? Please take this book to him also.

40.5 EXERCISES

1. Pairs of students will ask and answer questions of each other eliciting information like the following:

   (a) Does one student have as much/many as $3,000; 50 baht; 2,000 books; etc.

   (b) Does one student have as much as $3,000; 36,000 baht; 40,000 baht; $100,000 deposited in the bank?

2. Two students discuss their monthly salary. The first member of the pair indicates that he finds his salary quite small. The second student is impressed by the size of it.

3. Two students discuss the length, size, or cost of various objects. In each case one takes the position that the amount given is not very much, while the other takes the position that it is quite a lot.

4. Discuss the monthly bill for rent, gas, water, and electricity in the same manner as in 3.

5. Student A asks to borrow various objects ($10, a pen, 2 books, his car, a tape recorder, a typewriter, etc.). Student B indicates that he will lend A some of the items, but not all.

6. Student C asks Student B what Student A wanted to borrow and if he lent these things to him. When B indicates that he lent him some of the things, C asks why he didn't lend A the other objects.

7. Student A asks Student B what material some object (a table, a chair, a shirt, a glass, a tie, etc.) is made of. B responds. Then A asks him if it is hand-made or machine made.

8. Students will discuss the craftmanship of various kinds in different countries (woodcarving in Germany, nielloware in Thailand, etc.)

9. Students will find out from the instructor what the Thais call sculptors, watch repairmen, hair dressers, weavers, boat builders, house painters, carpenters, printers, etc.

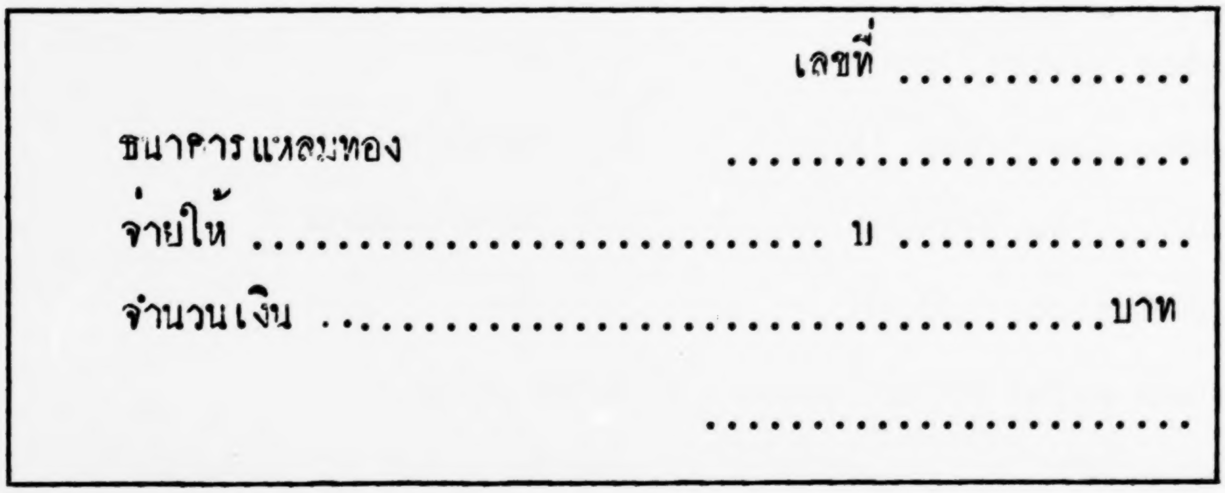
10. Student A asks Student B if he is going to some particular place. When B indicates that he is, A asks him to do some thing (buy something, etc.) for him, indicating that since he is going there anyway it won't be any trouble for him to do him a favor.

11. One student asks another what he plans to buy (as a present) in Thailand for his mother, or his older sister, or his material aunt, or some other relative.

12. Student A asks about the location of some object, or the identity of some person in the classroom. Student B indicates his surprise and points it out to him.

13. Student A plays the part of a bank teller and Student B that of a customer. They discuss withdrawing and depositing money in the bank.

(Below is a facsimile of a Thai check.)



เลขที่ ....

ธนาคารแหลมทอง ....

จ่ายให้ .... บ ....

จำนวนเงิน ....บาท

....

40.6 VOCABULARY

aachîip	profession
àt	to tape, to copy
əə	by the way
(khít ɔ̀ɔk (nýk)	out (a completive verb)
bə̀ək	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bə̀ək ŋən	to get money (from the bank)
châaŋ-	A person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds.
châaŋ kɛ̀ɛsalàk (khon)	carver
châaŋ máaj (khon)	carpenter
châaŋ tàtphǒm (khon)	barber
châaŋ tàtsŷa (khon)	tailor
châaŋ thàajrûup (khon)	photographer
châaŋ thǒm (khon)	nielloware maker
châaŋ thɔɔŋ (khon)	jeweler
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chiaw rə̌	that's a lot of (something)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
dûaj	also, too, as well
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you

fàak ŋən	to deposit money (in the bank)
fĭi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hɔ̂ŋkoŋ	Hong Kong
jɛ́/jəjɛ́	to be a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
kɛɛ	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status
kɛ̀ɛsalàk	to carve
khǎnŋən	silver bowl
kháw	he, she, they (third person) not intimate, about equal status
khít ɔ̀ɔk	to figure out
khɔ̌ɔ jyym/jyym	to borrow
khɔ̌ɔŋ lên (jàaŋ)	toys
khrŷaŋ (cák) (an)	machine
khrŷaŋ àtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khŷn ŋən	to cash a check
kɔ̀ɔn	used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kracòk (baan, phɛ̀n)	'glass'
lèek	'iron, steel'
lɔ̀ɔt fajfáa (lɔ̀ɔt)	light bulb
máaj	wood

máaj sàk		teak
myy (myy)		hand
naajók	(thân)	prime minister (short form)
naajók rátthamontrii		prime minister (official name)
naanaaphan		Nanaphan (name of a shop)
nýk ɔ̀ɔk		think about, can recall, can remember;
		to be able to recall to memory
ŋənbə̀ək		a deposit (in a bank)
phaa		to take, escort
pláatsatìk		plastic
phə̂ŋ		just (immediately before)
rɛɛŋthian		watt (measure of electricity)
sǐnkháa thaj		Thai merchandise
syy...{paj maa} ...fàak		to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
tâŋ		as much as, as many as
tàt		to cut
thàaj rûup		take pictures
thàanfajchaaj (kɔ̂ɔn)		flashlight batteries
tham dûaj......		made of
thân		he, she, they (third person) least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker
thɔ̌m		to make nielloware
thɔɔŋ		gold
thɯ̌ŋ		is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1970 O - 396-398 (144)

FSI Language Publications Available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	$2.25
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	$2.50
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	$2.00
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)	
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	$1.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12 (Units 13-24	$4.00
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	$2.75
* German	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* German	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. I)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. II)	$1.00
* Greek	(Vol. III)	$2.00
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	$5.00
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	$2.75
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	$2.25
* Korean	(Vol. I)	$3.00
* Korean	(Vol. II)	$4.75
* Lao	(Vol. I)	
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	$2.75
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	$2.25
* Moré	(Units 1-48)	$1.75
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	$3.50
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	$4.00
Shona	(Units 1-49)	$2.50
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15 (Units 16-30	$12.25
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	$3.25
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	$4.00
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	$3.00

* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	$3.75
* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	$2.25
* Twi	(Units 1-20)	$1.25
* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	$2.75
* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	$1.50
* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	$2.75

* Finnish Graded Reader	$4.50
* French Supplemental Exercises	$3.25
Hindi-An Active Introduction	
* Hungarian Graded Reader	$3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader	$1.75
* Luganda Pretraining Program	
Modern Written Arabic	$4.00
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)	$0.75
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. I)	$2.25
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)	
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. II)	
* Swahili General Conversation	$0.75
* Swahili Geography	$0.65
Thai Reference Grammar	$1.25
Turkish Graded Reader	
Vietnamese Familiarization Course	$1.75
Yoruba Intermediate Texts	$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.